2015

MINNESOTA
MECHANICAL and FUEL GAS CODE

with ANSI/ASHRAE STANDARD 154-2011

MINNESOTA DEPARTMENT OF LABOR & INDUSTRY

2015 Minnesota Mechanical and Fuel Gas Code
with the ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 154-2011

First Printing

ISBN: 978-1-60983-581-1

PRINTED IN THE U.S.A.

MINNESOTA DEPARTMENT OF
LABOR & INDUSTRY

Additional information on the Minnesota State Building Code can be found at the Minnesota Department of Labor & Industry's website:
http://www.dli.mn.gov/CCLD/Codes.asp

There you can find reference guides, maps, charts, fact sheets, archived references, Statute and Rule excerpts and other helpful information to assist you in using the Minnesota State Building Code.

Minnesota Rules material is published with the permission of the Office of the Revisor of Statutes.

Important Disclaimer

Note: Minnesota Rules included in this document have been extracted from Minnesota Rules 2007 and from Minnesota Rules proposed for adoption in 2015. Although efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy of the Minnesota Rules included herein, the official Minnesota Rules are as published by the Office of the Revisor of Statutes: https://www.revisor.mn.gov/rules/

If there is a difference between the Minnesota Rules included herein and the official rules published by the Office of the Revisor of Statutes, the official rules published by the Office of the Revisor of Statutes take precedence.

The official rules published by the Office of the Revisor of Statutes must be used for any notice or legal documentation used in conjunction with the application or enforcement of the Minnesota State Building Code.

Neither the state of Minnesota nor its employees or agents make any representations or warranties, express or implied, with respect to the use or reliance on the information provided herein and the user assumes all risks and responsibilities associated with its use.

In no event shall the State of Minnesota or its employees be liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages arising in any way out of the use of this material.

2015 MINNESOTA MECHANICAL CODE

SYMBOLS AND NOTATIONS IN THE CODE

➡	=	Indicates where a paragraph or item has been deleted from the requirements of the 2009 *International Mechanical Code.*
>	=	Indicates model code language deleted by the State of Minnesota.
▌	=	Indicates a technical change from the requirements of the 2009 *International Mechanical Code*.
M N M N	=	Indicates a State of Minnesota amendment has been made to the 2012 *International Mechanical Code.*

2015 MINNESOTA BUILDING CODE ADMINISTRATION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

2015 MINNESOTA BUILDING CODE ADMINISTRATION

1300.0010 ADMINISTRATION

Subpart 1. Scope. This chapter provides administrative provisions for all *Minnesota State Building Code* rule chapters identified in part 1300.0050. If specific administrative provisions are provided in a statute or rule chapter, the specific administrative provisions apply.

Subp. 2. Minnesota Electrical Act. Chapter 1315 shall be administered according to Chapter 3801 and the Minnesota Electrical Act, Minnesota Statutes, Sections 326B.31 to 326B.399. Provisions of this chapter that do not conflict with the Minnesota Electrical Act also apply.

Subp. 3. Minnesota Plumbing Code. Chapter 4715, the *Minnesota Plumbing Code*, and applicable provisions of this chapter shall be administered and enforced statewide by the commissioner under Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.106, subdivision 3, unless an agreement exists between the commissioner and a municipality to enforce the *Minnesota Plumbing Code* under Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.43, subdivision 2.

1300.0020 TITLE

The chapters listed in part 1300.0050, including the standards they adopt by reference, are the *Minnesota State Building Code* and may be cited as or referred to as the "code."

1300.0030 PURPOSE AND APPLICATION

Subpart 1. Purpose. The purpose of this code is to establish minimum requirements to safeguard the public health, safety, and general welfare through structural strength, means of egress facilities, stability, sanitation, adequate light and ventilation, energy conservation, and safety to life and property from fire and other hazards attributed to the built environment and to provide safety to firefighters and emergency responders during emergency operations.

The purpose of the code is not to create, establish, or designate a particular class or group of persons who will or should be especially protected or benefited by the terms of the code.

Subp. 2. Application.

A. The *State Building Code* is the standard that applies statewide for the construction, reconstruction, alteration, and repair of buildings and other structures of the type governed by the code, except as provided in Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.121.

The *State Building Code* supersedes the building code of any municipality. The *State Building Code* does not apply to agricultural buildings except with respect to state inspections required or rulemaking authorized by Minnesota Statutes, Sections 103F.141, 326B.36, and 326B.121, subdivision 1, paragraph (c), clause (2).

B. The codes and standards referenced in a rule chapter are considered part of the requirements of the code to the prescribed extent of each reference. If differences occur between provisions of the code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of the code apply.

C. In the event that a new edition of the code is adopted after a permit has been issued, the edition of the code current at the time of permit application shall remain in effect throughout the work authorized by the permit.

1300.0040 SCOPE

Subpart 1. Applicability. The code applies to the design, construction, addition, alteration, moving, replacement, demolition, repair, equipment, installation, use and occupancy, location, maintenance, and inspection of any building, structure, or building service equipment in a municipality, except work located primarily in a public way, public utility towers and poles, mechanical equipment not specifically regulated in the code, and hydraulic flood control structures.

Exception: When approved by the building official, buildings, structures, or portions thereof, used exclusively by military personnel, police, fire, or first responders for training purposes may be designed to reflect actual conditions that may be encountered in field operations, maneuvers, or tactics, however, structural provisions must apply.

Subp. 2. Compliance. Structures classified under part 1300.0070, subpart 12b, as IRC-1, IRC-2, IRC-3, and IRC-4 occupancies not more than three stories above grade plane in height with a separate means of egress shall comply with Chapter 1309 and other applicable rules. Other buildings and structures and appurtenances connected or attached to them shall comply with Chapter 1305 and other applicable rules.

Exception: The following structures that meet the scope of Chapter 1305 shall be permitted to be designed to comply with Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1311:

(1) existing buildings undergoing repair, alteration, change of occupancy, addition, or being moved; and

(2) historic buildings.

If different provisions of the code specify different materials, methods of construction, or other requirements, the most restrictive provision governs. If there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement applies.

If reference is made in the code to an appendix, the provisions in the appendix do not apply unless specifically adopted by the code. Optional appendix chapters of the code identified in part 1300.0060 do not apply unless a municipality has specifically adopted them.

1300.0050 CHAPTERS OF MINNESOTA STATE BUILDING CODE

The *Minnesota State Building Code* adopted under Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.106, subdivision 1, includes the following chapters:

A. 1300, Minnesota Building Code Administration;

B. 1301, Building Official Certification;

C. 1302, State Building Code Construction Approvals;

D. 1303, Special Provisions;

E. 1305, Minnesota Building Code;

F. 1306, Special Fire Protection Systems;

G. 1307, Elevators and Related Devices;

H. 1309, Minnesota Residential Code;

I. 1311, Minnesota Conservation Code for Existing Buildings;

J. 1315, Minnesota Electrical Code;

K. 1325, Solar Energy Systems;

L. 1335, Floodproofing Regulations;

M. 1341, Minnesota Accessibility Code;

N. 1346, Minnesota Mechanical Code;

O. 1350, Manufactured Homes;

P. 1360, Prefabricated Structures;

Q. 1361, Industrialized/Modular Buildings;

R. 1370, Storm Shelters (Manufactured Home Parks);

S. 4715, Minnesota Plumbing Code;

T. 1322 and 1323, Minnesota Energy Codes; and

U. 5230, Minnesota High Pressure Piping Systems.

1300.0060 OPTIONAL ADMINISTRATION

The following chapters of the code are not mandatory but may be adopted without change by a municipality which has adopted the code:

A. Chapter 1306, Special Fire Protection Systems; and

B. grading, IBC Appendix Chapter J.

1300.0070 DEFINITIONS

Subpart 1. Scope; incorporation by reference. The definitions in this part apply to parts 1300.0010 to 1300.0250. For terms that are not defined through the methods authorized by this chapter, the Merriam-Webster Collegiate Dictionary, available at www.m-w.com, shall be considered as providing ordinarily accepted meanings. The dictionary is incorporated by reference, is subject to frequent change, and is available through the Minitex interlibrary loan system.

Subp. 2. Administrative authority. "Administrative authority" means a municipality's governing body or its assigned administrative authority.

Subp. 3. (Repealed).

Subp. 4. Agricultural building. "Agricultural building" means a building that meets the requirements of Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.103, subdivision 3.

Subp. 4a. Approved. "Approved" means approval by the building official, pursuant to the *Minnesota State Building Code*, by reason of:

A. inspection, investigation, or testing;

B. accepted principles;

C. computer simulations;

D. research reports; or

E. testing performed by either a licensed engineer or by a locally or nationally recognized testing laboratory.

Subp. 5. Building official. "Building official" means the municipal building code official certified under Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.133, subdivisions 2 and 3.

Subp. 6. Building service equipment. "Building service equipment" refers to the plumbing, mechanical, electrical, and elevator equipment, including piping, wiring, fixtures, and other accessories, that provides sanitation, lighting, heating, ventilation, cooling, refrigeration, firefighting, and transportation facilities essential to the occupancy of the building or structure for its designated use and occupancy.

Subp. 7. City. "City" means a home rule charter or statutory city.

Subp. 8. Code. For the purposes of Chapter 1300, "Code" means the *Minnesota State Building Code* adopted under Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.106, subdivision 1, and includes the chapters identified in part 1300.0020.

Subp. 9. Commissioner. "Commissioner" means the commissioner of labor and industry.

Subp. 10. Designate. "Designate" means the formal designation by a municipality's administrative authority of a certified building official accepting responsibility for code administration.

Subp. 11. (Repealed).

Subp. 12a. Historical building. "Historical building" means any building or structure that is listed in the National Register of Historic Places, designated as a historic property under local or state designation law; certified as a contributing resource within a National Register listed or locally designated historic district; or with an opinion or certification that the property is eligible to be listed on the National or State Register of Historic Places either individually or as a contributing building to a historic district by the State Historic Preservation Officer or the Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places.

Subp. 12b. *International Residential Code* occupancy classifications. *International Residential Code* (IRC) occupancy classifications are as follows:

IRC-1 single-family dwellings;
IRC-2 two-family dwellings;
IRC-3 townhouses; and
IRC-4 accessory structures:

A. garages;
B. storage sheds; and
C. similar structures.

Subp. 13. Mandatory terms. "Mandatory terms" include "must" and "shall," which have the same meaning.

Subp. 14. Manufactured home. "Manufactured home" has the meaning given in Minnesota Statutes, Section 327.31, subdivision 3, and for the purpose of determining occupancy separations, is considered a Group IRC-1 occupancy.

Subp. 15. Master plan. "Master plan" is a plan that has been reviewed for code compliance by the building official and stamped "Reviewed for Code Compliance."

Subp. 16. Mayor and city council. "Mayor" and "city council" mean governing body whenever they appear in the code.

Subp. 17. Municipality. "Municipality" means a city, county, or town; the University of Minnesota; or the state of Minnesota for public buildings and state licensed facilities.

Subp. 18. (Repealed).

Subp. 19. Performance-based design. An engineering approach to design elements of a building based on agreed upon performance goals and objectives, engineering analysis, and quantitative assessment of alternatives against the design goals and objectives, using accepted engineering tools, methodologies, and performance criteria.

Subp. 20. Recyclable materials. "Recyclable materials" means materials that are separated from mixed municipal solid waste for the purpose of recycling, including paper, glass, plastic, metals, automobile oil, and batteries. Refuse-derived fuel or other material that is destroyed by incineration is not a recyclable material.

Subp. 21. Recycling. "Recycling" means the process of collecting and preparing recyclable materials and reusing the materials in their original form or using them in manufacturing processes that do not cause the destruction of recyclable materials in a manner that precludes further use.

Subp. 22. (Repealed).

Subp. 23. (Repealed).

Subp. 24. State building official. "State building official" means the person who, under the direction and supervision of the commissioner, administers the code.

Subp. 25. State licensed facilities. "State licensed facilities" means, pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.103, subdivision 13, a building and its grounds that are licensed by the state as a hospital, nursing home, supervised living facility, free-standing outpatient surgical center, correctional facility, boarding care home, or residential hospice.

Subp. 26. State-owned buildings. "State-owned buildings" means buildings and structures financed in whole or in part by state funds that are under the exclusive jurisdiction and custodial control of one or more state department or agency.

1300.0080
CODE ADOPTION AND AMENDMENTS

Under Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.106, the code is adopted and periodically updated to include current editions of national model codes in general use and existing statewide specialty codes and their amendments.

Under Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.13, subdivisions 5 and 6, amendments to the code may be proposed and initiated by any interested person. Proposed amendments must be submitted in writing on a form provided by the commissioner.

1300.0090
DEPARTMENT OF BUILDING SAFETY

Subpart 1. Creation of enforcement agency. There is hereby established in the municipality a code enforcement agency and the official in charge is the designated building official. The agency is referred to in the code as the "Department of Building Safety."

Subp. 2. Appointment. The building official shall be designated by the municipality according to Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.133.

1300.0110
DUTIES AND POWERS OF BUILDING OFFICIAL

Subpart 1. General. The building official is authorized and directed to enforce the provisions of this code. The building official has the authority to render interpretations of the code and adopt policies and procedures in order to clarify the application of the provisions. The interpretations, policies, and procedures shall comply with the intent and purpose of the code. The policies and procedures shall not have the effect of waiving requirements specifically provided for in the code.

Subp. 2. Deputies. According to the prescribed procedures of the municipality and with the concurrence of the appointing authority, the building official may designate a deputy building official and related technical officers, inspectors, plan examiners, and other employees. The employees have the powers delegated by the building official.

Subp. 3. Applications and permits. The building official shall receive applications, review construction documents, and issue permits for the erection, alteration, demolition, moving, and repair of buildings and structures, including all other equipment and systems regulated by the code. When requested by a permit applicant, the building official shall meet with the permit applicant prior to the application for a construction permit to discuss plans for the proposed work. The meeting shall be held at a mutually agreeable location. Municipalities may establish a fee for this service.

Subp. 4. Notices and orders. The building official shall issue all necessary notices and orders to ensure compliance with the code. Notices and orders shall be in writing unless waived by the permit applicant, contractor, owner, or owner's agent. Notices and orders shall be based on the edition of the code under which the permit has been issued.

Subp. 5. Inspections. The building official shall make all of the required inspections or accept reports of inspection by approved agencies or individuals. Results of inspections shall be documented on the job site inspection card and in the official records of the municipality, including type of inspection, date of inspection, identification of the responsible individual making the inspection, and comments regarding approval or disapproval of the inspection. The building official is authorized to engage an expert opinion as deemed necessary to report on any unusual technical issues that arise.

Subp. 6. Identification. The building official and deputies shall carry proper identification when inspecting structures or premises in the performance of duties under the code.

Subp. 7. Right of entry. If it is necessary to make an inspection to enforce the code or if the building official has reasonable cause to believe that there exists in a structure or upon a premises a condition contrary to or in violation of the code that makes the structure or premises unsafe, dangerous, or hazardous, the building official or designee may enter the structure or premises at reasonable times to inspect or to perform the duties imposed by the code, provided that if the structure or premises is occupied, credentials must be presented to the occupant and entry requested. If the structure or premises is unoccupied, the building official shall first make a reasonable effort to locate the owner or other person having charge or control of the structure or premises and request entry. If entry is refused, the building official shall have recourse to the remedies provided by law to secure entry.

Subp. 8. Department records. The building official shall be responsible for official records of the local Department of Building Safety for permit applications received, plans, specifications, surveys, plot plans, plan reviews, permits and certificates issued, reports of inspections, and notices and orders issued by the department. The records shall be kept according to the records management schedule of the municipality required by Minnesota Statutes, Section 138.17.

Subp. 9. Liability. The building official, member of the Board of Appeals, or employee charged with the enforcement of the code, while acting for the jurisdiction in good faith and without malice in the discharge of the duties required by the code or other pertinent laws or ordinances, is not rendered personally liable and is relieved from personal liability for any damage accruing to persons or property as a result of any act or by reason of an act or omission in the discharge of official duties. Any suit instituted against an officer or employee because of an act performed by that officer or employee in the lawful discharge of duties and under the code shall be defended by the legal representative of the jurisdiction until the final termination of the proceedings. The building official, member of the Board of Appeals, or an employee charged with the enforcement of the code, is not liable for costs in any action, suit, or proceeding that is instituted in pursuance of the provisions of this code.

Subp. 10. Approved materials and equipment. Materials, equipment, and devices approved by the building official shall be constructed and installed in the approved manner.

Subp. 11. Used material and equipment. The use of used materials that meet the requirements of the code for new materials is permitted. Used equipment and devices shall not be reused unless approved by the building official.

Subp. 12. Modifications. If there are practical difficulties involved in carrying out the provisions of the code, the building official may grant modifications for individual cases, upon application by the owner or owner's representative, provided the building official finds that special individual reason makes the strict letter of the code impractical, the modification is in compliance with the intent and purpose of the code, and the modification does not lessen health, life, and fire safety or structural requirements. The details of action granting modifications shall be recorded and entered in the files of the Department of Building Safety.

Subp. 13. Alternative materials, design, and methods of construction and equipment. The code is not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by the code, provided that any alternative has been approved. An alternative material, design, or method of construction shall be approved where the building official finds that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the code, and that the material, method, or work offered is, for the purpose intended, at least the equivalent of that prescribed in the code in quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability, and safety. The details of any action granting approval of an alternate shall be recorded and entered in the files of the Department of Building Safety.

Subp. 14. Performance-based fire and life safety design. The code official may approve performance-based fire and life safety designs if the code official finds that the proposed design has been conducted by an approved method. Approved performance-based designs are evidence of compliance with the intent of the code. Approvals under this subpart are subject to the approval of the building code official whenever the design involves matters regulated by the building code.

A. Design goals, objectives, and performance criteria shall be approved by the code official before submission of a performance-based design report, calculations, or analysis results. As a minimum, an approved performance-based design shall address the following objectives:

(1) life safety of occupants;

(2) firefighter safety;

(3) property protection;

(4) continuity of operations; and

(5) safeguarding of the environment.

B. To determine the acceptability of a performance-based design, the code official may require the owner or agent to provide, without charge to the jurisdiction, a technical opinion and report. The code official may require the technical opinion and report to be prepared by, and bear the stamp of, a licensed design professional.

C. Performance-based designs shall be prepared by, and bear the stamp of, a licensed design professional competent in the area of work. The design professional shall provide written confirmation to the code official before a certificate of occupancy is issued that the performance-based design has been properly implemented, the operation or use of the building is within the limitations of the design, and adequate controls are in place to maintain compliance with the conditions of the design throughout the life of the building.

Subp. 15. Tests. If there is insufficient evidence of compliance with the code, or evidence that a material or method does not conform to the requirements of the code, or in order to substantiate claims for alternative materials or methods, the building official shall have the authority to require tests as evidence of compliance to be made at no expense to the municipality. Test methods shall be as specified in the code or by other recognized test standards. In the absence of recognized and accepted test methods, the building official shall approve the testing procedures. Tests shall be performed by an approved agency. Reports of the tests shall be retained by the building official.

1300.0120
PERMITS

Subpart 1. Required. An owner or authorized agent who intends to construct, enlarge, alter, repair, move, demolish, or change the occupancy of a building or structure, or to erect, install, enlarge, alter, repair, remove, convert, or replace any gas, mechanical, electrical, plumbing system, or other equipment, the installation of which is regulated by the code; or cause any such work to be done, shall first make application to the building official and obtain the required permit.

Subp. 2. Annual permit. In lieu of an individual permit for each alteration to an already approved electrical, gas, mechanical, or plumbing installation, the building official may issue an annual permit upon application for the permit to any person, firm, or corporation regularly employing one or more qualified trade persons in the building, structure, or on the premises owned or operated by the applicant for the permit.

Subp. 3. Annual permit records. The person to whom an annual permit is issued shall keep a detailed record of alterations made under the annual permit. The building official shall have access to the records at all times or the records shall be filed with the building official as designated.

Subp. 4. Work exempt from permit. Exemptions from permit requirements of the code do not authorize work to be done in any manner in violation of the code or any other laws or ordinances of this jurisdiction. Permits shall not be required for the following:

A. Building:

(1) One-story detached accessory structures used as tool and storage sheds, playhouses, and similar uses, provided the floor area does not exceed 200 square feet (60 960 mm^2);

(2) Fences not over seven feet (2134 mm) high;

(3) Oil derricks;

(4) Retaining walls that are not over four feet (1219 mm) in height measured from the bottom of the footing to the top of the wall, unless supporting a surcharge or impounding Class I, II, or III-A liquids;

(5) Water tanks supported directly upon grade if the capacity does not exceed 5,000 gallons (18 927 L) and the ratio of height to diameter or width does not exceed 2 to 1;

(6) Sidewalks and driveways that are not part of an accessible route;

(7) Decks and platforms not more than 30 inches (762 mm) above adjacent grade and not attached to a structure with frost footings and which is not part of an accessible route;

(8) Painting, papering, tiling, carpeting, cabinets, countertops, and similar finish work;

(9) Temporary motion picture, television, and theater stage sets and scenery;

(10) Prefabricated swimming pools installed entirely above ground accessory to dwelling units constructed to the provisions of the *International Residential Code* or R-3 occupancies constructed to the provisions of the *International Building Code,* which do not exceed both 5,000 gallons in capacity (18 925 L) and a 24-inch (610 mm) depth;

(11) Window awnings supported by an exterior wall that do not project more than 54 inches (1372 mm) from the exterior wall and do not require additional support, when constructed under the *International Residential Code* or Group R-3 and Group U occupancies constructed to the provisions of the *International Building Code*;

(12) Movable cases, counters, and partitions not over five feet, nine inches (1753 mm) in height; and

(13) Swings and other playground equipment.

Unless otherwise exempted, plumbing, electrical, and mechanical permits are required for subitems (1) to (13).

B. Gas:

(1) Portable heating, cooking, or clothes drying appliances;

(2) Replacement of any minor part that does not alter approval of equipment or make the equipment unsafe; and

(3) Portable fuel cell appliances that are not connected to a fixed piping system and are interconnected to a power grid.

C. Mechanical:

(1) Portable heating appliances;

(2) Portable ventilation appliances and equipment;

(3) Portable cooling units;

(4) Steam, hot, or chilled water piping within any heating or cooling equipment regulated by this code;

(5) Replacement of any part that does not alter approval of equipment or make the equipment unsafe;

(6) Portable evaporative coolers;

(7) Self-contained refrigeration systems containing ten pounds (4.5 kg) or less of refrigerant or that are actuated by motors of one horsepower (0.75 kW) or less; and

(8) Portable fuel cell appliances that are not connected to a fixed piping system and are not interconnected to a power grid.

D. Electrical: a municipality must not require an electrical permit if the work falls under the jurisdiction of the commissioner or if the work is exempt from inspection under Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.36, subdivision 7. This exemption does not exempt the work from other *State Building Code* requirements relating to electrical equipment.

Subp. 5. Emergency repairs. If equipment replacements and repairs must be performed in an emergency situation, the permit application shall be submitted to the building official within the next working business day.

Subp. 6. Repairs. Application or notice to the building official is not required for ordinary repairs to structures. The repairs shall not include the opening or removal of any wall, partition, or portion of a wall or partition, the removal or cutting of any structural beam or load bearing support, or the removal or change of any required means of egress, or rearrangement of parts of a structure affecting the egress requirements; nor shall ordinary repairs include addition to, alteration of, replacement, or relocation of any standpipe, water supply, sewer, drainage, drain leader, gas, soil, waste, vent or similar piping, electric wiring, or mechanical or other work affecting public health or general safety.

Subp. 7. Application for permit. To obtain a permit, the applicant shall file an application in writing on a form furnished by the Department of Building Safety for that purpose. The application shall:

A. Identify and describe the work to be covered by the permit for which application is made;

B. Describe the land on which the proposed work is to be done by legal description, street address, or similar description that will readily identify and definitely locate the proposed building or work;

C. Indicate the use and occupancy for which the proposed work is intended;

D. Indicate the type of construction;

E. Be accompanied by construction documents and other information as required by the code;

F. State the valuation of the proposed work;

G. Be signed by the applicant, or the applicant's authorized agent; and

H. Give other data and information required by the building official.

Subp. 8. Action on application. The building official shall examine or cause to be examined applications for permits and amendments within a reasonable time after filing. If the application or the construction documents do not conform to the requirements of pertinent laws, the building official shall reject the application and notify the applicant of the reasons. The building official shall document the reasons for rejecting the application. The applicant may request written documentation of the rejection and the reasons for the rejection. When the building official is satisfied that the proposed work conforms to the requirements of the code and applicable laws and ordinances, the building official shall issue a permit.

Subp. 9. Time limitation of application. An application for a permit for any proposed work shall be considered abandoned 180 days after the date of filing, unless the application has been pursued in good faith or a permit has been issued; except that the building official is authorized to grant one or more extensions of time for additional periods not exceeding 180 days each. The extension shall be requested in writing and justifiable cause demonstrated.

Subp. 10. Validity of permit. The issuance or granting of a permit or approval of plans, specifications, and computations, shall not be construed to be a permit for any violation of the code or of any other ordinance of the jurisdiction. Permits presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of the code or other ordinances of the jurisdiction are not valid. Any permit issued becomes invalid if the work authorized by the permit is suspended or abandoned for more than 180 days. The 180 days commences the first day the work was suspended or abandoned.

Subp. 11. Expiration. Every permit issued expires unless the work authorized by the permit is commenced within 180 days after its issuance. The building official shall grant, in writing, extensions of time, for periods not more than 180 days each if the applicant demonstrates justifiable cause for the extension to the building official.

Subp. 12. Suspension or revocation. The building official may suspend or revoke a permit issued under the code if the permit is issued in error; on the basis of incorrect, inaccurate, or incomplete information; or in violation of any ordinance or regulation or the code.

Subp. 13. Information and placement of permit. The building permit or a copy shall be kept on the site of the work until the completion of the project. Pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Section 15.41, the permit shall specify the name and address of the applicant, and the general contractor, if one exists. All construction permits shall be posted in a conspicuous and accessible place at the premises or site of construction.

Subp. 14. Responsibility. Every person who performs work for the installation or repair of building, structure, electrical, gas, mechanical, or plumbing systems, for which the code is applicable, shall comply with the code. The person, firm, or organization securing the permit is responsible for code compliance for the work being performed.

1300.0130
CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

Subpart 1. Submittal documents. Construction documents, special inspection and structural observation programs, and other data shall be submitted in one or more sets with each application for a permit.

> **Exception:** The building official may waive the submission of construction documents and other data if the nature of the work applied for is such that reviewing of construction documents is not necessary to obtain compliance with the code.

The building official may require plans or other data be prepared according to the rules of the Board of Architecture, Engineering, Land Surveying, Landscape Architecture, Geoscience and Interior Design, Chapter 1800, and Minnesota Statutes, Sections 326.02 to 326.15, and other state laws relating to plan and specification preparation by occupational licenses. If special conditions exist, the building official may require additional construction documents to be prepared by a licensed design professional.

Subp. 2. Information on construction documents. Construction documents shall be dimensioned and drawn upon suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted when approved by the building official. Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature, and extent of the work proposed and show in detail that it will conform to the code and relevant laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations, as determined by the building official.

Subp. 3. Manufacturer's installation instructions. When required by the building official, manufacturer's installation instructions for construction equipment and components regulated by the code, shall be available on the job site at the time of inspection.

Subp. 4. Site plan. The construction documents submitted with the application for permit shall be accompanied by a site plan drawn to scale, showing the size and location of new construction and existing structures on the site, distances from lot lines, the established street grades, and the proposed finished grades, and it shall be drawn according to an accurate boundary line survey. In the case of demolition, the site plan shall show construction to be demolished and the location and size of existing structures and construction that are to remain on the site or plot. The building official may waive or modify the requirement for a site plan if the application for permit is for alteration or repair or when otherwise warranted.

Subp. 5. Examination of documents. The building official shall examine or cause to be examined the accompanying construction documents to ascertain whether the construction indicated and described complies with the requirements of the code and other pertinent laws and ordinances.

Subp. 6. Approval of construction documents.

A. If the building official issues a permit, the construction documents shall be approved in writing or by a stamp, stating "Reviewed for Code Compliance," dated, and signed by the building official or an authorized representative. One set of the construction documents that were reviewed shall be retained by the building official. The other set shall be returned to the applicant, kept at the site of the work, and open to inspection by the building official or an authorized representative.

B. Any code deficiencies identified by the building official during the plan review process for construction documents that are prepared by a design professional who is licensed or certified under Minnesota Statutes, Sections 326.02 to 326.15, must be itemized by the building official through a comprehensive plan review letter only. Any code deficiencies identified by the building official during the plan review process for construction documents that are not prepared by a licensed or certified design professional may be marked directly on the document or itemized by the building official through a comprehensive plan review letter. The issuance of a permit based on construction documents and other data does not prevent the building official from requiring the correction of errors in the construction documents and other data. All sets of required construction documents, including the site copy, municipality copy, or inspector copy, must be marked identically by the building official, with one copy retained by the building official after construction is completed. Work regulated by the code must be installed according to the reviewed construction documents. Work that does not comply with approved construction documents must not precede until the applicant submits changes that are approved by the building official.

Subp. 7. Previous approvals. The code in effect at the time of application shall be applicable.

Subp. 8. Phased approval. The building official may issue a permit for the construction of foundations or any other part of a building or structure before the construction documents for the whole building or structure have been submitted, provided that adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with pertinent requirements of the code. The holder of the permit for the foundation or other parts of a building or structure shall proceed at the holder's own risk with the building operation and without assurance that a permit for the entire structure will be granted.

Subp. 9. Design professional in responsible charge.

A. The building official may require the owner to engage and designate on the building permit application a licensed design professional who shall act as the licensed design professional in responsible charge. If the circumstances require, the owner shall designate a substitute licensed design professional in responsible charge who shall perform the duties required of the original licensed design professional in responsible charge. The building official shall be notified in writing by the owner if the licensed design professional in responsible charge is changed or is unable to continue to perform the duties.

The licensed design professional in responsible charge shall be responsible for reviewing and coordinating submittal documents prepared by others, including phased and deferred submittal items, for compatibility with the design of the building.

When structural observation is required by the code, the inspection program shall name the individual or firms who are to perform structural observation and describe the stages of construction at which structural observation is to occur.

B. For the purposes of this part, deferred submittals are defined as those portions of the design that are not submitted at the time of the application and that are to be submitted to the building official within a specified period.

Deferral of any submittal items shall have the prior approval of the building official. The licensed design professional in responsible charge shall list the deferred submittals on the construction documents for review by the building official.

Submittal documents for deferred submittal items shall be submitted to the licensed design professional in responsible charge who shall review them and forward them to the building official with a notation indicating that the deferred submittal documents have been reviewed and that they have been found to be in general conformance with the design of the building. The deferred submittal items shall not be installed until their design and submittal documents have been approved by the building official.

C. Work regulated by the code shall be installed according to the reviewed construction documents, and any changes made during construction that are not in compliance with the approved construction documents shall be resubmitted for approval as an amended set of construction documents.

1300.0140
VIOLATIONS

It is unlawful for any person, firm, or corporation to erect, construct, alter, extend, repair, move, remove, demolish, or occupy any building, structure, or equipment regulated by the code, or cause any of those actions, in conflict with or in violation of the code. The building official may serve a notice of violation or order on the person responsible for the erection, construction, alteration, extension, repair, moving, removal, demolition, or occupancy of a building or structure in violation of the code, or in violation of a permit or certificate issued under the code. The order shall direct the discontinuance of the illegal action or condition and the abatement of the violation.

1300.0150
VIOLATIONS, PENALTY

A violation of the code is a misdemeanor under Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.082.

1300.0160
FEES

Subpart 1. Schedule of permit fees. The applicant for a permit for a building; structure; or electrical, gas, mechanical, or plumbing system or alterations requiring a permit shall pay the fee set forth by a fee schedule adopted by the municipality.

When submittal documents are required to be submitted by this chapter, a plan review fee shall be required. The plan review fee shall be established by the fee schedule adopted by the municipality.

Exception: The fee schedule adopted by the municipality may exempt minor work from plan review fees.

Subp. 2. Fees commensurate with service. Fees established by the municipality must be by legal means and must be fair, reasonable, and proportionate to the actual cost of the service for which the fee is imposed.

Subp. 3. Building permit valuations. The applicant for a permit shall provide an estimated permit value at time of application. Permit valuations shall include total value of all construction work, including materials and labor, for which the permit is being issued, such as electrical, gas, mechanical, plumbing equipment, and permanent systems. Building permit valuation shall be set by the building official.

Exceptions: Building permit valuations for the following structures shall be based on the valuation of on-site work only:

A. Manufactured homes containing a Housing and Urban Development (HUD) certification label;

B. Prefabricated buildings with a Department of Labor and Industry prefabrication label; and

C. Industrialized/modular buildings with an Industrialized Building Commission (IBC) label.

Subp. 4. Building permit fees. Building permit fees shall be based on valuation.

Exceptions:

A. One- and two-family dwelling maintenance permits for roofing, siding, windows, doors, or other minor projects may be charged a fixed fee; and

B. Permits for plumbing, mechanical, electrical, or other building service equipment systems may be based on valuation or charged a fixed fee.

Subp. 5. Plan review fees for similar plans. When submittal documents for similar plans are approved under subpart 6, plan review fees shall not exceed 25 percent of the normal building permit fee established and charged by the jurisdiction for the same structure.

Subp. 6. Plan review of similar plans.

A. Any number of similar buildings may be built from a master plan if:

(1) Plan review fees have been paid for the master plan;

(2) A code change has not occurred that impacts the design of a master plan;

(3) The similar building has the same physical dimensions and structural design as the master plan;

Exception: The following modifications to the master plan are not considered to be significant modifications, according to Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.106, subdivision 1, and are permitted for dwelling units and their accessory structures built to the *International Residential Code*, and residential occupancies built to the *International Building Code* that are three stories or less in height and their accessory structures:

(a) foundation configurations of walkout, lookout, and full basements;

(b) alternate foundation materials approved by the building official;

(c) roof design changed by a revised truss plan approved by the building official; and

(d) other modifications approved by the building official;

(4) occupancy groups other than those identified in the exceptions listed in part 1300.0160, subpart 6, item A, subitem (3), must be the same type of construction and occupancy classification and must have the same exit system;

Exception: Minor changes to the exit access; and

(5) the similar plan is based on a master plan for which the municipality has issued a permit within the last 12 months.

B. Plan review fees for similar building plans must be based on the costs commensurate with the direct and indirect cost of the service, but must not exceed 25 percent of the normal building permit fee established and charged by the municipality for the same structure.

C. The plan review fee charged for similar building plans applies to all buildings regulated by the code regardless of occupancy classification including industrialized/modular buildings constructed under a program specified in Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.194.

D. The applicant must submit a new plan set and other information as required by the building official for each building reviewed as a similar building.

Subp. 7. Payment of fees. A permit shall not be issued until the fees prescribed by the municipality have been paid.

Subp. 8. Work commencing before permit issuance. If work for which a permit is required by the code has been commenced without first obtaining a permit, a special investigation shall be made before a permit may be issued for the work. An investigation fee established by the municipality shall be collected whether or not a permit is issued and is in addition to the required permit fees, but it may not exceed the permit fee.

Subp. 9. Fee refunds. The municipality shall establish a permit and plan review fee refund policy.

Subp. 10. State surcharge fees. All municipal permits issued for work under the code are subject to a surcharge fee. The fees are established by Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.148. Reports and remittances by municipalities must be filed with the commissioner.

Surcharge fees imposed by the state are in addition to municipal permit fees. Surcharge report forms and information may be obtained by writing the commissioner.

1300.0170
STOP WORK ORDER

If the building official finds any work regulated by the code being performed in a manner contrary to the provisions of the code or in a dangerous or unsafe manner, the building official is authorized to issue a stop work order or a notice or order pursuant to part 1300.0110, subpart 4.

The stop work order shall be in writing and issued to the owner of the property involved, to the owner's agent, or to the person doing the work. Upon issuance of a stop work order, the cited work shall immediately cease. A person who continues work after having been served with a stop work order, except for work that the person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe condition, is subject to penalties as prescribed by law. The stop work order shall state the reason for the order and the conditions under which the cited work will be permitted to resume.

1300.0180
UNSAFE BUILDINGS OR STRUCTURES

A building or structure regulated by the code is unsafe, for purposes of this part, if it is structurally unsafe, not provided with adequate egress, a fire hazard, or otherwise dangerous to human life.

Building service equipment that is regulated by the code is unsafe, for purposes of this part, if it is a fire, electrical, or health hazard; an unsanitary condition; or otherwise dangerous to human life. Use of a building, structure, or building service equipment constituting a hazard to safety, health, or public welfare by reason of inadequate maintenance, dilapidation, obsolescence, fire hazard, disaster, damage, or abandonment is, for the purposes of this part, an unsafe use. Parapet walls, cornices, spires, towers, tanks, statuary, and other appendages or structural members that are supported by, attached to, or a part of a building and that are in deteriorated condition or otherwise unable to sustain the design loads that are specified in the code are unsafe building appendages.

The building official shall order any building or portion of a building to be vacated if continued use is dangerous to life, health, or safety of the occupants. The building official shall have the authority to order, disconnection of utility services to the building, structure, or system, regulated by the code, in case of an emergency to eliminate a hazard to life or property. The order shall be in writing and state the reasons for the action.

All unsafe buildings, structures, or appendages are public nuisances and must be abated by repair, rehabilitation, demolition, or removal according to Minnesota Statutes, Sections 463.15 to 463.26.

1300.0190
TEMPORARY STRUCTURES AND USES

Subpart 1. General. The building official may issue a permit for temporary structures and temporary uses.

Subp. 2. Conformance. Temporary structures and uses shall conform to the structural strength, fire safety, means of egress, accessibility, light, ventilation, and sanitary requirements of the code as necessary to ensure the public health, safety, and general welfare.

Subp. 3. Termination of approval. The building official may terminate the permit for a temporary structure or use and order the temporary structure or use to be discontinued if the conditions required in this part have not been complied with.

1300.0210
INSPECTIONS

Subpart 1. General. Construction or work for which a permit is required is subject to inspection by the building official and the construction or work shall remain accessible and exposed for inspection purposes until approved. Approval as a result of an inspection is not approval of a violation of the code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction. Inspections presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of the code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction are not valid. It shall be the duty of the permit applicant to cause the work to remain accessible and exposed for inspection purposes. Neither the building official nor the jurisdiction is liable for expense entailed in the removal or replacement of any material required to allow inspection.

Subp. 2. Preliminary inspection. Before issuing a permit, the building official may examine, or cause to be examined, buildings, structures, and sites for which an application has been filed.

Subp. 3. Inspection record card. The building official shall identify which inspections are required for the work requiring a permit. Work requiring a permit shall not be commenced until the permit holder or an agent of the permit holder has posted or otherwise made available an inspection record card that allows the building official to conveniently make all required entries regarding inspection of the work. This card shall be maintained and made available by the permit holder until final approval has been granted by the building official.

Subp. 4. Inspection requests. The building official shall provide the applicant with policies, procedures, and a timeline for requesting inspections. The person doing the work authorized by a permit shall notify the building official that the work is ready for inspection. The person requesting an inspection required by the code shall provide access to and means for inspection of the work.

Subp. 5. Approval required. Work shall not be done beyond the point indicated in each successive inspection without first obtaining the approval of the building official. The building official, upon notification, shall make the requested inspections and shall either indicate the portion of the construction that is satisfactory as completed or notify the permit holder or an agent of the permit holder of any failures to comply with the code. Any portion that does not comply shall be corrected and the portion shall not be covered or concealed until authorized by the building official.

Subp. 6. Required inspections. The building official, upon notification, shall make the inspections in this part. In addition to the inspections identified in this subpart, see applicable rule chapters in part 1300.0050 for specific inspection and testing requirements.

A. Footing inspections shall be made after excavations for footings are complete and any required reinforcing steel is in place. Materials for the foundation shall be on the job, except that concrete need not be on the job if the concrete is ready mixed according to approved nationally recognized standards.

B. Foundations:

(1) Foundation inspections for poured walls shall be made after all forms are in place with any required reinforcing steel and bracing in place, and prior to pouring concrete.

(2) All foundation walls shall be inspected prior to backfill for specific code requirements.

(3) The foundation inspection shall include excavations for thickened slabs intended for the support of bearing walls, partitions, structural supports, or equipment.

C. Concrete slab and under-floor inspections shall be made after in-slab or under-floor reinforcing steel and building service equipment, conduit, piping accessories, and other ancillary equipment items are in place, but before any concrete is placed or floor sheathing installed, including the subfloor.

D. Rough-in inspections of plumbing, mechanical, gas, sprinklers, alarms, and electrical systems shall be made before covering or concealment, before fixtures or appliances are set or installed, and before framing inspection.

E. Inspection of framing and masonry construction shall be made after the roof, masonry, framing, firestopping, draftstopping, and bracing are in place and after the plumbing, mechanical, and electrical rough inspections are approved.

F. Energy efficiency inspections shall be made to determine compliance with *Minnesota Energy Code* requirements.

G. Lath and gypsum board inspections shall be made after lathing and gypsum board, interior and exterior, are in place, but before any plastering is applied or before gypsum board joints and fasteners are taped and finished.

Exception: Gypsum board that is not part of a fire-resistive assembly or a shear assembly.

H. Protection of joints and penetrations in fire-resistance-rated or smoke-resistance-rated assemblies shall not be concealed from view until inspected and approved.

I. Installation of manufactured homes (mobile homes) shall be made after the installation of the support systems and all utility service connections are in place, but before any covering material or skirting is in place. Evaluation of an approved anchoring system is part of the installation inspection.

J. Fireplaces must be inspected for compliance with applicable requirements of the code and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

K. A final inspection shall be made for all work for which a permit is issued.

L. Special inspections shall be as required by the code.

M. In addition to the inspections in items A to K, the building official is authorized to make or require other inspections of any construction work to ascertain compliance with the code and other laws that are enforced by the Department of Building Safety.

Subp. 7. Inspection agencies. The building official is authorized to accept inspection reports by approved agencies.

1300.0215
PLUMBING

Subpart 1. Inspections, testing, and permits.

A. For purposes of this part, "administrative authority" is defined in part 4715.0010, subpart 2.

B. Except as provided in item C, new plumbing systems or parts of existing plumbing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired shall be tested and approved by the administrative authority before the plumbing system is put into use. The administrative authority shall perform the final inspection and witness the test. The administrative authority shall approve the plumbing system if the system complies with the requirements of this code, any permit requirements, and the requirements of any plan approved pursuant to subpart 6. Plumbing system tests shall comply with part 4715.2820.

C. Unless the plumbing work poses an unsanitary or hazardous condition, the administrative authority is authorized to waive the permit, inspection, and testing requirements for the following plumbing work performed in one- and two-family dwellings:

(1) The reconnection of an existing water supply line to a replacement appliance that does not involve the replacement or alteration of the existing water supply line;

(2) Replacement of the internal working components of existing water closets, faucets, or valves;

(3) Replacement of sink faucets when the work does not include alterations to the existing plumbing piping system; or

(4) Replacement or resetting of water closets when the work does not include alterations to the existing plumbing piping systems.

D. The administrative authority is permitted to waive testing requirements for plumbing work that does not include any addition to or replacement, alteration, or relocation of any water supply, drainage, or vent piping, if it does not create a hazardous or unsanitary condition.

Subp. 2. (Repealed).

Subp. 3. Covering of work. No building drainage or plumbing system or part thereof shall be covered until it has been inspected, tested, and approved as herein prescribed.

If any building drainage or plumbing system or part thereof is covered before being regularly inspected, tested, and approved, as herein prescribed, it shall be uncovered upon the direction of the proper administrative authority.

Subp. 4. Building sewer. The building sewer shall be inspected by the proper administrative authority to ensure compliance with the provisions of the code.

Subp. 5. Certificate of approval. Upon the satisfactory completion and final inspection of the plumbing system, a certificate of approval shall be issued by the proper administrative authority.

Subp. 6. Plans and specifications. Prior to the installation by any person, corporation, or public agency, of a system of plumbing that serves the public or that serves any considerable number of persons, or any plumbing system that shall affect the public health in any manner, complete plans and specifications, together with any additional information that the commissioner of labor and industry may require, shall be submitted and approved by the commissioner. The appraisal of the commissioner shall reflect the degree to which these plans and specifications affect the public health and conform to the provisions of the *Minnesota Plumbing Code*. No construction shall proceed except in accordance with approved plans and specifications. Any material alteration or extension of the existing system shall be subject to these same requirements. This rule shall not apply to cities of the first class, except those plumbing installations in state-licensed health care facilities or in buildings in these cities owned by the state government.

Except as approved in Chapter 4715, there shall be no physical connection between water supply systems that are safe for domestic use and those that are unsafe for domestic use. There shall be no apparatus through which unsafe water may be discharged or drawn into a safe water supply system.

1300.0220
CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY

Subpart 1. Use and occupancy. No building or structure shall be used or occupied, and no change in the existing occupancy classification of a building, structure, or portion of a building or structure shall be made until the building official has issued a certificate of occupancy for the building or structure under this part. Issuance of a certificate of occupancy is not approval of a violation of the code or other ordinances of the municipality. Certificates presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the code or other ordinances of the municipality are not valid.

Exception: A municipality has the option of requiring certificates of occupancy for:

A. "U" occupancies constructed under the *International Building Code*;

B. Accessory structures constructed under the *International Residential Code*; or

C. Used manufactured homes moved into or within a jurisdiction.

Subp. 2. Existing structures. The legal occupancy of any structure existing on the date of adoption of the code shall be permitted to continue without change.

Subp. 3. Change in use. Changes in the character or use of an existing structure must comply with Chapter 1305 or 1311.

Subp. 4. Moved buildings. Buildings or structures moved into or within a jurisdiction shall comply with the provisions of the code for new buildings or structures.

Exception:

A. Buildings designed to comply with Chapter 1311; or

B. A residential building relocated within or into a municipality need not comply with the *Minnesota Energy Code* or Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.439.

Subp. 5. Certificate issued. After the building official inspects a building or structure and finds no violations of the code or other laws that are enforced by the Department of Building Safety, the building official shall issue a certificate of occupancy containing the following:

A. The building permit number;

B. The address of the structure;

C. The name and address of the owner;

D. A statement that the described portion of the structure has been inspected for compliance with the requirements of the code for the occupancy and division of occupancy and the use for which the proposed occupancy is classified;

E. The name of the building official;

F. The edition of the code under which the permit was issued;

G. The use and occupancy classification;

H. The type of construction;

I. If an automatic sprinkler system is provided; and

J. Any special stipulations and conditions of the building permit.

Subp. 6. Temporary occupancy. The building official is authorized to issue a temporary certificate of occupancy before the completion of the entire work covered by the permit, provided that the portion or portions shall be occupied safely. The building official shall set a time period during which the temporary certificate of occupancy is valid.

Subp. 7. Revocation. The building official may issue a written suspension or revocation of a certificate of occupancy issued under the code if the certificate is issued in error or on the basis of incorrect information supplied, or if the building or use of the building, structure, or portion of the building or structure is in violation of any ordinance or regulation or a provision of the code.

1300.0225 MAINTENANCE

All buildings and structures, both existing and new, and all parts of the buildings or structures, shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition. All devices or safeguards required by this code shall be maintained in conformance with the code editions under which the devices or safeguards are installed. The owner or the owner's designated agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of buildings and structures. A building official is authorized to require reinspection of a building or structure if the building official is unable to determine whether or not the building or structure complies with this part.

1300.0230 BOARD OF APPEALS

Subpart 1. Local board of appeals. In order to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions, or determinations made by the building official relative to the application and interpretation of this code, there shall be and is hereby created a board of appeals. The building official shall be an ex officio member of said board but shall have no vote on any matter before the board. The board of appeals shall be designated by the governing body. Appeals hearings must occur within ten working days from the date the municipality receives a properly completed application for appeal. If an appeals hearing is not held within this time, the applicant may appeal directly to the State Building Code Appeals Board.

The board shall adopt rules of procedures for conducting its business and shall render all decisions and findings in writing to the appellant with a duplicate copy to the building official and to the state building official within five working days of the decision. For jurisdictions without a board of appeals, the appellant may appeal to an appeals board assembled by the state of Minnesota, Department of Labor and Industry's Construction Codes and Licensing Division.

Subp. 2. Qualifications. The board of appeals shall consist of members who are qualified by experience and training to pass on matters pertaining to building construction and are not employees of the affected jurisdiction.

Subp. 3. Limitations on authority. An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the true intent of this code or the rules legally adopted thereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply, or an equally good or better form of construction is proposed. The board shall have no authority to waive requirements of this code.

Subp. 4. (Repealed).

Subp. 5. Final interpretive authority. In accordance with Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.127, subdivision 5, the commissioner has final interpretive authority to all codes adopted as part of the *State Building Code*, except for the *State Plumbing Code*, the *State Electrical Code*, and the *State High Pressure Piping Code*.

1300.0240
DISCLAIMER CLAUSE

The inclusion of specific requirements relative to the manner of installation of any building or portion of any building or building equipment in one or more parts of the code does not limit this procedure to any particular type of installer or provide a basis upon which determination of the right to perform a procedure shall be made. The authority for this determination is in the various licensing statutes or ordinances for each type of installer who performs the work.

1300.0250
SEVERABILITY

The invalidity of any provision of the *Minnesota State Building Code* does not affect any other provisions of the code that can be given effect without the invalid provision and, to this end, the provisions of the code are declared to be severable.

2015 MINNESOTA MECHANICAL CODE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

2015 MINNESOTA MECHANICAL CODE

1346.0050 TITLE; INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE

Parts 1346.0050 to 1346.1500 are known and may be cited as the "*Minnesota Mechanical Code*."

Chapters 2 to 15 of the 2012 edition of the *International Mechanical Code* (IMC), promulgated by the International Code Council, Inc., Washington, DC, are incorporated by reference as part of the *Minnesota Mechanical Code* except as qualified by the applicable provisions in Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1300, and as amended in this chapter. Portions of this chapter reproduce excerpts from the 2012 IMC, International Code Council, Inc., Washington, DC, copyright 2012, reproduced with permission, all rights reserved.

The IMC is not subject to frequent change and a copy of the IMC with amendments for use in Minnesota is available in the office of the commissioner of labor and industry.

Chapters 1 to 10 and 12 to 15 of the 2014 edition of NFPA 96 Standard for *Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations*, promulgated by the National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471, are incorporated by reference as part of the *Minnesota Mechanical Code* as amended in this chapter. As used in this code, "NFPA 96" means the NFPA 96 Standard for *Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations* chapters that are incorporated into this code. Portions of this chapter reproduce text and tables from the NFPA 96. The NFPA 96 is copyrighted, 2014, by the National Fire Protection Association. All rights reserved.

The NFPA 96 is not subject to frequent change and a copy of the NFPA 96, with amendments for use in Minnesota, is available in the office of the commissioner of labor and industry.

1346.0060 REFERENCES TO OTHER INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC) CODES

Subpart 1. General. References to other codes and standards promulgated by the International Code Council in the IMC and IFGC are modified in subparts 2 to 11.

Subp. 2. Building code. References to the *International Building Code* mean the *Minnesota Building Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1305, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.106, subdivision 1.

Subp. 3. Residential code. References to the *International Residential Code* mean the *Minnesota Residential Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1309, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.106, subdivision 1.

Subp. 4. Electrical code. References to the *International Code Council Electrical Code* mean the *Minnesota Electrical Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1315, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.35.

Subp. 5. Fuel gas code. References to the *International Fuel Gas Code* mean the *Minnesota Fuel Gas Code*, Minnesota Rules, parts 1346.5050 to 1346.6014, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.106, subdivision 1.

Subp. 6. (Repealed)

Subp. 7. Plumbing code. References to the *International Plumbing Code* mean the *Minnesota Plumbing Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 4715, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.106, subdivisions 1 and 2.

Subp. 8. Private sewage disposal code. References to the *International Private Sewage Disposal Code* mean the Minnesota Pollution Control Agency's minimum standards and criteria for individual sewage treatment systems Minnesota Rules, Chapter 7080, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Chapters 103F, 103G, 115, and 116.

Subp. 9. Energy conservation code. References to the *International Energy Conservation Code* mean the *Minnesota Residential Energy Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1322, and the *Minnesota Commercial Energy Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1323, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.115.

Subp. 10. Property maintenance code. References to the *International Property Maintenance Code* are deleted.

Subp. 11. Fire code. References to the *International Fire Code* mean the *Minnesota State Fire Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 7511, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Chapter 299F.

1346.0101 SCOPE

This code shall regulate the design, installation, maintenance, alteration, and inspection of mechanical systems that are permanently installed and utilized to provide control of environmental conditions and related processes within buildings. Fuel gas piping systems, fuel gas utilization equipment and appliances, and related accessories shall be regulated by parts 1346.5050 through 1346.6000.

This code shall also regulate those mechanical systems, system components, equipment, and appliances specifically addressed in the IMC as amended in this chapter. This code shall also regulate process piping installed within, or in conjunction with, buildings or structures. For the purposes of this section, the term "process piping" includes piping or tubing which conveys gas, liquid, or fluidized solids and which is used directly in research, laboratory, or production processes. Process piping and tubing shall be installed in accordance with ASME B31.3, *Process Piping Code*, or ASME B31.9, *Building Services Piping*, as applicable. Refer to Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1300, for additional administrative provisions of the *Minnesota State Building Code*. Refer to Minnesota Statutes, Section 13.7911, for data classification of biotechnology process piping systems.

1346.0102 EXISTING INSTALLATIONS

Except as otherwise provided for in this chapter, a provision in this code shall not require the removal, alteration, or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued utilization and maintenance of, a mechanical system lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of this code.

1346.0103 MAINTENANCE

Mechanical systems, both existing and new, and parts of those systems, shall be maintained in proper operating condition in accordance with the original design and in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices or safeguards which are required by this code shall be maintained in compliance with the code edition under which they were installed. The owner or the owner's designated agent shall be responsible for maintenance of mechanical systems. To determine compliance with this provision, the building official shall have the authority to require a mechanical system to be reinspected.

1346.0104 ADDITIONS, ALTERATIONS, RENOVATIONS, OR REPAIRS

Additions, alterations, renovations, or repairs to a mechanical system shall conform to this code for a new mechanical system without requiring the remainder of the existing mechanical system to comply with all of the requirements of this code. Additions, alterations, renovations, or repairs shall not cause an existing mechanical system to become unsafe, hazardous, or overloaded.

1346.0105 WORK EXEMPT FROM PERMIT

Work performed under this code shall be exempted from a permit in accordance with Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1300.

1346.0106 REQUIRED INSPECTIONS

The building official, upon notification from the permit holder or the permit holder's agent, shall make the following inspections and other such inspections as necessary, and shall either release that portion of the construction or shall notify the permit holder or the permit holder's agent of violations that must be corrected. The holder of the permit shall be responsible for the scheduling of these inspections.

1. Underground inspection shall be made after trenches or ditches are excavated and bedded, piping installed, and before backfill is put in place. When excavated soil contains rocks, broken concrete, frozen chunks, and other rubble that would damage or break the piping or cause corrosive action, clean backfill shall be used.
2. Rough-in inspection shall be made after the roof, framing, fireblocking, and bracing are in place and all ducting and other components to be concealed are complete, and prior to the installation of wall or ceiling membranes.
3. Final inspection shall be made upon completion of the mechanical system.

Exception: Ground-source heat pump loop systems tested in accordance with this code shall be permitted to be backfilled prior to inspection.

1346.0107 (REPEALED)

1346.0108 AUTHORITY TO CONDEMN MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

Whenever the building official determines that any mechanical system or portion of a system regulated by this code has become hazardous to life, health, or property, or has become unsanitary, the building official shall issue an order in writing to the building's owner or owner's agent. This order shall require that the system either be removed or restored to a safe condition. A time limit for compliance with the building official's order shall be specified in the written order. A person shall not use or maintain a defective mechanical system after receiving a notice under this section.

When a mechanical system is to be disconnected, written notice shall be given to the building's owner or owner's agent in accordance with Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1300. In cases of immediate danger to life or property, the disconnection shall be made immediately without notice.

1346.0109 AUTHORITY TO ORDER DISCONNECTION OF ENERGY SOURCES

The building official shall have the authority to order disconnection of energy sources supplied to a building, structure, or mechanical system regulated by this code, when it is determined that the mechanical system or any portion of the system has become hazardous or unsafe. Written notice of an order to disconnect service and the causes of the order shall be given within 24 hours to the owner and occupant of the building, structure, or premises, provided, however, that in cases of immediate danger to life or property, the disconnection shall be made immediately without notice. Where energy sources are provided by a public utility, the building official shall immediately notify the serving utility in writing of the issuance of an order to disconnect.

1346.0110 CONNECTION AFTER ORDER TO DISCONNECT

A person shall not make energy source connections to mechanical systems regulated by this code which have been:

1. disconnected; or
2. ordered to be disconnected by the building official; or
3. the use of which has been ordered to be discontinued by the building official until the building official authorizes the reconnection and use of such mechanical systems.

When a mechanical system is maintained in violation of this code, and in violation of a notice issued pursuant to this part, the building official shall institute appropriate action to prevent, restrain, correct, or abate the violation.

CHAPTER 1

SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

Deleted

(See 2015 *Minnesota Building Code Administration* included herein.)

CHAPTER 2

DEFINITIONS

SECTION 201 GENERAL

201.1 Scope. Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this code, have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

201.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.

201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the *International Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Fuel Gas Code* or the *International Plumbing Code*, such terms shall have meanings ascribed to them as in those codes.

201.4 Terms not defined. Where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this section, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

SECTION 202 GENERAL DEFINITIONS

ABRASIVE MATERIALS. Moderately abrasive particulate in high concentrations, and highly abrasive particulate in moderate and high concentrations, such as alumina, bauxite, iron silicate, sand and slag.

ABSORPTION SYSTEM. A refrigerating system in which refrigerant is pressurized by pumping a chemical solution of refrigerant in absorbent, and then separated by the addition of heat in a generator, condensed (to reject heat), expanded, evaporated (to provide refrigeration), and reabsorbed in an absorber to repeat the cycle; the system may be single or multiple effect, the latter using multiple stages or internally cascaded use of heat to improve efficiency.

ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, *appliance* or *equipment* to be reached by ready access or by a means that first requires the removal or movement of a panel, door or similar obstruction [see also "Ready access (to)"].

AIR. All air supplied to mechanical *equipment* and appliances for *combustion*, ventilation, cooling, etc. Standard air is air at standard temperature and pressure, namely, 70°F (21°C) and 29.92 inches of mercury (101.3 kPa).

AIR CONDITIONING. The *treatment* of air so as to control simultaneously the temperature, humidity, cleanness and distribution of the air to meet the requirements of a conditioned space.

AIR-CONDITIONING SYSTEM. A system that consists of heat exchangers, blowers, filters, supply, exhaust and return ducts, and shall include any apparatus installed in connection therewith.

AIR DISPERSION SYSTEM. Any diffuser system designed to both convey air within a room, space or area and diffuse air into that space while operating under positive pressure. Systems are commonly constructed of, but not limited to, fabric or plastic film.

AIR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Any system of ducts, plenums and air-handling *equipment* that circulates air within a space or spaces and includes systems made up of one or more air-handling units.

AIR, EXHAUST. Air being removed from any space, *appliance* or piece of *equipment* and conveyed directly to the atmosphere by means of openings or ducts.

AIR-HANDLING UNIT. A blower or fan used for the purpose of distributing supply air to a room, space or area.

AIR, MAKEUP. Air that is provided to replace air being exhausted.

[A] ALTERATION. A change in a mechanical system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation.

APPLIANCE. A device or apparatus that is manufactured and designed to utilize energy and for which this code provides specific requirements.

APPLIANCE, EXISTING. Any *appliance* regulated by this code which was legally installed prior to the effective date of this code, or for which a permit to install has been issued.

APPLIANCE TYPE.

High-heat appliance. Any *appliance* in which the products of *combustion* at the point of entrance to the flue under normal operating conditions have a temperature greater than 2,000°F (1093°C).

Low-heat appliance (residential appliance). Any *appliance* in which the products of *combustion* at the point of entrance to the flue under normal operating conditions have a temperature of 1,000°F (538°C) or less.

Medium-heat appliance. Any *appliance* in which the products of *combustion* at the point of entrance to the flue under normal operating conditions have a temperature of more than 1,000°F (538°C), but not greater than 2,000°F (1093°C).

APPLIANCE, VENTED. An *appliance* designed and installed in such a manner that all of the products of *combustion* are conveyed directly from the *appliance* to the outdoor atmosphere through an *approved chimney* or vent system.

APPROVED. "Approved" means approval by the building official, pursuant to the *Minnesota State Building Code*, by reason of: inspection, investigation, or testing; accepted principles; computer simulations; research reports; or testing performed by either a licensed engineer or by a locally or nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[A] APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized agency that is *approved* by the code official and regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services.

AUTOMATIC BOILER. Any class of boiler that is equipped with the controls and limit devices specified in Chapter 10.

BATHROOM. A room containing a bathtub, shower, spa or similar bathing fixture.

BOILER. A closed heating *appliance* intended to supply hot water or steam for space heating, processing or power purposes. Low-pressure boilers operate at pressures less than or equal to 15 pounds per square inch (psi) (103 kPa) for steam and 160 psi (1103 kPa) for water. High-pressure boilers operate at pressures exceeding those pressures.

BOILER ROOM. A room primarily utilized for the installation of a boiler.

BRAZED JOINT. A gas-tight joint obtained by the joining of metal parts with metallic mixtures or alloys which melt at a temperature above 1,000°F (538°C), but lower than the melting temperature of the parts to be joined.

BRAZING. A metal joining process wherein coalescence is produced by the use of a nonferrous filler metal having a melting point above 1,000°F (538°C), but lower than that of the base metal being joined. The filler material is distributed between the closely fitted surfaces of the joint by capillary attraction.

BREATHING ZONE. The region within an occupied space between planes 3 and 72 inches (76 and 1829 mm) above the floor and more than 2 feet (610 mm) from the walls of the space or from fixed air-conditioning *equipment*.

BTU. Abbreviation for British thermal unit, which is the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 pound (454 g) of water 1°F (0.56°C) (1 Btu = 1055 J).

[A] BUILDING. Any structure occupied or intended for supporting or sheltering any *occupancy*.

[B] CEILING RADIATION DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in a ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly to limit automatically the radiative heat transfer through an air inlet/outlet opening.

CHIMNEY. A primarily vertical structure containing one or more flues, for the purpose of carrying gaseous products of *combustion* and air from a fuel-burning *appliance* to the outdoor atmosphere.

Factory-built chimney. A *listed* and *labeled chimney* composed of factory-made components, assembled in the field in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the conditions of the listing.

Masonry chimney. A field-constructed *chimney* composed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones or concrete.

Metal chimney. A field-constructed *chimney* of metal.

CHIMNEY CONNECTOR. A pipe that connects a fuel-burning *appliance* to a *chimney*.

CLEARANCE. The minimum distance through air measured between the heat-producing surface of the mechanical *appliance*, device or *equipment* and the surface of the combustible material or assembly.

CLOSED COMBUSTION SOLID-FUEL-BURNING APPLIANCE. A heat producing *appliance* that employs a *combustion* chamber having no openings other than the flue collar, fuel charging door, and adjustable openings provided to control the amount of *combustion air* that enters the *combustion* chamber and includes doors with gaskets or flanges that permit tight closure and glass or ceramic panels which must be tightly sealed or gasketed at their frames.

CLOTHES DRYER. An *appliance* used to dry wet laundry by means of heat.

CODE. For purposes of parts 1346.0050 to 1346.1500, "the code" or "this code" means the *Minnesota Mechanical Code*.

[A] CODE OFFICIAL. The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

[B] COMBINATION FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to close automatically upon the detection of heat and resist the passage of flame and smoke. The device is installed to operate automatically, be controlled by a smoke detection system, and where required, is capable of being positioned from a fire command center.

COMBUSTIBLE ASSEMBLY. Wall, floor, ceiling or other assembly constructed of one or more component materials that are not defined as noncombustible.

[F] COMBUSTIBLE LIQUID. A liquid having a closed cup flash point at or above 100°F (38°C). Combustible liquids shall be subdivided as follows:

Class II. Liquids having a closed cup flash point at or above 100°F (38°C) and below 140°F (60°C).

Class IIIA. Liquids having a closed cup flash point at or above 140°F (60°C) and below 200°F (93°C).

Class IIIB. Liquids having a closed cup flash point at or above 200°F (93°C).

The category of combustible liquids does not include compressed gases or cryogenic fluids.

COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL. Any material not defined as noncombustible.

COMBUSTION. In the context of this code, refers to the rapid oxidation of fuel accompanied by the production of heat or heat and light.

COMBUSTION AIR. Air necessary for complete *combustion* of a fuel, including *theoretical air* and excess air.

COMBUSTION CHAMBER. The portion of an *appliance* within which *combustion* occurs.

COMBUSTION PRODUCTS. Constituents resulting from the *combustion* of a fuel with the oxygen of the air, including the inert gases, but excluding excess air.

COMMERCIAL COOKING APPLIANCES. Appliances used in a commercial food service establishment for heating or cooking food and which produce grease vapors, steam, fumes, smoke or odors that are required to be removed through a local exhaust ventilation system. Such appliances include deep fat fryers; upright broilers; griddles; broilers; steam-jacketed kettles; hot-top ranges; under-fired broilers (charbroilers); ovens; barbecues; rotisseries; and similar appliances. For the purpose of this definition, a food service establishment shall include any building or a portion thereof used for the preparation and serving of food.

COMMERCIAL COOKING RECIRCULATING SYSTEM. Self-contained system consisting of the exhaust hood, the cooking *equipment*, the filters and the fire suppression system. The system is designed to capture cooking vapors and residues generated from commercial cooking *equipment*. The system removes contaminants from the *exhaust air* and recirculates the air to the space from which it was withdrawn.

COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOODS.

Backshelf hood. A backshelf hood is also referred to as a low-proximity hood, or as a sidewall hood where wall mounted. Its front lower lip is low over the *appliance*(s) and is "set back" from the front of the appliance(s). It is always closed to the rear of the appliances by a panel where free-standing, or by a panel or wall where wall mounted, and its height above the cooking surface varies. (This style of hood can be constructed with partial end panels to increase its effectiveness in capturing the effluent generated by the cooking operation).

Double island canopy hood. A double island canopy hood is placed over back-to-back appliances or *appliance* lines. It is open on all sides and overhangs both fronts and the sides of the *appliance*(s). It could have a wall panel between the backs of the appliances. (The fact that *exhaust air* is drawn from both sides of the double canopy to meet in the center causes each side of this hood to emulate a wall canopy hood, and thus it functions much the same with or without an actual wall panel between the backs of the appliances).

Eyebrow hood. An eyebrow hood is mounted directly to the face of an *appliance*, such as an oven and dishwasher, above the opening(s) or door(s) from which effluent is emitted, extending past the sides and overhanging the front of the opening to capture the effluent.

Pass-over hood. A pass-over hood is a free-standing form of a backshelf hood constructed low enough to pass food over the top.

Single island canopy hood. A single island canopy hood is placed over a single *appliance* or *appliance* line. It is open on all sides and overhangs the front, rear and sides of the *appliance*(s). A single island canopy is more susceptible to cross drafts and requires a greater *exhaust air* flow than an equivalent sized wall-mounted canopy to capture and contain effluent generated by the cooking operation(s).

Wall canopy hood. A wall canopy exhaust hood is mounted against a wall above a single *appliance* or line of *appliance*(s), or it could be free-standing with a back panel from the rear of the appliances to the hood. It overhangs the front and sides of the *appliance*(s) on all open sides.

The wall acts as a back panel, forcing the *makeup air* to be drawn across the front of the cooking *equipment*, thus increasing the effectiveness of the hood to capture and contain effluent generated by the cooking operation(s).

COMPENSATING HOODS. *Compensating hoods* are those having integral (built-in) *makeup air* supply. The *makeup air* supply for such hoods is generally supplied from: short-circuit flow from inside the hood, air curtain flow from the bottom of the front face, and front face discharge from the outside front wall of the hood. The compensating makeup airflow can also be supplied from the rear or side of the hood, or the rear, front or sides of the cooking *equipment*. The makeup airflow can be one or a combination of methods.

COMPRESSOR. A specific machine, with or without accessories, for compressing a gas.

COMPRESSOR, POSITIVE DISPLACEMENT. A compressor in which increase in pressure is attained by changing the internal volume of the compression chamber.

COMPRESSOR UNIT. A compressor with its prime mover and accessories.

CONCEALED LOCATION. A location that cannot be accessed without damaging permanent parts of the building structure or finish surface. Spaces above, below or behind readily removable panels or doors shall not be considered as concealed.

CONDENSATE. The liquid that condenses from a gas (including flue gas) caused by a reduction in temperature.

CONDENSER. A heat exchanger designed to liquefy refrigerant vapor by removal of heat.

CONDENSING UNIT. A specific refrigerating machine combination for a given refrigerant, consisting of one or more power-driven compressors, condensers, liquid receivers (when required) and the regularly furnished accessories.

CONDITIONED SPACE. An area, room or space being heated or cooled by any *equipment* or *appliance*.

[A] CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS. All of the written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of the project necessary for obtaining a building permit. The construction drawings shall be drawn to an appropriate scale.

CONTROL. A manual or automatic device designed to regulate the gas, air, water or electrical supply to, or operation of, a mechanical system.

CONVERSION BURNER. A burner designed to supply gaseous fuel to an *appliance* originally designed to utilize another fuel.

COOKING APPLIANCE. See "*Commercial cooking appliances*."

DAMPER. A manually or automatically controlled device to regulate draft or the rate of flow of air or *combustion* gases.

Volume damper. A device that, when installed, will restrict, retard or direct the flow of air in a duct, or the products of *combustion* in a heat-producing *appliance*, its vent connector, vent or *chimney* therefrom.

DECORATIVE SOLID-FUEL-BURNING APPLIANCE. A natural draft *appliance*, usually a fireplace, intended primarily for viewing of the fire and which may or may not incorporate doors that substantially close off the firebox opening when the *appliance* is in operation.

[B] DESIGN FLOOD ELEVATION. The elevation of the "design flood," including wave height, relative to the datum specified on the community's legally designated flood hazard area map.

DESIGN WORKING PRESSURE. The maximum allowable working pressure for which a specific part of a system is designed.

DIRECT REFRIGERATION SYSTEM. A system in which the evaporator or condenser of the refrigerating system is in direct contact with the air or other substances to be cooled or heated.

DIRECT-VENT APPLIANCES. Appliances that are constructed and installed so that all air for *combustion* is derived from the outdoor atmosphere and all flue gases are discharged to the outdoor atmosphere.

DRAFT. The pressure difference existing between the *appliance* or any component part and the atmosphere, that causes a continuous flow of air and products of *combustion* through the gas passages of the *appliance* to the atmosphere.

Induced draft. The pressure difference created by the action of a fan, blower or ejector, that is located between the *appliance* and the *chimney* or vent termination.

Natural draft. The pressure difference created by a vent or *chimney* because of its height, and the temperature difference between the flue gases and the atmosphere.

DRIP. The container placed at a low point in a system of piping to collect condensate and from which the condensate is removable.

DRY CLEANING SYSTEMS. Dry cleaning plants or systems are classified as follows:

Type I. Those systems using Class I flammable liquid solvents having a flash point below 100ºF (38ºC).

Type II. Those systems using Class II combustible liquid solvents having a flash point at or above 100ºF (38ºC) and below 140ºF (60ºC).

Type III. Those systems using Class III combustible liquid solvents having a flash point at or above 140ºF (60ºC).

Types IV and V. Those systems using Class IV nonflammable liquid solvents.

DUCT. A tube or conduit utilized for conveying air. The air passages of self-contained systems are not to be construed as air ducts.

DUCT FURNACE. A warm-air furnace normally installed in an air distribution duct to supply warm air for heating. This definition shall apply only to a warm-air heating *appliance* that, for air circulation, depends on a blower not furnished as part of the furnace.

DUCT SYSTEM. A continuous passageway for the transmission of air that, in addition to ducts, includes duct fittings, dampers, plenums, fans and accessory air-handling *equipment* and appliances.

[B] DWELLING. A building or portion thereof that contains not more than two *dwelling* units.

[B] DWELLING UNIT. A single unit providing complete, independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

ELECTRIC HEATING APPLIANCE. An *appliance* that produces heat energy to create a warm environment by the application of electric power to resistance elements, refrigerant compressors or dissimilar material junctions.

ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION SYSTEM. Systems that employ air-to-air heat exchangers to recover energy from or reject energy to *exhaust air* for the purpose of preheating, pre-cooling, humidifying or dehumidifying outdoor *ventilation air* prior to supplying such air to a space, either directly or as part of an HVAC system.

ENVIRONMENTAL AIR. Air that is conveyed to or from occupied areas through ducts which are not part of the heating or air-conditioning system, such as ventilation for human usage, domestic kitchen range exhaust, bathroom exhaust, domestic clothes dryer exhaust and parking garage exhaust.

EQUIPMENT. All piping, ducts, vents, control devices and other components of systems other than appliances which are permanently installed and integrated to provide control of environmental conditions for buildings. This definition shall also include other systems specifically regulated in this code.

EQUIPMENT, EXISTING. Any *equipment* regulated by this code which was legally installed prior to the effective date of this code, or for which a permit to install has been issued.

EVAPORATIVE COOLER. A device used for reducing the sensible heat of air for cooling by the process of evaporation of water into an airstream.

EVAPORATIVE COOLING SYSTEM. The *equipment* and appliances intended or installed for the purpose of environmental cooling by an evaporative cooler from which the conditioned air is distributed through ducts or plenums to the conditioned area.

EVAPORATOR. That part of the system in which liquid refrigerant is vaporized to produce refrigeration.

EXCESS AIR. The amount of air provided in addition to *theoretical air* to achieve complete *combustion* of a fuel, thereby preventing the formation of dangerous products of *combustion*.

EXHAUST SYSTEM. An assembly of connected ducts, plenums, fittings, registers, grilles and hoods, including domestic kitchen exhaust hoods, domestic kitchen and bathroom exhaust fans, clothes dryers, and subslab soil exhaust systems through which air is conducted from the space or spaces and exhausted to the outside atmosphere.

Exception: Central vacuum systems are allowed to exhaust into an attached residential garage.

FAN-ASSISTED APPLIANCE. An *appliance* equipped with an integral mechanical means to either draw or force products of *combustion* through the *combustion chamber* or heat exchanger.

[B] FIRE DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to close automatically upon detection of heat and to restrict the passage of flame. Fire dampers are classified for use in either static systems that will automatically shut down in the event of a fire, or in dynamic systems that continue to operate during a fire. A dynamic fire damper is tested and rated for closure under elevated temperature airflow.

FIREPLACE. An assembly consisting of a hearth and fire chamber of noncombustible material and provided with a *chimney*, for use with solid fuels.

Factory-built fireplace. A *listed* and *labeled* fireplace and *chimney* system composed of factory-made components, and assembled in the field in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the conditions of the listing.

Masonry fireplace. A field-constructed fireplace composed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones or concrete.

FIREPLACE STOVE. A free-standing chimney-connected solid-fuel-burning heater, designed to be operated with the fire chamber doors in either the open or closed position.

FLAME SAFEGUARD. A device that will automatically shut off the fuel supply to a main burner or group of burners when the means of ignition of such burners becomes inoperative, and when flame failure occurs on the burner or group of burners.

[B] FLAME SPREAD INDEX. The numerical value assigned to a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

FLAMMABILITY CLASSIFICATION. Refrigerants shall be assigned to one of the three classes—1, 2 or 3—in accordance with ASHRAE 34. For Classes 2 and 3, the heat of *combustion* shall be calculated assuming that *combustion* products are in the gas phase and in their most stable state.

Class 1. Refrigerants that do not show flame propagation when tested in air at 14.7 psia (101 kPa) and 70°F (21°C).

Class 2. Refrigerants having a lower flammability limit (LFL) of more than 0.00625 pound per cubic foot (0.10 kg/m^3) at 70°F (21°C) and 14.7 psia (101 kPa) and a heat of *combustion* of less than 8,174 Btu/lb (19 000 kJ/kg).

Class 3. Refrigerants that are highly flammable, having a LFL of less than or equal to 0.00625 pound per cubic foot (0.10 kg/m^3) at 70°F (21°C) and 14.7 psia (101 kPa) or a heat of *combustion* greater than or equal to 8,174 Btu/lb (19 000 kJ/kg).

[F] FLAMMABLE LIQUIDS. Any liquid that has a flash point below 100°F (38°C), and has a vapor pressure not exceeding 40 psia (276 kPa) at 100°F (38°C). Flammable liquids shall be known as Class I liquids and shall be divided into the following classifications:

Class IA. Liquids having a flash point below 73°F (23°C) and a boiling point below 100°F (38°C).

Class IB. Liquids having a flash point below 73°F (23°C) and a boiling point at or above 100°F (38°C).

Class IC. Liquids having a flash point at or above 73°F (23°C) and below 100°F (38°C).

[F] FLAMMABLE VAPOR OR FUMES. Mixtures of gases in air at concentrations equal to or greater than the LFL and less than or equal to the upper flammability limit (UFL).

[F] FLASH POINT. The minimum temperature corrected to a pressure of 14.7 psia (101 kPa) at which the application of a test flame causes the vapors of a portion of the sample to ignite under the conditions specified by the test procedures and apparatus. The flash point of a liquid shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D56, ASTM D93 or ASTM D3278.

FLOOR AREA, NET. The actual occupied area, not including unoccupied accessory areas or thicknesses of walls.

FLOOR FURNACE. A completely self-contained furnace suspended from the floor of the space being heated, taking air for *combustion* from outside such space and with means for observing flames and lighting the *appliance* from such space.

FLUE. A passageway within a *chimney* or vent through which gaseous *combustion* products pass.

FLUE CONNECTION (BREECHING). A passage for conducting the products of *combustion* from a fuel-fired *appliance* to the vent or *chimney* (see also "*Chimney* connector" and "Vent connector").

FLUE GASES. Products of *combustion* and excess air.

FLUE LINER (LINING). A system or material used to form the inside surface of a flue in a *chimney* or vent, for the purpose of protecting the surrounding structure from the effects of *combustion* products and conveying *combustion* products without leakage to the atmosphere.

FUEL GAS. A natural gas, manufactured gas, liquefied petroleum gas or a mixture of these.

FUEL OIL. Kerosene or any hydrocarbon oil having a flash point not less than 100°F (38°C).

FUEL-OIL PIPING SYSTEM. A closed piping system that connects a combustible liquid from a source of supply to a fuel-oil-burning *appliance*.

FURNACE. A completely self-contained heating unit that is designed to supply heated air to spaces remote from or adjacent to the *appliance* location.

FURNACE ROOM. A room primarily utilized for the installation of fuel-burning, space-heating and water-heating appliances other than boilers (see also "Boiler room").

FUSIBLE PLUG. A device arranged to relieve pressure by operation of a fusible member at a predetermined temperature.

GROUND SOURCE HEAT PUMP LOOP SYSTEM. Piping buried in horizontal or vertical excavations or placed in a body of water for the purpose of transporting heat transfer liquid to and from a heat pump. Included in this definition are closed loop systems in which the liquid is recirculated and open loop systems in which the liquid is drawn from a well or other source.

HAZARDOUS LOCATION. Any location considered to be a fire hazard for flammable vapors, dust, combustible fibers or other highly combustible substances. The location is not necessarily categorized in the *International Building Code* as a high-hazard use group classification.

HEAT EXCHANGER. A device that transfers heat from one medium to another.

HEAT PUMP. A refrigeration system that extracts heat from one substance and transfers it to another portion of the same substance or to a second substance at a higher temperature for a beneficial purpose.

HEAT TRANSFER LIQUID. The operating or thermal storage liquid in a mechanical system, including water or other liquid base, and additives at the concentration present under operating conditions used to move heat from one location to another. Refrigerants are not included as heat transfer liquids.

HIGH-PROBABILITY SYSTEMS. A refrigeration system in which the basic design or the location of components is such that a leakage of refrigerant from a failed connection, seal or component will enter an *occupancy* classified area, other than the *machinery room*.

HIGH-SIDE PRESSURE. The parts of a refrigerating system subject to condenser pressure.

HOOD. An air intake device used to capture by entrapment, impingement, adhesion or similar means, grease, moisture, heat and similar contaminants before they enter a duct system.

Type I. A kitchen hood for collecting and removing grease vapors and smoke. Such hoods are equipped with a fire suppression system.

Type II. A general kitchen hood for collecting and removing steam, vapor, heat, odors and products of *combustion*.

[FG] HYDROGEN GENERATING APPLIANCE. A self-contained package or factory-matched packages of integrated systems for generating gaseous hydrogen. Hydrogen generating appliances utilize electrolysis, reformation, chemical, or other processes to generate hydrogen.

IGNITION SOURCE. A flame, spark or hot surface capable of igniting flammable vapors or fumes. Such sources include *appliance* burners, burner ignitors and electrical switching devices.

[F] IMMEDIATELY DANGEROUS TO LIFE OR HEALTH (IDLH). The concentration of airborne contaminants that poses a threat of death, immediate or delayed permanent adverse health effects, or effects that could prevent escape from such an environment. This contaminant concentration level is established by the National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) based on both toxicity and flammability. It is generally expressed in parts per million by volume (ppm v/v) or milligrams per cubic meter (mg/m^3).

INDIRECT REFRIGERATION SYSTEM. A system in which a secondary coolant cooled or heated by the refrigerating system is circulated to the air or other substance to be cooled or heated. Indirect systems are distinguished by the method of application shown below:

Closed system. A system in which a secondary fluid is either cooled or heated by the refrigerating system and then circulated within a closed circuit in indirect contact with the air or other substance to be cooled or heated.

Double-indirect open-spray system. A system in which the secondary substance for an indirect open-spray system is heated or cooled by an intermediate coolant circulated from a second enclosure.

Open-spray system. A system in which a secondary coolant is cooled or heated by the refrigerating system and then circulated in direct contact with the air or other substance to be cooled or heated.

Vented closed system. A system in which a secondary coolant is cooled or heated by the refrigerating system and then passed through a closed circuit in the air or other substance to be cooled or heated, except that the evaporator or condenser is placed in an open or appropriately vented tank.

INTERLOCK. A device actuated by another device with which it is directly associated, to govern succeeding operations of the same or allied devices. A circuit in which a given action cannot occur until after one or more other actions have taken place.

JOINT, FLANGED. A joint made by bolting together a pair of flanged ends.

JOINT, FLARED. A metal-to-metal compression joint in which a conical spread is made on the end of a tube that is compressed by a flare nut against a mating flare.

JOINT, PLASTIC ADHESIVE. A joint made in thermoset plastic piping by the use of an adhesive substance which forms a continuous bond between the mating surfaces without dissolving either one of them.

JOINT, PLASTIC HEAT FUSION. A joint made in thermoplastic piping by heating the parts sufficiently to permit fusion of the materials when the parts are pressed together.

JOINT, PLASTIC SOLVENT CEMENT. A joint made in thermoplastic piping by the use of a solvent or solvent cement which forms a continuous bond between the mating surfaces.

JOINT, SOLDERED. A gas-tight joint obtained by the joining of metal parts with metallic mixtures of alloys which melt at temperatures between 400ºF (204ºC) and 1,000ºF (538ºC).

JOINT, WELDED. A gas-tight joint obtained by the joining of metal parts in molten state.

[A] LABELED. *Equipment*, materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, inspection agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of the above-labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the *equipment*, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

[FG] LIMIT CONTROL. A device responsive to changes in pressure, temperature or level for turning on, shutting off or throttling the gas supply to an *appliance*.

LIMITED CHARGE SYSTEM. A system in which, with the compressor idle, the design pressure will not be exceeded when the refrigerant charge has completely evaporated.

[A] LISTED. *Equipment,* materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the code official and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of *listed equipment* or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the *equipment*, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LIVING SPACE. Space within a *dwelling unit* utilized for living, sleeping, eating, cooking, bathing, washing and sanitation purposes.

LOWER EXPLOSIVE LIMIT (LEL). See "LFL."

LOWER FLAMMABLE LIMIT (REFRIGERANT) (LFL). The minimum concentration of refrigerant that is capable of propagating a flame through a homogeneous mixture of refrigerant and air.

[F] LOWER FLAMMABLE LIMIT (LFL). The minimum concentration of vapor in air at which propagation of flame will occur in the presence of an ignition source. The LFL is sometimes referred to as LEL or lower explosive limit.

LOW-PRESSURE HOT-WATER-HEATING BOILER. A boiler furnishing hot water at pressures not exceeding 160 psi (1103 kPa) and at temperatures not exceeding 250ºF (121ºC).

LOW-PRESSURE STEAM-HEATING BOILER. A boiler furnishing steam at pressures not exceeding 15 psi (103 kPa).

LOW-PROBABILITY SYSTEMS. A refrigeration system in which the basic design or the location of components is such that a leakage of refrigerant from a failed connection, seal or component will not enter an occupancy-classified area, other than the *machinery room*.

LOW-SIDE PRESSURE. The parts of a refrigerating system subject to evaporator pressure.

MACHINERY ROOM. A room meeting prescribed safety requirements and in which refrigeration systems or components thereof are located (see Sections 1105 and 1106).

MECHANICAL DRAFT SYSTEM. A venting system designed to remove flue or vent gases by mechanical means, that consists of an induced-draft portion under nonpositive static pressure or a forced-draft portion under positive static pressure.

Forced-draft venting system. A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under positive static pressure.

Induced-draft venting system. A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under nonpositive static vent pressure.

Power venting system. A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under positive static vent pressure.

MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT/APPLIANCE ROOM. A room or space in which nonfuel-fired mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* are located.

MECHANICAL EXHAUST SYSTEM. A system for removing air from a room or space by mechanical means.

MECHANICAL JOINT.

1. A connection between pipes, fittings, or pipes and fittings that is not welded, brazed, caulked, soldered or solvent cemented.
2. A general form of gas or liquid-tight connections obtained by the joining of parts through a positive holding mechanical construction such as, but not limited to, flanged, screwed, clamped or flared connections.

MECHANICAL SYSTEM. A system specifically addressed and regulated in this code and composed of components, devices, *appliances* and *equipment*.

MODULAR BOILER. A steam or hot-water-heating assembly consisting of a group of individual boilers called modules intended to be installed as a unit with no intervening stop valves. Modules are under one jacket or are individually jacketed. The individual modules shall be limited to a maximum input rating of 400,000 Btu/h (117 228 W) gas, 3 gallons per hour (gph) (11.4 L/h) oil, or 115 kW (electric).

NATURAL DRAFT SYSTEM. A venting system designed to remove flue or vent gases under nonpositive static vent pressure entirely by natural draft.

NATURAL VENTILATION. The movement of air into and out of a space through intentionally provided openings, such as windows and doors, or through nonpowered ventilators.

NET OCCUPIABLE FLOOR AREA. The floor area of an *occupiable space* defined by the inside surfaces of its walls but excluding shafts, column enclosures and other permanently enclosed, inaccessible and unoccupiable areas. Obstructions in the space such as furnishings, display or storage racks and other obstructions, whether temporary or permanent, shall not be deducted from the space area.

NONABRASIVE/ABRASIVE MATERIALS. Nonabrasive particulate in high concentrations, moderately abrasive particulate in low and moderate concentrations, and highly abrasive particulate in low concentrations, such as alfalfa, asphalt, plaster, gypsum and salt.

NONCOMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS. Materials that, when tested in accordance with ASTM E136, have at least three of four specimens tested meeting all of the following criteria:

1. The recorded temperature of the surface and interior thermocouples shall not at any time during the test rise more than 54ºF (30ºC) above the furnace temperature at the beginning of the test.

2. There shall not be flaming from the specimen after the first 30 seconds.
3. If the weight loss of the specimen during testing exceeds 50 percent, the recorded temperature of the surface and interior thermocouples shall not at any time during the test rise above the furnace air temperature at the beginning of the test, and there shall not be flaming of the specimen.

[A] OCCUPANCY. The purpose for which a building, or portion thereof, is utilized or occupied.

OCCUPIABLE SPACE. An enclosed space intended for human activities, excluding those spaces intended primarily for other purposes, such as storage rooms and *equipment* rooms, that are only intended to be occupied occasionally and for short periods of time.

OFFSET (VENT). A combination of *approved* bends that make two changes in direction bringing one section of the vent out of line but into a line parallel with the other section.

OUTDOOR AIR. Air taken from the outdoors, and therefore not previously circulated through the system.

OUTDOOR OPENING. A door, window, louver or skylight openable to the outdoor atmosphere.

OUTLET. A threaded connection or bolted flange in a piping system to which a gas-burning *appliance* is attached.

PANEL HEATING. A method of radiant space heating in which heat is supplied by large heated areas of room surfaces. The heating element usually consists of warm water piping, warm air ducts, or electrical resistance elements embedded in or located behind ceiling, wall or floor surfaces.

PELLET FUEL-BURNING APPLIANCE. A closed-combustion, vented *appliance* equipped with a fuel-feed mechanism for burning processed pellets of solid fuel of a specified size and composition.

PIPING. Where used in this code, "piping" refers to either pipe or tubing, or both.

Pipe. A rigid conduit of iron, steel, copper, brass or plastic.

Tubing. Semirigid conduit of copper, aluminum, plastic or steel.

PLASTIC, THERMOPLASTIC. A plastic that is capable of being repeatedly softened by increase of temperature and hardened by decrease of temperature.

PLASTIC, THERMOSETTING. A plastic that is capable of being changed into a substantially infusible or insoluble product when cured under application of heat or chemical means.

PLENUM. An enclosed portion of the building structure, other than an *occupiable space* being conditioned, that is designed to allow air movement, and thereby serve as part of an air distribution system.

PORTABLE FUEL CELL APPLIANCE. A fuel cell generator of electricity, which is not fixed in place. A portable fuel cell *appliance* utilizes a cord and plug connection to a grid-isolated load and has an integral fuel supply.

POWER BOILER. See "Boiler."

POWERED MAKEUP AIR. Air which must be brought in from the outdoors by means of a fan to replenish the air expelled by a mechanical exhausting device.

POWER VENT APPLIANCE. An *appliance* with a venting system which uses a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under positive static vent pressure.

[A] PREMISES. A lot, plot or parcel of land, including any structure thereon.

PRESS JOINT. A permanent mechanical joint incorporating an elastomeric seal or an elastomeric seal and corrosion-resistant grip ring. The joint is made with a pressing tool and jaw or ring approved by the fitting manufacturer.

PRESSURE, FIELD TEST. A test performed in the field to prove system tightness.

PRESSURE-LIMITING DEVICE. A pressure-responsive mechanism designed to stop automatically the operation of the pressure-imposing element at a predetermined pressure.

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICE. A pressure-actuated valve or rupture member designed to relieve excessive pressure automatically.

PRESSURE RELIEF VALVE. A pressure-actuated valve held closed by a spring or other means and designed to relieve pressure automatically in excess of the device's setting.

PRESSURE VESSELS. Closed containers, tanks or vessels that are designed to contain liquids or gases, or both, under pressure.

PRESSURE VESSELS-REFRIGERANT. Any refrigerant-containing receptacle in a refrigerating system. This does not include evaporators where each separate section does not exceed 0.5 cubic foot (0.014 m^3) of refrigerant-containing volume, regardless of the maximum inside dimensions, evaporator coils, controls, headers, pumps and piping.

PROTECTIVE ASSEMBLY (REDUCED CLEARANCE). Any noncombustible assembly that is *labeled* or constructed in accordance with Table 308.6 and is placed between combustible materials or assemblies and mechanical appliances, devices or *equipment*, for the purpose of reducing required airspace clearances. Protective assemblies attached directly to a combustible assembly shall not be considered as part of that combustible assembly.

PURGE. To clear of air, water or other foreign substances.

PUSH-FIT JOINTS. A type of mechanical joint consisting of elastomeric seals and corrosion-resistant tube grippers. Such joints are permanent or removable depending on the design.

QUICK-OPENING VALVE. A valve that opens completely by fast action, either manually or automatically controlled. A valve requiring one-quarter round turn or less is considered to be quick opening.

RADIANT HEATER. A heater designed to transfer heat primarily by direct radiation.

READY ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, *appliance* or *equipment* to be directly reached, without requiring the removal or movement of any panel, door or similar obstruction, and without requiring the use of portable access *equipment* (see "Access").

RECEIVER, LIQUID. A vessel permanently connected to a refrigeration system by inlet and outlet pipes for storage of liquid refrigerant.

RECIRCULATED AIR. Air removed from a conditioned space and intended for reuse as supply air.

RECLAIMED REFRIGERANTS. Refrigerants reprocessed to the same specifications as for new refrigerants by means including distillation. Such refrigerants have been chemically analyzed to verify that the specifications have been met. Reclaiming usually implies the use of processes or procedures that are available only at a reprocessing or manufacturing facility.

RECOVERED REFRIGERANTS. Refrigerants removed from a system in any condition without necessarily testing or processing them.

RECYCLED REFRIGERANTS. Refrigerants from which contaminants have been reduced by oil separation, removal of noncondensable gases, and single or multiple passes through devices that reduce moisture, acidity and particulate matter, such as replaceable core filter driers. These procedures usually are performed at the field job site or in a local service shop.

REFRIGERANT. A substance utilized to produce refrigeration by its expansion or vaporization.

REFRIGERANT SAFETY CLASSIFICATIONS. Groupings that indicate the toxicity and flammability classes in accordance with Section 1103.1. The classification group is made up of a letter (A or B) that indicates the toxicity class, followed by a number (1, 2 or 3) that indicates the flammability class. Refrigerant blends are similarly classified, based on the compositions at their worst cases of fractionation, as separately determined for toxicity and flammability. In some cases, the worst case of fractionation is the original formulation.

Flammability. Class 1 indicates refrigerants that do not show flame propagation in air when tested by prescribed methods at specified conditions. Classes 2 and 3 signify refrigerants with "lower flammability" and "higher flammability," respectively; the distinction depends on both the LFL and heat of *combustion*.

Toxicity. Classes A and B signify refrigerants with "lower toxicity" and "higher toxicity," respectively, based on prescribed measures of chronic (long-term, repeated exposures) toxicity.

REFRIGERATED ROOM OR SPACE. A room or space in which an evaporator or brine coil is located for the purpose of reducing or controlling the temperature within the room or space to below 68ºF (20ºC).

REFRIGERATING SYSTEM. A combination of interconnected refrigerant-containing parts constituting one closed refrigerant circuit in which a refrigerant is circulated for the purpose of extracting heat.

REFRIGERATION CAPACITY RATING. Expressed as 1 horsepower (0.75 kW), 1 ton or 12,000 Btu/h (3.5 kW), shall all mean the same quantity.

REFRIGERATION MACHINERY ROOM. See "*Machinery room*."

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, ABSORPTION. A heat-operated, closed-refrigeration cycle in which a secondary fluid (the absorbent) absorbs a primary fluid (the refrigerant) that has been vaporized in the evaporator.

Direct system. A system in which the evaporator is in direct contact with the material or space refrigerated, or is located in air-circulating passages communicating with such spaces.

Indirect system. A system in which a brine coil cooled by the refrigerant is circulated to the material or space refrigerated, or is utilized to cool the air so circulated. Indirect systems are distinguished by the type or method of application.

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM CLASSIFICATION. Refrigeration systems are classified according to the degree of probability that leaked refrigerant from a failed connection, seal or component will enter an occupied area. The distinction is based on the basic design or location of the components.

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, MECHANICAL. A combination of interconnected refrigeration-containing parts constituting one closed refrigerant circuit in which a refrigerant is circulated for the purpose of extracting heat and in which a compressor is used for compressing the refrigerant vapor.

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, SELF-CONTAINED. A complete factory-assembled and tested system that is shipped in one or more sections and has no refrigerant-containing parts that are joined in the field by other than companion or block valves.

[A] REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed.

RETURN AIR. Air removed from an *approved* conditioned space or location and recirculated or exhausted.

RETURN AIR SYSTEM. An assembly of connected ducts, plenums, fittings, registers and grilles through which air from the space or spaces to be heated or cooled is conducted back to the supply unit (see also "Supply air system").

ROOM HEATER VENTED. A free-standing heating unit burning solid or liquid fuel for direct heating of the space in and adjacent to that in which the unit is located.

SAFETY VALVE. A valve that relieves pressure in a steam boiler by opening fully at the rated discharge pressure. The valve is of the spring-pop type.

SEALED. Secured with a product meeting UL 181 or equivalent.

SELF-CONTAINED EQUIPMENT. Complete, factory-assembled and tested, heating, air-conditioning or refrigeration *equipment* installed as a single unit, and having all working parts, complete with motive power, in an enclosed unit of said machinery.

[B] SHAFT. An enclosed space extending through one or more stories of a building, connecting vertical openings in successive floors, or floors and the roof.

[B] SHAFT ENCLOSURE. The walls or construction forming the boundaries of a shaft.

[B] SLEEPING UNIT. A room or space in which people sleep, which can also include permanent provisions for living, eating, and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are also part of a *dwelling unit* are not sleeping units.

[B] SMOKE DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to resist the passage of smoke. The device is installed to operate automatically, controlled by a smoke detection system, and where required, is capable of being positioned from a fire command center.

[B] SMOKE-DEVELOPED INDEX. A numerical value assigned to a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

SOLID FUEL APPLIANCE. A natural draft *appliance* that is either a closed *combustion* solid-fuel-burning *appliance* or a decorative solid-fuel-burning *appliance*.

SOLID FUEL (COOKING APPLICATIONS). Applicable to commercial food service operations only, solid fuel is any bulk material such as hardwood, mesquite, charcoal or briquettes that is combusted to produce heat for cooking operations.

SOURCE CAPTURE SYSTEM. A mechanical exhaust system designed and constructed to capture air contaminants at their source and to exhaust such contaminants to the outdoor atmosphere.

[FG] STATIONARY FUEL CELL POWER PLANT. A self-contained package or factory-matched packages which constitute an automatically operated assembly of integrated systems for generating useful electrical energy and recoverable thermal energy that is permanently connected and fixed in place.

STEAM-HEATING BOILER. A boiler operated at pressures not exceeding 15 psi (103 kPa) for steam.

STOP VALVE. A shutoff valve for controlling the flow of liquid or gases.

[B] STORY. That portion of a building included between the upper surface of a floor and the upper surface of the floor next above, except that the topmost story shall be that portion of a building included between the upper surface of the topmost floor and the ceiling or roof above.

STRENGTH, ULTIMATE. The highest stress level that the component will tolerate without rupture.

SUPPLY AIR. That air delivered to each or any space supplied by the air distribution system or the total air delivered to all spaces supplied by the air distribution system, which is provided for ventilating, heating, cooling, humidification, dehumidification and other similar purposes.

SUPPLY AIR SYSTEM. An assembly of connected ducts, plenums, fittings, registers and grilles through which air, heated or cooled, is conducted from the supply unit to the space or spaces to be heated or cooled (see also "Return air system").

THEORETICAL AIR. The exact amount of air required to supply oxygen for complete *combustion* of a given quantity of a specific fuel.

THERMAL RESISTANCE (*R*). A measure of the ability to retard the flow of heat. The *R*-value is the reciprocal of thermal conductance.

[P] THIRD-PARTY CERTIFICATION AGENCY. An approved agency operating a product or material certification system that incorporates initial product testing, assessment and surveillance of a manufacturer's quality control system.

[P] THIRD-PARTY CERTIFIED. Certification obtained by the manufacturer indicating that the function and performance characteristics of a product or material have been determined by testing and ongoing surveillance by an approved third-party certification agency. Assertion of certification is in the form of identification in accordance with the requirements of the third-party certification agency.

[P] THIRD-PARTY TESTED. Procedure by which an approved testing laboratory provides documentation that a product, material or system conforms to specified requirements.

TLV-TWA (THRESHOLD LIMIT VALUE-TIME-WEIGHTED AVERAGE). The time-weighted average concentration of a refrigerant or other chemical in air for a normal 8-hour workday and a 40-hour workweek, to which nearly all workers are repeatedly exposed, day after day, without adverse effects, as adopted by the American Conference of Government Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH).

TOILET ROOM. A room containing a water closet and, frequently, a lavatory, but not a bathtub, shower, spa or similar bathing fixture.

TOXICITY CLASSIFICATION. Refrigerants shall be classified for toxicity to one of two classes in accordance with ASHRAE 34:

> **Class A.** Refrigerants for which toxicity has not been identified at concentrations less than or equal to 400 parts per million (ppm), based on data used to determine Threshold Limit Value-Time-Weighted Average (TLV-TWA) or consistent indices.
>
> **Class B.** Refrigerants for which there is evidence of toxicity at concentrations below 400 ppm, based on data used to determine TLV-TWA or consistent indices.

TRANSITION FITTINGS, PLASTIC TO STEEL. An adapter for joining plastic pipe to steel pipe. The purpose of this fitting is to provide a permanent, pressure-tight connection between two materials which cannot be joined directly one to another.

UNIT HEATER. A self-contained *appliance* of the fan type, designed for the delivery of warm air directly into the space in which the *appliance* is located.

VENT. A pipe or other conduit composed of factory-made components, containing a passageway for conveying *combustion* products and air to the atmosphere, *listed* and *labeled* for use with a specific type or class of *appliance*.

Pellet vent. A vent *listed* and *labeled* for use with *listed* pellet-fuel-burning appliances.

Type L vent. A vent *listed* and *labeled* for use with the following:

1. Oil-burning appliances that are *listed* for use with Type L vents.
2. Gas-fired appliances that are *listed* for use with Type B vents.

VENT CONNECTOR. The pipe that connects an *approved* fuel-fired *appliance* to a vent.

VENT DAMPER DEVICE, AUTOMATIC. A device intended for installation in the venting system, in the outlet of an individual automatically operated fuel-burning *appliance* that is designed to open the venting system automatically when the *appliance* is in operation and to close off the venting system automatically when the *appliance* is in a standby or shutdown condition.

VENTILATION. The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

VENTILATION AIR. That portion of supply air that comes from the outside (outdoors), plus any recirculated air that has been treated to maintain the desired quality of air within a designated space.

VENTING SYSTEM. A continuous open passageway from the flue collar of an *appliance* to the outside atmosphere for the purpose of removing flue or vent gases. A venting system is usually composed of a vent or a *chimney* and vent connector, if used, assembled to form the open passageway.

WATER HEATER. Any heating *appliance* or *equipment* that heats potable water and supplies such water to the potable hot water distribution system.

ZONE. One *occupiable space* or several occupiable spaces with similar *occupancy* classification (see Table 403.3), occupant density, zone air distribution effectiveness and zone primary airflow rate per unit area.

CHAPTER 3

GENERAL REGULATIONS

SECTION 301 GENERAL

301.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the approval and installation of all *equipment* and appliances that comprise parts of the building mechanical systems regulated by this code in accordance with Section 101.2.

301.2 Energy utilization. Heating, ventilating and air-conditioning systems of all structures shall be designed and installed for efficient utilization of energy in accordance with the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

301.3 Identification. Each length of pipe and tubing and each pipe fitting utilized in a mechanical system shall bear the identification of the manufacturer.

301.4 Plastic pipe, fittings and components. Plastic pipe, fittings and components shall be *third-party certified* as conforming to NSF 14.

301.5 Third-party testing and certification. Piping, tubing and fittings shall comply with the applicable referenced standards, specifications and performance criteria of this code and shall be identified in accordance with Section 301.3. Piping, tubing and fittings shall either be tested by an approved third-party testing agency or certified by an approved *third-party certification agency*.

301.6 Fuel gas appliances and equipment. The approval and installation of fuel gas distribution piping and *equipment*, fuel gas-fired appliances and fuel gas-fired *appliance* venting systems shall be in accordance with the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

301.7 Listed and labeled. Appliances regulated by this code shall be *listed* and *labeled* to an appropriate standard by a nationally recognized testing laboratory which is qualified to evaluate the appliance, unless otherwise *approved* in accordance with the administrative provisions of the *Minnesota State Building Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1300. The approval of unlisted *appliances* shall be based upon engineering evaluation. Unlisted *appliances* shall be installed with clearances to combustibles in accordance with NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel-Burning Appliances*; NFPA 31, *Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment*; or NFPA 90B, *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems*, as applicable to the unlisted *appliances*. Unlisted *appliances* with a fuel input rating of less than 12,500,000 Btu/hr (3660 kW) shall have fuel trains, controls, and safety devices installed in accordance with Part CF, Combustion Side Control, of ASME CSD-1. Unlisted *appliances* with a fuel input rating of 12,500,000 Btu/hr (3660 kW) or greater shall have fuel trains, controls, and safety devices installed in accordance with NFPA 85.

301.8 Labeling. Labeling shall be in accordance with the procedures set forth in Sections 301.8.1 through 301.8.2.3.

301.8.1 Testing. An *approved* agency shall test a representative sample of the mechanical *equipment* and appliances being *labeled* to the relevant standard or standards. The *approved* agency shall maintain a record of all of the tests performed. The record shall provide sufficient detail to verify compliance with the test standard.

301.8.2 Inspection and identification. The *approved* agency shall periodically perform an inspection, which shall be in-plant if necessary, of the mechanical *equipment* and appliances to be *labeled*. The inspection shall verify that the *labeled* mechanical *equipment* and appliances are representative of the mechanical *equipment* and appliances tested.

301.8.2.1 Independent. The agency to be *approved* shall be objective and competent. To confirm its objectivity, the agency shall disclose all possible conflicts of interest.

301.8.2.2 Equipment. An *approved* agency shall have adequate *equipment* to perform all required tests. The *equipment* shall be periodically calibrated.

301.8.2.3 Personnel. An *approved* agency shall employ experienced personnel educated in conducting, supervising and evaluating tests.

301.9 Label information. A permanent factory-applied nameplate(s) shall be affixed to appliances on which shall appear in legible lettering, the manufacturer's name or trademark, the model number, serial number and the seal or mark of the *approved* agency. A label shall also include the following:

1. Electrical *equipment* and appliances: Electrical rating in volts, amperes and motor phase; identification of individual electrical components in volts, amperes or watts, motor phase; Btu/h (W) output; and required clearances.
2. Absorption units: Hourly rating in Btu/h (W); minimum hourly rating for units having step or automatic modulating controls; type of fuel; type of refrigerant; cooling capacity in Btu/h (W); and required clearances.
3. Fuel-burning units: Hourly rating in Btu/h (W); type of fuel *approved* for use with the *appliance*; and required clearances.
4. Electric comfort heating appliances: electric rating in volts, amperes and phase; Btu/h (W) output rating; individual marking for each electrical component in amperes or watts, volts and phase; and required clearances from combustibles.

301.10 Electrical. Electrical wiring, controls and connections to *equipment* and appliances regulated by this code shall be in accordance with NFPA 70.

301.11 Plumbing connections. Potable water supply and building drainage system connections to *equipment* and appliances regulated by this code shall be in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

301.12 Fuel types. Fuel-fired appliances shall be designed for use with the type of fuel to which they will be connected and the altitude at which they are installed. Appliances that comprise parts of the building mechanical system shall not be converted for the usage of a different fuel, except where *approved* and converted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The fuel input rate shall not be increased or decreased beyond the limit rating for the altitude at which the *appliance* is installed.

301.13 Vibration isolation. Where vibration isolation of *equipment* and appliances is employed, an *approved* means of supplemental restraint shall be used to accomplish the support and restraint.

301.14 Repair. Defective material or parts shall be replaced or repaired in such a manner so as to preserve the original approval or listing.

301.15 Wind resistance. Mechanical *equipment*, appliances and supports that are exposed to wind shall be designed and installed to resist the wind pressures determined in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

[B] 301.16 Flood hazard. For structures located in flood hazard areas, mechanical systems, equipment and appliances shall be located at or above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment.

> **Exception:** Mechanical systems, equipment and appliances are permitted to be located below the elevation required by Section 1612 of the of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment provided that they are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the components and to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

[B] 301.16.1 High-velocity wave action. In flood hazard areas subject to high-velocity wave action, mechanical systems and *equipment* shall not be mounted on or penetrate walls intended to break away under flood loads.

301.17 Rodentproofing. Buildings or structures and the walls enclosing habitable or occupiable rooms and spaces in which persons live, sleep or work, or in which feed, food or foodstuffs are stored, prepared, processed, served or sold, shall be constructed to protect against the entrance of rodents in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

301.18 Seismic resistance. When earthquake loads are applicable in accordance with the *International Building Code*, mechanical system supports shall be designed and installed for the seismic forces in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

SECTION 302
PROTECTION OF STRUCTURE

302.1 Structural safety. The building or structure shall not be weakened by the installation of mechanical systems. Where floors, walls, ceilings or any other portion of the building or structure are required to be altered or replaced in the process of installing or repairing any system, the building or structure shall be left in a safe structural condition in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

302.2 Penetrations of floor/ceiling assemblies and fire-resistance-rated assemblies. Penetrations of floor/ceiling assemblies and assemblies required to have a fire-resistance rating shall be protected in accordance with Chapter 7 of the *International Building Code*.

[B] 302.3 Cutting, notching and boring in wood framing. The cutting, notching and boring of wood framing members shall comply with Sections 302.3.1 through 302.3.4.

[B] 302.3.1 Joist notching. Notches on the ends of joists shall not exceed one-fourth the joist depth. Holes bored in joists shall not be within 2 inches (51 mm) of the top or bottom of the joist, and the diameter of any such hole shall not exceed one-third the depth of the joist. Notches in the top or bottom of joists shall not exceed one-sixth the depth and shall not be located in the middle third of the span.

[B] 302.3.2 Stud cutting and notching. In exterior walls and bearing partitions, any wood stud is permitted to be cut or notched not to exceed 25 percent of its depth. Cutting or notching of studs not greater than 40 percent of their depth is permitted in nonbearing partitions supporting no loads other than the weight of the partition.

[B] 302.3.3 Bored holes. A hole not greater in diameter than 40 percent of the stud depth is permitted to be bored in any wood stud. Bored holes not greater than 60 percent of the depth of the stud are permitted in nonbearing partitions or in any wall where each bored stud is doubled, provided not more than two such successive doubled studs are so bored. In no case shall the edge of the bored hole be nearer than 0.625 inch (15.9 mm) to the edge of the stud. Bored holes shall not be located at the same section of stud as a cut or notch.

[B] 302.3.4 Engineered wood products. Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural composite veneer lumber, structural glue-laminated members and I-joists are prohibited except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member.

[B] 302.4 Alterations to trusses. Truss members and components shall not be cut, drilled, notched, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without written concurrence and approval of a *registered design professional*. Alterations resulting in the addition of loads to any member, such as HVAC *equipment* and water heaters, shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting such additional loading.

[B] 302.5 Cutting, notching and boring in steel framing. The cutting, notching and boring of steel framing members shall comply with Sections 302.5.1 through 302.5.3.

[B] 302.5.1 Cutting, notching and boring holes in structural steel framing. The cutting, notching and boring of holes in structural steel framing members shall be as prescribed by the *registered design professional*.

[B] 302.5.2 Cutting, notching and boring holes in cold-formed steel framing. Flanges and lips of load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall not be cut or notched. Holes in webs of load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall be permitted along the centerline of the web of the framing member and shall not exceed the dimensional limitations, penetration spacing or minimum hole edge distance as prescribed by the *registered design professional*. Cutting, notching and boring holes of steel floor/roof decking shall be as prescribed by the *registered design professional*.

[B] 302.5.3 Cutting, notching and boring holes in nonstructural cold-formed steel wall framing. Flanges and lips of nonstructural cold-formed steel wall studs shall not be cut or notched. Holes in webs of nonstructural cold-formed steel wall studs shall be permitted along the centerline of the web of the framing member, shall not exceed $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in width or 4 inches (102 mm) in length, and shall not be spaced less than 24 inches (610 mm) center to center from another hole or less than 10 inches (254 mm) from the bearing end.

SECTION 303
EQUIPMENT AND APPLIANCE LOCATION

303.1 General. *Equipment* and appliances shall be located as required by this section, specific requirements elsewhere in this code and the conditions of the *equipment* and *appliance* listing.

303.2 Hazardous locations. Appliances shall not be located in a *hazardous location* unless *listed* and *approved* for the specific installation.

303.3 Prohibited locations. Fuel-fired appliances shall not be located in, or obtain *combustion* air from, any of the following rooms or spaces:

1. Sleeping rooms.
2. Bathrooms.
3. Toilet rooms.
4. Storage closets.
5. Surgical rooms.

Exception: This section shall not apply to the following appliances:

1. *Direct-vent appliances* that obtain all *combustion air* directly from the outdoors.
2. Solid fuel-fired appliances, provided that the room is not a confined space and the building is not of unusually tight construction.
3. Appliances installed in a dedicated enclosure in which all *combustion* air is taken directly from the outdoors, in accordance with Chapter 7. *Access to* such enclosure shall be through a solid door, weather-stripped in accordance with the exterior door air leakage requirements of the *International Energy Conservation Code* and equipped with an *approved* self-closing device.

303.4 Protection from damage. Appliances shall not be installed in a location where subject to mechanical damage unless protected by *approved* barriers.

303.5 Indoor locations. Fuel-fired furnaces, water heaters and boilers installed in closets and alcoves shall be *listed* for such installation. For purposes of this section, a closet or alcove shall be defined as a room or space having a volume less than 12 times the total volume of fuel-fired appliances other than boilers and less than 16 times the total volume of boilers. Room volume shall be computed using the gross floor area and the actual ceiling height up to a maximum computation height of 8 feet (2438 mm).

303.6 Outdoor locations. Appliances installed in other than indoor locations shall be *listed* and *labeled* for outdoor installation.

303.7 Pit locations. Appliances installed in pits or excavations shall not come in direct contact with the surrounding soil. The sides of the pit or excavation shall be held back a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) from the *appliance*. Where the depth exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below adjoining grade, the walls of the pit or excavation shall be lined with concrete or masonry. Such concrete or masonry shall extend a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above adjoining grade and shall have sufficient lateral load-bearing capacity to resist collapse. The *appliance* shall be protected from flooding in an *approved* manner.

[B] 303.8 Elevator shafts. Mechanical systems shall not be located in an elevator shaft.

SECTION 304
INSTALLATION

304.1 General. *Equipment* and appliances shall be installed as required by the terms of their approval, in accordance with the conditions of the listing, the manufacturer's installation instructions and this code. Manufacturer's installation instructions shall be available on the job site at the time of inspection.

304.2 Conflicts. Where conflicts between this code and the conditions of listing or the manufacturer's installation instructions occur, the provisions of this code shall apply.

Exception: Where a code provision is less restrictive than the conditions of the listing of the *equipment* or *appliance* or the manufacturer's installation instructions, the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions shall apply.

304.3 Elevation of ignition source. Equipment and appliances having an *ignition source* and located in hazardous locations and public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages shall be elevated such that the source of ignition is not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor surface on which the *equipment* or *appliance* rests. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a *dwelling unit* and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

Exception: Elevation of the ignition source is not required for appliances that are listed as flammable vapor ignition resistant.

304.3.1 Parking garages. Connection of a parking garage with any room in which there is a fuel-fired *appliance* shall be by means of a vestibule providing a two-doorway separation, except that a single door is permitted where the sources of ignition in the *appliance* are elevated in accordance with Section 304.3.

Exception: This section shall not apply to *appliance* installations complying with Section 304.6.

304.4 Prohibited equipment and appliance location. Equipment and appliances having an *ignition source* shall not be installed in Group H occupancies or control areas where open use, handling or dispensing of combustible, flammable or explosive materials occurs.

[FG] 304.5 Hydrogen-generating and refueling operations. Hydrogen-generating and refueling appliances shall be installed and located in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Ventilation shall be required in accordance with Section 304.5.1, 304.5.2 or 304.5.3 in public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages that contain hydrogen-generating appliances or refueling systems. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a *dwelling unit* and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

[FG] 304.5.1 Natural ventilation. Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be limited to a maximum floor area of 850 square feet (79 m^2) and shall communicate with the outdoors in accordance with Sections 304.5.1.1 and 304.5.1.2. The maximum rated output capacity of hydrogen generating appliances shall not exceed 4 standard cubic feet per minute (0.00189 m^3/s) of hydrogen for each 250 square feet (23.2 m^2) of floor area in such spaces. The minimum cross-sectional dimension of air openings shall be 3 inches (76 mm). Where ducts are used, they shall be of the same cross-sectional area as the free area of the openings to which they connect. In such locations, *equipment* and appliances having an *ignition source* shall be located such that the source of ignition is not within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ceiling.

[FG] 304.5.1.1 Two openings. Two permanent openings shall be provided within the garage. The upper opening shall be located entirely within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ceiling of the garage. The lower opening shall be located entirely within 12 inches (305 mm) of the floor of the garage. Both openings shall be provided in the same exterior wall. The openings shall communicate directly with the outdoors and shall have a minimum free area of $^1/_2$ square foot per 1,000 cubic feet (1 $m^2/610\ m^3$) of garage volume.

[FG] 304.5.1.2 Louvers and grilles. In calculating free area required by Section 304.5.1, the required size of openings shall be based on the net free area of each opening. If the free area through a design of louver or grille is known, it shall be used in calculating the size opening required to provide the free area specified. If the design and free area are not known, it shall be assumed that wood louvers will have 25 percent free area and metal louvers and grilles will have 75 percent free area. Louvers and grilles shall be fixed in the open position.

[FG] 304.5.2 Mechanical ventilation. Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.16. In such locations, *equipment* and appliances having an *ignition source* shall be located such that the source of ignition is below the mechanical ventilation outlet(s).

[FG] 304.5.3 Specially engineered installations. As an alternative to the provisions of Sections 304.5.1 and 304.5.2 the necessary supply of air for ventilation and dilution of flammable gases shall be provided by an *approved* engineered system.

304.6 Public garages. Appliances located in public garages, motor fueling-dispensing facilities, repair garages or other areas frequented by motor vehicles, shall be installed a minimum of 8 feet (2438 mm) above the floor. Where motor vehicles are capable of passing under an *appliance*, the *appliance* shall be installed at the clearances required by the *appliance* manufacturer and not less than 1 foot (305 mm) higher than the tallest vehicle garage door opening.

Exception: The requirements of this section shall not apply where the appliances are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Section 304.3 and NFPA 30A.

304.7 Private garages. Appliances located in private garages and carports shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor.

Exception: The requirements of this section shall not apply where the appliances are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Section 304.3.

304.8 Construction and protection. Boiler rooms and furnace rooms shall be protected as required by the *International Building Code.*

304.9 Clearances to combustible construction. Heat-producing *equipment* and *appliances* shall be installed to maintain the required *clearances* to combustible construction as specified in the listing and manufacturer's instructions. Such clearances shall be reduced only in accordance with Section 308. *Clearances* to combustibles shall include such considerations as door swing, drawer pull, overhead projections or shelving and window swing, shutters, coverings and drapes. Devices such as doorstops or limits, closers, drapery ties or guards shall not be used to provide the required *clearances*.

304.10 Clearances from grade. Equipment and *appliances* installed at grade level shall be supported on a level concrete slab or other *approved* material extending not less than 3 inches (76 mm) above adjoining grade or shall be suspended not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above adjoining grade. Such support shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

[B] 304.11 Guards. Guards shall be provided where appliances, *equipment*, fans or other components that require service and roof hatch openings are located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of a roof edge or open side of a walking surface and such edge or open side is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor, roof or grade below. The guard shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) beyond each end of such appliances, *equipment*, fans, components and roof hatch openings and the top of the guard shall be located not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the elevated surface adjacent to the guard. The guard shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a 21-inch-diameter (533 mm) sphere and shall comply with the loading requirements for guards specified in the *International Building Code.*

304.12 Area served. Appliances serving different areas of a building other than where they are installed shall be permanently marked in an *approved* manner that uniquely identifies the *appliance* and the area it serves.

SECTION 305
PIPING SUPPORT

305.1 General. All mechanical system piping shall be supported in accordance with this section.

305.2 Materials. Pipe hangers and supports shall have sufficient strength to withstand all anticipated static and specified dynamic loading conditions associated with the intended use. Pipe hangers and supports that are in direct contact with piping shall be of *approved* materials that are compatible with the piping and that will not promote galvanic action.

305.3 Structural attachment. Hangers and anchors shall be attached to the building construction in an *approved* manner.

305.4 Interval of support. Piping shall be supported at distances not exceeding the spacing specified in Table 305.4, or in accordance with MSS SP-69.

305.5 Protection against physical damage. In concealed locations where piping, other than cast-iron or steel, is installed through holes or notches in studs, joists, rafters or similar members less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, the pipe shall be protected by shield plates. Protective steel shield plates having a minimum thickness of 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage) shall cover the area of the pipe where the member is notched or bored, and shall extend a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

TABLE 305.4
PIPING SUPPORT SPACING[a]

PIPING MATERIAL	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL SPACING (feet)	MAXIMUM VERTICAL SPACING (feet)
ABS pipe	4	10[c]
Aluminum pipe and tubing	10	15
Brass pipe	10	10
Brass tubing, $1^1/_4$-inch diameter and smaller	6	10
Brass tubing, $1^1/_2$-inch diameter and larger	10	10
Cast-iron pipe[b]	5	15
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	12	10
Copper or copper-alloy tubing, $1^1/_4$-inch diameter and smaller	6	10
Copper or copper-alloy tubing, $1^1/_2$-inch diameter and larger	10	10
CPVC pipe or tubing, 1 inch and smaller	3	10[c]
CPVC pipe or tubing, $1^1/_4$-inch and larger	4	10[c]
Lead pipe	Continuous	4
PB pipe or tubing	$2^2/_3$ (32 inches)	4
PEX tubing	$2^2/_3$ (32 inches)	10[c]
Polypropylene (PP) pipe or tubing, 1 inch or smaller	$2^2/_3$ (32 inches)	10[c]
Polypropylene (PP) pipe or tubing, $1^1/_4$ inches or larger	4	10[c]
PVC pipe	4	10[c]
Steel tubing	8	10
Steel pipe	12	15

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. See Section 301.18.

b. The maximum horizontal spacing of cast-iron pipe hangers shall be increased to 10 feet where 10-foot lengths of pipe are installed.

c. Mid-story guide.

SECTION 306
ACCESS AND SERVICE SPACE

306.1 Access for maintenance and replacement. Appliances shall be accessible for inspection, service, repair and replacement without disabling the function of a fire-resistance-rated assembly or removing permanent construction, other appliances, venting systems or any other piping or ducts not connected to the *appliance* being inspected, serviced, repaired or replaced. A level working space at least 30 inches deep and 30 inches wide (762 mm by 762 mm) shall be provided in front of the control side to service an *appliance*.

306.1.1 Central furnaces. Central furnaces within compartments or alcoves shall have a minimum working space *clearance* of 3 inches (76 mm) along the sides, back and top with a total width of the enclosing space being at least 12 inches (305 mm) wider than the furnace. Furnaces having a firebox open to the atmosphere shall have at least 6 inches (152 mm) working space along the front *combustion* chamber side. *Combustion air* openings at the rear or side of the compartment shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 7.

Exception: This section shall not apply to replacement appliances installed in existing compartments and alcoves where the working space clearances are in accordance with the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

306.2 Appliances in rooms. Rooms containing appliances shall be provided with a door and an unobstructed passageway measuring not less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide and 80 inches (2032 mm) high.

Exception: Within a *dwelling unit*, appliances installed in a compartment, alcove, basement or similar space shall be accessed by an opening or door and an unobstructed passageway measuring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide and large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance* in the space, provided that a level service space of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and the height of the *appliance*, but not less than 30 inches (762 mm), is present at the front or service side of the *appliance* with the door open.

306.3 Appliances in attics. Attics containing appliances shall be provided with an opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance*. The passageway shall not be less than 30 inches (762 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the *appliance*. The passageway shall have continuous solid flooring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present at the front or service side of the *appliance*. The clear access opening dimensions shall be a minimum of 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance*.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway and level service space are not required where the *appliance* is capable of being serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is unobstructed and not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide for its entire length, the passageway shall be not greater than 50 feet (15 250 mm) in length.

306.3.1 Electrical requirements. A luminaire controlled by a switch located at the required passageway opening and a receptacle outlet shall be provided at or near the *appliance* location in accordance with NFPA 70.

306.4 Appliances under floors. Underfloor spaces containing appliances shall be provided with an access opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to remove the largest *appliance*. The passageway shall not be less than 30 inches (762 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide, nor more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the *appliance*. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present at the front or service side of the *appliance*. If the depth of the passageway or the service space exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below the adjoining grade, the walls of the passageway shall be lined with concrete or masonry. Such concrete or masonry shall extend a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above the adjoining grade and shall have sufficient lateral-bearing capacity to resist collapse. The clear access opening dimensions shall be a minimum of 22 inches by 30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance*.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway is not required where the level service space is present when the access is open and the *appliance* is capable of being serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is unobstructed and not less than 6 feet high (1929 mm) and 22 inches (559 mm) wide for its entire length, the passageway shall not be limited in length.

306.4.1 Electrical requirements. A luminaire controlled by a switch located at the required passageway opening and a receptacle outlet shall be provided at or near the *appliance* location in accordance with NFPA 70.

306.5 Mechanical equipment and appliances on roofs or elevated structures. Where mechanical *equipment* or appliances requiring periodic inspection, service, or maintenance are installed on roofs or elevated structures, a permanent stair shall be provided for access.

Exception: A portable ladder may be used for dwellings, replacement equipment and appliances, on existing buildings, and exterior roof access points not exceeding 16 feet (4.9 m) above grade, unless the building official determines that the unique shape of the roof does not allow safe access with a portable ladder.

The permanent stair shall, at a minimum, meet the following:

1. The stair shall be installed at an angle of not more than 60 degrees measured from the horizontal plane.
2. The stair shall have flat treads at least 6 inches (152 mm) deep and a clear width of at least 18 inches (457 mm) with equally spaced risers at least 10.5 inches (267 mm) high and not exceeding 14 inches (356 mm).
3. The stair shall have intermediate landings not exceeding 18 feet (5.5 m) vertically.
4. Continuous handrails shall be installed on both sides of the stair.
5. Interior stairs shall terminate at the under side of the roof at a hatch or scuttle of at least 8 square feet (0.74 m^2) with a minimum dimension of 20 inches (508 mm).
6. When a roof access hatch or scuttle is located within 10 feet (3.0 m) of a roof edge, a guard shall be installed in accordance with IMC Section 304.11.
7. Exterior stairs shall terminate at the roof access point or at a level landing of at least 8 square feet (0.74 m^2) with a minimum dimension of 20 inches (508 mm). The landing shall have a guard installed in accordance with IMC Section 304.11.

306.5.1 Permanent ladders. Where a change in roof elevation greater than 30 inches (762 mm) but not exceeding 16 feet (4.9 m) exists, a permanent ladder shall be provided. The ladder may be vertical. The ladder must, at a minimum, meet the following:

1. Width shall be at least 16 inches (406 mm).
2. Rung spacing shall be a maximum of 14 inches (356 mm).
3. Toe space shall be at least 6 inches (152 mm).

4. Side railings shall extend at least 30 inches (762 mm) above the roof or parapet wall.

306.5.2 Electrical requirements. A receptacle outlet shall be provided at or near the *equipment* or *appliance* location in accordance with the *Minnesota Electrical Code*.

306.5.3 Sloped roofs. Where *appliances*, *equipment*, fans, or components that require service are installed on a roof having a slope of 3 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) or greater and having an edge more than 30 inches (762 mm) above grade at such edge, a level platform shall be provided on each side of the *appliance* to which access is required for service, repair, or maintenance. The platform shall be at least 30 inches (762 mm) in any dimension and shall be provided with guards. The guards shall extend at least 42 inches (1067 mm) above the platform, shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a 21-inch-diameter (533 mm) sphere and shall comply with the loading requirements for guards specified in Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1305.

SECTION 307
CONDENSATE DISPOSAL

307.1 Fuel-burning appliances. Liquid *combustion* by-products of condensing appliances shall be collected and discharged to an *approved* plumbing fixture or disposal area in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Condensate piping shall be of *approved* corrosion-resistant material and shall not be smaller than the drain connection on the appliance. Such piping shall maintain a minimum horizontal slope in the direction of discharge of not less than one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope).

307.2 Evaporators and cooling coils. Condensate drain systems shall be provided for *equipment* and appliances containing evaporators or cooling coils. Condensate drain systems shall be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with Sections 307.2.1 through 307.2.4.

307.2.1 Condensate disposal. Condensate from all cooling coils and evaporators shall be conveyed from the drain pan outlet to an *approved* place of disposal. Such piping shall maintain a minimum horizontal slope in the direction of discharge of not less than one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope). Condensate shall not discharge into a street, alley or other areas so as to cause a nuisance.

307.2.2 Drain pipe materials and sizes. Components of the condensate disposal system shall be cast iron, galvanized steel, copper, cross-linked polyethylene, polybutylene, polyethylene, ABS, CPVC or PVC pipe or tubing. All components shall be selected for the pressure and temperature rating of the installation. Joints and connections shall be made in accordance with the applicable provisions of Chapter 7 of the *International Plumbing Code* relative to the material type. Condensate waste and drain line size shall be not less than $^{3}/_{4}$-inch (19 mm) internal diameter and shall not decrease in size from the drain pan connection to the place of condensate disposal. Where the drain pipes from more than one unit are manifolded together for condensate drainage, the pipe or tubing shall be sized in accordance with Table 307.2.2.

TABLE 307.2.2
CONDENSATE DRAIN SIZING

EQUIPMENT CAPACITY	MINIMUM CONDENSATE PIPE DIAMETER
Up to 20 tons of refrigeration	$^{3}/_{4}$ inch
Over 20 tons to 40 tons of refrigeration	1 inch
Over 40 tons to 90 tons of refrigeration	$1^{1}/_{4}$ inch
Over 90 tons to 125 tons of refrigeration	$1^{1}/_{2}$ inch
Over 125 tons to 250 tons of refrigeration	2 inch

1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 ton = 3.517 kW.

307.2.3 Auxiliary and secondary drain systems. In addition to the requirements of Section 307.2.1, where damage to any building components could occur as a result of overflow from the *equipment* primary condensate removal system, one of the following auxiliary protection methods shall be provided for each cooling coil or fuel-fired *appliance* that produces condensate:

1. An auxiliary drain pan with a separate drain shall be provided under the coils on which condensation will occur. The auxiliary pan drain shall discharge to a conspicuous point of disposal to alert occupants in the event of a stoppage of the primary drain. The pan shall have a minimum depth of $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm), shall not be less than 3 inches (76 mm) larger than the unit or the coil dimensions in width and length and shall be constructed of corrosion-resistant material. Galvanized sheet steel pans shall have a minimum thickness of not less than 0.0236 inch (0.6010 mm) (No. 24 gage). Nonmetallic pans shall have a minimum thickness of not less than 0.0625 inch (1.6 mm).
2. A separate overflow drain line shall be connected to the drain pan provided with the *equipment*. Such overflow drain shall discharge to a conspicuous point of disposal to alert occupants in the event of a stoppage of the primary drain. The overflow drain line shall connect to the drain pan at a higher level than the primary drain connection.
3. An auxiliary drain pan without a separate drain line shall be provided under the coils on which condensate will occur. Such pan shall be equipped with a water-level detection device conforming to UL 508 that will shut off the *equipment* served prior to overflow of the pan. The auxiliary drain pan shall be constructed in accordance with Item 1 of this section.
4. A water-level detection device conforming to UL 508 shall be provided that will shut off the *equipment* served in the event that the primary drain is blocked. The device shall be installed in the primary drain line, the overflow drain line, or in the equipment-supplied drain pan, located at a point higher than the primary drain line connection and below the overflow rim of such pan.

Exception: Fuel-fired appliances that automatically shut down operation in the event of a stoppage in the condensate drainage system.

307.2.3.1 Water-level monitoring devices. On downflow units and all other coils that do not have a secondary drain or provisions to install a secondary or auxiliary drain pan, a water-level monitoring device shall be installed inside the primary drain pan. This device shall shut off the *equipment* served in the event that the primary drain becomes restricted. Devices installed in the drain line shall not be permitted.

307.2.3.2 Appliance, equipment and insulation in pans. Where appliances, *equipment* or insulation are subject to water damage when auxiliary drain pans fill, that portion of the *appliance*, *equipment* and insulation shall be installed above the rim of the pan. Supports located inside of the pan to support the *appliance* or *equipment* shall be water resistant and *approved*.

307.2.4 Traps. Condensate drains shall be trapped as required by the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer.

SECTION 308 CLEARANCE REDUCTION

308.1 Scope. This section shall govern the reduction in required *clearances* to combustible materials and combustible assemblies for *chimneys,* vents, kitchen exhaust equipment, mechanical appliances, and mechanical devices and *equipment*.

308.2 Listed appliances and equipment. The reduction of the required *clearances* to combustibles for *listed* and *labeled* appliances and *equipment* shall be in accordance with the requirements of this section except that such clearances shall not be reduced where reduction is specifically prohibited by the terms of the *appliance* or *equipment* listing.

308.3 Protective assembly construction and installation. Reduced *clearance* protective assemblies, including structural and support elements, shall be constructed of noncombustible materials. Spacers utilized to maintain an airspace between the protective assembly and the protected material or assembly shall be noncombustible. Where a space between the protective assembly and protected combustible material or assembly is specified, the same space shall be provided around the edges of the protective assembly and the spacers shall be placed so as to allow air circulation by convection in such space. Protective assemblies shall not be placed less than 1 inch (25 mm) from the mechanical appliances, devices or *equipment*, regardless of the allowable reduced *clearance*.

308.4 Allowable reduction. The reduction of required *clearances* to combustible assemblies or combustible materials shall be based on the utilization of a reduced *clearance* protective assembly in accordance with Section 308.5 or 308.6.

308.5 Labeled assemblies. The allowable clearance reduction shall be based on an approved reduced clearance protective assembly that is listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1618.

308.6 Reduction table. The allowable *clearance* reduction shall be based on one of the methods specified in Table 308.6. Where required *clearances* are not listed in Table 308.6, the reduced *clearances* shall be determined by linear interpolation between the distances listed in the table. Reduced *clearances* shall not be derived by extrapolation below the range of the table.

308.7 Solid fuel-burning appliances. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.6 shall not be utilized to reduce the *clearance* required for solid fuel-burning appliances that are *labeled* for installation with clearances of 12 inches (305 mm) or less. Where appliances are *labeled* for installation with *clearances* of greater than 12 inches (305 mm), the *clearance* reduction methods of Table 308.6 shall not reduce the *clearance* to less than 12 inches (305 mm).

308.8 Masonry chimneys. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.6 shall not be utilized to reduce the *clearances* required for masonry *chimneys* as specified in Chapter 8 and the *International Building Code*.

308.9 Chimney connector pass-throughs. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.6 shall not be utilized to reduce the *clearances* required for *chimney* connector pass-throughs as specified in Section 803.10.4.

308.10 Masonry fireplaces. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.6 shall not be utilized to reduce the *clearances* required for masonry fireplaces as specified in Chapter 8 and the *International Building Code*.

308.11 Kitchen exhaust ducts. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.6 shall not be utilized to reduce the minimum *clearances* required by Section 506.3.11 for kitchen exhaust ducts enclosed in a shaft.

[B] SECTION 309 TEMPERATURE CONTROL

[B] 309.1 Space-heating systems. Interior spaces intended for human occupancy shall be provided with active or passive space-heating systems capable of maintaining a minimum indoor temperature of 68°F (20°C) at a point 3 feet (914 mm) above floor on the design heating day. The installation of portable space heaters shall not be used to achieve compliance with this section.

Exception: Interior spaces where the primary purpose is not associated with human comfort.

309.2 Balancing. All mechanical ventilation and hydronic systems shall be capable of being balanced in accordance with this section.

309.2.1 Mechanical ventilation system balancing. Mechanical ventilation systems shall provide airflow rates within +/-10 percent of design capacities and fan speed shall be adjusted to meet design airflow conditions.

Exception: Speed adjustment is not required for fan motors rated at one horsepower (0.746 kW) or less.

309.2.2 Hydronic system balancing. Hydronic systems shall provide flow rates within +/-10 percent of design capacities and pump impellers shall be trimmed or pump speed shall be adjusted to meet design flow conditions.

Exception: Impeller trimming or speed adjustment is not required for pump motors rated at five horsepower (3.73 kW) or less.

309.2.3 Systems balancing reports. Systems balancing reports shall verify system performance and shall specify that the minimum amount of outdoor air required in IMC Chapter 4, as amended, is provided to the ventilation system. Systems balancing reports shall be submitted to the building official upon request.

[F] SECTION 310 EXPLOSION CONTROL

[F] 310.1 Required. Structures occupied for purposes involving explosion hazards shall be provided with explosion control where required by the *International Fire Code*. Explosion control systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 911 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] SECTION 311 SMOKE AND HEAT VENTS

[F] 311.1 Required. *Approved* smoke and heat vents shall be installed in the roofs of one-story buildings where required by the *International Fire Code*. Smoke and heat vents shall be designed and installed in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 312 HEATING AND COOLING LOAD CALCULATIONS

312.1 Load calculations. Heating and cooling system design loads for the purpose of sizing systems, appliances and *equipment* shall be determined in accordance with the procedures described in the ASHRAE/ACCA Standard 183. Alternatively, design loads shall be determined by an *approved* equivalent computation procedure, using the design parameters specified in Chapter 3 of the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

TABLE 308.6
CLEARANCE REDUCTION METHODS[b]

	REDUCED CLEARANCE WITH PROTECTION (inches)[a]							
	Horizontal combustible assemblies located above the heat source				Horizontal combustible assemblies located beneath the heat source and all vertical combustible assemblies			
	Required clearance to combustibles without protection (inches)[a]				Required clearance to combustibles without protection (inches)			
TYPE OF PROTECTIVE ASSEMBLY[a]	36	18	9	6	36	18	9	6
Galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (0.6010 mm) (No. 24 gage), mounted on 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batt reinforced with wire on the back, 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	3
Galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (0.6010 mm) (No. 24 gage), spaced 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	2
Two layers of galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (0.6010 mm) (No. 24 gage), having a 1-inch airspace between layers, spaced 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	3
Two layers of galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (0.6010 mm) (No. 24 gage), having 1 inch of fiberglass insulation between layers, spaced 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	3
0.5-inch inorganic insulating board, over 1 inch of fiberglass or mineral wool batt, against the combustible assembly	24	12	6	4	18	9	5	3
$3^1/_2$-inch brick wall, spaced 1 inch off the combustible wall	—	—	—	—	12	6	6	6
$3^1/_2$-inch brick wall, against the combustible wall	—	—	—	—	24	12	6	5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/m^3, 1.0 Btu • in/ft^2 • h • °F = 0.144 W/m^2 • K.

a. Mineral wool and glass fiber batts (blanket or board) shall have a minimum density of 8 pounds per cubic foot and a minimum melting point of 1,500°F. Insulation material utilized as part of a clearance reduction system shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu • in/(ft^2 • h • °F) or less. Insulation board shall be formed of noncombustible material.

b. For limitations on clearance reduction for solid fuel-burning appliances, masonry chimneys, connector pass-throughs, masonry fire places and kitchen ducts, see Sections 308.7 through 308.11.

CHAPTER 4

VENTILATION

SECTION 401 GENERAL

401.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the ventilation of spaces within a building intended to be occupied. Mechanical exhaust systems, including exhaust systems serving clothes dryers and cooking appliances; hazardous exhaust systems; dust, stock and refuse conveyor systems; subslab soil exhaust systems; smoke control systems; energy recovery ventilation systems and other systems specified in Section 502 shall comply with Chapter 5.

> **Exception:** Residential buildings complying with the ventilation requirements in Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1322.

401.2 Ventilation required. Every occupied space shall be ventilated by natural means in accordance with Section 402 or by mechanical means in accordance with Section 403. Where the air infiltration rate in a dwelling unit is less than 5 air changes per hour when tested with a blower door at a pressure of 0.2-inch water column (50 Pa) in accordance with Section 402.4.1.2 of the *International Energy Conservation Code*, the dwelling unit shall be ventilated by mechanical means in accordance with Section 403.

401.3 When required. Ventilation shall be provided during the periods that the room or space is occupied.

401.4 Intake opening location. Air intake openings shall comply with all of the following:

A. Intake openings shall be located a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) from lot lines or buildings on the same lot. Where openings front on a street or public way, the distance shall be measured to the centerline of the street or public way.

B. Mechanical outdoor air intake openings shall be located a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) from any hazardous or noxious contaminant, such as chimneys, plumbing vents, streets, alleys, parking lots, and loading docks, except as specified in Item C or Section 501.2.1. Outdoor air intake openings shall be permitted to be located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from streets, alleys, parking lots, and loading docks provided that the openings are located not less than 25 feet (7620 mm) vertically above such locations. Where openings front on a street or public way, the distance shall be measured to the centerline of the street or public way.

C. Intake openings shall be located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) below contaminant sources where such sources are located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the opening.

401.5 Intake opening protection. Air intake openings that terminate outdoors shall be protected with corrosion-resistant screens, louvers or grilles. Openings in louvers, grilles and screens shall be sized in accordance with Table 401.5, and shall be protected against local weather conditions. Louvers that protect air intake openings in structures located in hurricane-prone regions, as defined in the *International Building Code*, shall comply with AMCA 550. Outdoor air intake openings located in exterior walls shall meet the provisions for exterior wall opening protectives in accordance with the *International Building Code.*

TABLE 401.5
OPENING SIZES IN LOUVERS, GRILLES AND SCREENS PROTECTING AIR INTAKE OPENINGS

OUTDOOR OPENING TYPE	MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM OPENING SIZES IN LOUVERS, GRILLES AND SCREENS MEASURED IN ANY DIRECTION
Intake openings in residential occupancies	Not $< {}^1/_4$ inch and not $> {}^1/_2$ inch
Intake openings in other than residential occupancies	$> {}^1/_4$ inch and not > 1 inch

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

401.6 Contaminant sources. Stationary local sources producing airborne particulates, heat, odors, fumes, spray, vapors, smoke or gases in such quantities as to be irritating or injurious to health shall be provided with an exhaust system in accordance with Chapter 5 or a means of collection and removal of the contaminants. Such exhaust shall discharge directly to an *approved* location at the exterior of the building.

SECTION 402 NATURAL VENTILATION

[B] 402.1 Natural ventilation. *Natural ventilation* of an occupied space shall be through windows, doors, louvers or other openings to the outdoors. The operating mechanism for such openings shall be provided with ready access so that the openings are readily controllable by the building occupants.

[B] 402.2 Ventilation area required. The minimum openable area to the outdoors shall be 4 percent of the floor area being ventilated.

[B] 402.3 Adjoining spaces. Where rooms and spaces without openings to the outdoors are ventilated through an adjoining room, the opening to the adjoining rooms shall be unobstructed and shall have an area not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the interior room or space, but not less than 25 square feet (2.3 m^2). The minimum openable area to the outdoors shall be based on the total floor area being ventilated.

> **Exception:** Exterior openings required for ventilation shall be permitted to open into a thermally isolated sunroom addition or patio cover, provided that the openable area between the sunroom addition or patio cover and the interior room has an area of not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the interior room or space, but not less than 20 square feet (1.86 m^2). The minimum openable area to

the outdoors shall be based on the total floor area being ventilated.

[B] 402.4 Openings below grade. Where openings below grade provide required *natural ventilation*, the outside horizontal clear space measured perpendicular to the opening shall be one and one-half times the depth of the opening. The depth of the opening shall be measured from the average adjoining ground level to the bottom of the opening.

SECTION 403
MECHANICAL VENTILATION

403.1 Ventilation system. Mechanical ventilation shall be provided by a method of supply air and return or *exhaust air*. The amount of supply air shall be approximately equal to the amount of return and *exhaust air*. The system shall not be prohibited from producing negative or positive pressure. The system to convey *ventilation air* shall be designed and installed in accordance with Chapter 6.

403.2 Outdoor air required. The minimum outdoor airflow rate shall be determined in accordance with Section 403.3. Ventilation supply systems shall be designed to deliver the required rate of outdoor airflow to the *breathing zone* within each *occupiable space*.

Exception: Where the *registered design professional* demonstrates that an engineered ventilation system design will prevent the maximum concentration of contaminants from exceeding that obtainable by the rate of outdoor air ventilation determined in accordance with Section 403.3, the minimum required rate of outdoor air shall be reduced in accordance with such engineered system design.

403.2.1 Recirculation of air. The outdoor air required by Section 403.3 shall not be recirculated. Air in excess of that required by Section 403.3 shall not be prohibited from being recirculated as a component of supply air to building spaces, except that:

1. Ventilation air shall not be recirculated from one *dwelling* to another or to dissimilar occupancies.
2. Supply air to a swimming pool and associated deck areas shall not be recirculated unless such air is dehumidified to maintain the relative humidity of the area at 60 percent or less. Air from this area shall not be recirculated to other spaces where more than 10 percent of the resulting supply airstream consists of air recirculated from these spaces.
3. Where mechanical exhaust is required by Note b in Table 403.3, recirculation of air from such spaces shall be prohibited. All air supplied to such spaces shall be exhausted, including any air in excess of that required by Table 403.3.
4. Where mechanical exhaust is required by Note g in Table 403.3, mechanical exhaust is required and recirculation is prohibited where more than 10 percent of the resulting supply airstream consists of air recirculated from these spaces.

403.2.2 Transfer air. Except where recirculation from such spaces is prohibited by Table 403.3, air transferred from occupiable spaces is not prohibited from serving as *makeup air* for required exhaust systems in such spaces as kitchens, baths, toilet rooms, elevators and smoking lounges. The amount of transfer air and *exhaust air* shall be sufficient to provide the flow rates as specified in Section 403.3. The required outdoor airflow rates specified in Table 403.3 shall be introduced directly into such spaces or into the occupied spaces from which air is transferred or a combination of both.

403.3 Outdoor airflow rate. Ventilation systems shall be designed to have the capacity to supply the minimum outdoor airflow rate determined in accordance with this section. The occupant load utilized for design of the ventilation system shall not be less than the number determined from the estimated maximum occupant load rate indicated in Table 403.3. Ventilation rates for occupancies not represented in Table 403.3 shall be those for a listed *occupancy* classification that is most similar in terms of occupant density, activities and building construction; or shall be determined by an *approved* engineering analysis. The ventilation system shall be designed to supply the required rate of *ventilation air* continuously during the period the building is occupied, except as otherwise stated in other provisions of the code.

With the exception of smoking lounges, the ventilation rates in Table 403.3 are based on the absence of smoking in occupiable spaces. Where smoking is anticipated in a space other than a smoking lounge, the ventilation system serving the space shall be designed to provide ventilation over and above that required by Table 403.3 in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

Exception: The occupant load is not required to be determined based on the estimated maximum occupant load rate indicated in Table 403.3 where *approved* statistical data document the accuracy of an alternate anticipated occupant density.

403.3.1 Zone outdoor airflow. The minimum outdoor airflow required to be supplied to each zone shall be determined as a function of *occupancy* classification and space air distribution effectiveness in accordance with Sections 403.3.1.1 through 403.3.1.3.

TABLE 403.3
MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	OCCUPANT DENSITY #/1000 FT^{2} [a]	PEOPLE OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_p CFM/PERSON	AREA OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_a CFM/FT^{2} [a]	EXHAUST AIRFLOW RATE CFM/FT^{2} [a]
Correctional facilities				
Cells				
without plumbing fixtures	25	5	0.12	—
with plumbing fixtures[g]	25	5	0.12	1.0
Dining halls (see food and beverage service)	—	—	—	—
Guard stations	15	5	0.06	—
Day room	30	5	0.06	—
Booking/waiting	50	7.5	0.06	—
Dry cleaners, laundries				
Coin-operated dry cleaner	20	15	—	—
Coin-operated laundries	20	7.5	0.06	—
Commercial dry cleaner	30	30	—	—
Commercial laundry	10	25	—	—
Storage, pick up	30	7.5	0.12	—
Education				
Auditoriums	150	5	0.06	—
Corridors (see public spaces)	—	—	—	—
Media center	25	10	0.12	—
Sports locker rooms[g]	—	—	—	0.5
Music/theater/dance	35	10	0.06	—
Smoking lounges[b]	70	60		—
Day care (through age 4)	25	10	0.18	—
Classrooms (ages 5-8)	25	10	0.12	—
Classrooms (age 9 plus)	35	10	0.12	—
Lecture classroom	65	7.5	0.06	—
Lecture hall (fixed seats)	150	7.5	0.06	—
Art classroom[g]	20	10	0.18	0.7
Science laboratories[g]	25	10	0.18	1.0
Wood/metal shops[g]	20	10	0.18	0.5
Computer lab	25	10	0.12	—
Multiuse assembly	100	7.5	0.06	—
Locker/dressing rooms[g]	—	—	—	0.25
Food and beverage service				
Bars, cocktail lounges	100	7.5	0.18	—
Cafeteria, fast food	100	7.5	0.18	—
Dining rooms	70	7.5	0.18	—
Kitchens (cooking)[b]	—	—	—	0.7
Hospitals, nursing and convalescent homes				
Autopsy rooms[b]	—	—	—	0.5
Medical procedure rooms	20	15	—	—
Operating rooms	20	30	—	—
Patient rooms	10	25	—	—
Physical therapy	20	15	—	—
Recovery and ICU	20	15	—	—

(continued)

TABLE 403.3—continued
MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	OCCUPANT DENSITY #/1000 FT[2 a]	PEOPLE OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_p CFM/PERSON	AREA OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_a CFM/FT[2 a]	EXHAUST AIRFLOW RATE CFM/FT[2 a]
Hotels, motels, resorts and dormitories				
Multipurpose assembly		5	0.06	—
Bathrooms/toilet—private[g]		—	—	25/50[f]
Bedroom/living room		5	0.06	—
Conference/meeting		5	0.06	—
Dormitory sleeping areas		5	0.06	—
Gambling casinos		7.5	0.18	—
Lobbies/prefunction		7.5	0.06	—
Offices				
Conference rooms	50	5	0.06	—
Office spaces	5	5	0.06	—
Reception areas	30	5	0.06	—
Telephone/data entry	60	5	0.06	—
Main entry lobbies	10	5	0.06	—
Private dwellings, single and multiple				
Garages, common for multiple units[b]	—	—	—	0.75
Garages, separate for each dwelling[b]	—	—	—	100 cfm per car
Kitchens[b]	—	—	—	25/100[f]
Living areas[c]	Based upon number of bedrooms. First bedroom, 2; each additional bedroom, 1	0.35 ACH but not less than 15 cfm/person	—	—
Toilet rooms and bathrooms[g]	—	—	—	20/50[f]
Public spaces				
Corridors	—	—	0.06	—
Elevator car	—	—	—	1.0
Shower room (per shower head)[g]	—	—	—	50/20[f]
Smoking lounges[b]	70	60	—	—
Toilet rooms — public[g]	—	—	—	50/70[e]
Places of religious worship	120	5	0.06	—
Courtrooms	70	5	0.06	—
Legislative chambers	50	5	0.06	—
Libraries	10	5	0.12	—
Museums (children's)	40	7.5	0.12	—
Museums/galleries	40	7.5	0.06	—
Retail stores, sales floors and showroom floors				
Sales (except as below)	15	7.5	0.12	—
Dressing rooms	—	—	—	0.25
Mall common areas	40	7.5	0.06	—
Shipping and receiving	—	—	0.12	—
Smoking lounges[b]	70	60	—	—
Storage rooms	—	—	0.12	—
Warehouses (see storage)	—	—	—	—

(continued)

TABLE 403.3—continued
MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	OCCUPANT DENSITY #/1000 FT[2 a]	PEOPLE OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_p CFM/PERSON	AREA OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_a CFM/FT[2 a]	EXHAUST AIRFLOW RATE CFM/FT[2 a]
Specialty shops				
Automotive motor-fuel dispensing stations[b]	—	—	—	1.5
Barber	25	7.5	0.06	0.5
Beauty salons[b]	25	20	0.12	0.6
Nail salons [b, h]	25	20	0.12	0.6
Embalming room[b]	—	—	—	2.0
Pet shops (animal areas)[b]	10	7.5	0.18	0.9
Supermarkets	8	7.5	0.06	—
Sports and amusement				
Disco/dance floors	100	20	0.06	—
Bowling alleys (seating areas)	40	10	0.12	—
Game arcades	20	7.5	0.18	—
Ice arenas without combustion engines	—	—	0.30	0.5
Gym, stadium, arena (play area)	—	—	0.30	—
Spectator areas	150	7.5	0.06	—
Swimming pools (pool and deck area)	—	—	0.48	—
Health club/aerobics room	40	20	0.06	—
Health club/weight room	10	20	0.06	—
Storage				
Repair garages, enclosed parking garages[b,d]	—	—	—	0.75
Warehouses	—	—	0.06	—
Theaters				
Auditoriums (see education)	—	—	—	—
Lobbies	150	5	0.06	—
Stages, studios	70	10	0.06	—
Ticket booths	60	5	0.06	—
Transportation				
Platforms	100	7.5	0.06	—
Transportation waiting	100	7.5	0.06	—
Workrooms				
Bank vaults/safe deposit	5	5	0.06	—
Darkrooms	—	—	—	1.0
Copy, printing rooms	4	5	0.06	0.5
Meat processing[c]	10	15	—	—
Pharmacy (prep. area)	10	5	0.18	—
Photo studios	10	5	0.12	—
Computer (without printing)	4	5	0.06	—

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.0004719 m^3/s, 1 ton = 908 kg, 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot = 0.00508 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$, °C = [(°F) -32]/1.8, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

a. Based upon *net occupiable floor area*.

b. Mechanical exhaust required and the recirculation of air from such spaces is prohibited (see Section 403.2.1, Item 3).

c. Spaces unheated or maintained below 50°F are not covered by these requirements unless the occupancy is continuous.

d. Ventilation systems in enclosed parking garages shall comply with Section 404.

e. Rates are per water closet or urinal. The higher rate shall be provided where the exhaust system is designed to operate intermittently. The lower rate shall be permitted only where the exhaust system is designed to operate continuously while occupied.

f. Rates are per room unless otherwise indicated. The higher rate shall be provided where the exhaust system is designed to operate intermittently. The lower rate shall be permitted only where the exhaust system is designed to operate continuously while occupied.

g. Mechanical exhaust is required and recirculation is prohibited except that recirculation shall be permitted where the resulting supply airstream consists of not more than 10 percent air recirculated from these spaces (see Section 403.2.1, Items 2 and 4).

h. For nail salons, each nail station shall be provided with a *source capture system* capable of exhausting not less than 50 cfm per station.

403.3.1.1 Breathing zone outdoor airflow. The outdoor airflow rate required in the *breathing zone* (V_{bz}) of the *occupiable space* or spaces in a zone shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-1.

$$V_{bz} = R_p P_z + R_a A_z \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-1)}$$

where:

A_z = Zone floor area: the *net occupiable floor area* of the space or spaces in the zone.

P_z = Zone population: the number of people in the space or spaces in the zone.

R_p = People outdoor air rate: the outdoor airflow rate required per person from Table 403.3.

R_a = Area outdoor air rate: the outdoor airflow rate required per unit area from Table 403.3.

403.3.1.2 Zone air distribution effectiveness. The zone air distribution effectiveness (E_z) shall be determined using Table 403.3.1.2.

TABLE 403.3.1.2
ZONE AIR DISTRIBUTION EFFECTIVENESS[a,b,c,d,e]

Air Distribution Configuration	E_z
Ceiling or floor supply of cool air	1.0[f]
Ceiling or floor supply of warm air and floor return	1.0
Ceiling supply of warm air and ceiling return	0.8[g]
Floor supply of warm air and ceiling return	0.7
Makeup air drawn in on the opposite side of the room from the exhaust and/or return	0.8
Makeup air drawn in near to the exhaust and/or return location	0.5

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 foot per minute = 0.00506 m/s, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. "Cool air" is air cooler than space temperature.
b. "Warm air" is air warmer than space temperature.
c. "Ceiling" includes any point above the breathing zone.
d. "Floor" includes any point below the breathing zone.
e. "Makeup air" is air supplied or transferred to a zone to replace air removed from the zone by exhaust or return systems.
f. Zone air distribution effectiveness of 1.2 shall be permitted for systems with a floor supply of cool air and ceiling return, provided that low-velocity displacement ventilation achieves unidirectional flow and thermal stratification.
g. Zone air distribution effectiveness of 1.0 shall be permitted for systems with a ceiling supply of warm air, provided that supply air temperature is less than 15°F above space temperature and provided that the 150 foot-per-minute supply air jet reaches to within $4^1/_2$ feet of floor level.

403.3.1.3 Zone outdoor airflow. The zone outdoor airflow rate (V_{oz}), shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-2.

$$V_{oz} = \frac{V_{bz}}{E_z} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-2)}$$

403.3.2 System outdoor airflow. The outdoor air required to be supplied by each ventilation system shall be determined in accordance with Sections 403.3.2.1 through 403.3.2.3 as a function of system type and zone outdoor airflow rates.

403.3.2.1 Single zone systems. Where one air handler supplies a mixture of outdoor air and recirculated return air to only one zone, the system outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ot}) shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-3.

$$V_{ot} = V_{oz} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-3)}$$

403.3.2.2 100-percent outdoor air systems. Where one air handler supplies only outdoor air to one or more zones, the system outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ot}) shall be determined using Equation 4-4.

$$V_{ot} = \Sigma_{all\ zones} V_{oz} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-4)}$$

403.3.2.3 Multiple zone recirculating systems. Where one air handler supplies a mixture of outdoor air and recirculated return air to more than one zone, the system outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ot}) shall be determined in accordance with Sections 403.3.2.3.1 through 403.3.2.3.4.

403.3.2.3.1 Primary outdoor air fraction. The primary outdoor air fraction (Z_p) shall be determined for each zone in accordance with Equation 4-5.

$$Z_p = \frac{V_{oz}}{V_{pz}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-5)}$$

where:

V_{pz} = Primary airflow: The airflow rate supplied to the zone from the air-handling unit at which the outdoor air intake is located. It includes outdoor intake air and recirculated air from that air-handling unit but does not include air transferred or air recirculated to the zone by other means. For design purposes, V_{pz} shall be the zone design primary airflow rate, except for zones with variable air volume supply and V_{pz} shall be the lowest expected primary airflow rate to the zone when it is fully occupied.

403.3.2.3.2 System ventilation efficiency. The system efficiency (E_v) shall be determined ventilation using Table 403.3.2.3.2 or Appendix A of ASHRAE 62.1.

TABLE 403.3.2.3.2
SYSTEM VENTILATION EFFICIENCY[a,b]

***Max* (Z_p)**	**E_v**
≤ 0.15	1
≤ 0.25	0.9
≤ 0.35	0.8
≤ 0.45	0.7
≤ 0.55	0.6
≤ 0.65	0.5
≤ 0.75	0.4
> 0.75	0.3

a. *Max* (Z_p) is the largest value of Z_p calculated using Equation 4-5 among all the zones served by the system.
b. Interpolating between table values shall be permitted.

403.3.2.3.3 Uncorrected outdoor air intake. The uncorrected outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ou}) shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-6.

$$V_{ou} = D\Sigma_{all\ zones}R_pP_z + \Sigma_{all\ zones}R_aA_z$$

(Equation 4-6)

where:

D = Occupant diversity: the ratio of the system population to the sum of the zone populations, determined in accordance with Equation 4-7.

$$D = \frac{P_s}{\Sigma_{all\ zones}P_z} \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-7)}$$

where:

P_s = System population: The total number of occupants in the area served by the system. For design purposes, P_s shall be the maximum number of occupants expected to be concurrently in all zones served by the system.

403.3.2.3.4 Outdoor air intake flow rate. The outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ot}) shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-8.

$$V_{ot} = \frac{V_{ou}}{E_v} \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-8)}$$

403.4 Exhaust ventilation. Exhaust airflow rate shall be provided in accordance with the requirements in Table 403.3. Exhaust *makeup air* shall be permitted to be any combination of outdoor air, recirculated air and transfer air, except as limited in accordance with Section 403.2.

403.5 System operation. The minimum flow rate of outdoor air that the ventilation system must be capable of supplying during its operation shall be permitted to be based on the rate per person indicated in Table 403.3 and the actual number of occupants present.

403.6 Variable air volume system control. Variable air volume air distribution systems, other than those designed to supply only 100-percent outdoor air, shall be provided with controls to regulate the flow of outdoor air. Such control system shall be designed to maintain the flow rate of outdoor air at a rate of not less than that required by Section 403.3 over the entire range of supply air operating rates.

403.7 Balancing. The *ventilation air* distribution system shall be provided with means to adjust the system to achieve at least the minimum ventilation airflow rate as required by Sections 403.3 and 403.4. Ventilation systems shall be balanced by an *approved* method. Such balancing shall verify that the ventilation system is capable of supplying and exhausting the airflow rates required by Sections 403.3 and 403.4.

SECTION 404
ENCLOSED PARKING GARAGES

404.1 Enclosed parking garages. Mechanical ventilation systems shall operate automatically upon detection of certain gas concentrations. If the parking garage will house vehicles that emit carbon monoxide (CO), the parking garage must be equipped with a CO detection device that will trigger the mechanical system to operate automatically upon detection of a CO level of 25 parts per million (ppm). If the parking garage will house vehicles that emit nitrogen dioxide (NO_2), the parking garage shall be equipped with a NO_2 detection device that triggers the mechanical system to operate automatically upon detection of a NO_2 level of 3 ppm. If the parking garage will house vehicles that emit both CO and NO_2, the parking garage shall be equipped with both types of detection devices.

404.2 Minimum exhaust. The mechanical ventilation system shall be capable of producing a minimum exhaust rate of 0.75 cfm per square foot (0.0038 m^3/sm^2) of floor area.

404.3 Occupied spaces accessory to public garages. Connecting offices, waiting rooms, ticket booths, elevator lobbies, and similar uses that are accessory to a public garage shall be maintained at a positive pressure and shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with IMC Section 403.3.

404.4 Prohibition of heated commercial parking garages. Commercial parking garages shall comply with the *Minnesota Commercial Energy Code*, Chapter 1323.

SECTION 405
SYSTEMS CONTROL

405.1 General. Mechanical ventilation systems shall be provided with manual or automatic controls that will operate such systems whenever the spaces are occupied. Air-conditioning systems that supply required *ventilation air* shall be provided with controls designed to automatically maintain the required outdoor air supply rate during occupancy.

SECTION 406
VENTILATION OF UNINHABITED SPACES

406.1 General. Uninhabited spaces, such as crawl spaces and attics, shall be provided with *natural ventilation* openings as required by the *International Building Code* or shall be provided with a mechanical exhaust and supply air system. The mechanical exhaust rate shall be not less than 0.02 cfm per square foot ($0.00001\ m^3/s \bullet m^2$) of horizontal area and shall be automatically controlled to operate when the relative humidity in the space served exceeds 60 percent.

CHAPTER 5

EXHAUST SYSTEMS

SECTION 501 GENERAL

501.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, construction and installation of mechanical exhaust systems, including exhaust systems serving clothes dryers and cooking appliances; hazardous exhaust systems; dust, stock and refuse conveyor systems; subslab soil exhaust systems; smoke control systems; energy recovery ventilation systems and other systems specified in Section 502.

501.2 Independent system required. Single or combined mechanical exhaust systems for environmental air shall be independent of all other exhaust systems. Dryer exhaust shall be independent of all other systems. Type I exhaust systems shall be independent of all other exhaust systems except as provided in Section 506.3.5. Single or combined Type II exhaust systems for food-processing operations shall be independent of all other exhaust systems. Kitchen exhaust systems shall be constructed in accordance with Section 505 for domestic equipment and Sections 506 through 509 for commercial equipment.

501.3 Exhaust discharge. The air removed by every mechanical exhaust system shall be discharged outdoors at a point where it will not cause a nuisance and not less than the distances specified in IMC Section 501.3.1. The air shall be discharged to a location from which it cannot again be readily drawn in by a ventilating system. Air shall not be exhausted into an attic or crawl space and the exhaust system shall be equipped with a backdraft damper at the point of discharge.

Exception: Commercial cooking recirculating systems.

501.3.1 Location of exhaust outlets. The termination point of exhaust outlets and ducts discharging to the outdoors shall be located with the following minimum distances:

1. For ducts conveying explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts: 30 feet (9144 mm) from property lines; 10 feet (3048 mm) from operable openings into buildings; 6 feet (1829 mm) from exterior walls and roofs; 30 feet (9144 mm) from combustible walls and operable openings into buildings which are in the direction of the exhaust discharge; 10 feet (3048 mm) above adjoining grade.
2. For other product-conveying outlets: 10 feet (3048 mm) from the property lines; 3 feet (914 mm) from exterior walls and roofs; 10 feet (3048 mm) from operable openings into buildings; 10 feet (3048 mm) above adjoining grade.
3. For all *environmental air* exhaust: 3 feet (914 mm) from property lines; 3 feet (914 mm) from operable openings into buildings for all occupancies other than Group U, and 10 feet (3048 mm) from mechanical air intakes. Such exhaust shall not be considered hazardous or noxious.
4. Exhaust outlets serving structures in flood hazard areas shall be installed at or above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment.
5. For specific systems see the following sections:
   - 5.1. Clothes dryer exhaust, Section 504.4.
   - 5.2. Kitchen hoods and other kitchen exhaust *equipment*, Sections 506.3.13, 506.4 and 506.5.
   - 5.3. Dust stock and refuse conveying systems, Section 511.2.
   - 5.4. Subslab soil exhaust systems, Section 512.4.
   - 5.5. Smoke control systems, Section 513.10.3.
   - 5.6. Refrigerant discharge, Section 1105.7.
   - 5.7. Machinery room discharge, Section 1105.6.1.

501.3.1.1 Exhaust discharge. *Exhaust air* shall not be directed onto walkways.

501.3.2 Exhaust opening protection. Exhaust openings that terminate outdoors shall be protected with corrosion-resistant screens, louvers or grilles. Openings in screens, louvers and grilles shall be sized not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6 mm) and not larger than $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm). Openings shall be protected against local weather conditions. Louvers that protect exhaust openings in structures located in hurricane-prone regions, as defined in the *International Building Code*, shall comply with AMCA Standard 550. Outdoor openings located in exterior walls shall meet the provisions for exterior wall opening protectives in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

501.4 Pressure equalization. Mechanical exhaust systems shall be sized and operated to remove the quantity of air required by this chapter. If a greater quantity of air is supplied by a mechanical ventilating supply system than is removed by a mechanical exhaust system for a room, adequate means shall be provided for the natural exit of the excess air supplied.

501.4.1 Makeup air in new dwelling units. *Makeup air* quantity for new dwelling units shall be determined by using IMC Table 501.4.1 and shall be supplied in accordance with IMC Section 501.4.2.

Exception: *Makeup air* provisions of IMC Section 501.4.1 are not required when any of the following are demonstrated:

1. A test is performed according to ASTM Standard E1998-02, S*tandard Guide for Assessing Depressurization-Induced Backdrafting and Spillage from Vented Combustion Appliances*, and documentation is provided that the vented combustion appliances continue to operate within established parameters of the test.

2. A test approved by the building official verifies proper operation of vented combustion *appliances*.

501.4.2 Makeup air supply. *Makeup air* shall be provided by one of the following methods:

1. Passive *makeup air* shall be provided by passive openings according to the following:
   1.1. Passive *makeup air* openings from the outdoors shall be sized according to IMC Table 501.4.2.
   1.2. Barometric dampers are prohibited in passive *makeup air* openings when any atmospherically vented *appliance* is installed.
   1.3. Single passive openings larger than 8 inches (204 mm) diameter, or equivalent, shall be provided with a motorized damper that is electrically interlocked with the largest exhaust system.
2. Powered *makeup air* shall be provided if the size of a single opening or multiple openings exceeds 11 inches (280 mm) diameter, or equivalent, when sized according to IMC Table 501.4.2. Powered *makeup air* shall comply with the following:
   2.1. Powered *makeup air* shall be electrically interlocked with the largest exhaust system.

TABLE 501.4.1
PROCEDURE TO DETERMINE MAKEUP AIR QUANTITY FOR EXHAUST APPLIANCES IN DWELLING UNITS

	ONE OR MULTIPLE POWER VENT OR DIRECT VENT APPLIANCES OR NO COMBUSTION APPLIANCES[A]	ONE OR MULTIPLE FAN-ASSISTED APPLIANCES AND POWER VENT OR DIRECT VENT APPLIANCES[B]	ONE ATMOSPHERICALLY VENTED GAS OR OIL APPLIANCE OR ONE SOLID FUEL APPLIANCE[C]	MULTIPLE APPLIANCES THAT ARE ATMOSPHERICALLY VENTED GAS OR OIL APPLIANCES OR SOLID FUEL APPLIANCES[D]
1. Use the Appropriate Column to Estimate House Infiltration				
a) pressure factor (cfm/sf)	0.15	0.09	0.06	0.03
b) conditioned floor area (sf)	—	—	—	—
(including unfinished basements)				
Estimated House Infiltration (cfm): [1a × 1b]	—	—	—	—
2. Exhaust Capacity				
a) clothes dryer	135	135	135	135
b) 80% of largest exhaust rating (cfm):	—	—	—	—
(not applicable if recirculating system or if powered *makeup air* is electrically interlocked and matched to exhaust)				
c) 80% of next largest exhaust rating (cfm):	not applicable	—	—	—
(not applicable if recirculating system or if powered *makeup air* is electrically interlocked and matched to exhaust)				
Total Exhaust Capacity (cfm): [2a+2b+2c]	—	—	—	—
3. *Makeup Air* Requirement				
a) Total Exhaust Capacity (from above)	—	—	—	—
b) Estimated House Infiltration (from above)	—	—	—	—
Makeup Air Quality (cfm): [3a - 3b]	—	—	—	—
(if value is negative, no makeup air is needed				
4. For *Makeup Air* Opening Sizing, refer to Table 501.4.2.				

A. Use this column if there are other than fan-assisted or atmospherically vented gas or oil *appliances* or if there are no *combustion appliances*.
B. Use this column if there is one fan-assisted *appliance* per venting system. Other than atmospherically vented *appliances* may also be included.
C. Use this column if there is one atmospherically vented (other than fan-assisted) gas or oil *appliance* per venting system or one solid fuel *appliance*.
D. Use this column if there are multiple atmospherically vented gas or oil *appliances* using a common vent or if there are atmospherically vented gas or oil *appliances* and solid fuel *appliances*.

2.2. Powered makeup air shall be matched to the airflow of the largest exhaust system.

3. *Makeup air* shall be provided by a combination of passive openings and powered means according to IMC Table 501.4.2 and the following:

3.1. Passive makeup air openings shall comply with item 1.

3.2. Powered *makeup air* shall be supplied for the quantity of airflow in excess of the passive *makeup air* opening provided, and it shall be electrically interlocked with the exhaust system.

501.4.2.1 Makeup air ducts. *Makeup air* ducts shall be constructed and installed according to IMC Chapter 6 and Section 501.4.2.

501.4.2.2 Makeup air intake. *Makeup air* intake openings shall be located to avoid intake of exhaust air in accordance with IMC Section 401.4 and IFGC Section 503.8, and shall be covered with corrosion resistant screen of not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) mesh. *Makeup air* intake openings shall be located at least 12 inches (305 mm) above adjoining grade level.

501.4.2.3 Makeup air location. *Makeup air* requirements of 175 cubic feet per minute (cfm) (0.084 m^3/s) and greater shall be introduced to the dwelling in one of the following locations:

1. In the space containing the vented *combustion appliances*.
2. In the space containing the exhaust system.
3. In a space that is freely communicating with the exhaust system and is *approved* by the building official.

501.4.2.4 Makeup air termination restriction. A *makeup air* opening shall not terminate in the return air plenum of a forced air heating system unless it is installed according to the heating appliance manufacturer's installation instructions.

501.4.2.5 Separate makeup air and combustion air openings. When both makeup air and *combustion* air openings are required, they shall be provided through separate openings to the outdoors, subject to IFGC Section 304, to determine requirements for air for *combustion* and ventilation:

Exception: Combination *makeup air* and *combustion air* systems may be approved by the building official where they are reasonably equivalent in terms of health, safety, and durability.

TABLE 501.4.2
MAKEUP AIR OPENING SIZING TABLE FOR NEW AND EXISTING DWELLING UNITS

TYPE OF OPENING OR SYSTEM	ONE OR MULTIPLE POWER VENT OR DIRECT VENT APPLIANCES OR NO COMBUSTION APPLIANCES[A]	ONE OR MULTIPLE FAN-ASSISTED APPLIANCES AND POWER VENT OR DIRECT VENT APPLIANCES[B]	ONE ATMOSPHERICALLY VENTED GAS OR OIL APPLIANCE OR ONE SOLID FUEL APPLIANCE[C]	MULTIPLE APPLIANCES THAT ARE ATMOSPHERICALLY VENTED GAS OR OIL APPLIANCES OR SOLID FUEL APPLIANCES[D]	PASSIVE MAKEUP AIR OPENING DUCT DIAMETER[E, F, G]
	(cfm)	(cfm)	(cfm)	(cfm)	(inches)
Passive opening	1-36	1-22	1-15	1-9	3
Passive opening	37-66	23-41	16-28	10-17	4
Passive opening	67-109	42-66	29-46	18-28	5
Passive opening	110-163	67-100	47-69	29-42	6
Passive opening	164-232	101-143	70-99	43-61	7
Passive opening	233-317	144-195	100-135	62-83	8
Passive opening with motorized damper	318-419	196-258	136-179	84-110	9
Passive opening with motorized damper	420-539	259-332	180-230	111-142	10
Passive opening with motorized damper	540-679	333-419	231-290	143-179	11
Powered makeup air[H]	> 679	> 419	> 290	> 179	Not applicable

A. Use this column if there are other than fan-assisted or atmospherically vented gas or oil *appliances* or if there are no *combustion appliances*.
B. Use this column if there is one fan-assisted *appliance* per venting system. Other than atmospherically vented *appliances* may also be included.
C. Use this column if there is one atmospherically vented (other than fan-assisted) gas or oil *appliance* per venting system or one solid fuel *appliance*.
D. Use this column if there are multiple atmospherically vented gas or oil *appliances* using a common vent or if there are atmospherically vented gas or oil *appliances* and solid fuel *appliances*.
E. An equivalent length of 100 feet of round smooth metal duct is assumed. Subtract 40 feet for the exterior hood and ten feet for each 90-degree elbow to determine the remaining length of straight duct allowable.
F. If flexible duct is used, increase the duct diameter by one inch. Flexible duct shall be stretched with minimal sags.
G. Barometric dampers are prohibited in passive *makeup air* openings when any atmospherically vented *appliance* is installed.
H. Powered *makeup air* shall be electrically interlocked with the largest exhaust system.

501.4.2.6 Makeup air effectiveness. The *makeup air* shall not reduce the effectiveness of exhaust systems or performance of vented combustion *appliances*, and *makeup air* shall not adversely affect the heating or cooling capability of the mechanical *appliances*.

501.4.3 Additions, alterations, or installations of mechanical systems in existing dwelling units. *Makeup air* shall be supplied to existing *dwelling units* when any of the following conditions occur:

1. If a *dwelling unit* was constructed after 2003 using the *makeup air* provisions of Section 501.4.2, *makeup air* quantity shall be determined by using IMC Table 501.4.1 and shall be supplied according to Section 501.4.2 when any of the following conditions occur:

   1.1. A vented *combustion appliance*, including a solid fuel *appliance*, is installed or replaced.

   1.2. An exhaust system is installed or replaced.

   Exception: If powered *makeup air* is electrically interlocked and matched to the airflow of the exhaust system, additional *makeup air* is not required.

2. If a *dwelling unit* was constructed after 1999 using the provisions of the *Minnesota Energy Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 7672, *makeup air* quantity shall be determined by using Table 501.4.1 and shall be supplied in accordance with Section 501.4.2 when any of the following conditions occur:

   2.1. A vented *combustion appliance*, including a solid fuel *appliance*, is installed or replaced.

   2.2. An exhaust system is installed or replaced.

   Exception: If powered *makeup air* is electrically interlocked and matched to the airflow of the exhaust system, additional *makeup air* is not required.

3. When a solid fuel *appliance* is installed in a *dwelling unit* constructed during or after 1994 under the *Minnesota Energy Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 7670, *makeup air* quantity shall be determined by using Table 501.4.1 and shall be supplied according to Section 501.4.2.

   Exception: If a closed *combustion* solid-fuel-burning *appliance* is installed with *combustion air* in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, additional *makeup air* is not required.

4. When an exhaust system with a rated capacity greater than 300 cfm (0.144 m^3/s) is installed in a *dwelling unit* constructed during or after 1994 under the *Minnesota Energy Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 7670, *makeup air* quantity shall be determined by using Table 501.4.3(1) and shall be supplied according to Section 501.4.2.

   Exception: If powered *makeup air* is electrically interlocked and matched to the airflow of the exhaust system, additional *makeup air* is not required.

5. When an exhaust system with a rated capacity greater than 300 cfm (0.144 m^3/s) is installed in a *dwelling unit* constructed prior to 1994, *makeup air* quantity shall be determined by using Table 501.4.3(2) and shall be supplied according to Section 501.4.2.

   Exception: If powered *makeup air* is electrically interlocked and matched to the airflow of the exhaust system, additional *makeup air* is not required.

6. When a solid fuel *appliance* is installed in a *dwelling unit* constructed prior to 1994, *makeup air* quantity shall be determined by using Table 501.4.3(3) and shall be supplied according to Section 501.4.2.

   Exception: If a closed *combustion* solid-fuel-burning *appliance* is installed with *combustion air* in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, additional *makeup air* is not required.

   Exception: *Makeup air* is not required in items 1 to 6 when any of the following are demonstrated:

   1. A test is performed according to ASTM Standard E1998-02, *Standard Guide for Assessing Depressurization-Induced Backdrafting and Spillage from Vented Combustion Appliances*, and documentation is provided that the vented combustion *appliances* continue to operate within established parameters of the test.

   2. A test *approved* by the building official verifies proper operation of vented *combustion appliances*.

501.5 Ducts. Where exhaust duct construction is not specified in this chapter, such construction shall comply with Chapter 6.

TABLE 501.4.3(1)
PROCEDURE TO DETERMINE MAKEUP AIR QUANTITY FOR EXHAUST APPLIANCES IN EXISTING DWELLING UNITS
(Refer to Item 4 in Section 501.4.3 to determine applicability of this table)

	ONE OR MULTIPLE POWER VENT OR DIRECT VENT APPLIANCES OR NO COMBUSTION APPLIANCES[A]	ONE OR MULTIPLE FAN-ASSISTED APPLIANCES AND POWER VENT OR DIRECT VENT APPLIANCES[B]	ONE ATMOSPHERICALLY VENTED GAS OR OIL APPLIANCE OR ONE SOLID FUEL APPLIANCE[C]	MULTIPLE APPLIANCES THAT ARE ATMOSPHERICALLY VENTED GAS OR OIL APPLIANCES OR SOLID FUEL APPLIANCES[D]
1. Use the appropriate column to estimate house infiltration				
a) pressure factor (cfm/sf)	0.15	0.09	0.06	0.03
b) conditioned floor area (sf) Estimated House Infiltration (cfm): [1a × 1b]	—	—	—	—
2. Exhaust capacity				
80% of exhaust rating = exhaust capacity (cfm):	—	—	—	—
(not applicable if recirculating system or if powered makeup air is electrically interlocked and matched to exhaust)				
3. Makeup air requirement				
a) Exhaust capacity (from above)	—	—	—	—
b) Estimated House Infiltration (from above)	—	—	—	—
Makeup air quality (cfm): [3a - 3b]	—	—	—	—
(if value is negative, no makeup air is needed)				
4. For makeup air opening sizing, refer to Table 501.4.2				

A. Use this column if there are other than fan-assisted or atmospherically vented gas or oil *appliances* or if there are no *combustion appliances*.
B. Use this column if there is one fan-assisted *appliance* per venting system. Other than atmospherically vented *appliances* may also be included.
C. Use this column if there is one atmospherically vented (other than fan-assisted) gas or oil *appliance* per venting system or one solid fuel *appliance*.
D. Use this column if there are multiple atmospherically vented gas or oil *appliances* using a common vent or if there are atmospherically vented gas or oil *appliances* and solid fuel *appliances*.

TABLE 501.4.3(2)
PROCEDURE TO DETERMINE MAKEUP AIR QUANTITY FOR EXHAUST APPLIANCES IN EXISTING DWELLING UNITS
(Refer to Item 5 in Section 501.4.3 to determine applicability of this table)

	ONE OR MULTIPLE POWER VENT OR DIRECT VENT APPLIANCES OR NO COMBUSTION APPLIANCES[A]	ONE OR MULTIPLE FAN-ASSISTED APPLIANCES AND POWER VENT OR DIRECT VENT APPLIANCES[B]	ONE ATMOSPHERICALLY VENTED GAS OR OIL APPLIANCE OR ONE SOLID FUEL APPLIANCE[C]	MULTIPLE APPLIANCES THAT ARE ATMOSPHERICALLY VENTED GAS OR OIL APPLIANCES OR SOLID FUEL APPLIANCES[D]
1. Use the appropriate column to estimate house infiltration				
a) pressure factor (cfm/sf)	0.25	0.15	0.10	0.05
b) conditioned floor area (sf)	—	—	—	—
(including unfinished basements)				
Estimated House Infiltration (cfm): [1a × 1b]	—	—	—	—
or Alternative calculation (by using blower door test)[E]				
c) conversion factor	0.75	0.45	0.30	0.15
d) CFM50 value (from blower door test)	—	—	—	—
Estimated House Infiltration (cfm): [1c x 1d]	—	—	—	—
2. Exhaust Capacity				
80% of exhaust rating = exhaust capacity (cfm):	—	—	—	—
(not applicable if recirculating system or if powered makeup air is electrically interlocked and matched to exhaust)				
3. Makeup air requirement				
a) Exhaust capacity (from above)	—	—	—	—
b) Estimated House Infiltration (from above)	—	—	—	—
Makeup air quality (cfm): [3a - 3b]	—	—	—	—
(if value is negative, no makeup air is needed)				
4. For makeup air opening sizing, refer to Table 501.4.2				

A. Use this column if there are other than fan-assisted or atmospherically vented gas or oil *appliances* or if there are no *combustion appliances*.
B. Use this column if there is one fan-assisted *appliance* per venting system. Other than atmospherically vented *appliances* may also be included.
C. Use this column if there is one atmospherically vented (other than fan-assisted) gas or oil *appliance* per venting system or one solid fuel *appliance*.
D. Use this column if there are multiple atmospherically vented gas or oil *appliances* using a common vent or if there are atmospherically vented gas or oil *appliances* and solid fuel *appliances*.
E. As an alternative, the Estimated House Infiltration may be calculated by performing a blower door test and multiplying the conversion factor by the CFM50 value.

TABLE 501.4.3(3)
PROCEDURE TO DETERMINE MAKEUP AIR QUANTITY FOR EXHAUST APPLIANCES IN EXISTING DWELLING UNITS
(Refer to Item 6 in Section 501.4.3 to determine applicability of this table)

	ONE OR MULTIPLE POWER VENT OR DIRECT VENT APPLIANCES OR NO COMBUSTION APPLIANCES[A]	ONE OR MULTIPLE FAN-ASSISTED APPLIANCES AND POWER VENT OR DIRECT VENT APPLIANCES[B]	ONE ATMOSPHERICALLY VENTED GAS OR OIL APPLIANCE OR ONE SOLID FUEL APPLIANCE[C]	MULTIPLE APPLIANCES THAT ARE ATMOSPHERICALLY VENTED GAS OR OIL APPLIANCES OR SOLID FUEL APPLIANCES[D]
1. Use the appropriate column to estimate house infiltration				
a) pressure factor (cfm/sf)	0.25	0.15	0.10	0.05
b) conditioned floor area (sf)	—	—	—	—
(including unfinished basements)				
Estimated House Infiltration (cfm): [1a × 1b]	—	—	—	—
or Alternate calculation (by using blower door test)[E]				
c) conversion factor	0.75	0.45	0.30	0.15
d) CFM50 value (from blower door test)	—	—	—	—
Estimated House Infiltration (cfm): [1c × 1d]	—	—	—	—
2. Exhaust capacity				
a) clothes dryer (cfm)	135	135	135	135
b) 80% of largest exhaust rating (cfm):	—	—	—	—
(not applicable if recirculating system or if powered makeup air is electrically interlocked and matched to exhaust)				
c) 80% of next largest exhaust rating (cfm)	Not applicable	—	—	—
(not applicable if recirculating system or if powered makeup air is electrically interlocked and matched to exhaust)				
Total Exhaust Capacity (cfm): [2a+2b+2c]	—	—	—	—
3. Makeup air requirement				
a) Total Exhaust Capacity (from above)	—	—	—	—
b) Estimated House Infiltration (from above)	—	—	—	—
Makeup air quality (cfm): [3a - 3b]	—	—	—	—
(if value is negative, no makeup air is needed)				
4. For makeup air opening sizing, refer to Table 501.4.2				

A. Use this column if there are other than fan-assisted or atmospherically vented gas or oil *appliances* or if there are no *combustion appliances*.
B. Use this column if there is one fan-assisted *appliance* per venting system. Other than atmospherically vented *appliances* may also be included.
C. Use this column if there is one atmospherically vented (other than fan-assisted) gas or oil *appliance* per venting system or one solid fuel *appliance*.
D. Use this column if there are multiple atmospherically vented gas or oil *appliances* using a common vent or if there are atmospherically vented gas or oil *appliances* and solid fuel *appliances*.
E. As an alternative, the Estimated House Infiltration may be calculated by performing a blower door test and multiplying the conversion factor by the CFM50 value.

SECTION 502
REQUIRED SYSTEMS

502.1 General. An exhaust system shall be provided, maintained and operated as specifically required by this section and for all occupied areas where machines, vats, tanks, furnaces, forges, salamanders and other *appliances, equipment* and processes in such areas produce or throw off dust or particles sufficiently light to float in the air, or which emit heat, odors, fumes, spray, gas or smoke, in such quantities so as to be irritating or injurious to health or safety.

502.1.1 Exhaust location. The inlet to an exhaust system shall be located in the area of heaviest concentration of contaminants.

[F] 502.1.2 Fuel-dispensing areas. The bottom of an air inlet or exhaust opening in fuel-dispensing areas shall be located not more than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.

502.1.3 Equipment, appliance and service rooms. *Equipment*, *appliance* and system service rooms that house sources of odors, fumes, noxious gases, smoke, steam, dust, spray or other contaminants shall be designed and constructed so as to prevent spreading of such contaminants to other occupied parts of the building.

[F] 502.1.4 Hazardous exhaust. The mechanical exhaust of high concentrations of dust or hazardous vapors shall conform to the requirements of Section 510.

[F] 502.2 Aircraft fueling and defueling. Compartments housing piping, pumps, air eliminators, water separators, hose reels and similar *equipment* used in aircraft fueling and defueling operations shall be adequately ventilated at floor level or within the floor itself.

[F] 502.3 Battery-charging areas for powered industrial trucks and equipment. Ventilation shall be provided in an *approved* manner in battery-charging areas for powered industrial trucks and *equipment* to prevent a dangerous accumulation of flammable gases.

[F] 502.4 Stationary storage battery systems. Stationary storage battery systems, as regulated by Section 608 of the *International Fire Code*, shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with this chapter and Section 502.4.1 or 502.4.2.

Exception: Lithium-ion batteries shall not require ventilation.

[F] 502.4.1 Hydrogen limit in rooms. For flooded lead acid, flooded nickel cadmium and VRLA batteries, the ventilation system shall be designed to limit the maximum concentration of hydrogen to 1.0 percent of the total volume of the room.

[F] 502.4.2 Ventilation rate in rooms. Continuous ventilation shall be provided at a rate of not less than 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot (cfm/ft^2) [0.00508 m^3/(s • m^2)] of floor area of the room.

502.4.3 Supervision. Mechanical ventilation systems required by Section 502.4 shall be supervised by an approved central, proprietary or remote station service or shall initiate an audible and visual signal at a constantly attended on-site location.

[F] 502.5 Valve-regulated lead-acid batteries in cabinets. Valve-regulated lead-acid (VRLA) batteries installed in cabinets, as regulated by Section 608.6.2 of the *International Fire Code*, shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with Section 502.5.1 or 502.5.2.

[F] 502.5.1 Hydrogen limit in cabinets. The cabinet ventilation system shall be designed to limit the maximum concentration of hydrogen to 1.0 percent of the total volume of the cabinet during the worst-case event of simultaneous boost charging of all batteries in the cabinet.

[F] 502.5.2 Ventilation rate in cabinets. Continuous cabinet ventilation shall be provided at a rate of not less than 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot (cfm/ft^2) [0.00508 m^3/(s • m^2)] of the floor area covered by the cabinet. The room in which the cabinet is installed shall also be ventilated as required by Section 502.4.1 or 502.4.2.

502.5.3 Supervision. Mechanical ventilation systems required by Section 502.5 shall be supervised by an approved central, proprietary or remote station service or shall initiate an audible and visual signal at a constantly attended on-site location.

[F] 502.6 Dry cleaning plants. Ventilation in dry cleaning plants shall be adequate to protect employees and the public in accordance with this section and DOL 29 CFR Part 1910.1000, where applicable.

[F] 502.6.1 Type II systems. Type II dry cleaning systems shall be provided with a mechanical ventilation system that is designed to exhaust 1 cubic foot of air per minute for each square foot of floor area (1 cfm/ft^2) [0.00508 m^3/(s • m^2)] in dry cleaning rooms and in drying rooms. The ventilation system shall operate automatically when the dry cleaning *equipment* is in operation and shall have manual controls at an *approved* location.

[F] 502.6.2 Type IV and V systems. Type IV and V dry cleaning systems shall be provided with an automatically activated exhaust ventilation system to maintain a minimum of 100 feet per minute (0.51 m/s) air velocity through the loading door when the door is opened.

Exception: Dry cleaning units are not required to be provided with exhaust ventilation where an exhaust hood is installed immediately outside of and above the loading door which operates at an airflow rate as follows:

$$Q = 100 \times A_{LD} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 5-1)}$$

where:

Q = Flow rate exhausted through the hood, cubic feet per minute.

A_{LD} = Area of the loading door, square feet.

[F] 502.6.3 Spotting and pretreating. Scrubbing tubs, scouring, brushing or spotting operations shall be located such that solvent vapors are captured and exhausted by the ventilating system.

[F] 502.7 Application of flammable finishes. Mechanical exhaust as required by this section shall be provided for operations involving the application of flammable finishes.

[F] 502.7.1 During construction. Ventilation shall be provided for operations involving the application of materials containing flammable solvents in the course of construction, *alteration* or demolition of a structure.

[F] 502.7.2 Limited spraying spaces. Positive mechanical ventilation which provides a minimum of six complete air changes per hour shall be installed in limited spraying spaces. Such system shall meet the requirements of the *International Fire Code* for handling flammable vapors. Explosion venting is not required.

[F] 502.7.3 Flammable vapor areas. Mechanical ventilation of flammable vapor areas shall be provided in accordance with Sections 502.7.3.1 through 502.7.3.6.

[F] 502.7.3.1 Operation. Mechanical ventilation shall be kept in operation at all times while spraying operations are being conducted and for a sufficient time thereafter to allow vapors from drying coated articles and finishing material residue to be exhausted. Spraying *equipment* shall be interlocked with the ventilation of the flammable vapor area such that spraying operations cannot be conducted unless the ventilation system is in operation.

[F] 502.7.3.2 Recirculation. Air exhausted from spraying operations shall not be recirculated.

Exceptions:

1. Air exhausted from spraying operations shall be permitted to be recirculated as *makeup air* for unmanned spray operations provided that:
   1.1. The solid particulate has been removed.
   1.2. The vapor concentration is less than 25 percent of the lower flammable limit (LFL).
   1.3. *Approved equipment* is used to monitor the vapor concentration.
   1.4. An alarm is sounded and spray operations are automatically shut down if the vapor concentration exceeds 25 percent of the LFL.
   1.5. In the event of shutdown of the vapor concentration monitor, 100 percent of the air volume specified in Section 510 is automatically exhausted.
2. Air exhausted from spraying operations is allowed to be recirculated as *makeup air* to manned spraying operations where all of the conditions provided in Exception 1 are included in the installation and documents have been prepared to show that the installation does not pose a life safety hazard to personnel inside the spray booth, spraying space or spray room.

[F] 502.7.3.3 Air velocity. Ventilation systems shall be designed, installed and maintained such that the average air velocity over the open face of the booth, or booth cross section in the direction of airflow during spraying operations, is not less than 100 feet per minute (0.51 m/s).

[F] 502.7.3.4 Ventilation obstruction. Articles being sprayed shall be positioned in a manner that does not obstruct collection of overspray.

[F] 502.7.3.5 Independent ducts. Each spray booth and spray room shall have an independent exhaust duct system discharging to the outdoors.

Exceptions:

1. Multiple spray booths having a combined frontal area of 18 square feet (1.67 m^2) or less are allowed to have a common exhaust where identical spray-finishing material is used in each booth. If more than one fan serves one booth, such fans shall be interconnected so that all fans operate simultaneously.
2. Where treatment of exhaust is necessary for air pollution control or energy conservation, ducts shall be allowed to be manifolded if all of the following conditions are met:
   2.1. The sprayed materials used are compatible and will not react or cause ignition of the residue in the ducts.
   2.2. Nitrocellulose-based finishing material shall not be used.
   2.3. A filtering system shall be provided to reduce the amount of overspray carried into the duct manifold.
   2.4. Automatic sprinkler protection shall be provided at the junction of each booth exhaust with the manifold, in addition to the protection required by this chapter.

[F] 502.7.3.6 Fan motors and belts. Electric motors driving exhaust fans shall not be placed inside booths or ducts. Fan rotating elements shall be nonferrous or nonsparking or the casing shall consist of, or be lined with, such material. Belts shall not enter the duct or booth unless the belt and pulley within the duct are tightly enclosed.

[F] 502.7.4 Dipping operations. Flammable vapor areas of dip tank operations shall be provided with mechanical ventilation adequate to prevent the dangerous accumulation of vapors. Required ventilation systems shall be so arranged that the failure of any ventilating fan will automatically stop the dipping conveyor system.

[F] 502.7.5 Electrostatic apparatus. The flammable vapor area in spray-finishing operations involving electrostatic apparatus and devices shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.7.3.

[F] 502.7.6 Powder coating. Exhaust ventilation for powder-coating operations shall be sufficient to maintain the atmosphere below one-half of the minimum explosive concentration for the material being applied. Nondeposited, air-suspended powders shall be removed through exhaust ducts to the powder recovery system.

[F] 502.7.7 Floor resurfacing operations. To prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors during floor resurfacing operations, mechanical ventilation at a minimum rate of 1 cfm/ft^2 [0.00508 m^3/(s • m^2)] of area being finished shall be provided. Such exhaust shall be by *approved* temporary or portable means. Vapors shall be exhausted to the exterior of the building.

[F] 502.8 Hazardous materials—general requirements. Exhaust ventilation systems for structures containing hazardous materials shall be provided as required in Sections 502.8.1 through 502.8.5.

[F] 502.8.1 Storage in excess of the maximum allowable quantities. Indoor storage areas and storage buildings for hazardous materials in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area shall be provided with mechanical exhaust ventilation or *natural ventilation* where *natural ventilation* can be shown to be acceptable for the materials as stored.

Exceptions:

1. Storage areas for flammable solids complying with Section 5904 of the *International Fire Code*.
2. Storage areas and storage buildings for fireworks and explosives complying with Chapter 56 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.8.1.1 System requirements. Exhaust ventilation systems shall comply with all of the following:

1. The installation shall be in accordance with this code.
2. Mechanical ventilation shall be provided at a rate of not less than 1 cfm per square foot [0.00508 m^3/(s • m^2)] of floor area over the storage area.
3. The systems shall operate continuously unless alternate designs are *approved*.
4. A manual shutoff control shall be provided outside of the room in a position adjacent to the access door to the room or in another *approved* location. The switch shall be a break-glass or other *approved* type and shall be *labeled*: VENTILATION SYSTEM EMERGENCY SHUTOFF.
5. The exhaust ventilation shall be designed to consider the density of the potential fumes or vapors released. For fumes or vapors that are heavier than air, exhaust shall be taken from a point within 12 inches (305 mm) of the floor. For fumes or vapors that are lighter than air, exhaust shall be taken from a point within 12 inches (305 mm) of the highest point of the room.
6. The location of both the exhaust and inlet air openings shall be designed to provide air movement across all portions of the floor or room to prevent the accumulation of vapors.
7. The *exhaust air* shall not be recirculated to occupied areas if the materials stored are capable of emitting hazardous vapors and contaminants have not been removed. Air contaminated with explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts; flammable, highly toxic or toxic gases; or radioactive materials shall not be recirculated.

[F] 502.8.2 Gas rooms, exhausted enclosures and gas cabinets. The ventilation system for gas rooms, exhausted enclosures and gas cabinets for any quantity of hazardous material shall be designed to operate at a negative pressure in relation to the surrounding area. Highly toxic and toxic gases shall also comply with Sections 502.9.7.1, 502.9.7.2 and 502.9.8.4.

[F] 502.8.3 Indoor dispensing and use. Indoor dispensing and use areas for hazardous materials in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area shall be provided with exhaust ventilation in accordance with Section 502.8.1.

Exception: Ventilation is not required for dispensing and use of flammable solids other than finely divided particles.

[F] 502.8.4 Indoor dispensing and use—point sources. Where gases, liquids or solids in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area and having a hazard ranking of 3 or 4 in accordance with NFPA 704 are dispensed or used, mechanical exhaust ventilation shall be provided to capture gases, fumes, mists or vapors at the point of generation.

Exception: Where it can be demonstrated that the gases, liquids or solids do not create harmful gases, fumes, mists or vapors.

[F] 502.8.5 Closed systems. Where closed systems for the use of hazardous materials in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area are designed to be opened as part of normal operations, ventilation shall be provided in accordance with Section 502.8.4.

[F] 502.9 Hazardous materials—requirements for specific materials. Exhaust ventilation systems for specific hazardous materials shall be provided as required in Section 502.8 and Sections 502.9.1 through 502.9.11.

[F] 502.9.1 Compressed gases—medical gas systems. Rooms for the storage of compressed medical gases in amounts exceeding the permit amounts for compressed gases in the *International Fire Code*, and that do not have an exterior wall, shall be exhausted through a duct to the exterior of the building. Both separate airstreams shall be enclosed in a 1-hour-rated shaft enclosure from the room to the exterior. *Approved* mechanical ventilation shall be provided at a minimum rate of 1 cfm/ft^2 [0.00508 m^3/(s • m^2)] of the area of the room.

Gas cabinets for the storage of compressed medical gases in amounts exceeding the permit amounts for compressed gases in the *International Fire Code* shall be connected to an exhaust system. The average velocity of ventilation at the face of access ports or windows shall be not less than 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s) with a minimum velocity of 150 feet per minute (0.76 m/s) at any point at the access port or window.

[F] 502.9.2 Corrosives. Where corrosive materials in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area are dispensed or used, mechanical exhaust ventilation in accordance with Section 502.8.4 shall be provided.

[F] 502.9.3 Cryogenics. Storage areas for stationary or portable containers of cryogenic fluids in any quantity shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.8. Indoor areas where cryogenic fluids in any quantity are dispensed shall be ventilated in accordance with the requirements of Section 502.8.4 in a manner that captures any vapor at the point of generation.

> **Exception:** Ventilation for indoor dispensing areas is not required where it can be demonstrated that the cryogenic fluids do not create harmful vapors.

[F] 502.9.4 Explosives. Squirrel cage blowers shall not be used for exhausting hazardous fumes, vapors or gases in operating buildings and rooms for the manufacture, assembly or testing of explosives. Only nonferrous fan blades shall be used for fans located within the ductwork and through which hazardous materials are exhausted. Motors shall be located outside the duct.

[F] 502.9.5 Flammable and combustible liquids. Exhaust ventilation systems shall be provided as required by Sections 502.9.5.1 through 502.9.5.5 for the storage, use, dispensing, mixing and handling of flammable and combustible liquids. Unless otherwise specified, this section shall apply to any quantity of flammable and combustible liquids.

> **Exception:** This section shall not apply to flammable and combustible liquids that are exempt from the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.9.5.1 Vaults. Vaults that contain tanks of Class I liquids shall be provided with continuous ventilation at a rate of not less than 1 cfm/ft^2 of floor area [0.00508 m^3/(s • m^2)], but not less than 150 cfm (4 m^3/min). Failure of the exhaust airflow shall automatically shut down the dispensing system. The exhaust system shall be designed to provide air movement across all parts of the vault floor. Supply and exhaust ducts shall extend to a point not greater than 12 inches (305 mm) and not less than 3 inches (76 mm) above the floor. The exhaust system shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of NFPA 91. Means shall be provided to automatically detect any flammable vapors and to automatically shut down the dispensing system upon detection of such flammable vapors in the exhaust duct at a concentration of 25 percent of the LFL.

[F] 502.9.5.2 Storage rooms and warehouses. Liquid storage rooms and liquid storage warehouses for quantities of liquids exceeding those specified in the *International Fire Code* shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.8.1.

[F] 502.9.5.3 Cleaning machines. Areas containing machines used for parts cleaning in accordance with the *International Fire Code* shall be adequately ventilated to prevent accumulation of vapors.

[F] 502.9.5.4 Use, dispensing and mixing. Continuous mechanical ventilation shall be provided for the use, dispensing and mixing of flammable and combustible liquids in open or closed systems in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area and for bulk transfer and process transfer operations. The ventilation rate shall be not less than 1 cfm/ft^2 [0.00508 m^3/(s • m^2)] of floor area over the design area. Provisions shall be made for the introduction of *makeup air* in a manner that will include all floor areas or pits where vapors can collect. Local or spot ventilation shall be provided where needed to prevent the accumulation of hazardous vapors.

> **Exception:** Where *natural ventilation* can be shown to be effective for the materials used, dispensed or mixed.

[F] 502.9.5.5 Bulk plants or terminals. Ventilation shall be provided for portions of properties where flammable and combustible liquids are received by tank vessels, pipelines, tank cars or tank vehicles and which are stored or blended in bulk for the purpose of distributing such liquids by tank vessels, pipelines, tank cars, tank vehicles or containers as required by Sections 502.9.5.5.1 through 502.9.5.5.3.

[F] 502.9.5.5.1 General. Ventilation shall be provided for rooms, buildings and enclosures in which Class I liquids are pumped, used or transferred. Design of ventilation systems shall consider the relatively high specific gravity of the vapors. Where *natural ventilation* is used, adequate openings in outside walls at floor level, unobstructed except by louvers or coarse screens, shall be provided. Where *natural ventilation* is inadequate, mechanical ventilation shall be provided.

[F] 502.9.5.5.2 Basements and pits. Class I liquids shall not be stored or used within a building having a basement or pit into which flammable vapors can travel, unless such area is provided with ventilation designed to prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors therein.

[F] 502.9.5.5.3 Dispensing of Class I liquids. Containers of Class I liquids shall not be drawn from or filled within buildings unless a provision is made to prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors in hazardous concentrations. Where mechanical ventilation is required, it shall be kept in operation while flammable vapors could be present.

[F] 502.9.6 Highly toxic and toxic liquids. Ventilation exhaust shall be provided for highly toxic and toxic liquids as required by Sections 502.9.6.1 and 502.9.6.2.

[F] 502.9.6.1 Treatment system. This provision shall apply to indoor and outdoor storage and use of highly toxic and toxic liquids in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area. Exhaust scrubbers or other systems for processing vapors of highly toxic liquids shall be provided where a spill or accidental release of such liquids can be expected to release highly toxic vapors at normal temperature and pressure.

[F] 502.9.6.2 Open and closed systems. Mechanical exhaust ventilation shall be provided for highly toxic and toxic liquids used in open systems in accordance with Section 502.8.4. Mechanical exhaust ventilation shall be provided for highly toxic and toxic liquids used in closed systems in accordance with Section 502.8.5.

Exception: Liquids or solids that do not generate highly toxic or toxic fumes, mists or vapors.

[F] 502.9.7 Highly toxic and toxic compressed gases—any quantity. Ventilation exhaust shall be provided for highly toxic and toxic compressed gases in any quantity as required by Sections 502.9.7.1 and 502.9.7.2.

[F] 502.9.7.1 Gas cabinets. Gas cabinets containing highly toxic or toxic compressed gases in any quantity shall comply with Section 502.8.2 and the following requirements:

1. The average ventilation velocity at the face of gas cabinet access ports or windows shall be not less than 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s) with a minimum velocity of 150 feet per minute (0.76 m/s) at any point at the access port or window.
2. Gas cabinets shall be connected to an exhaust system.
3. Gas cabinets shall not be used as the sole means of exhaust for any room or area.

[F] 502.9.7.2 Exhausted enclosures. Exhausted enclosures containing highly toxic or toxic compressed gases in any quantity shall comply with Section 502.8.2 and the following requirements:

1. The average ventilation velocity at the face of the enclosure shall be not less than 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s) with a minimum velocity of 150 feet per minute (0.76 m/s).
2. Exhausted enclosures shall be connected to an exhaust system.
3. Exhausted enclosures shall not be used as the sole means of exhaust for any room or area.

[F] 502.9.8 Highly toxic and toxic compressed gases—quantities exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area. Ventilation exhaust shall be provided for highly toxic and toxic compressed gases in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area as required by Sections 502.9.8.1 through 502.9.8.6.

[F] 502.9.8.1 Ventilated areas. The room or area in which indoor gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures are located shall be provided with exhaust ventilation. Gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures shall not be used as the sole means of exhaust for any room or area.

[F] 502.9.8.2 Local exhaust for portable tanks. A means of local exhaust shall be provided to capture leakage from indoor and outdoor portable tanks. The local exhaust shall consist of portable ducts or collection systems designed to be applied to the site of a leak in a valve or fitting on the tank. The local exhaust system shall be located in a gas room. Exhaust shall be directed to a treatment system where required by the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.9.8.3 Piping and controls—stationary tanks. Filling or dispensing connections on indoor stationary tanks shall be provided with a means of local exhaust. Such exhaust shall be designed to capture fumes and vapors. The exhaust shall be directed to a treatment system where required by the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.9.8.4 Gas rooms. The ventilation system for gas rooms shall be designed to operate at a negative pressure in relation to the surrounding area. The exhaust ventilation from gas rooms shall be directed to an exhaust system.

[F] 502.9.8.5 Treatment system. The exhaust ventilation from gas cabinets, exhausted enclosures and gas rooms, and local exhaust systems required in Sections 502.9.8.2 and 502.9.8.3 shall be directed to a treatment system where required by the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.9.8.6 Process equipment. Effluent from indoor and outdoor process *equipment* containing highly toxic or toxic compressed gases which could be discharged to the atmosphere shall be processed through an exhaust scrubber or other processing system. Such systems shall be in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.9.9 Ozone gas generators. Ozone cabinets and ozone gas-generator rooms for systems having a maximum ozone-generating capacity of $^{1}/_{2}$ pound (0.23 kg) or more over a 24-hour period shall be mechanically ventilated at a rate of not less than six air changes per hour. For cabinets, the average velocity of ventilation at *makeup air* openings with cabinet doors closed shall be not less than 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s).

[F] 502.9.10 LP-gas distribution facilities. LP-gas distribution facilities shall be ventilated in accordance with NFPA 58.

[F] 502.9.10.1 Portable container use. Above-grade underfloor spaces or basements in which portable LP-gas containers are used or are stored awaiting use or resale shall be provided with an *approved* means of ventilation.

Exception: Department of Transportation (DOT) specification cylinders with a maximum water capacity of 2.5 pounds (1 kg) for use in completely self-contained hand torches and similar applications. The quantity of LP-gas shall not exceed 20 pounds (9 kg).

[F] 502.9.11 Silane gas. Exhausted enclosures and gas cabinets for the indoor storage of silane gas in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area shall comply with Chapter 64 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.10 Hazardous production materials (HPM). Exhaust ventilation systems and materials for ducts utilized for the exhaust of HPM shall comply with this section, other applicable provisions of this code, the *International Building Code* and the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.10.1 Where required. Exhaust ventilation systems shall be provided in the following locations in accordance with the requirements of this section and the *International Building Code*.

1. Fabrication areas: Exhaust ventilation for fabrication areas shall comply with the *International Building Code*. Additional manual control switches shall be provided where required by the code official.
2. Workstations: A ventilation system shall be provided to capture and exhaust gases, fumes and vapors at workstations.
3. Liquid storage rooms: Exhaust ventilation for liquid storage rooms shall comply with Section 502.8.1.1 and the *International Building Code.*
4. HPM rooms: Exhaust ventilation for HPM rooms shall comply with Section 502.8.1.1 and the *International Building Code.*
5. Gas cabinets: Exhaust ventilation for gas cabinets shall comply with Section 502.8.2. The gas cabinet ventilation system is allowed to connect to a workstation ventilation system. Exhaust ventilation for gas cabinets containing highly toxic or toxic gases shall also comply with Sections 502.9.7 and 502.9.8.
6. Exhausted enclosures: Exhaust ventilation for exhausted enclosures shall comply with Section 502.8.2. Exhaust ventilation for exhausted enclosures containing highly toxic or toxic gases shall also comply with Sections 502.9.7 and 502.9.8.
7. Gas rooms: Exhaust ventilation for gas rooms shall comply with Section 502.8.2. Exhaust ventilation for gas rooms containing highly toxic or toxic gases shall also comply with Sections 502.9.7 and 502.9.8.
8. Cabinets containing pyrophoric liquids or Class 3 water-reactive liquids: Exhaust ventilation for cabinets in fabrication areas containing pyrophoric liquids shall be as required in Section 2705.2.3.4 of the *International Fire Code.*

[F] 502.10.2 Penetrations. Exhaust ducts penetrating fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the *International Building Code* or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *International Building Code* shall be contained in a shaft of equivalent fire-resistance-rated construction. Exhaust ducts shall not penetrate fire walls. Fire dampers shall not be installed in exhaust ducts.

[F] 502.10.3 Treatment systems. Treatment systems for highly toxic and toxic gases shall comply with the *International Fire Code.*

502.11 Motion picture projectors. Motion picture projectors shall be exhausted in accordance with Section 502.11.1 or 502.11.2.

502.11.1 Projectors with an exhaust discharge. Projectors equipped with an exhaust discharge shall be directly connected to a mechanical exhaust system. The exhaust system shall operate at an exhaust rate as indicated by the manufacturer's installation instructions.

502.11.2 Projectors without exhaust connection. Projectors without an exhaust connection shall have contaminants exhausted through a mechanical exhaust system. The exhaust rate for electric arc projectors shall be a minimum of 200 cubic feet per minute (cfm) (0.09 m^3/s) per lamp. The exhaust rate for xenon projectors shall be a minimum of 300 cfm (0.14 m^3/s) per lamp. Xenon projector exhaust shall be at a rate such that the exterior temperature of the lamp housing does not exceed 130°F (54°C). The lamp and projection room exhaust systems, whether combined or independent, shall not be interconnected with any other exhaust or return system within the building.

[F] 502.12 Organic coating processes. Enclosed structures involving organic coating processes in which Class I liquids are processed or handled shall be ventilated at a rate of not less than 1 cfm/ft^2 [0.00508 $m^3/(s \bullet m^2)$] of solid floor area. Ventilation shall be accomplished by exhaust fans that intake at floor levels and discharge to a safe location outside the structure. Noncontaminated intake air shall be introduced in such a manner that all portions of solid floor areas are provided with continuous uniformly distributed air movement.

502.13 Public garages. Mechanical exhaust systems for public garages, as required in Chapter 4, shall operate continuously or in accordance with Section 404.

502.14 Motor vehicle operation. In areas where motor vehicles operate, mechanical ventilation shall be provided in accordance with Section 403. Additionally, areas in which stationary motor vehicles are operated shall be provided with a *source capture system* that connects directly to the motor vehicle exhaust systems.

Exceptions:

1. This section shall not apply where the motor vehicles being operated or repaired are electrically powered.
2. This section shall not apply to one- and two-family dwellings.
3. This section shall not apply to motor vehicle service areas where engines are operated inside the building only for the duration necessary to move the motor vehicles in and out of the building.
4. A *source capture system* is not required for any engine repair stall having an exhaust pipe extension duct less than 10 feet (3048 mm) in length, connected directly to the motor vehicle exhaust system and discharging directly to the outside of the building.

[F] 502.15 Repair garages. Where Class I liquids or LP-gas are stored or used within a building having a basement or pit wherein flammable vapors could accumulate, the basement or pit shall be provided with ventilation designed to prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors therein.

[F] 502.16 Repair garages for natural gas- and hydrogen-fueled vehicles. Repair garages used for the repair of natural gas- or hydrogen-fueled vehicles shall be provided with an *approved* mechanical ventilation system. The mechanical ventilation system shall be in accordance with Sections 502.16.1 and 502.16.2.

Exception: Where *approved* by the code official, *natural ventilation* shall be permitted in lieu of mechanical ventilation.

[F] 502.16.1 Design. Indoor locations shall be ventilated utilizing air supply inlets and exhaust outlets arranged to provide uniform air movement to the extent practical. Inlets shall be uniformly arranged on exterior walls near floor level. Outlets shall be located at the high point of the room in exterior walls or the roof.

Ventilation shall be by a continuous mechanical ventilation system or by a mechanical ventilation system activated by a continuously monitoring natural gas detection system, or for hydrogen, a continuously monitoring flammable gas detection system, each activating at a gas concentration of 25 percent of the lower flammable limit (LFL). In all cases, the system shall shut down the fueling system in the event of failure of the ventilation system.

The ventilation rate shall be at least 1 cubic foot per minute per 12 cubic feet [0.00138 $m^3/(s \bullet m^3)$] of room volume.

[F] 502.16.2 Operation. The mechanical ventilation system shall operate continuously.

Exceptions:

1. Mechanical ventilation systems that are interlocked with a gas detection system designed in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.
2. Mechanical ventilation systems in garages that are used only for the repair of vehicles fueled by liquid fuels or odorized gases, such as CNG, where the ventilation system is electrically interlocked with the lighting circuit.

502.17 Tire rebuilding or recapping. Each room where rubber cement is used or mixed, or where flammable or combustible solvents are applied, shall be ventilated in accordance with the applicable provisions of NFPA 91.

502.17.1 Buffing machines. Each buffing machine shall be connected to a dust-collecting system that prevents the accumulation of the dust produced by the buffing process.

502.18 Specific rooms. Specific rooms, including bathrooms, locker rooms, smoking lounges and toilet rooms, shall be exhausted in accordance with the ventilation requirements of Chapter 4.

502.19 Indoor firing ranges. Ventilation shall be provided in an *approved* manner in areas utilized as indoor firing ranges. Ventilation shall be designed to protect employees and the public in accordance with DOL 29 CFR 1910.1025 where applicable.

SECTION 503
MOTORS AND FANS

503.1 General. Motors and fans shall be sized to provide the required air movement. Motors in areas that contain flammable vapors or dusts shall be of a type *approved* for such environments. A manually operated remote control installed at an *approved* location shall be provided to shut off fans or blowers in flammable vapor or dust systems. Electrical *equipment* and appliances used in operations that generate explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts shall be interlocked with the ventilation system so that the *equipment* and appliances cannot be operated unless the ventilation fans are in operation. Motors for fans used to convey flammable vapors or dusts shall be located outside the duct or shall be protected with *approved* shields and dustproofing. Motors and fans shall be provided with a means of access for servicing and maintenance.

503.2 Fans. Parts of fans in contact with explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts shall be of nonferrous or nonsparking materials, or their casing shall be lined or constructed of such material. When the size and hardness of materials passing through a fan are capable of producing a spark, both the fan and the casing shall be of nonsparking materials. When fans are required to be spark resistant, their bearings shall not be within the airstream, and all parts of the fan shall be grounded. Fans in systems-handling materials that are capable of clogging the blades, and fans in buffing or woodworking exhaust systems, shall be of the radial-blade or tube-axial type.

503.3 Equipment and appliance identification plate. *Equipment* and appliances used to exhaust explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts shall bear an identification plate stating the ventilation rate for which the system was designed.

503.4 Corrosion-resistant fans. Fans located in systems conveying corrosives shall be of materials that are resistant to the corrosive or shall be coated with corrosion-resistant materials.

SECTION 504
CLOTHES DRYER EXHAUST

504.1 Installation. Clothes dryers shall be exhausted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Dryer exhaust systems shall be independent of all other systems and shall convey the moisture and any products of *combustion* to the outside of the building.

Exception: This section shall not apply to *listed* and *labeled* condensing (ductless) clothes dryers.

504.2 Exhaust penetrations. Where a clothes dryer exhaust duct penetrates a wall or ceiling membrane, the annular space shall be sealed with noncombustible material, *approved* fire caulking or a noncombustible dryer exhaust duct wall receptacle. Ducts that exhaust clothes dryers shall not penetrate or be located within any fireblocking, draftstopping or any wall, floor/ceiling or other assembly required by the *International Building Code* to be fire-resistance rated, unless such duct is constructed of galvanized steel or aluminum of the thickness specified in Section 603.4 and the fire-resistance rating is maintained in accordance with the *International Building Code*. Fire dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers and any similar devices that will obstruct the exhaust flow shall be prohibited in clothes dryer exhaust ducts.

504.3 Cleanout. Each vertical riser shall be provided with a means for cleanout.

504.4 Exhaust installation. Dryer exhaust ducts for clothes dryers shall terminate on the outside of the building and shall be equipped with a backdraft damper. Screens shall not be installed at the duct termination. Ducts shall not be connected or installed with sheet metal screws or other fasteners that will obstruct the exhaust flow. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall not be connected to a vent connector, vent or *chimney*. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall not extend into or through ducts or plenums.

504.5 Makeup air. Installations exhausting more than 200 cfm ($0.09 m^3/s$) shall be provided with *makeup air*. Where a closet is designed for the installation of a clothes dryer, an opening having an area of not less than 100 square inches ($0.0645\ m^2$) shall be provided in the closet enclosure or *makeup air* shall be provided by other *approved* means.

504.6 Domestic clothes dryer ducts. Exhaust ducts for domestic clothes dryers shall conform to the requirements of Sections 504.6.1 through 504.6.7.

504.6.1 Material and size. Exhaust ducts shall have a smooth interior finish and shall be constructed of metal a minimum 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) thick. The exhaust duct size shall be 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in diameter.

504.6.2 Duct installation. Exhaust ducts shall be supported at 4-foot (1219 mm) intervals and secured in place. The insert end of the duct shall extend into the adjoining duct or fitting in the direction of airflow. Ducts shall not be joined with screws or similar fasteners that protrude into the inside of the duct.

504.6.3 Transition ducts. Transition ducts used to connect the dryer to the exhaust duct system shall be a single length that is *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2158A. Transition ducts shall be a maximum of 8 feet (2438 mm) in length and shall not be concealed within construction.

504.6.4 Duct length. The maximum allowable exhaust duct length shall be determined by one of the methods specified in Section 504.6.4.1 or 504.6.4.2.

504.6.4.1 Specified length. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be 35 feet (10 668 mm) from the connection to the transition duct from the dryer to the outlet terminal. Where fittings are used, the maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be reduced in accordance with Table 504.6.4.1.

504.6.4.2 Manufacturer's instructions. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. The code official shall be provided with a copy of the installation instructions for the make and model of the dryer. Where the exhaust duct is to be concealed, the installation instructions shall be provided to the code official prior to the concealment inspection. In the absence of fitting equivalent length calculations from the clothes dryer manufacturer, Table 504.6.4.1 shall be used.

TABLE 504.6.4.1
DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING EQUIVALENT LENGTH

DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING TYPE	EQUIVALENT LENGTH
4″ radius mitered 45-degree elbow	2 feet 6 inches
4″ radius mitered 90-degree elbow	5 feet
6″ radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
6″ radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot 9 inches
8″ radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
8″ radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot 7 inches
10″ radius smooth 45-degree elbow	9 inches
10″ radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot 6 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

504.6.5 Length identification. Where the exhaust duct is concealed within the building construction, the equivalent length of the exhaust duct shall be identified on a permanent label or tag. The label or tag shall be located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the exhaust duct connection.

504.6.6 Exhaust duct required. Where space for a clothes dryer is provided, an exhaust duct system shall be installed. Where the clothes dryer is not installed at the time of occupancy, the exhaust duct shall be capped at the location of the future dryer.

Exception: Where a *listed* condensing clothes dryer is installed prior to occupancy of structure.

504.6.7 Protection required. Protective shield plates shall be placed where nails or screws from finish or other work are likely to penetrate the clothes dryer exhaust duct. Shield plates shall be placed on the finished face of all framing members where there is less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) between the duct and the finished face of the framing member. Protective shield plates shall be constructed of steel, have a thickness of 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) and extend a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

504.7 Commercial clothes dryers. The installation of dryer exhaust ducts serving commercial clothes dryers shall comply with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions. Exhaust fan motors installed in exhaust systems shall be located outside of the airstream. In multiple installations, the fan shall operate continuously or be interlocked to operate when any individual unit is operating. Ducts shall have a minimum *clearance* of 6 inches (152 mm) to combustible materials. Clothes dryer transition ducts used to connect the *appliance* to the exhaust duct system shall be limited to single lengths not to exceed 8 feet (2438 mm) in length and shall be *listed* and *labeled* for the application. Transition ducts shall not be concealed within construction.

504.8 Common exhaust systems for clothes dryers located in multistory structures. Where a common multistory duct system is designed and installed to convey exhaust from multiple clothes dryers, the construction of the system shall be in accordance with all of the following:

1. The shaft in which the duct is installed shall be constructed and fire-resistance rated as required by the *International Building Code*.
2. Dampers shall be prohibited in the exhaust duct. Penetrations of the shaft and ductwork shall be protected in accordance with Section 607.5.5, Exception 2.
3. Rigid metal ductwork shall be installed within the shaft to convey the exhaust. The ductwork shall be constructed of sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) and in accordance with SMACNA *Duct Construction Standards*.
4. The ductwork within the shaft shall be designed and installed without offsets.
5. The exhaust fan motor design shall be in accordance with Section 503.2.
6. The exhaust fan motor shall be located outside of the airstream.
7. The exhaust fan shall run continuously, and shall be connected to a standby power source.
8. Exhaust fan operation shall be monitored in an *approved* location and shall initiate an audible or visual signal when the fan is not in operation.
9. Makeup air shall be provided for the exhaust system.
10. A cleanout opening shall be located at the base of the shaft to provide *access* to the duct to allow for cleaning and inspection. The finished opening shall be not less than 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm).
11. Screens shall not be installed at the termination.
12. The common multistory duct system shall serve only clothes dryers and shall be independent of other exhaust systems.

SECTION 505
DOMESTIC KITCHEN EXHAUST EQUIPMENT

505.1 Domestic systems. Where domestic range hoods and domestic *appliances* equipped with downdraft exhaust are located within dwellings, the hoods and *appliances* shall discharge to the outdoors through ducts constructed of galvanized steel, stainless steel, aluminum, or copper. The ducts shall have smooth inner walls and shall be air tight and equipped with a backdraft damper. Domestic kitchen exhaust hoods ducted to the outdoors shall have *makeup air* provided according to Minnesota Rules, part 1346.0501. Refer to part 1346.6010 for Table C-1, "Recommended Capacities for Domestic Kitchen Exhaust Hoods."

Exceptions:

1. Where installed according to the manufacturer's installation instructions and where mechanical or natural ventilation is otherwise provided according to IMC Chapter 4, *listed* and *labeled* ductless range hoods shall not be required to discharge to the outdoors.
2. Ducts for domestic kitchen cooking *appliances* equipped with downdraft exhaust systems shall be permitted to be constructed of Schedule 40 PVC pipe provided that the installation complies with all of the following:
   - 2.1. The duct shall be installed under a concrete slab poured on grade.
   - 2.2. The underfloor trench in which the duct is installed shall be completely backfilled with sand or gravel.
   - 2.3. The PVC duct shall extend not greater than 1 inch (25 mm) above the indoor concrete floor surface.
   - 2.4. The PVC duct shall extend not greater than 1 inch (25 mm) above grade outside of the building.
   - 2.5. The PVC ducts shall be primed and solvent cemented in accordance with ASTM D2564.

505.2 Makeup air required. Exhaust hood systems capable of exhausting in excess of 400 cfm (0.19 m^3/s) shall be provided with *makeup air* at a rate approximately equal to the *exhaust air* rate. Such *makeup air* systems shall be equipped with a means of closure and shall be automatically controlled to start and operate simultaneously with the exhaust system.

SECTION 506
COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOOD VENTILATION SYSTEM DUCTS AND EXHAUST EQUIPMENT

506.1 General. Commercial kitchen hood ventilation ducts and exhaust *equipment* shall comply with the requirements of this section. Commercial kitchen grease ducts shall be designed for the type of cooking *appliance* and hood served.

506.2 Corrosion protection. Ducts exposed to the outside atmosphere or subject to a corrosive environment shall be protected against corrosion in an *approved* manner.

506.3 Ducts serving Type I hoods. Commercial kitchen exhaust systems serving Type I hoods shall be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with NFPA 96, *Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations*.

Sections 506.3.1 to 506.3.2.4. IMC Sections 506.3.1 to 506.3.2.4 are deleted and replaced with Chapters 1 to 10 and 12 to 15 of NFPA 96.

506.3.2.5 Grease duct leakage performance test. Prior to the use or concealment of any portion of a grease duct system, a leakage test shall be performed to determine that all welded joints and seams are liquid-tight. Ducts shall be considered to be concealed where they are installed in shafts or covered by coatings or wraps that prevent the duct from being visually inspected on all sides. It is permissible to test the duct in sections, provided that, after the duct system is completely assembled, all field-assembled joints are tested, including the duct-to-hood connection. When the testing is performed in this manner, only the field-assembled joints of listed factory-built grease ducts are required to be tested. The leakage test shall consist of a light, air, or water test, or an *approved* equivalent test. The permit holder shall be responsible to provide the necessary *equipment* and perform the grease duct leakage test.

506.3.2.5.1 Light test. The light test shall be performed by passing a lamp having a power rating of not less than 100 watts through the entire section of ductwork to be tested. The lamp shall be open so as to emit light equally in all directions perpendicular to the duct walls. No light from the duct interior shall be visible through any exterior surface.

506.3.2.5.2 Air test. The air test shall be performed by sealing the entire duct system from the hood exhaust opening(s) to the duct termination. The sealed duct system shall then be pressurized to a minimum pressure of 1.0 inch water column and shall be required to hold the initial set pressure for a minimum of 20 minutes.

506.3.2.5.3 Water test. The water test shall be performed by use of a pressure washer operating at a minimum of 1,500 psi, simulating cleaning operations. The water shall be applied directly to all areas to be tested. No water applied to the duct interior shall be visible on any exterior surface in any volume during the test.

506.3.3 through 506.3.13.3. (Deleted).

506.4 Ducts serving Type II hoods. Commercial kitchen exhaust systems serving Type II hoods shall comply with Sections 506.4.1 and 506.4.2.

506.4.1 Ducts. Ducts and plenums serving Type II hoods shall be constructed of rigid metallic materials. Duct construction, installation, bracing and supports shall comply with Chapter 6. Ducts subject to positive pressure and ducts conveying moisture-laden or waste-heat-laden air shall be constructed, joined and sealed in an *approved* manner.

506.4.2 Ducts. Ducts and plenums serving Type II hoods shall be constructed of rigid metallic materials. Duct construction, installation, bracing, and supports shall comply with IMC Chapter 6, as amended in this chapter. Ducts conveying moisture-laden or waste heat-laden air shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Ducts shall be constructed, joined, and sealed to prevent drips and leaking.
2. Ducts shall slope not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2 percent slope) toward the hood or toward an *approved* reservoir.
3. Ducts subject to positive pressure shall maintain an air pressure test of 1.0 inch water column positive pressure for a minimum of 20 minutes, unless an equivalent alternate test is specified by the building official.

506.5 through 506.5.5. (Deleted).

SECTION 507
COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOODS

507.1 General. Commercial kitchen exhaust hoods shall comply with the requirements of this section. Hoods shall be Type I or II and shall be designed to capture and confine cooking vapors and residues. Commercial kitchen exhaust hood systems shall operate during the cooking operation.

Exceptions:

1. Factory-built commercial exhaust hoods that are listed and labeled in accordance with UL 710, and installed in accordance with Section 304.1 shall not be required to comply with Sections 507.4, 507.5, 507.7, 507.11, 507.12, 507.13, 507.14, and 507.15.
2. Factory-built commercial cooking recirculating systems that are listed and labeled in accordance with UL 710B, and installed in accordance with Section 304.1 shall not be required to comply with Sections 507.4, 507.5, 507.7, 507.11, 507.12, 507.13, 507.14, and 507.15. Spaces in which such systems are located shall be considered to be kitchens and shall be ventilated in accordance with Table 403.3. For the purpose of determining the floor area required to be ventilated, each individual *appliance* shall be considered as occupying not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2).
3. Net exhaust volumes for hoods shall be permitted to be reduced during part-load cooking conditions, where engineered or *listed* multispeed or variable-speed controls automatically operate the exhaust system to maintain capture and removal of cooking effluents as required by this section. Reduced volumes shall not be below that required to maintain capture and removal of effluents from the idle cooking appliances that are operating in a standby mode.

507.1.1 Factory-built systems with exhaust or recovery. Where factory-built commercial cooking recirculating systems or dishwashers and potwashers equipped with heat and vapor exhaust or recovery systems are installed, the sensible and latent heat from the systems shall be included in the HVAC design calculations of the kitchen. A mechanical HVAC system shall be provided to maintain maximum relative humidity of 65 percent in the space.

507.2 Where required. A Type I or Type II hood shall be installed at or above all commercial cooking *appliances* in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 154. Where any cooking *appliance* under a single hood requires a Type I hood, a Type I hood shall be installed. Where a Type II hood is required, a Type I or Type II hood shall be installed.

507.2.1 Type I hoods. Type I hoods shall be installed where cooking *appliances* produce grease or smoke as a result of the cooking process. Type I hoods shall be installed over *medium-duty*, *heavy-duty* and *extra-heavy-*

duty cooking appliances. Type I hoods shall be installed over *light-duty cooking appliances* that produce grease or smoke. The duty classifications of cooking appliances served by Type I hoods shall be in accordance with Table 507.2.1.

Exception: A Type I hood shall not be required for an electric cooking appliance where an approved testing agency provides documentation that the appliance effluent contains 5 mg/m^3 or less of grease when tested at an exhaust flow rate of 500 cfm (0.236 m^3/s) in accordance with Section 17 of UL 710B.

507.2.1.1 Operation. Type I hood systems shall be designed and installed to automatically activate the exhaust fan whenever cooking operations occur. The activation of the exhaust fan shall occur through an interlock with the cooking appliances, by means of heat sensors or by means of other *approved* methods. A method of interlock between an exhaust hood system and appliances equipped with standing pilot burners shall not cause the pilot burners to be extinguished. A method of interlock between an exhaust hood system and cooking appliances shall not involve or depend upon any component of a fire extinguishing system.

507.2.1.2 Exhaust flow rate label. Type I hoods shall bear a label indicating the minimum exhaust flow rate in cfm per linear foot (1.55 L/s per linear meter) of hood that provides for capture and containment of the exhaust effluent for the cooking appliances served by the hood, based on the cooking appliance duty classifications defined in this code.

TABLE 507.2.1
APPLIANCE DUTY CLASSIFICATIONS BY APPLIANCE TYPE

APPLIANCE DESCRIPTION	SIZE	TYPE I HOODS			
		Light Duty	Medium Duty	Heavy Duty	Extra-heavy Duty
Braising pan/tilting skillet, electric	All	•	—	—	—
Oven, rotisserie, electric and gas	All	•	—	—	—
Oven, combi, electric and gas	All	•	—	—	—
Oven, convection, full-size, electric and gas	All	•	—	—	—
Oven, convection, half-size, electric and gas (protein cooking)	All	•	—	—	—
Oven, deck, electric and gas	All	•	—	—	—
Oven, mini-revolving rack, electric and gas	All	•	—	—	—
Oven, rapid cook, electric	All	•	—	—	—
Oven, rotisserie, electric and gas	All	•	—	—	—
Range, discrete element, electric (with or without oven)	All	•	—	—	—
Salamander, electric and gas	All	•	—	—	—
Braising pan/tilting skillet, gas	All	—	•	—	—
Broiler, chain conveyor, electric	All	—	•	—	—
Broiler, electric, under-fired	All	—	•	—	—
Conveyor oven, electric	6 kW or larger	—	•	—	—
Conveyor oven, gas	All	—	•	—	—
Fryer, doughnut, electric and gas	All	—	•	—	—
Fryer, kettle, electric and gas	All	—	•	—	—
Fryer, open deep-fat, electric and gas	All	—	•	—	—
Fryer, pressure, electric and gas	All	—	•	—	—
Griddle, double-sided, electric and gas	All	—	•	—	—
Griddle, flat, electric and gas	All	—	•	—	—
Range, cook-top, induction	All	—	•	—	—
Range, open-burner, gas (with or without oven)	All	—	•	—	—
Range, hot top, electric and gas	All	—	•	—	—
Broiler, chain conveyor, gas	All	—	—	•	—
Broiler, electric and gas, over-fired (upright)	All	—	—	•	—
Broiler, gas, under-fired	All	—	—	•	—
Range, wok, gas and electric	All	—	—	•	—
Appliances using solid fuel (wood, charcoal, briquettes, and mesquite) to provide all or part of the heat source for cooking **Exception:** Appliances complying with Section 14.3.4 of NFPA Standard 96	All	—	—	—	•

507.2.2 Type II hoods. Type II hoods shall be installed above dishwashers and appliances as required by Table 507.2.2. The duty classifications of cooking appliances served by Type II hoods shall be in accordance with Table 507.2.2. Type II hoods shall be installed above all appliances that produce products of combustion and do not produce grease or smoke as a result of the cooking process. Where hoods are not required, the additional heat and moisture loads generated by such appliances shall be accounted for in the sensible and latent loads for the HVAC system.

TABLE 507.2.2
TYPE II HOOD REQUIREMENTS BY APPLIANCE DESCRIPTION

APPLIANCE DESCRIPTION	SIZE	HOOD NOT REQUIRED[a, b]	TYPE II HOODS[a]	
			Light Duty	Medium Duty
Cabinet, holding, electric	All	•	—	—
Cabinet, proofing, electric	All	•	—	—
Cheese-melter, electric	All	•	—	—
Coffee maker, electric	All	•	—	—
Cooktop, induction, electric	All	•	—	—
Dishwasher, under-counter, electric	All	•	—	—
Dishwasher, powered sink, electric	All	•	—	—
Drawer warmer, 2 drawer, electric	All	•	—	—
Egg cooker, electric	All	•	—	—
Espresso machine, electric	All	•	—	—
Grill panini, electric	All	•	—	—
Hot dog cooker, electric	All	•	—	—
Hot plate, countertop, electric	All	•	—	—
Ovens, conveyor, electric	< 6 kW	•	—	—
Ovens, microwave, electric	All	•	—	—
Ovens, warming, electric	All	•	—	—
Popcorn machine, electric	All	•	—	—
Rethermalizer, electric	All	•	—	—
Rice cooker, electric	All	•	—	—
Steam table, electric	All	•	—	—
Steamers, bun, electric	All	•	—	—
Steamer, compartment atmospheric, countertop, electric	All	•	—	—
Steamer, compartment pressurized, countertop, electric	All	•	—	—
Table, hot food, electric	All	•	—	—
Toaster, electric	All	•	—	—
Waffle iron, electric	All	•	—	—
Cheese-melter, gas	All	—	•	—
Diswasher, conveyor rack, chemical sanitizing	All	—	•	—
Dishwasher, conveyor rack, hot water sanitizing	All	—	•	—
Dishwasher, door-type rack, chemical sanitizing	All	—	•	—
Dishwasher, door-type rack, hot water sanitizing	All	—	•	—
Kettle, steam jacketed, tabletop, electric, gas and direct steam	< 20 gallons	—	•	—
Oven, convection, half-size, electric and gas (non-protein cooking)	All	—	•	—
Pasta cooker, electric	All	—	•	—
Rethermalizer, gas	All	—	•	—
Rice cooker, gas	All	—	•	—
Steamer, atmospheric gas	All	—	•	—
Steamer, pressurized, gas	All	—	•	—
Steamer, atmospheric, floor-mounted, electric	All	—	•	—
Steamer, pressurized, floor-mounted, electric	All	—	•	—
Kettle, steam-jacketed floor mounted, electric, gas and direct steam	< 20 gallons	—	•	—
Pasta cooker, gas	All	—	—	•
Smoker, electric and gas, pressurized	All	—	—	•
Steam-jacketed kettle, floor mounted, electric and gas	20 gallons or larger	—	—	•

a. A hood shall be provided for an electric appliance if it produces 3.1×10^{-7} lb/ft^3 (5 mg/m^3) of grease or more when measured at 500 cfm (236 L/s).

b. Where hoods are not required, the additional heat and moisture loads generated by such appliances shall be accounted for in the sensible and latent loads for the HVAC system.

507.2.2.1 Type II hood exhaust flow rates. The net exhaust flow rate for Type II hoods shall comply with Table 507.2.2.1. The duty level for the hood shall be the duty level of the appliance that has the highest (heaviest) duty level of all of the appliances that are installed underneath the food according to Table 507.2.2.

TABLE 507.2.2.1
TYPE II HOOD MINIMUM NET EXHAUST AIRFLOW RATES

TYPE OF HOOD	MINIMUM NET EXHAUST FLOW RATE PER LINEAR HOOD LENGTH IN cfm/ft (L/s/m)	
	Light-duty Equipment	Medium-duty Equipment
Wall-mounted canopy	200 (310)	300 (465)
Single-island canopy	400 (620)	500 (775)
Double-island canopy (per side)	250 (388)	300 (465)
Eyebrow	250 (388)	250 (388)
Backshelf/pass-over	200 (310)	300 (465)

507.2.2.2 Type II hood overhang. Type II hoods shall overhang the appliances and equipment served in accordance with Table 507.2.2.2.

TABLE 507.2.2.2
MINIMUM OVERHANG REQUIREMENTS FOR TYPE II HOODS

TYPE OF HOOD	END OVERHANG	FRONT OVERHANG	REAR OVERHANG
Wall-mounted canopy	6 inches (152 mm)	12 inches (305 mm)	N/A
Single-island canopy	12 inches (305 mm)	12 inches (305 mm)	12 inches (305 mm)
Double-island canopy	12 inches (305 mm)	12 inches (305 mm)	N/A
Eyebrow	N/A	12 inches (305 mm)	N/A
Backshelf/proximity/ pass-over	6 inches (152 mm)	10 inches (254 mm) (setback)	N/A

N/A = Not Applicable

507.2.3 Domestic cooking appliances used for commercial purposes. Domestic cooking appliances utilized for commercial purposes shall be provided with Type I or Type II hoods as required for the type of appliances and processes in accordance with Sections 507.2, 507.2.1 and 507.2.2.

507.2.4 Extra-heavy-duty. Type I hoods for use over *extra-heavy-duty cooking appliances* shall not cover *heavy-*, *medium-* or *light-duty appliances*. Such hoods shall discharge to an exhaust system that is independent of other exhaust systems.

507.3 Fuel-burning appliances. Where vented fuel-burning appliances are located in the same room or space as the hood, provisions shall be made to prevent the hood system from interfering with normal operation of the *appliance* vents.

507.4 Type I materials. (Deleted).

507.5 Type II hood materials. Type II hood materials shall be constructed of stainless steel not less than 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) (No. 24 Gage) in thickness, copper sheets weighing not less than 24 ounces per square foot (7.3 kg/m^2), or of other *approved* material and gage.

507.6 Supports. Type I hoods shall be secured in place by non-combustible supports. All Type I and Type II hood supports shall be adequate for the applied load of the hood, the unsupported ductwork, the effluent loading and the possible weight of personnel working in or on the hood.

507.7 Hood joints, seams and penetrations. Hood joints, seams, and penetrations shall comply with amended IMC Sections 507.7.1 and 507.7.2.

507.7.1 Type I hoods. Type I hoods shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with Chapter 5 of NFPA 96.

507.7.2 Type II hoods. Joints, seams and penetrations for Type II hoods shall be constructed as set forth in Chapter 6, shall be sealed on the interior of the hood and shall provide a smooth surface that is readily cleanable and water tight.

507.8 through 507.11.2. (Deleted).

507.12 Canopy size and location. The inside lower edge of canopy-type Type I and II commercial hoods shall overhang or extend a horizontal distance of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the edge of the top horizontal surface of the *appliance* on all open sides. The vertical distance between the front lower lip of the hood and such surface shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm).

Exception: The hood shall be permitted to be flush with the outer edge of the cooking surface where the hood is closed to the *appliance* side by a noncombustible wall or panel.

507.13 Capacity of hoods. Commercial food service hoods shall exhaust a minimum net quantity of air determined in accordance with this section and Sections 507.13.1 through 507.13.5. The net quantity of *exhaust air* shall be calculated by subtracting any airflow supplied directly to a hood cavity from the total exhaust flow rate of a hood. Where any combination of *heavy-duty*, *medium-duty* and *light-duty cooking appliances* are utilized under a single hood, the exhaust rate required by this section for the heaviest duty *appliance* covered by the hood shall be used for the entire hood.

507.13.1 Extra-heavy-duty cooking appliances. The minimum net airflow for hoods, as determined by Section 507.2, used for *extra-heavy-duty cooking appliances* shall be determined as follows:

Type of Hood	CFM per linear foot of hood
Backshelf/pass-over	Not allowed
Double island canopy (per side)	550
Eyebrow	Not allowed
Single island canopy	700
Wall-mounted canopy	550

For SI: 1 cfm per linear foot = 1.55 L/s per linear meter.

507.13.2 Heavy-duty cooking appliances. The minimum net airflow for hoods, as determined by Section 507.2, used for *heavy-duty cooking appliances* shall be determined as follows:

Type of Hood	CFM per linear foot of hood
Backshelf/pass-over	400
Double island canopy (per side)	400
Eyebrow	Not allowed
Single island canopy	600
Wall-mounted canopy	400

For SI: 1 cfm per linear foot = 1.55 L/s per linear meter.

507.13.3 Medium-duty cooking appliances. The minimum net airflow for hoods, as determined by Section 507.2, used for *medium-duty cooking appliances* shall be determined as follows:

Type of Hood	CFM per linear foot of hood
Backshelf/pass-over	300
Double island canopy (per side)	300
Eyebrow	250
Single island canopy	500
Wall-mounted canopy	300

For SI: 1 cfm per linear foot = 1.55 L/s per linear meter.

507.13.4 Light-duty cooking appliances. The minimum net airflow for hoods, as determined by Section 507.2, used for *light-duty cooking appliances* and food service preparation shall be determined as follows:

Type of Hood	CFM per linear foot of hood
Backshelf/pass-over	250
Double island canopy (per side)	250
Eyebrow	250
Single island canopy	400
Wall-mounted canopy	200

For SI: 1 cfm per linear foot = 1.55 L/s per linear meter.

507.13.5 Dishwashing appliances. The minimum net airflow for Type II hoods used for dishwashing appliances shall be 100 CFM per linear foot of hood length.

Exception: Dishwashing appliances and *equipment* installed in accordance with Section 507.2.2.

507.14 Noncanopy size and location. (Deleted).

507.15 Exhaust outlets. Exhaust outlets located within the hood shall be located so as to optimize the capture of particulate matter. Each outlet shall serve not more than a 12-foot (3658 mm) section of hood.

507.16 Performance test. A performance test shall be conducted upon completion and before final approval of the installation of a ventilation system serving *commercial cooking appliances*. The test shall verify the rate of exhaust airflow required by Section 507.13, makeup airflow required by Section 508 and proper operation as specified in this chapter. The permit holder shall furnish the necessary test *equipment* and devices required to perform the tests.

507.16.1 Capture and containment test. The permit holder shall verify capture and containment performance of the exhaust system. This field test shall be conducted with all appliances under the hood at operating temperatures, with all sources of outdoor air providing *makeup air* for the hood operating and with all sources of recirculated air providing conditioning for the space in which the hood is located operating. Capture and containment shall be verified visually by observing smoke or steam produced by actual or simulated cooking, such as with smoke candles, smoke puffers, etc.

SECTION 508 COMMERCIAL KITCHEN MAKEUP AIR

508.1 Makeup air. *Makeup air* shall be supplied during the operation of commercial kitchen exhaust systems that are provided for commercial food heat-processing appliances. The amount of *makeup air* supplied shall be approximately equal to the exhaust air. The *makeup air* shall not reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system. *Makeup air* shall be provided by mechanical means and the exhaust and *makeup air* systems shall be electrically interlocked to ensure that *makeup air* is provided whenever the exhaust system is in operation. *Makeup air* intake openings shall comply with IMC Sections 401.4 and 401.5.

Exception: This section shall not apply to *dwelling units*.

508.1.1 Makeup air temperature. *Makeup air* shall be not less than 50°F (l0°C), measured at the flow of air from the supply diffuser into the space.

508.1.2 Makeup and ventilation air distribution. Makeup and ventilation air supply diffusers located within 12 feet (3.7 m) of an exhaust hood shall be directed away from the hood.

Exception: Perimeter perforated supply plenums installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

508.2 Compensating hoods. Manufacturers of compensating hoods shall provide a *label* indicating minimum exhaust flow and maximum *makeup air* flow that provides capture and containment of the exhaust effluent. Short-circuit compensating hoods are prohibited.

SECTION 509 FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS

509.1 Where required. *Commercial cooking appliances* required by Section 507.2.1 to have a Type I hood shall be provided with an *approved* automatic fire suppression system complying with the *International Building Code* and the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 510 HAZARDOUS EXHAUST SYSTEMS

510.1 General. This section shall govern the design and construction of duct systems for hazardous exhaust and shall determine where such systems are required. Hazardous exhaust systems are systems designed to capture and control hazardous emissions generated from product handling or processes, and convey those emissions to the outdoors. Hazardous emissions include flammable vapors, gases, fumes, mists or dusts, and volatile or airborne materials posing a health hazard, such as toxic or corrosive materials. For the purposes of this section, the health hazard rating of materials shall be as specified in NFPA 704.

For the purposes of the provisions of Section 510, a laboratory shall be defined as a facility where the use of chemicals is related to testing, analysis, teaching, research or developmental activities. Chemicals are used or synthesized on a nonproduction basis, rather than in a manufacturing process.

Exception: Other than IMC Sections 510.4 and 510.7, this section shall not apply to laboratory ventilation systems that comply with NFPA 45.

510.2 Where required. A hazardous exhaust system shall be required wherever operations involving the handling or processing of hazardous materials, in the absence of such exhaust systems and under normal operating conditions, have the potential to create one of the following conditions:

1. A flammable vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust is present in concentrations exceeding 25 percent of the lower flammability limit of the substance for the expected room temperature.
2. A vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust with a health-hazard rating of 4 is present in any concentration.
3. A vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust with a health-hazard rating of 1, 2 or 3 is present in concentrations exceeding 1 percent of the median lethal concentration of the substance for acute inhalation toxicity.

Exception: Laboratories, as defined in Section 510.1, except where the concentrations listed in Item 1 are exceeded or a vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust with a health-hazard rating of 1, 2, 3 or 4 is present in concentrations exceeding 1 percent of the median lethal concentration of the substance for acute inhalation toxicity.

[F] 510.2.1 Lumber yards and woodworking facilities. *Equipment* or machinery located inside buildings at lumber yards and woodworking facilities which generates or emits combustible dust shall be provided with an *approved* dust-collection and exhaust system installed in conformance with this section and the *International Fire Code*. *Equipment* and systems that are used to collect, process or convey combustible dusts shall be provided with an *approved* explosion-control system.

[F] 510.2.2 Combustible fibers. *Equipment* or machinery within a building which generates or emits combustible fibers shall be provided with an *approved* dust-collecting and exhaust system. Such systems shall comply with this code and the *International Fire Code*.

510.3 Design and operation. The design and operation of the exhaust system shall be such that flammable contaminants are diluted in noncontaminated air to maintain concentrations in the exhaust flow below 25 percent of the contaminant's lower flammability limit.

510.4 Independent system. Hazardous exhaust systems shall be independent of other types of exhaust systems. Incompatible materials, as defined in the *International Fire Code*, shall not be exhausted through the same hazardous exhaust system. Hazardous exhaust systems shall not share common shafts with other duct systems, except where such systems are hazardous exhaust systems originating in the same fire area.

Exception: The provision of this section shall not apply to laboratory exhaust systems where all of the following conditions apply:

1. All of the hazardous exhaust ductwork and other laboratory exhaust within both the occupied space and the shafts are under negative pressure while in operation.
2. The hazardous exhaust ductwork manifolded together within the occupied space must originate within the same fire area.
3. Each control branch has a flow regulating device.
4. Perchloric acid hoods and connected exhaust shall be prohibited from manifolding.
5. Radioisotope hoods are equipped with filtration and/or carbon beds where required by the *registered design professional*.
6. Biological safety cabinets are filtered.
7. Provision is made for continuous maintenance of negative static pressure in the ductwork.

Contaminated air shall not be recirculated to occupiable areas. Air containing explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts; flammable, highly toxic or toxic gases; or radioactive material shall be considered to be contaminated.

510.5 Design. Systems for removal of vapors, gases and smoke shall be designed by the constant velocity or equal friction methods. Systems conveying particulate matter shall be designed employing the constant velocity method.

510.5.1 Balancing. Systems conveying explosive or radioactive materials shall be prebalanced by duct sizing. Other systems shall be balanced by duct sizing with balancing devices, such as dampers. Dampers provided to balance airflow shall be provided with securely fixed minimum-position blocking devices to prevent restricting flow below the required volume or velocity.

510.5.2 Emission control. The design of the system shall be such that the emissions are confined to the area in which they are generated by air currents, hoods or enclosures and shall be exhausted by a duct system to a safe location or treated by removing contaminants.

510.5.3 Hoods required. Hoods or enclosures shall be used where contaminants originate in a limited area of a space. The design of the hood or enclosure shall be such that air currents created by the exhaust systems will capture the contaminants and transport them directly to the exhaust duct.

510.5.4 Contaminant capture and dilution. The velocity and circulation of air in work areas shall be such that contaminants are captured by an airstream at the area where the emissions are generated and conveyed into a product-conveying duct system. Contaminated air from work areas where hazardous contaminants are generated shall be diluted below the thresholds specified in Section 510.2 with air that does not contain other hazardous contaminants.

510.5.5 Makeup air. *Makeup air* shall be provided at a rate approximately equal to the rate that air is exhausted by the hazardous exhaust system. *Makeup-air* intakes shall be located so as to avoid recirculation of contaminated air.

510.5.6 Clearances. The minimum *clearance* between hoods and combustible construction shall be the *clearance* required by the duct system.

510.5.7 Ducts. Hazardous exhaust duct systems shall extend directly to the exterior of the building and shall not extend into or through ducts and plenums.

510.6 Penetrations. Penetrations of structural elements by a hazardous exhaust system shall conform to Sections 510.6.1 through 510.6.4.

Exception: Duct penetrations within H-5 occupancies as allowed by the *International Building Code*.

510.6.1 Fire dampers and smoke dampers. Fire dampers and smoke dampers are prohibited in hazardous exhaust ducts.

510.6.2 Floors. Hazardous exhaust systems that penetrate a floor/ceiling assembly shall be enclosed in a fire-resistance-rated shaft constructed in accordance with the *International Building Code.*

510.6.3 Wall assemblies. Hazardous exhaust duct systems that penetrate fire-resistance-rated wall assemblies shall be enclosed in fire-resistance-rated construction from the point of penetration to the outlet terminal, except where the interior of the duct is equipped with an approved automatic fire suppression system. Ducts shall be enclosed in accordance with the *International Building Code* requirements for shaft construction and such enclosure shall have a minimum fire-resistance-rating of not less than the highest fire-resistance-rated wall assembly penetrated.

510.6.4 Fire walls. Ducts shall not penetrate a fire wall.

510.7 Suppression required. Ducts shall be protected with an *approved* automatic fire suppression system installed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

Exceptions:

1. An approved automatic fire suppression system shall not be required in ducts conveying materials, fumes, mists and vapors that are nonflammable and noncombustible under all conditions and at any concentrations.
2. Automatic fire suppression systems shall not be required in metallic and noncombustible, nonmetallic exhaust ducts in semiconductor fabrication facilities.
3. An *approved* automatic fire suppression system shall not be required in ducts where the largest cross-sectional diameter of the duct is less than 10 inches (254 mm).
4. For laboratories, as defined in Section 510.1, automatic fire protection systems shall not be required in laboratory hoods or exhaust systems

510.8 Duct construction. Ducts used to convey hazardous exhaust shall be constructed of *approved* G90 galvanized sheet steel, with a minimum nominal thickness as specified in Table 510.8. Nonmetallic ducts used in systems exhausting nonflammable corrosive fumes or vapors shall be *listed* and *labeled.*

Nonmetallic ducts shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 50 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. Ducts shall be *approved* for installation in such an exhaust system. Where the products being exhausted are detrimental to the duct material, the ducts shall be constructed of alternative materials that are compatible with the exhaust.

TABLE 510.8
MINIMUM DUCT THICKNESS

DIAMETER OF DUCT OR MAXIMUM SIDE DIMENSION	MINIMUM NOMINAL THICKNESS		
	Nonabrasive materials	Nonabrasive/ Abrasive materials	Abrasive materials
0-8 inches	0.028 inch (No. 24 gage)	0.034 inch (No. 22 gage)	0.040 inch (No. 20 gage)
9-18 inches	0.034 inch (No. 22 gage)	0.040 inch (No. 20 gage)	0.052 inch (No. 18 gage)
19-30 inches	0.040 inch (No. 20 gage)	0.052 inch (No. 18 gage)	0.064 inch (No. 16 gage)
Over 30 inches	0.052 inch (No. 18 gage)	0.064 inch (No. 16 gage)	0.079 inch (No. 14 gage)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

510.8.1 Duct joints. Ducts shall be made tight with lap joints having a minimum lap of 1 inch (25 mm). Joints used in ANSI/SMACNA Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards and ANSI/SMACNA Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards are also acceptable.

510.8.2 Clearance to combustibles. Ducts shall have a *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with Table 510.8.2. Exhaust gases having temperatures in excess of 600ºF (316ºC) shall be exhausted to a *chimney* in accordance with Section 511.2.

TABLE 510.8.2
CLEARANCE TO COMBUSTIBLES

TYPE OF EXHAUST OR TEMPERATURE OF EXHAUST (°F)	CLEARANCE TO COMBUSTIBLES (inches)
Less than 100	1
100-600	12
Flammable vapors	6

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, ºC = [(ºF)- 32]/1.8.

510.8.3 Explosion relief. Systems exhausting potentially explosive mixtures shall be protected with an *approved* explosion relief system or by an *approved* explosion prevention system designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 69. An explosion relief system shall be designed to minimize the structural and mechanical damage resulting from an explosion or deflagration within the exhaust system. An explosion prevention system shall be designed to prevent an explosion or deflagration from occurring.

510.9 Supports. Ducts shall be supported at intervals not exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm). Supports shall be constructed of noncombustible material.

SECTION 511 DUST, STOCK AND REFUSE CONVEYING SYSTEMS

511.1 Dust, stock and refuse conveying systems. Dust, stock and refuse conveying systems shall comply with the provisions of Section 510 and Sections 511.1.1 through 511.2.

511.1.1 Collectors and separators. Collectors and separators involving such systems as centrifugal separators, bag filter systems and similar devices, and associated supports shall be constructed of noncombustible materials and shall be located on the exterior of the building or structure. A collector or separator shall not be located nearer than 10 feet (3048 mm) to combustible construction or to an unprotected wall or floor opening, unless the collector is provided with a metal vent pipe that extends above the highest part of any roof with a distance of 30 feet (9144 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Collectors such as "Point of Use" collectors, close extraction weld fume collectors, spray finishing booths, stationary grinding tables, sanding booths, and integrated or machine-mounted collectors shall be permitted to be installed indoors provided the installation is in accordance with the *International Fire Code* and NFPA 70.
2. Collectors in independent exhaust systems handling combustible dusts shall be permitted to be installed indoors provided that such collectors are installed in compliance with the *International Fire Code* and NFPA 70.

511.1.2 Discharge pipe. Discharge piping shall conform to the requirements for ducts, including clearances required for high-heat appliances, as contained in this code. A delivery pipe from a cyclone collector shall not convey refuse directly into the firebox of a boiler, furnace, dutch oven, refuse burner, incinerator or other *appliance*.

511.1.3 Conveying systems exhaust discharge. An exhaust system shall discharge to the outside of the building either directly by flue or indirectly through the bin or vault into which the system discharges except where the contaminants have been removed. Exhaust system discharge shall be permitted to be recirculated provided that the solid particulate has been removed at a minimum efficiency of 99.9 percent at 10 microns (10.01 mm), vapor concentrations are less than 25 percent of the LFL, and *approved equipment* is used to monitor the vapor concentration.

511.1.4 Spark protection. The outlet of an open-air exhaust terminal shall be protected with an *approved* metal or other noncombustible screen to prevent the entry of sparks.

511.1.5 Explosion relief vents. A safety or explosion relief vent shall be provided on all systems that convey combustible refuse or stock of an explosive nature, in accordance with the requirements of the *International Building Code*.

511.1.5.1 Screens. Where a screen is installed in a safety relief vent, the screen shall be attached so as to permit ready release under the explosion pressure.

511.1.5.2 Hoods. The relief vent shall be provided with an *approved* noncombustible cowl or hood, or with a counterbalanced relief valve or cover arranged to prevent the escape of hazardous materials, gases or liquids.

511.2 Exhaust outlets. Outlets for exhaust that exceed 600ºF (315ºC) shall be designed as a *chimney* in accordance with Table 511.2.

SECTION 512 SUBSLAB SOIL EXHAUST SYSTEMS

512.1 General. When a subslab soil exhaust system is provided, the duct shall conform to the requirements of this section.

Exception: For radon gas control in residential occupancies, see Minnesota Rules, parts 1303.2400 to 1303.2403.

512.2 Materials. Subslab soil exhaust system duct material shall be air duct material *listed* and *labeled* to the requirements of UL 181 for Class 0 air ducts, or any of the following piping materials that comply with the *International Plumbing Code* as building sanitary drainage and vent pipe: cast iron; galvanized steel; brass or copper pipe; copper tube of a weight not less than that of copper drainage tube, Type DWV; and plastic piping.

512.3 Grade. Exhaust system ducts shall not be trapped and shall have a minimum slope of one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope).

512.4 Termination. Subslab soil exhaust system ducts shall extend through the roof and terminate at least 6 inches (152 mm) above the roof and at least 10 feet (3048 mm) from any operable openings or air intake.

512.5 Identification. Subslab soil exhaust ducts shall be permanently identified within each floor level by means of a tag, stencil or other *approved* marking.

SECTION 513 SMOKE CONTROL SYSTEMS

[F] 513.1 Scope and purpose. This section applies to mechanical and passive smoke control systems that are required by the *International Building Code* or the *International Fire Code*. The purpose of this section is to establish minimum requirements for the design, installation and acceptance testing of smoke control systems that are intended to provide a tenable environment for the evacuation or reloca-

TABLE 511.2
CONSTRUCTION, CLEARANCE AND TERMINATION REQUIREMENTS FOR SINGLE-WALL METAL CHIMNEYS

CHIMNEYS SERVING	MINIMUM THICKNESS		TERMINATION				CLEARANCE			
				Above any part of building within (feet)			Combustible construction (inches)		Noncombustible construction	
	Walls (inch)	Lining	Above roof opening (feet)	10	25	50	Interior inst.	Exterior inst.	Interior inst.	Exterior inst.
High-heat appliances (Over 2,000°F)[a]	0.127 (No. 10 MSG)	4$^1/_2$″ laid on 4$^1/_2$″ bed	20	—	—	20	See Note c			
Low-heat appliances (1,000°F normal operation)	0.127 (No. 10 MSG)	none	3	2	—	—	18	6	Up to 18″ diameter, 2″ Over 18″ diameter, 4″	
Medium-heat appliances (2,000°F maximum)[b]	0.127 (No. 10 MSG)	Up to 18″ dia.—2$^1/_2$″ Over 18″—4$^1/_2$″ On 4$^1/_2$″ bed	10	—	10	—	36	24		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8.

a. Lining shall extend from bottom to top of outlet.

b. Lining shall extend from 24 inches below connector to 24 feet above.

c. Clearance shall be as specified by the design engineer and shall have sufficient clearance from buildings and structures to avoid overheating combustible materials (maximum 160°F).

tion of occupants. These provisions are not intended for the preservation of contents, the timely restoration of operations, or for assistance in fire suppression or overhaul activities. Smoke control systems regulated by this section serve a different purpose than the smoke- and heat-venting provisions found in Section 910 of the *International Building Code* or the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.2 General design requirements. Buildings, structures, or parts thereof required by the *International Building Code* or the *International Fire Code* to have a smoke control system or systems shall have such systems designed in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 909 of the *International Building Code* and the generally accepted and well-established principles of engineering relevant to the design. The *construction documents* shall include sufficient information and detail to describe adequately the elements of the design necessary for the proper implementation of the smoke control systems. These documents shall be accompanied with sufficient information and analysis to demonstrate compliance with these provisions.

[F] 513.3 Special inspection and test requirements. In addition to the ordinary inspection and test requirements which buildings, structures and parts thereof are required to undergo, smoke control systems subject to the provisions of Section 909 of the *International Building Code* shall undergo special inspections and tests sufficient to verify the proper commissioning of the smoke control design in its final installed condition. The design submission accompanying the *construction documents* shall clearly detail procedures and methods to be used and the items subject to such inspections and tests. Such commissioning shall be in accordance with generally accepted engineering practice and, where possible, based on published standards for the particular testing involved. The special inspections and tests required by this section shall be conducted under the same terms as found in Section 1704 of the *International Building Code*.

[F] 513.4 Analysis. A rational analysis supporting the types of smoke control systems to be employed, their methods of operation, the systems supporting them and the methods of construction to be utilized shall accompany the submitted *construction documents* and shall include, but not be limited to, the items indicated in Sections 513.4.1 through 513.4.6.

[F] 513.4.1 Stack effect. The system shall be designed such that the maximum probable normal or reverse stack effects will not adversely interfere with the system's capabilities. In determining the maximum probable stack effects, altitude, elevation, weather history and interior temperatures shall be used.

[F] 513.4.2 Temperature effect of fire. Buoyancy and expansion caused by the design fire in accordance with Section 513.9 shall be analyzed. The system shall be designed such that these effects do not adversely interfere with its capabilities.

[F] 513.4.3 Wind effect. The design shall consider the adverse effects of wind. Such consideration shall be consistent with the wind-loading provisions of the *International Building Code*.

[F] 513.4.4 HVAC systems. The design shall consider the effects of the heating, ventilating and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems on both smoke and fire transport. The analysis shall include all permutations of systems' status. The design shall consider the effects of fire on the HVAC systems.

[F] 513.4.5 Climate. The design shall consider the effects of low temperatures on systems, property and occupants. Air inlets and exhausts shall be located so as to prevent snow or ice blockage.

[F] 513.4.6 Duration of operation. All portions of active or passive smoke control systems shall be capable of continued operation after detection of the fire event for a period of not less than either 20 minutes or 1.5 times the calculated egress time, whichever is less.

[F] 513.5 Smoke barrier construction. Smoke barriers shall comply with the *International Building Code*. Smoke barriers shall be constructed and sealed to limit leakage areas exclusive of protected openings. The maximum allowable leakage area shall be the aggregate area calculated using the following leakage area ratios:

1. Walls: $A/A_w = 0.00100$
2. Interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways: $A/A_w = 0.00035$
3. Enclosed exit access stairways and ramps and all other shafts: $A/A_w = 0.00150$
4. Floors and roofs: $A/A_F = 0.00050$

where:

A = Total leakage area, square feet (m^2).

A_F = Unit floor or roof area of barrier, square feet (m^2).

A_w = Unit wall area of barrier, square feet (m^2).

The leakage area ratios shown do not include openings due to doors, operable windows or similar gaps. These shall be included in calculating the total leakage area.

[F] 513.5.1 Leakage area. Total leakage area of the barrier is the product of the smoke barrier gross area times the allowable leakage area ratio, plus the area of other openings such as gaps and operable windows. Compliance shall be determined by achieving the minimum air pressure difference across the barrier with the system in the smoke control mode for mechanical smoke control systems. Passive smoke control systems tested using other *approved* means such as door fan testing shall be as *approved* by the code official.

[F] 513.5.2 Opening protection. Openings in smoke barriers shall be protected by automatic-closing devices actuated by the required controls for the mechanical smoke control system. Door openings shall be protected by door assemblies complying with the requirements of the *International Building Code* for doors in smoke barriers.

Exceptions:

1. Passive smoke control systems with automatic-closing devices actuated by spot-type smoke detectors *listed* for releasing service installed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.
2. Fixed openings between smoke zones which are protected utilizing the airflow method.
3. In Group I-2 where such doors are installed across corridors, a pair of opposite-swinging doors without a center mullion shall be installed having vision panels with *approved* fire-rated glazing materials in *approved* fire-rated frames, the area of which shall not exceed that tested. The doors shall be close-fitting within operational tolerances, and shall not have undercuts, louvers or grilles. The doors shall have head and jamb stops, astragals or rabbets at meeting edges and automatic-closing devices. Positive latching devices are not required.
4. Group I-3.
5. Openings between smoke zones with clear ceiling heights of 14 feet (4267 mm) or greater and bank down capacity of greater than 20 minutes as determined by the design fire size.

[F] 513.5.2.1 Ducts and air transfer openings. Ducts and air transfer openings are required to be protected with a minimum Class II, 250°F (121°C) smoke damper complying with the *International Building Code*.

[F] 513.6 Pressurization method. The primary mechanical means of controlling smoke shall be by pressure differences across smoke barriers. Maintenance of a tenable environment is not required in the smoke control zone of fire origin.

[F] 513.6.1 Minimum pressure difference. The minimum pressure difference across a smoke barrier shall be 0.05-inch water gage (12.4 Pa) in fully sprinklered buildings.

In buildings permitted to be other than fully sprinklered, the smoke control system shall be designed to achieve pressure differences at least two times the maximum calculated pressure difference produced by the design fire.

[F] 513.6.2 Maximum pressure difference. The maximum air pressure difference across a smoke barrier shall be determined by required door-opening or closing forces. The actual force required to open exit doors when the system is in the smoke control mode shall be in accordance with the *International Building Code*. Opening and closing forces for other doors shall be determined by standard engineering methods for the resolution of forces and reactions. The calculated force to set a side-hinged, swinging door in motion shall be determined by:

$$F = F_{dc} + K(WA\Delta P)/2(W-d) \quad \textbf{(Equation 5-2)}$$

where:

A = Door area, square feet (m^2).

d = Distance from door handle to latch edge of door, feet (m).

F = Total door opening force, pounds (N).

F_{dc} = Force required to overcome closing device, pounds (*N*).

K = Coefficient 5.2 (1.0).

W = Door width, feet (m).

ΔP = Design pressure difference, inches (Pa) water gage.

[F] 513.7 Airflow design method. When *approved* by the code official, smoke migration through openings fixed in a permanently open position, which are located between smoke control zones by the use of the airflow method, shall be permitted. The design airflows shall be in accordance with this section. Airflow shall be directed to limit smoke migration from the fire zone. The geometry of openings shall be considered to prevent flow reversal from turbulent effects.

[F] 513.7.1 Velocity. The minimum average velocity through a fixed opening shall not be less than:

$$v = 217.2[h(T_f - T_o)/(T_f + 460)]^{1/2} \quad \textbf{(Equation 5-3)}$$

For SI: $v = 119.9\ [h(T_f - T_o)/T_f]^{1/2}$

where:

H = Height of opening, feet (m).

T_f = Temperature of smoke, ºF (K).

T_o = Temperature of ambient air, ºF (K).

v = Air velocity, feet per minute (m/minute).

[F] 513.7.2 Prohibited conditions. This method shall not be employed where either the quantity of air or the velocity of the airflow will adversely affect other portions of the smoke control system, unduly intensify the fire, disrupt plume dynamics or interfere with exiting. In no case shall airflow toward the fire exceed 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s). Where the formula in Section 513.7.1 requires airflow to exceed this limit, the airflow method shall not be used.

[F] 513.8 Exhaust method. When *approved* by the building official, mechanical smoke control for large enclosed volumes, such as in atriums or malls, shall be permitted to utilize the exhaust method. Smoke control systems using the exhaust method shall be designed in accordance with NFPA 92B.

[F] 513.8.1 Exhaust rate. The height of the lowest horizontal surface of the accumulating smoke layer shall be maintained at least 6 feet (1829 mm) above any walking surface which forms a portion of a required egress system within the smoke zone.

[F] 513.9 Design fire. The design fire shall be based on a rational analysis performed by the *registered design professional* and *approved* by the code official. The design fire shall be based on the analysis in accordance with Section 513.4 and this section.

[F] 513.9.1 Factors considered. The engineering analysis shall include the characteristics of the fuel, fuel load, effects included by the fire and whether the fire is likely to be steady or unsteady.

[F] 513.9.2 Design fire fuel. Determination of the design fire shall include consideration of the type of fuel, fuel spacing and configuration.

[F] 513.9.3 Heat-release assumptions. The analysis shall make use of the best available data from *approved* sources and shall not be based on excessively stringent limitations of combustible material.

[F] 513.9.4 Sprinkler effectiveness assumptions. A documented engineering analysis shall be provided for conditions that assume fire growth is halted at the time of sprinkler activation.

[F] 513.10 Equipment. *Equipment* such as, but not limited to, fans, ducts, automatic dampers and balance dampers shall be suitable for their intended use, suitable for the probable exposure temperatures that the rational analysis indicates, and as *approved* by the code official.

[F] 513.10.1 Exhaust fans. Components of exhaust fans shall be rated and certified by the manufacturer for the probable temperature rise to which the components will be exposed. This temperature rise shall be computed by:

$$T_s = (Q_c/mc) + (T_a) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 5-4)}$$

where:

c = Specific heat of smoke at smoke-layer temperature, Btu/lb°F (kJ/kg • K).

m = Exhaust rate, pounds per second (kg/s).

Q_c = Convective heat output of fire, Btu/s (kW).

T_a = Ambient temperature, °F (K).

T_s = Smoke temperature, °F (K).

Exception: Reduced T_s as calculated based on the assurance of adequate dilution air.

[F] 513.10.2 Ducts. Duct materials and joints shall be capable of withstanding the probable temperatures and pressures to which they are exposed as determined in accordance with Section 513.10.1. Ducts shall be constructed and supported in accordance with Chapter 6. Ducts shall be leak tested to 1.5 times the maximum design pressure in accordance with nationally accepted practices. Measured leakage shall not exceed 5 percent of design flow. Results of such testing shall be a part of the documentation procedure. Ducts shall be supported directly from fire-resistance-rated structural elements of the building by substantial, noncombustible supports.

Exception: Flexible connections, for the purpose of vibration isolation, that are constructed of *approved* fire-resistance-rated materials.

[F] 513.10.3 Equipment, inlets and outlets. *Equipment* shall be located so as to not expose uninvolved portions of the building to an additional fire hazard. Outdoor air inlets shall be located so as to minimize the potential for introducing smoke or flame into the building. Exhaust outlets shall be so located as to minimize reintroduction of smoke into the building and to limit exposure of the building or adjacent buildings to an additional fire hazard.

[F] 513.10.4 Automatic dampers. Automatic dampers, regardless of the purpose for which they are installed within the smoke control system, shall be *listed* and conform to the requirements of *approved* recognized standards.

[F] 513.10.5 Fans. In addition to other requirements, belt-driven fans shall have 1.5 times the number of belts required for the design duty with the minimum number of belts being two. Fans shall be selected for stable performance based on normal temperature and, where applicable, elevated temperature. Calculations and manufacturer's fan curves shall be part of the documentation procedures. Fans shall be supported and restrained by noncombustible devices in accordance with the structural design requirements of the *International Building Code*. Motors driving fans shall not be operating beyond their nameplate horsepower (kilowatts) as determined from measurement of actual current draw. Motors driving fans shall have a minimum service factor of 1.15.

[F] 513.11 Power systems. The smoke control system shall be supplied with two sources of power. Primary power shall be the normal building power systems. Secondary power shall be from an *approved* standby source complying with Chapter 27 of the *International Building Code*. The standby power source and its transfer switches shall be in a room separate from the normal power transformers and switch gear and ventilated directly to and from the exterior. The room shall be enclosed with not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the *International Building Code* or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *International Building Code*, or both. Power distribution from the two sources shall be by independent routes. Transfer to full standby power shall be automatic and within 60 seconds of failure of the primary power. The systems shall comply with NFPA 70.

[F] 513.11.1 Power sources and power surges. Elements of the smoke management system relying on volatile memories or the like shall be supplied with uninterruptible power sources of sufficient duration to span 15-minute primary power interruption. Elements of the smoke management system susceptible to power surges shall be suitably protected by conditioners, suppressors or other *approved* means.

[F] 513.12 Detection and control systems. Fire detection systems providing control input or output signals to mechanical smoke control systems or elements thereof shall comply with NFPA 72 and the requirements of Chapter 9 of the *International Building Code* or the *International Fire Code*. Such systems shall be equipped with a control unit complying with UL 864 and listed as smoke control *equipment*.

Control systems for mechanical smoke control systems shall include provisions for verification. Verification shall include positive confirmation of actuation, testing, manual override, the presence of power downstream of all disconnects and, through a preprogrammed weekly test sequence report, abnormal conditions audibly, visually and by printed report.

[F] 513.12.1 Wiring. In addition to meeting the requirements of NFPA 70, all wiring, regardless of voltage, shall be fully enclosed within continuous raceways.

[F] 513.12.2 Activation. Smoke control systems shall be activated in accordance with the *International Building Code* or the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.12.3 Automatic control. Where completely automatic control is required or used, the automatic control sequences shall be initiated from an appropriately zoned automatic sprinkler system complying with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *International Fire Code*, from manual controls that are readily accessible to the fire department, and any smoke detectors required by engineering analysis.

[F] 513.13 Control-air tubing. Control-air tubing shall be of sufficient size to meet the required response times. Tubing shall be flushed clean and dry prior to final connections. Tubing shall be adequately supported and protected from damage. Tubing passing through concrete or masonry shall be sleeved and protected from abrasion and electrolytic action.

[F] 513.13.1 Materials. Control-air tubing shall be hard-drawn copper, Type L, ACR in accordance with ASTM B42, ASTM B43, ASTM B68, ASTM B88, ASTM B251 and ASTM B280. Fittings shall be wrought copper or brass, solder type in accordance with ASME B 16.18 or ASME B 16.22. Changes in direction shall be made with appropriate tool bends. Brass compression-type fittings shall be used at final connection to devices; other joints shall be brazed using a BCuP5 brazing alloy with solidus above 1,100°F (593°C) and liquids below 1,500°F (816°C). Brazing flux shall be used on copper-to-brass joints only.

Exception: Nonmetallic tubing used within control panels and at the final connection to devices provided all of the following conditions are met:

1. Tubing shall comply with the requirements of Section 602.2.1.3.
2. Tubing and connected device shall be completely enclosed within a galvanized or paint-grade steel enclosure having a minimum thickness of 0.0296 inch (0.7534 mm) (No. 22 gage). Entry to the enclosure shall be by copper tubing with a protective grommet of Neoprene or Teflon or by suitable brass compression to male barbed adapter.
3. Tubing shall be identified by appropriately documented coding.
4. Tubing shall be neatly tied and supported within the enclosure. Tubing bridging cabinets and doors or moveable devices shall be of sufficient length to avoid tension and excessive stress. Tubing shall be protected against abrasion. Tubing serving devices on doors shall be fastened along hinges.

[F] 513.13.2 Isolation from other functions. Control tubing serving other than smoke control functions shall be isolated by automatic isolation valves or shall be an independent system.

[F] 513.13.3 Testing. Test control-air tubing at three times the operating pressure for not less than 30 minutes without any noticeable loss in gauge pressure prior to final connection to devices.

[F] 513.14 Marking and identification. The detection and control systems shall be clearly marked at all junctions, accesses and terminations.

[F] 513.15 Control diagrams. Identical control diagrams shall be provided and maintained as required by the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.16 Fire fighter's smoke control panel. A fire fighter's smoke control panel for fire department emergency response purposes only shall be provided in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.17 System response time. Smoke control system activation shall comply with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.18 Acceptance testing. Devices, *equipment*, components and sequences shall be tested in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.19 System acceptance. Acceptance of the smoke control system shall be in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 514
ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION SYSTEMS

514.1 General. Energy recovery ventilation systems shall be installed in accordance with this section. Where required for purposes of energy conservation, energy recovery ventilation systems shall also comply with the *International Energy Conservation Code*. Ducted heat recovery ventilators shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1812. Nonducted heat recovery ventilators shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1815.

514.2 Prohibited applications. Energy recovery ventilation systems shall not be used in the following systems:

1. Hazardous exhaust systems covered in Section 510.
2. Dust, stock and refuse systems that convey explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dust.
3. Smoke control systems covered in Section 513.
4. Commercial kitchen exhaust systems serving Type I and Type II hoods.
5. Clothes dryer exhaust systems covered in Section 504.

514.3 Access. A means of access shall be provided to the heat exchanger and other components of the system as required for service, maintenance, repair or replacement.

514.4 Recirculated air. Air conveyed within energy recovery systems shall not be considered as recirculated air where the energy recovery ventilation system is constructed to limit cross-leakage between air streams to less than 10 percent of the total airflow design capacity.

CHAPTER 6
DUCT SYSTEMS

SECTION 601 GENERAL

601.1 Scope. Duct systems used for the movement of air in air-conditioning, heating, ventilating and exhaust systems shall conform to the provisions of this chapter except as otherwise specified in Chapters 5 and 7.

Exception: Ducts discharging combustible material directly into any *combustion* chamber shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 82.

[B] 601.2 Air movement in egress elements. Corridors shall not serve as supply, return, exhaust, relief or *ventilation air* ducts.

Exceptions:

1. Use of a corridor as a source of *makeup air* for exhaust systems in rooms that open directly onto such corridors, including toilet rooms, bathrooms, dressing rooms, smoking lounges and janitor closets, shall be permitted, provided that each such corridor is directly supplied with outdoor air at a rate greater than the rate of *makeup air* taken from the corridor.
2. Where located within a *dwelling unit*, the use of corridors for conveying return air shall not be prohibited.
3. Where located within tenant spaces of 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) or less in area, use of corridors for conveying return air is permitted.
4. Incidental air movement from pressurized rooms within health care facilities, provided that the corridor is not the primary source of supply or return to the room.

[B] 601.2.1 Corridor ceiling. Use of the space between the corridor ceiling and the floor or roof structure above as a return air *plenum* is permitted for one or more of the following conditions:

1. The corridor is not required to be of fire-resistance-rated construction;
2. The corridor is separated from the *plenum* by fire-resistance-rated construction;
3. The air-handling system serving the corridor is shut down upon activation of the air-handling unit smoke detectors required by this code;
4. The air-handling system serving the corridor is shut down upon detection of sprinkler waterflow where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system; or
5. The space between the corridor ceiling and the floor or roof structure above the corridor is used as a component of an *approved* engineered smoke control system.

[B] 601.3 Exits. *Equipment* and ductwork for exit enclosure ventilation shall comply with one of the following items:

1. Such *equipment* and ductwork shall be located exterior to the building and shall be directly connected to the exit enclosure by ductwork enclosed in construction as required by the *International Building Code* for shafts.
2. Where such *equipment* and ductwork is located within the exit enclosure, the intake air shall be taken directly from the outdoors and the *exhaust air* shall be discharged directly to the outdoors, or such air shall be conveyed through ducts enclosed in construction as required by the *International Building Code* for shafts.
3. Where located within the building, such *equipment* and ductwork shall be separated from the remainder of the building, including other mechanical *equipment*, with construction as required by the *International Building Code* for shafts.

In each case, openings into fire-resistance-rated construction shall be limited to those needed for maintenance and operation and shall be protected by self-closing fire-resistance-rated devices in accordance with the *International Building Code* for enclosure wall opening protectives. Exit enclosure ventilation systems shall be independent of other building ventilation systems.

601.4 Contamination prevention. Exhaust ducts under positive pressure, chimneys and vents shall not extend into or pass through ducts or plenums.

Exceptions:

1. Exhaust systems located in ceiling return air plenums over spaces that are permitted to have 10 percent recirculation in accordance with Section 403.2.1, Item 4. The exhaust duct joints, seams and connections shall comply with Section 603.9.
2. This section shall not apply to chimneys and vents that pass through plenums where such venting systems comply with one of the following requirements:
   - 2.1. The venting system shall be listed for positive pressure applications and shall be sealed in accordance with the vent manufacturer's instructions.
   - 2.2. The venting system shall be installed such that fittings and joints between sections are not installed in the above ceiling space.
   - 2.3. The venting system shall be installed in a conduit or enclosure with sealed joints separating the interior of the conduit or enclosure from the ceiling space.

SECTION 602
PLENUMS

602.1 General. Supply, return, exhaust, relief and *ventilation air* plenums shall be limited to uninhabited crawl spaces, areas above a ceiling or below the floor, attic spaces and mechanical *equipment* rooms. Plenums shall be limited to one fire area. Fuel-fired appliances shall not be installed within a *plenum*.

602.2 Construction. *Plenum* enclosures shall be constructed of materials permitted for the type of construction classification of the building.

The use of gypsum boards to form plenums shall be limited to systems where the air temperatures do not exceed 125ºF (52ºC) and the building and mechanical system design conditions are such that the gypsum board surface temperature will be maintained above the airstream dew-point temperature. Air plenums formed by gypsum boards shall not be incorporated in air-handling systems utilizing evaporative coolers.

602.2.1 Materials within plenums. Except as required by Sections 602.2.1.1 through 602.2.1.5, materials within plenums shall be noncombustible or shall be listed and labeled as having a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

Exceptions:

1. Rigid and flexible ducts and connectors shall conform to Section 603.
2. Duct coverings, linings, tape and connectors shall conform to Sections 603 and 604.
3. This section shall not apply to materials exposed within plenums in one- and two-family dwellings.
4. This section shall not apply to smoke detectors.
5. Combustible materials fully enclosed within one of the following:
    - 5.1. Continuous noncombustible raceways or enclosures.
    - 5.2. Approved gypsum board assemblies.
    - 5.3. Materials listed and labeled for installation within a plenum.
6. Materials in Group H, Division 5 fabrication areas and the areas above and below the fabrication area that share a common air recirculation path with the fabrication area.

602.2.1.1 Wiring. Combustible electrical wires and cables and optical fiber cables exposed within a plenum shall be listed as having a maximum peak optical density of 0.50 or less, an average optical density of 0.15 or less, and a maximum flame spread distance of 5 feet (1524 mm) or less when tested in accordance with NFPA 262 or shall be installed in metal raceways or metal sheathed cable. Combustible optical fiber and communication raceways exposed within a plenum shall be listed as having a maximum peak optical density of 0.5 or less, an average optical density of 0.15 or less, and a maximum flame spread distance of 5 feet (1524 mm) or less when tested in accordance with ANSI/UL 2024. Only plenum-rated wires and cables shall be installed in plenum-rated raceways. Electrical wires and cables, optical fiber cables and raceways addressed in this section shall be listed and labeled and shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70.

602.2.1.2 Fire sprinkler piping. Plastic fire sprinkler piping exposed within a *plenum* shall be used only in wet pipe systems and shall have a peak optical density not greater than 0.50, an average optical density not greater than 0.15, and a flame spread of not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) when tested in accordance with UL 1887. Piping shall be *listed* and *labeled*.

602.2.1.3 Pneumatic tubing. Combustible pneumatic tubing exposed within a *plenum* shall have a peak optical density not greater than 0.50, an average optical density not greater than 0.15, and a flame spread of not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) when tested in accordance with UL 1820. Combustible pneumatic tubing shall be *listed* and *labeled*.

602.2.1.4 Electrical equipment in plenums. Electrical *equipment* exposed within a *plenum* shall comply with Sections 602.2.1.4.1 and 602.2.1.4.2.

602.2.1.4.1 Equipment in metallic enclosures. Electrical *equipment* with metallic enclosures exposed within a *plenum* shall be permitted.

602.2.1.4.2 Equipment in combustible enclosures. Electrical *equipment* with combustible enclosures exposed within a *plenum* shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 2043.

602.2.1.5 Foam plastic insulation. Foam plastic insulation used as interior wall or ceiling finish, or as interior trim, in plenums shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and shall also comply with one or more of Sections 602.2.1.5.1, 602.2.1.5.2 and 602.2.1.5.3.

602.2.1.5.1 Separation required. The foam plastic insulation shall be separated from the plenum by a thermal barrier complying with Section 2603.4 of the *International Building Code* and shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the thickness and density intended for use.

602.2.1.5.2 Approval. The foam plastic insulation shall exhibit a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 50 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the thickness and density intended for use and shall meet the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.2 of the *International Building Code* when tested in accordance with NFPA 286.

The foam plastic insulation shall be approved based on tests conducted in accordance with Section 2603.10 of the *International Building Code*.

602.2.1.5.3 Covering. The foam plastic insulation shall be covered by corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of not less than 0.0160 inch (0.4 mm) and shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the thickness and density intended for use.

602.3 Stud cavity and joist space plenums. Stud wall cavities and the spaces between solid floor joists to be utilized as air plenums shall comply with the following conditions:

1. Such cavities or spaces shall not be utilized as a *plenum* for supply air.
2. Such cavities or spaces shall not be part of a required fire-resistance-rated assembly.
3. Stud wall cavities shall not convey air from more than one floor level.
4. Stud wall cavities and joist space plenums shall comply with the floor penetration protection requirements of the *International Building Code*.
5. Stud wall cavities and joist space plenums shall be isolated from adjacent concealed spaces by *approved* fireblocking as required in the *International Building Code*.
6. Studwall cavities in the outside walls of building envelope assemblies shall not be utilized as air plenums.

[B] 602.4 Flood hazard. For structures located in flood hazard areas, plenum spaces shall be located above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment or shall be designed and constructed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the plenum spaces during floods up to such elevation. If the plenum spaces are located below the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment, they shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

SECTION 603
DUCT CONSTRUCTION AND INSTALLATION

603.1 General. An air distribution system shall be designed and installed to supply the required distribution of air. The installation of an air distribution system shall not affect the fire protection requirements specified in the *International Building Code*. Ducts shall be constructed, braced, reinforced and installed to provide structural strength and durability.

603.2 Duct sizing. Ducts installed within a single *dwelling unit* shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual D or other *approved* methods. Ducts installed within all other buildings shall be sized in accordance with the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals* or other equivalent computation procedure.

603.3 Duct classification. Ducts shall be classified based on the maximum operating pressure of the duct at pressures of positive or negative 0.5, 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 6.0 or 10.0 inches (1 inch w.c. = 248.7 Pa) of water column. The pressure classification of ducts shall equal or exceed the design pressure of the air distribution in which the ducts are utilized.

603.4 Metallic ducts. All metallic ducts shall be constructed as specified in the SMACNA *HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible*.

Exception: Ducts installed within a single *dwelling unit* shall have a minimum thickness as specified in IMC Table 603.4 as amended in this part.

603.4.1 Minimum fasteners. Round metallic ducts shall be mechanically fastened by means of at least three sheet metal screws or rivets spaced equally around the joint.

Exception: Where a duct connection is made that is partially inaccessible, three screws or rivets shall be equally spaced on the exposed portion so as to prevent a hinge effect.

603.4.2 Elbows. Radius elbows with velocities exceeding 1,000 feet per minute (fpm) (5 m/sec) shall have an inside radius not less than the width of the duct or shall have turning vanes. Square throat elbows with velocities exceeding 1,000 feet per minute (fpm) (5 m/sec) shall have turning vanes.

Exception: Ducts installed within a single *dwelling unit*.

603.4.3 Transition fittings. Transition fittings shall be constructed with a maximum slope of 45 degrees.

TABLE 603.4
DUCT CONSTRUCTION MINIMUM SHEET METAL THICKNESSES FOR SINGLE DWELLING UNITS

DUCT SIZE	GALVANIZED		ALUMINUM MINIMUM THICKNESS (gauge)
	Minimum thickness (in.)	Equivalent galvanized gage no.	
Round ducts and enclosed rectangular ducts			
14 inches or less	0.013	30	26
Over 14 inches	0.016	28	24
Exposed rectangular ducts			
14 inches or less	0.016	28	24
Over 14 inches	0.019	26	22

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 inch water gage = 249 Pa.

603.4.4 Obstructions. Where a pipe or other obstruction passes through a duct, a streamlined sleeve must be constructed equal in type and gage to the duct. The area of the duct, at the point of obstruction, must be increased by an amount equal to the area of the streamlined sleeve.

603.5 Nonmetallic ducts. Nonmetallic ducts shall be constructed with Class 0 or Class 1 duct material and shall comply with UL 181. Fibrous duct construction shall conform to the SMACNA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards* or NAIMA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards.* The air temperature within nonmetallic ducts shall not exceed 250ºF (121ºC).

603.5.1 Gypsum ducts. The use of gypsum boards to form air shafts (ducts) shall be limited to return air systems where the air temperatures do not exceed 125ºF (52ºC) and the gypsum board surface temperature is maintained above the airstream dew-point temperature. Air ducts formed by gypsum boards shall not be incorporated in air-handling systems utilizing evaporative coolers.

603.6 Flexible air ducts and flexible air connectors. Flexible air ducts, both metallic and nonmetallic, shall comply with Sections 603.6.1, 603.6.1.1, 603.6.3 and 603.6.4. Flexible air connectors, both metallic and nonmetallic, shall comply with Sections 603.6.2 through 603.6.4.

603.6.1 Flexible air ducts. Flexible air ducts, both metallic and nonmetallic, shall be tested in accordance with UL 181. Such ducts shall be *listed* and *labeled* as Class 0 or Class 1 flexible air ducts and shall be installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

603.6.1.1 Duct length. Flexible air ducts shall not be limited in length.

603.6.2 Flexible air connectors. Flexible air connectors, both metallic and nonmetallic, shall be tested in accordance with UL 181. Such connectors shall be *listed* and *labeled* as Class 0 or Class 1 flexible air connectors and shall be installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

603.6.2.1 Connector length. Flexible air connectors shall be limited in length to 14 feet (4267 mm).

603.6.2.2 Connector penetration limitations. Flexible air connectors shall not pass through any wall, floor or ceiling.

603.6.3 Air temperature. The design temperature of air to be conveyed in flexible air ducts and flexible air connectors shall be less than 250ºF (121ºC).

603.6.4 Flexible air duct and air connector clearance. Flexible air ducts and air connectors shall be installed with a minimum *clearance* to an *appliance* as specified in the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

603.7 Rigid duct penetrations. Duct system penetrations of walls, floors, ceilings, and roofs and air transfer openings in any of those building components shall be protected as required by IMC Section 607. Ducts in a private garage and ducts penetrating the walls or ceilings separating a dwelling from a private garage shall be continuous and constructed of minimum 26 gage (0.48 mm) galvanized sheet metal and shall have no openings into the garage. Fire and smoke dampers are not required in such ducts passing through the wall or ceiling separating a dwelling from a private garage, unless required by *International Building Code* Chapter 7.

603.8 Underground ducts. Ducts shall be *approved* for underground installation. Metallic ducts not having an *approved* protective coating shall be completely encased in a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) of concrete.

603.8.1 Slope. Ducts shall slope to allow drainage to a point provided with access for inspection and cleaning at each low point of the duct system.

603.8.2 Sealing. Ducts shall have a polyethylene vapor retarder of at least 4 mils (0.102 mm) thickness installed around the outside. Where encased in concrete, the ducts shall be sealed and secured prior to pouring the concrete encasement.

603.8.3 Plastic ducts and fittings. Plastic ducts shall be constructed of PVC or high-density polyethylene having a minimum pipe stiffness of 8 psi (55 kPa) at 5-percent deflection when tested in accordance with ASTM D2412. Plastic duct fittings shall be constructed of either PVC or high-density polyethylene. Plastic duct and fittings shall be utilized in underground installations only. The maximum design temperature for systems utilizing plastic duct and fittings shall be 150°F (66°C).

603.8.4 Drainage and insulation. Underground ducts shall be insulated in accordance with amended IMC Section 604.1 and provided with drain tile around the perimeter of the duct system to prevent water intrusion. The top of the drain tile shall be installed at an elevation lower than the bottom of the underground duct system. The building official may *approve* an alternate drainage system if soil conditions are adequate.

603.9 Joints, seams and connections. All longitudinal and transverse joints, seams, and connections in metallic and nonmetallic ducts shall be constructed as specified in SMACNA *HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible* and NAIMA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards*. All joints, longitudinal and transverse seams, and connections in ductwork shall be securely fastened and sealed with welds, gaskets, mastics (adhesives), mastic-plus-embedded-fabric systems, liquid sealants, or tapes. Closure systems used to seal ductwork listed and labeled in accordance with UL 181A shall be marked "181A-P" for pressure-sensitive tape, "181A-M" for mastic, or "181A-H" for heat-sensitive tape. Closure systems used to seal flexible air ducts and flexible air connectors shall comply with UL 181B and shall be marked "181B-FX" for pressure-sensitive tape or "181B-M" for mastic. Duct connections to flanges of air distribution system equipment shall be sealed and mechanically fastened. Mechanical fasteners for use with flexible nonmetallic air ducts shall comply with UL 181B and shall be marked "181B-C." Closure systems used to seal metal ductwork shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Pressure-sensitive tape shall not be used as the primary sealant on ducts, unless it has been certified to comply with UL 181A or UL 181B by a nationally recognized testing laboratory and the tape is used in accordance with that certification. Unlisted duct tape is not permitted as a sealant on any duct.

Exception: Continuously welded and locking-type longitudinal joints and seams in ducts operating at static pressures less than 2 inches of water column (500 Pa) pressure classification shall not require additional closure systems.

603.10 Supports. Ducts shall be supported at intervals not to exceed 12 feet (3658 mm) and shall be in accordance with SMACNA *HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible*. Flexible and other factory-made ducts shall be supported in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

603.11 Furnace connections. Ducts connecting to a furnace shall have a *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with the furnace manufacturer's installation instructions.

603.12 Condensation. Provisions shall be made to prevent the formation of condensation on the exterior of any duct.

[B] 603.13 Flood hazard areas. For structures in flood hazard areas, ducts shall be located above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment or shall be designed and constructed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the ducts during floods up to such elevation. If the ducts are located below the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment, the ducts shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

603.14 Location. Ducts shall not be installed in or within 4 inches (102 mm) of the earth, except where such ducts comply with Section 603.8.

603.15 Mechanical protection. Ducts installed in locations where they are exposed to mechanical damage by vehicles or from other causes shall be protected by *approved* barriers.

603.16 Weather protection. All ducts including linings, coverings and vibration isolation connectors installed on the exterior of the building shall be protected against the elements.

603.17 Air dispersion systems. Air dispersion systems shall:

1. Be installed entirely in exposed locations.
2. Be utilized in systems under positive pressure.
3. Not pass through or penetrate fire-resistant-rated construction.
4. Be listed and labeled in compliance with UL 2518.

603.18 Registers, grilles and diffusers. Duct registers, grilles and diffusers shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Volume dampers or other means of supply air adjustment shall be provided in the branch ducts or at each individual duct register, grille or diffuser. Each volume damper or other means of supply air adjustment used in balancing shall be provided with access.

603.18.1 Floor registers. Floor registers shall resist, without structural failure, a 200-pound (90.8 kg) concentrated load on a 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) disc applied to the most critical area of the exposed face.

603.18.2 Prohibited locations. Diffusers, registers and grilles shall be prohibited in the floor or its upward extension within toilet and bathing rooms required by the *International Building Code* to have smooth, hard, nonabsorbent surfaces.

Exception: *Dwelling units*.

603.18.3 Adjustment of volume dampers. Volume dampers shall be adjusted to the required airflow of the system and locked in place. In finished or inaccessible locations, a friction-type register box may be used.

SECTION 604
INSULATION

604.1 General. Duct insulation shall conform to the requirements in Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1322 or 1323, as applicable.

604.2 Surface temperature. Ducts that operate at temperatures exceeding 120°F (49°C) shall have sufficient thermal insulation to limit the exposed surface temperature to 120°F (49°C).

604.3 Coverings and linings. Coverings and linings, including adhesives when used, shall have a flame spread index not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index not more than 50, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231. Duct coverings and linings shall not flame, glow, smolder or smoke when tested in accordance with ASTM C411 at the temperature to which they are exposed in service. The test temperature shall not fall below 250°F (121°C). Coverings and linings shall be listed and labeled.

604.4 Foam plastic insulation. Foam plastic used as duct coverings and linings shall conform to the requirements of Section 604.

604.5 Appliance insulation. *Listed* and *labeled* appliances that are internally insulated shall be considered as conforming to the requirements of Section 604.

604.6 Penetration of assemblies. Duct coverings shall not penetrate a wall or floor required to have a fire-resistance rating or required to be fireblocked.

604.7 Identification. External duct insulation, except spray polyurethane foam, and factory-insulated flexible duct shall be legibly printed or identified at intervals not greater than 36 inches (914 mm) with the name of the manufacturer, the thermal resistance *R*-value at the specified installed thickness and the flame spread and smoke-developed indexes of the composite materials. All duct insulation product *R*-values shall be based on insulation only, excluding air films, vapor retarders or other duct components, and shall be based on tested *C*-values at 75ºF (24ºC) mean temperature at the installed thickness, in accordance with recognized industry procedures. The installed thickness of duct insulation used to determine its *R*-value shall be determined as follows:

1. For duct board, duct liner and factory-made rigid ducts not normally subjected to compression, the nominal insulation thickness shall be used.

2. For duct wrap, the installed thickness shall be assumed to be 75 percent (25 percent compression) of nominal thickness.
3. For factory-made flexible air ducts, the installed thickness shall be determined by dividing the difference between the actual outside diameter and nominal inside diameter by two.
4. For spray polyurethane foam, the aged *R*-value per inch, measured in accordance with recognized industry standards, shall be provided to the customer in writing at the time of foam application.

604.8 Lining installation. Linings shall be interrupted at the area of operation of a fire damper and at a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) upstream of and 6 inches (152 mm) downstream of electric-resistance and fuel-burning heaters in a duct system. Metal nosings or sleeves shall be installed over exposed duct liner edges that face opposite the direction of airflow.

604.9 Thermal continuity. Where a duct liner has been interrupted, a duct covering of equal thermal performance shall be installed.

604.10 Service openings. Service openings shall not be concealed by duct coverings unless the exact location of the opening is properly identified.

604.11 Vapor retarders. Where ducts used for cooling are externally insulated, the insulation shall be covered with a vapor retarder having a maximum permeance of 0.05 perm [2.87 ng/(Pa • s • m^2)] or aluminum foil having a minimum thickness of 2 mils (0.051 mm). Insulations having a permeance of 0.05 perm [2.87 ng/(Pa • s • m^2)] or less shall not be required to be covered. All joints and seams shall be sealed to maintain the continuity of the vapor retarder.

604.12 Weatherproof barriers. Insulated exterior ducts shall be protected with an *approved* weatherproof barrier.

604.13 Internal insulation. Materials used as internal insulation and exposed to the airstream in ducts shall be shown to be durable when tested in accordance with UL 181. Exposed internal insulation that is not impermeable to water shall not be used to line ducts or plenums from the exit of a cooling coil to the downstream end of the drain pan.

SECTION 605
AIR FILTERS

605.1 General. Heating and air-conditioning systems of the central type shall be provided with *approved* air filters. Filters shall be installed in the return air system, upstream from any heat exchanger or coil, in an *approved* convenient location. Liquid adhesive coatings used on filters shall have a flash point not lower than 325°F (163°C).

605.2 Approval. Media-type and electrostatic-type air filters shall be *listed* and *labeled*. Media-type air filters shall comply with UL 900. High efficiency particulate air filters shall comply with UL 586. Electrostatic-type air filters shall comply with UL 867. Air filters utilized within *dwelling units* shall be designed for the intended application and shall not be required to be *listed* and *labeled*.

605.3 Airflow over the filter. Ducts shall be constructed to allow an even distribution of air over the entire filter.

SECTION 606
SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS CONTROL

606.1 Controls required. Air distribution systems shall be equipped with smoke detectors *listed* and *labeled* for installation in air distribution systems, as required by this section. Duct smoke detectors shall comply with UL 268A. Other smoke detectors shall comply with UL 268.

606.2 Where required. Smoke detectors shall be installed where indicated in Sections 606.2.1 through 606.2.3.

Exception: Smoke detectors shall not be required where air distribution systems are incapable of spreading smoke beyond the enclosing walls, floors and ceilings of the room or space in which the smoke is generated.

606.2.1 Return air systems. Smoke detectors shall be installed in return air systems with a design capacity greater than 2,000 cfm (0.9 m^3/s), in the return air duct or *plenum* upstream of any filters, *exhaust air* connections, outdoor air connections, or decontamination *equipment* and appliances.

Exception: Smoke detectors are not required in the return air system where all portions of the building served by the air distribution system are protected by area smoke detectors connected to a fire alarm system in accordance with the *International Fire Code*. The area smoke detection system shall comply with Section 606.4.

606.2.2 Common supply and return air systems. Where multiple air-handling systems share common supply or return air ducts or plenums with a combined design capacity greater than 2,000 cfm (0.9 m^3/s), the return air system shall be provided with smoke detectors in accordance with Section 606.2.1.

Exception: Individual smoke detectors shall not be required for each fan-powered terminal unit, provided that such units do not have an individual design capacity greater than 2,000 cfm (0.9 m^3/s) and will be shut down by activation of one of the following:

1. Smoke detectors required by Sections 606.2.1 and 606.2.3.
2. An *approved* area smoke detector system located in the return air *plenum* serving such units.
3. An area smoke detector system as prescribed in the exception to Section 606.2.1.

In all cases, the smoke detectors shall comply with Sections 606.4 and 606.4.1.

606.2.3 Return air risers. Where return air risers serve two or more stories and serve any portion of a return air system having a design capacity greater than 15,000 cfm (7.1 m^3/s), smoke detectors shall be installed at each story. Such smoke detectors shall be located upstream of the connection between the return air riser and any air ducts or plenums.

[F] 606.3 Installation. Smoke detectors required by this section shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 72. The required smoke detectors shall be installed to monitor the entire airflow conveyed by the system including return air and exhaust or relief air. Access shall be provided to smoke detectors for inspection and maintenance.

[F] 606.4 Controls operation. Upon activation, the smoke detectors shall shut down all operational capabilities of the air distribution system in accordance with the listing and labeling of appliances used in the system. Air distribution systems that are part of a smoke control system shall switch to the smoke control mode upon activation of a detector.

[F] 606.4.1 Supervision. The duct smoke detectors shall be connected to a fire alarm system where a fire alarm system is required by Section 907.2 of the *International Fire Code*. The actuation of a duct smoke detector shall activate a visible and audible supervisory signal at a constantly attended location.

Exceptions:

1. The supervisory signal at a constantly attended location is not required where the duct smoke detector activates the building's alarm-indicating appliances.
2. In occupancies not required to be equipped with a fire alarm system, actuation of a smoke detector shall activate a visible and audible signal in an *approved* location. Duct smoke detector trouble conditions shall activate a visible or audible signal in an *approved* location and shall be identified as air duct detector trouble.

[B] SECTION 607 DUCT AND TRANSFER OPENINGS

607.1 General. The provisions of this section shall govern the protection of duct penetrations and air transfer openings in assemblies required to be protected.

607.1.1 Ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated assemblies without dampers. Ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated assemblies and are not required by this section to have dampers shall comply with the requirements of Sections 714.2 through 714.3.3 of the *International Building Code*. Ducts that penetrate horizontal assemblies not required to be contained within a shaft and not required by this section to have dampers shall comply with the requirements of Sections 714.4 through 714.4.2.2 of the *International Building Code*.

607.1.1.1 Ducts that penetrate nonfire-resistance-rated assemblies. The space around a duct penetrating a nonfire-resistance-rated floor assembly shall comply with Section 717.6.3 of the *International Building Code*.

607.2 Installation. Fire dampers, smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers and ceiling radiation dampers located within air distribution and smoke control systems shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this section, and the manufacturer's installation instructions and listing.

607.2.1 Smoke control system. Where the installation of a fire damper will interfere with the operation of a required smoke control system in accordance with Section 909 of the *International Building Code*, *approved* alternative protection shall be used. Where mechanical systems including ducts and dampers used for normal building ventilation serve as part of the smoke control system, the expected performance of these systems in smoke control mode shall be addressed in the rational analysis required by Section 909.4 of the *International Building Code*.

607.2.2 Hazardous exhaust ducts. Fire dampers for hazardous exhaust duct systems shall comply with Section 510.

607.3 Damper testing, ratings and actuation. Damper testing, ratings and actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.1 through 607.3.3.

607.3.1 Damper testing. Dampers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with the standards in this section. Fire dampers shall comply with the requirements of UL 555. Only fire dampers *labeled* for use in dynamic systems shall be installed in heating, ventilation and *air-conditioning* systems designed to operate with fans on during a fire. Smoke dampers shall comply with the requirements of UL 555S. Combination fire/smoke dampers shall comply with the requirements of both UL 555 and UL 555S. Ceiling radiation dampers shall comply with the requirements of UL 555C or shall be tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.

607.3.2 Damper rating. Damper ratings shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.2.1 through 607.3.2.3.

607.3.2.1 Fire damper ratings. Fire dampers shall have the minimum fire protection rating specified in Table 607.3.2.1 for the type of penetration.

TABLE 607.3.2.1
FIRE DAMPER RATING

TYPE OF PENETRATION	MINIMUM DAMPER RATING (hour)
Less than 3-hour fire-resistance-rated assemblies	$1^1/_2$
3-hour or greater fire-resistance-rated assemblies	3

607.3.2.2 Smoke damper ratings. Smoke damper leakage ratings shall be Class I or II. Elevated temperature ratings shall not be less than 250°F (121°C).

607.3.2.3 Combination fire/smoke damper ratings. Combination fire/smoke dampers shall have the minimum fire protection rating specified for fire dampers in Table 717.3.2.1 of the *International Building Code* for the type of penetration and shall also have a minimum smoke damper rating as specified in Section 717.3.2.2 of the *International Building Code*.

607.3.3 Damper actuation. Damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.3.1 through 607.3.3.4 as applicable.

607.3.3.1 Fire damper actuation device. The fire damper actuation device shall meet one of the following requirements:

1. The operating temperature shall be approximately 50°F (28°C) above the normal temperature within the duct system, but not less than 160°F (71°C).
2. The operating temperature shall be not more than 350°F (177°C) where located in a smoke control system complying with Section 909 of the *International Building Code.*

607.3.3.2 Smoke damper actuation. The smoke damper shall close upon actuation of a *listed* smoke detector or detectors installed in accordance with Section 907.3 of the *International Building Code* and one of the following methods, as applicable:

1. Where a smoke damper is installed within a duct, a smoke detector shall be installed in the duct within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the damper with no air outlets or inlets between the detector and the damper. The detector shall be *listed* for the air velocity, temperature and humidity anticipated at the point where it is installed. Other than in mechanical smoke control systems, dampers shall be closed upon fan shutdown where local smoke detectors require a minimum velocity to operate.
2. Where a smoke damper is installed above smoke barrier doors in a smoke barrier, a spot-type detector *listed* for releasing service shall be installed on either side of the smoke barrier door opening.
3. Where a smoke damper is installed within an unducted opening in a wall, a spot-type detector *listed* for releasing service shall be installed within 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally of the damper.
4. Where a smoke damper is installed in a corridor wall or ceiling, the damper shall be permitted to be controlled by a smoke detection system installed in the corridor.
5. Where a total-coverage smoke detector system is provided within areas served by a heating, ventilation and air-conditioning (HVAC) system, smoke dampers shall be permitted to be controlled by the smoke detection system.

607.3.3.3 Combination fire/smoke damper actuation. Combination fire/smoke damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.3.1 and 607.3.3.2. Combination fire/smoke dampers installed in smoke control system shaft penetrations shall not be activated by local area smoke detection unless it is secondary to the smoke management system controls.

607.3.3.4 Ceiling radiation damper actuation. The operating temperature of a ceiling radiation damper actuation device shall be 50°F (28°C) above the normal temperature within the duct system, but not less than 160°F (71°C).

607.4 Access and identification. Fire and smoke dampers shall be provided with an *approved* means of access, large enough to permit inspection and maintenance of the damper and its operating parts. The access shall not affect the integrity of fire-resistance-rated assemblies. The access openings shall not reduce the fire-resistance rating of the assembly. Access points shall be permanently identified on the exterior by a label having letters not less than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) in height reading: FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER, SMOKE DAMPER or FIRE DAMPER. Access doors in ducts shall be tight fitting and suitable for the required duct construction.

607.5 Where required. Fire dampers, smoke dampers and combination fire/smoke dampers shall be provided at the locations prescribed in Sections 607.5.1 through 607.5.7. Where an assembly is required to have both fire dampers and smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers or a fire damper and smoke damper shall be required.

607.5.1 Fire walls. Ducts and air transfer openings permitted in fire walls in accordance with Section 706.11 of the *International Building Code* shall be protected with *listed* fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

607.5.1.1 Horizontal exits. A *listed smoke damper* designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point that a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a *fire wall* that serves as a horizontal *exit.*

607.5.2 Fire barriers. Ducts and air transfer openings that penetrate fire barriers shall be protected with *listed* fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing. Ducts and air transfer openings shall not penetrate exit enclosures and exit passageways except as permitted by Sections 1022.5 and 1023.6, respectively, of the *International Building Code*.

Exception: Fire dampers are not required at penetrations of fire barriers where any of the following apply:

1. Penetrations are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as part of the fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. Ducts are used as part of an *approved* smoke control system in accordance with Section 513 and where the fire damper would interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.
3. Such walls are penetrated by ducted HVAC systems, have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less, are in areas of other than Group H and are in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 of the *International Building Code*. For the purposes of this exception, a ducted HVAC system shall be a duct system for the structure's HVAC system. Such a duct system shall be constructed of sheet steel not less than 26 gage [0.0217 inch (0.55 mm)] thickness and shall be continuous from the air-handling *appliance* or *equipment* to the air outlet and inlet terminals.

607.5.2.1 Horizontal exits. A *listed smoke damper* designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point that a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a *fire barrier* that serves as a horizontal *exit*.

607.5.3 Fire partitions. Ducts and air transfer openings that penetrate fire partitions shall be protected with *listed* fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

Exception: In occupancies other than Group H, fire dampers are not required where any of the following apply:

1. Corridor walls in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 of the *International Building Code* and the duct is protected as a through penetration in accordance with Section 714 of the *International Building Code*.
2. The partitions are tenant partitions in covered and open mall buildings where the walls are not required by provisions elsewhere in the *International Building Code* to extend to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, slab or deck above.
3. The duct system is constructed of *approved* materials in accordance with Section 603 and the duct penetrating the wall complies with all of the following requirements:
   - 3.1. The duct shall not exceed 100 square inches (0.06 m^2).
   - 3.2. The duct shall be constructed of steel a minimum of 0.0217 inch (0.55 mm) in thickness.
   - 3.3. The duct shall not have openings that communicate the corridor with adjacent spaces or rooms.
   - 3.4. The duct shall be installed above a ceiling.
   - 3.5. The duct shall not terminate at a wall register in the fire-resistance-rated wall.
   - 3.6. A minimum 12-inch-long (305 mm) by 0.060-inch-thick (1.52 mm) steel sleeve shall be centered in each duct opening. The sleeve shall be secured to both sides of the wall and all four sides of the sleeve with minimum $1^1/_2$-inch by $1^1/_2$-inch by 0.060-inch (38 mm by 38 mm by 1.52 mm) steel retaining angles. The retaining angles shall be secured to the sleeve and the wall with No. 10 (M5) screws. The annular space between the steel sleeve and the wall opening shall be filled with rock (mineral) wool batting on all sides.
4. Such walls are penetrated by ducted HVAC systems, have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less, and are in areas of other than Group H and are in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 of the *International Building Code*. For the purposes of this exception, a ducted HVAC system shall be a duct system for conveying supply, return or exhaust air as part of the structure's HVAC system. Such a duct system shall be constructed of sheet steel not less than 26 gage in thickness and shall be continuous from the air-handling appliance or equipment to the air outlet and inlet terminals.

607.5.4 Corridors/smoke barriers. A *listed* smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a smoke barrier wall or a corridor enclosure required to have smoke and draft control doors in accordance with the *International Building Code*. Smoke dampers and smoke damper actuation methods shall comply with Section 607.5.4.1.

Exceptions:

1. Smoke dampers are not required in corridor penetrations where the building is equipped throughout with an *approved* smoke control system in accordance with Section 513 and smoke dampers are not necessary for the operation and control of the system.
2. Smoke dampers are not required in smoke barrier penetrations where the openings in ducts are limited to a single smoke compartment and the ducts are constructed of steel.
3. Smoke dampers are not required in corridor penetrations where the duct is constructed of steel not less than 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) in thickness and there are no openings serving the corridor.

607.5.4.1 Smoke damper. The smoke damper shall close upon actuation of a *listed* smoke detector or detectors installed in accordance with the *International Building Code* and one of the following methods, as applicable:

1. Where a damper is installed within a duct, a smoke detector shall be installed in the duct within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the damper with no air outlets or inlets between the detector and the damper. The detector shall be *listed* for the air velocity, temperature and humidity anticipated at the point where it is installed.
2. Where a damper is installed above smoke barrier doors in a smoke barrier, a spot-type detector *listed* for releasing service shall be installed on either side of the smoke barrier door opening.
3. Where a damper is installed within an unducted opening in a wall, a spot-type detector *listed* for releasing service shall be installed within 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally of the damper.
4. Where a damper is installed in a corridor wall, the damper shall be permitted to be controlled by a smoke detection system installed in the corridor.
5. Where a total-coverage smoke detector system is provided within all areas served by an HVAC system, dampers shall be permitted to be controlled by the smoke detection system.

607.5.5 Shaft enclosures. Shaft enclosures that are permitted to be penetrated by ducts and air transfer openings shall be protected with *approved* fire and smoke dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

Exceptions:

1. Fire dampers are not required at penetrations of shafts where:
   - 1.1. Steel exhaust subducts extend at least 22 inches (559 mm) vertically in exhaust shafts provided that there is a continuous airflow upward to the outdoors; or
   - 1.2. Penetrations are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as part of the fire-resistance-rated assembly; or
   - 1.3. Ducts are used as part of an *approved* smoke control system in accordance with Section 909 of the *International Building Code*, and where the fire damper will interfere with the operation of the smoke control system; or
   - 1.4. The penetrations are in parking garage exhaust or supply shafts that are separated from other building shafts by not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.
2. In Group B and R occupancies equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *International Building Code*, smoke dampers are not required at penetrations of shafts where kitchen, clothes dryer, bathroom and toilet room exhaust openings with steel exhaust subducts, having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage), extend at least 22 inches (559 mm) vertically and the exhaust fan at the upper terminus is powered continuously in accordance with the provisions of Section 909.11 of the *International Building Code*, and maintains airflow upward to the outdoors.
3. Smoke dampers are not required at penetrations of exhaust or supply shafts in parking garages that are separated from other building shafts by not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.
4. Smoke dampers are not required at penetrations of shafts where ducts are used as part of an *approved* mechanical smoke control system designed in accordance with Section 909 of the *International Building Code* and where the smoke damper will interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.
5. Fire dampers and combination fire/smoke dampers are not required in kitchen and clothes dryer exhaust systems installed in accordance with this code.

607.5.5.1 Enclosure at the bottom. Shaft enclosures that do not extend to the bottom of the building or structure shall be protected in accordance with Section 713.11 of the *International Building Code*.

607.5.6 Exterior walls. Ducts and air transfer openings in fire-resistance-rated exterior walls required to have protected openings in accordance with Section 705.10 of the *International Building Code* shall be protected with *listed* fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

607.5.7 Smoke partitions. A *listed* smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point where an air transfer opening penetrates a smoke partition. Smoke dampers and smoke damper actuation methods shall comply with Section 607.3.3.2.

Exception: Where the installation of a smoke damper will interfere with the operation of a required smoke control system in accordance with Section 513, *approved* alternate protection shall be used.

607.6 Horizontal assemblies. Penetrations by air ducts of a floor, floor/ceiling assembly or the ceiling membrane of a roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected by a shaft enclosure that complies with Section 713 and Sections 717.6.1 through 717.6.3 of the *International Building Code* or shall comply with Sections 607.6.1 through 607.6.3.

607.6.1 Through penetrations. In occupancies other than Group I-2 and I-3, a duct constructed of *approved* materials in accordance with this code that penetrates a fire-resistance-rated floor or floor/ceiling assembly that connects not more than two stories is permitted without a shaft enclosure protection, provided a listed fire damper is installed at the floor line or the duct is protected in accordance with IBC Section 714.4, as amended. For air transfer openings, see IBC Section 712.1.8, as amended.

Exceptions:

1. A duct is permitted to penetrate three floors or less without a fire damper at each floor, provided such duct meets all of the following requirements:
   - a. The duct shall be contained and located within the cavity of a wall and shall be constructed of steel having a minimum wall thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) or the duct shall be protected by an approved through-penetration firestop system installed and tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479. The approved through-penetration firestop system shall have an F rating or T rating of not less than the required rating of the horizontal assembly being penetrated.
   - b. The duct shall open into only one dwelling unit or sleeping unit and the duct system shall be continuous from the unit to the exterior of the building.
   - c. The duct shall not exceed 4-inch (102 mm) nominal diameter and the total area of such ducts shall not exceed 100 square inches (0.065 m^2) in any 100 square feet (64 516 mm^2 per 9.3 m^2) of the floor area.

d. The annular space around the duct is protected with materials that prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste where subjected to ASTM E119 or UL 263 time-temperature conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water at the location of the penetration for the time period equivalent to the fire-resistance rating of the construction penetrated.

e. Grille openings located in a ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected with a listed ceiling radiation damper installed in accordance with IBC Section 717.6.2.1, as amended.

2. In Group I-2 and I-3 occupancies, a duct constructed of *approved* materials in accordance with this code that penetrates a fire-resistance-rated floor or floor/ceiling assembly that connects not more than two stories is permitted without a shaft enclosure protection, if a listed smoke/fire damper is installed at the floor line.

607.6.2 Membrane penetrations. Ducts and air transfer openings constructed of *approved* materials, in accordance with Section 603, that penetrate the ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected with one of the following:

1. A shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713 of the *International Building Code*.
2. A *listed* ceiling radiation damper installed at the ceiling line where a duct penetrates the ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly.
3. A *listed* ceiling radiation damper installed at the ceiling line where a diffuser with no duct attached penetrates the ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly.

607.6.2.1 Ceiling radiation dampers. *Ceiling radiation dampers* shall be tested in accordance with Section 607.3.1. *Ceiling radiation dampers* shall be installed in accordance with the details *listed* in the fire-resistance-rated assembly and the manufacturer's installation instructions and the listing. *Ceiling radiation dampers* are not required where either of the following applies:

1. Tests in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 have shown that ceiling radiation dampers are not necessary to maintain the fire-resistance rating of the assembly.
2. Where exhaust duct penetrations are protected in accordance with Section 714.4.1.2 of the *International Building Code*, are located within the cavity of a wall and do not pass through another *dwelling unit* or tenant space.

607.6.3 Nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies. Duct systems constructed of *approved* materials in accordance with Section 603 that penetrate nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies shall be protected by any of the following methods:

1. A shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713 of the *International Building Code*.
2. The duct connects not more than two stories, and the annular space around the penetrating duct is protected with an *approved* noncombustible material that resists the free passage of flame and the products of *combustion*.
3. The duct connects not more than three stories, and the annular space around the penetrating duct is protected with an *approved* noncombustible material that resists the free passage of flame and the products of *combustion*, and a *listed* fire damper is installed at each floor line.

Exception: Fire dampers are not required in ducts within individual residential *dwelling units*.

607.7 Flexible ducts and air connectors. Flexible ducts and air connectors shall not pass through any fire-resistance-rated assembly.

CHAPTER 7
COMBUSTION AIR

SECTION 701
GENERAL

701.1 Scope. Solid fuel-burning *appliances* shall be provided with *combustion air* in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions. Oil-fired *appliances* shall be provided with *combustion air* in accordance with NFPA 31. The methods of providing *combustion air* in this chapter do not apply to fireplaces, fireplace stoves and direct-vent *appliances*. The requirements for combustion and dilution air for gas-fired *appliances* shall be in accordance with the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

CHAPTER 8

CHIMNEYS AND VENTS

SECTION 801 GENERAL

801.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the installation, maintenance, repair and approval of factory-built chimneys, *chimney* liners, vents and connectors. This chapter shall also govern the utilization of masonry chimneys. Gas-fired *appliances* shall be vented in accordance with the *International Fuel Gas Code.*

801.2 General. Every fuel-burning *appliance* shall discharge the products of *combustion* to a vent, factory-built *chimney* or masonry *chimney*, except for *appliances* vented in accordance with Section 804. The *chimney* or vent shall be designed for the type of *appliance* being vented.

Exception: Commercial cooking *appliances* vented by a Type I hood installed in accordance with Section 507.

801.2.1 Oil-fired appliances. Oil-fired *appliances* shall be vented in accordance with this code and NFPA 31.

801.3 Masonry chimneys. Masonry *chimneys* shall be constructed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

801.4 Positive flow. Venting systems shall be designed and constructed so as to develop a positive flow adequate to convey all *combustion* products to the outside atmosphere.

801.5 Design. Venting systems shall be designed in accordance with this chapter or shall be *approved* engineered systems.

801.6 Minimum size of chimney or vent. Except as otherwise provided for in this chapter, the size of the *chimney* or vent, serving a single *appliance*, except engineered systems, shall have a minimum area equal to the area of the *appliance* connection.

801.7 Solid fuel appliance flues. The cross-sectional area of a flue serving a solid-fuel-burning *appliance* shall be not greater than three times the cross-sectional area of the *appliance* flue collar or flue outlet.

801.8 Abandoned inlet openings. Abandoned inlet openings in chimneys and vents shall be closed by an *approved* method.

801.9 Positive pressure. Where an *appliance* equipped with a forced or induced draft system creates a positive pressure in the venting system, the venting system shall be designed and *listed* for positive pressure applications.

801.10 Connection to fireplace. Connection of *appliances* to *chimney* flues serving fireplaces shall be in accordance with Sections 801.10.1 through 801.10.3.

801.10.1 Closure and access. A noncombustible seal shall be provided below the point of connection to prevent entry of room air into the flue. Means shall be provided for *access* to the flue for inspection and cleaning.

801.10.2 Connection to factory-built fireplace flue. An *appliance* shall not be connected to a flue serving a factory-built fireplace unless the *appliance* is specifically *listed* for such installation. The connection shall be made in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

801.10.3 Connection to masonry fireplace flue. A connector shall extend from the *appliance* to the flue serving a masonry fireplace such that the flue gases are exhausted directly into the flue. The connector shall be provided with access or shall be removable for inspection and cleaning of both the connector and the flue. *Listed* direct connection devices shall be installed in accordance with their listing.

801.11 Multiple solid fuel prohibited. A solid fuel-burning *appliance* or fireplace shall not connect to a *chimney* passageway venting another *appliance*.

801.12 Chimney entrance. Connectors shall connect to a *chimney* flue at a point not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the lowest portion of the interior of the *chimney* flue.

801.13 Cleanouts. Masonry *chimney* flues shall be provided with a cleanout opening having a minimum height of 6 inches (152 mm). The upper edge of the opening shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the lowest *chimney* inlet opening. The cleanout shall be provided with a tight-fitting, noncombustible cover.

Exception: Cleanouts shall not be required for *chimney* flues serving masonry fireplaces, if such flues are provided with access through the fireplace opening.

801.14 Connections to exhauster. All *appliance* connections to a *chimney* or vent equipped with a power exhauster shall be made on the inlet side of the exhauster. All joints and piping on the positive pressure side of the exhauster shall be *listed* for positive pressure applications as specified by the manufacturer's installation instructions for the exhauster.

801.15 Fuel-fired appliances. Masonry chimneys utilized to vent fuel-fired *appliances* shall be located, constructed and sized as specified in the manufacture's installation instructions for the *appliances* being vented.

801.16 Flue lining. Masonry chimneys shall be lined. The lining material shall be compatible with the type of *appliance* connected, in accordance with the *appliance* listing and manufacturer's installation instructions. *Listed* materials used as flue linings shall be installed in accordance with their listings and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

801.16.1 Residential and low-heat appliances (general). Flue lining systems for use with residential-type and low-heat appliances shall be limited to the following:

1. Clay flue lining complying with the requirements of ASTM C315 or equivalent. Clay flue lining shall be installed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.
2. *Listed* and *labeled* chimney lining systems complying with UL 1777.

3. Other *approved* materials that will resist, without cracking, softening or corrosion, flue gases and condensate at temperatures up to 1,800°F (982°C).

801.17 Space around lining. The space surrounding a flue lining system or other vent installed within a masonry *chimney* shall not be used to vent any other *appliance*. This shall not prevent the installation of a separate flue lining in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and this code.

801.18 Existing chimneys and vents. Where an *appliance* is permanently disconnected from an existing *chimney* or vent, or where an *appliance* is connected to an existing *chimney* or vent during the process of a new installation, the *chimney* or vent shall comply with Sections 801.18.1 through 801.18.4.

801.18.1 Size. The *chimney* or vent shall be resized as necessary to control flue gas condensation in the interior of the *chimney* or vent and to provide the *appliance* or *appliances* served with the required draft. For the venting of oil-fired *appliances* to masonry chimneys, the resizing shall be in accordance with NFPA 31.

801.18.2 Flue passageways. The flue gas passageway shall be free of obstructions and combustible deposits and shall be cleaned if previously used for venting a solid or liquid fuel-burning *appliance* or fireplace. The flue liner, *chimney* inner wall or vent inner wall shall be continuous and shall be free of cracks, gaps, perforations or other damage or deterioration which would allow the escape of *combustion* products, including gases, moisture and creosote. Where an oil-fired *appliance* is connected to an existing masonry *chimney*, such *chimney* flue shall be repaired or relined in accordance with NFPA 31.

801.18.3 Cleanout. Masonry chimneys shall be provided with a cleanout opening complying with Section 801.13.

801.18.4 Clearances. Chimneys and vents shall have airspace *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with the *International Building Code* and the *chimney* or vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exception: Masonry chimneys without the required airspace *clearances* shall be permitted to be used if lined or relined with a *chimney* lining system *listed* for use in chimneys with reduced *clearances* in accordance with UL 1777. The *chimney clearance* shall be not less than permitted by the terms of the *chimney* liner listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

801.18.4.1 Fireblocking. Noncombustible fireblocking shall be provided in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

801.19 Multistory prohibited. Common venting systems for appliances located on more than one floor level shall be prohibited, except where all of the appliances served by the common vent are located in rooms or spaces that are accessed only from the outdoors. The *appliance* enclosures shall not communicate with the occupiable areas of the building.

801.20 Plastic vent joints. Plastic pipe and fittings used to vent appliances shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION 802
VENTS

802.1 General. All vent systems shall be *listed* and *labeled*. Type L vents and pellet vents shall be tested in accordance with UL 641.

802.2 Vent application. The application of vents shall be in accordance with Table 802.2.

TABLE 802.2
VENT APPLICATION

VENT TYPES	APPLIANCE TYPES
Type L oil vents	Oil-burning appliances listed and labeled for venting with Type L vents; gas appliances listed and labeled for venting with Type B vents.
Pellet vents	Pellet fuel-burning appliances listed and labeled for venting with pellet vents.

802.3 Installation. Vent systems shall be sized, installed and terminated in accordance with the vent and *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

802.4 Vent termination caps required. Type L vents shall terminate with a *listed* and *labeled* cap in accordance with the vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

802.5 Type L vent terminations. Type L vents shall terminate not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above the highest point of the roof penetration and not less than 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of a building within 10 feet (3048 mm).

802.6 Minimum vent heights. Vents shall terminate not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in vertical height above the highest connected *appliance* flue collar.

Exceptions:

1. Venting systems of direct vent *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* and the vent manufacturer's instructions.
2. Appliances *listed* for outdoor installations incorporating integral venting means shall be installed in accordance with their listings and the manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. Pellet vents shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* and the vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

802.7 Support of vents. All portions of vents shall be adequately supported for the design and weight of the materials employed.

802.8 Insulation shield. Where vents pass through insulated assemblies, an insulation shield constructed of not less than No. 26 gage sheet metal shall be installed to provide *clearance* between the vent and the insulation material. The *clearance* shall be not less than the *clearance* to combustibles specified by the vent manufacturer's installation instructions. Where vents pass through attic space, the shield shall terminate not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above the insulation materials and shall be secured in place to prevent displacement. Insulation shields provided as part of a *listed* vent system shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION 803
CONNECTORS

803.1 Connectors required. Connectors shall be used to connect *appliances* to the vertical *chimney* or vent, except where the *chimney* or vent is attached directly to the *appliance*.

803.2 Location. Connectors shall be located entirely within the room in which the connecting *appliance* is located, except as provided for in Section 803.10.4. Where passing through an unheated space, a connector shall not be constructed of single-wall pipe.

803.3 Size. The connector shall not be smaller than the size of the flue collar supplied by the manufacturer of the *appliance*. Where the *appliance* has more than one flue outlet, and in the absence of the manufacturer's specific instructions, the connector area shall be not less than the combined area of the flue outlets for which it acts as a common connector.

803.4 Branch connections. All branch connections to the vent connector shall be made in accordance with the vent manufacturer's instructions.

803.5 Manual dampers. Manual dampers shall not be installed in connectors except in *chimney* connectors serving solid fuel-burning *appliances*.

803.6 Automatic dampers. Automatic dampers shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 17 for oil-fired heating appliances. The dampers shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. An automatic vent damper device shall not be installed on an existing *appliance* unless the *appliance* is *listed* and *labeled* and the device is installed in accordance with the terms of its listing. The name of the installer and date of installation shall be marked on a label affixed to the damper device.

803.7 Connectors serving two or more appliances. Where two or more connectors enter a common vent or *chimney*, the smaller connector shall enter at the highest level consistent with available headroom or *clearance* to combustible material.

803.8 Vent connector construction. Vent connectors shall be constructed of metal. The minimum thickness of the connector shall be 0.0136 inch (0.345 mm) (No. 28 gage) for galvanized steel, 0.022 inch (0.6 mm) (No. 26 B & S gage) for copper, and 0.020 inch (0.5 mm) (No. 24 B & S gage) for aluminum.

803.9 Chimney connector construction. *Chimney* connectors for low-heat *appliances* shall be of sheet steel pipe having resistance to corrosion and heat not less than that of galvanized steel specified in Table 803.9(1). Connectors for medium-heat *appliances* and high-heat appliances shall be of sheet steel not less than the thickness specified in Table 803.9(2).

803.10 Installation. Connectors shall be installed in accordance with Sections 803.10.1 through 803.10.6.

803.10.1 Supports and joints. Connectors shall be supported in an *approved* manner, and joints shall be fastened with sheet metal screws, rivets or other *approved* means.

803.10.2 Length. The maximum horizontal length of a single-wall connector shall be 75 percent of the height of the *chimney* or vent.

TABLE 803.9(1)
MINIMUM CHIMNEY CONNECTOR THICKNESS FOR LOW-HEAT APPLIANCES

DIAMETER OF CONNECTOR (inches)	MINIMUM NOMINAL THICKNESS (galvanized) (inches)
5 and smaller	0.022 (No. 26 gage)
Larger than 5 and up to 10	0.028 (No. 24 gage)
Larger than 10 and up to 16	0.034 (No. 22 gage)
Larger than 16	0.064 (No. 16 gage)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE 803.9(2)
MINIMUM CHIMNEY CONNECTOR THICKNESS FOR MEDIUM- AND HIGH-HEAT APPLIANCE

AREA (square inches)	EQUIVALENT ROUND DIAMETER (inches)	MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches)
0-154	0-14	0.0575 (No. 16 gage)
155-201	15-16	0.075 (No. 14 gage)
202-254	17-18	0.0994 (No. 12 gage)
Greater than 254	Greater than 18	0.1292 (No. 10 gage)

For S: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2.

803.10.3 Connection. The connector shall extend to the inner face of the *chimney* or vent liner, but not beyond. A connector entering a masonry *chimney* shall be cemented to masonry in an *approved* manner. Where thimbles are installed to facilitate removal of the connector from the masonry *chimney*, the thimble shall be permanently cemented in place with high-temperature cement.

803.10.4 Connector pass-through. *Chimney* connectors shall not pass through any floor or ceiling, nor through a fire-resistance-rated wall assembly. *Chimney* connectors for domestic-type *appliances* shall not pass through walls or partitions constructed of combustible material to reach a masonry *chimney* unless:

1. The connector is *labeled* for wall pass-through and is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions;
2. The connector is put through a device *labeled* for wall pass-through; or
3. The connector has a diameter not larger than 10 inches (254 mm) and is installed in accordance with one of the methods in Table 803.10.4. Concealed metal parts of the pass-through system in contact with flue gases shall be of stainless steel or equivalent material that resists corrosion, softening or cracking up to 1,800ºF (980ºC).

803.10.5 Pitch. Connectors shall rise vertically to the *chimney* or vent with a minimum pitch equal to one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

TABLE 803.10.4
CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS AND CLEARANCES TO COMBUSTIBLE WALL MATERIALS FOR DOMESTIC HEATING APPLIANCES[a, b, c, d]

System A (12-inch clearance)	A 3.5-inch-thick brick wall shall be framed into the combustible wall. An 0.625-inch-thick fire-clay liner (ASTM C315 or equivalent)[e] shall be firmly cemented in the center of the brick wall maintaining a 12-inch clearance to combustibles. The clay liner shall run from the outer surface of the bricks to the inner surface of the chimney liner.
System B (9-inch clearance)	A labeled solid-insulated factory-built chimney section (1-inch insulation) the same inside diameter as the connector shall be utilized. Sheet steel supports cut to maintain a 9-inch clearance to combustibles shall be fastened to the wall surface and to the chimney section. Fasteners shall not penetrate the chimney flue liner. The chimney length shall be flush with the masonry chimney liner and sealed to the masonry with water-insoluble refractory cement. Chimney manufacturers' parts shall be utilized to securely fasten the chimney connector to the chimney section.
System C (6-inch clearance)	A steel ventilated thimble having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage) having two 1-inch air channels shall be installed with a steel chimney connector. Steel supports shall be cut to maintain a 6-inch clearance between the thimble and combustibles. The chimney connector and steel supports shall have a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage). One side of the support shall be fastened to the wall on all sides. Glass-fiber insulation shall fill the 6-inch space between the thimble and the supports.
System D (2-inch clearance)	A labeled solid-insulated factory-built chimney section (1-inch insulation) with a diameter 2 inches larger than the chimney connector shall be installed with a steel chimney connector having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (24 gage). Sheet steel supports shall be positioned to maintain a 2-inch clearance to combustibles and to hold the chimney connector to ensure that a 1-inch airspace surrounds the chimney connector through the chimney section. The steel support shall be fastened to the wall on all sides and the chimney section shall be fastened to the supports. Fasteners shall not penetrate the liner of the chimney section.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1.0 Btu x in/ft^2 • h • °F = 0.144 W/m^2 • K.

a. Insulation material that is part of the wall pass-through system shall be noncombustible and shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu x in/ft^2 • h • °F or less.

b. All clearances and thicknesses are minimums.

c. Materials utilized to seal penetrations for the connector shall be noncombustible.

d. Connectors for all systems except System B shall extend through the wall pass-through system to the inner face of the flue liner.

e. ASTM C315.

803.10.6 Clearances. Connectors shall have a minimum *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with Table 803.10.6. The clearances specified in Table 803.10.6 apply, except where the listing and labeling of an *appliance* specifies a different *clearance*, in which case the *labeled clearance* shall apply. The *clearance* to combustibles for connectors shall be reduced only in accordance with Section 308.

TABLE 803.10.6
CONNECTOR CLEARANCES TO COMBUSTIBLES

TYPE OF APPLIANCE	MINIMUM CLEARANCE (inches)
Domestic-type appliances	
Chimney and vent connectors	
Electric and oil incinerators	18
Oil and solid-fuel appliances	18
Oil appliances labeled for venting with Type L vents	9
Commercial, industrial-type appliances	
Low-heat appliances	
Chimney connectors	
Oil and solid-fuel boilers, furnace and water heaters	18
Oil unit heaters	18
Other low-heat industrial appliances	18
Medium-heat appliances	
Chimney connectors	
All oil and solid-fuel appliances	36
High-heat appliances	
Masonry or metal connectors	
All oil and solid-fuel appliances	(As determined by the code official)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

SECTION 804 DIRECT-VENT, INTEGRAL VENT AND MECHANICAL DRAFT SYSTEMS

804.1 Direct-vent terminations. Vent terminals for *direct-vent appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions

804.2 Appliances with integral vents. *Appliances* incorporating integral venting means shall be installed in accordance with their listings and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

804.2.1 Terminal clearances. *Appliances* designed for natural draft venting and incorporating integral venting means shall be located so that a minimum *clearance* of 9 inches (229 mm) is maintained between vent terminals and from any openings through which *combustion* products enter the building. *Appliances* using forced draft venting shall be located so that a minimum clearance of 12 inches (305 mm) is maintained between vent terminals and from any openings through which *combustion* products enter the building.

804.3 Mechanical draft systems. Mechanical draft systems of either forced or induced draft design shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 378 and shall comply with Sections 804.3.1 through 804.3.7.

804.3.1 Forced draft systems. Forced draft systems and all portions of induced draft systems under positive pressure during operation shall be designed and installed so as to be gas tight to prevent leakage of *combustion* products into a building.

804.3.2 Automatic shutoff. Power exhausters serving automatically fired *appliances* shall be electrically connected to each *appliance* to prevent operation of the *appliance* when the power exhauster is not in operation.

804.3.3 Termination. The termination of *chimneys* or vents equipped with power exhausters shall be located a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the lot line or from adjacent buildings. The exhaust shall be directed away from the building.

804.3.4 Horizontal terminations. Horizontal terminations shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Where located adjacent to walkways, the termination of mechanical draft systems shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the level of the walkway.
2. Vents shall terminate at least 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm).
3. The vent system shall terminate at least 4 feet (1219 mm) below, 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally from or 1 foot (305 mm) above any door, window or gravity air inlet into the building.
4. The vent termination point shall not be located closer than 3 feet (914 mm) to an interior corner formed by two walls perpendicular to each other.
5. The vent termination shall not be mounted directly above or within 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally from an oil tank vent or gas meter.
6. The bottom of the vent termination shall be located at least 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade.

804.3.5 Vertical terminations. Vertical terminations shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Where located adjacent to walkways, the termination of mechanical draft systems shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the level of the walkway.
2. Vents shall terminate at least 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally.
3. Where the vent termination is located below an adjacent roof structure, the termination point shall be located at least 3 feet (914 mm) from such structure.
4. The vent shall terminate at least 4 feet (1219 mm) below, 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally from or 1 foot (305 mm) above any door, window or gravity air inlet for the building.
5. A vent cap shall be installed to prevent rain from entering the vent system.
6. The vent termination shall be located at least 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally from any portion of the roof structure.

804.3.6 Exhauster connections. An *appliance* vented by natural draft shall not be connected into a vent, *chimney* or vent connector on the discharge side of a mechanical flue exhauster.

804.3.7 Exhauster sizing. Mechanical flue exhausters and the vent system served shall be sized and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

804.3.8 Mechanical draft systems for manually fired appliances and fireplaces. A mechanical draft system shall be permitted to be used with manually fired appliances and fireplaces where such system complies with all of the following requirements:

1. The mechanical draft device shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 378, and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. A device shall be installed that produces visible and audible warning upon failure of the mechanical draft device or loss of electrical power, at any time that the mechanical draft device is turned on. This device shall be equipped with a battery backup if it receives power from the building wiring.
3. A smoke detector shall be installed in the room with the *appliance* or fireplace. This device shall be equipped with a battery backup if it receives power from the building wiring.

SECTION 805
FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEYS

805.1 Listing. Factory-built *chimneys* shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed and terminated in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

805.2 Solid fuel appliances. Factory-built *chimneys* installed in *dwelling units* with solid fuel-burning appliances shall comply with the Type HT requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Type HT" and "Residential Type and Building Heating *Appliance Chimney."*

Exception: *Chimneys* for use with open *combustion* chamber fireplaces shall comply with the requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Residential Type and Building Heating *Appliance Chimney."*

Chimneys for use with open *combustion* chamber appliances installed in buildings other than *dwelling units* shall comply with the requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Building Heating *Appliance Chimney"* or "Residential Type and Building Heating *Appliance Chimney."*

805.3 Factory-built chimney offsets. Where a factory-built chimney assembly incorporates offsets, no part of the chimney shall be at an angle of more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from vertical at any point in the assembly and the chimney assembly shall not include more than four elbows.

805.4 Support. Where factory-built *chimneys* are supported by structural members, such as joists and rafters, such members shall be designed to support the additional load.

805.5 Medium-heat appliances. Factory-built *chimneys* for medium-heat appliances producing flue gases having a temperature above 1,000ºF (538ºC), measured at the entrance to the *chimney*, shall comply with UL 959.

805.6 Decorative shrouds. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of factory-built *chimneys* except where such shrouds are *listed* and *labeled* for use with the specific factory-built *chimney* system and are installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

SECTION 806
METAL CHIMNEYS

806.1 General. Metal *chimneys* shall be constructed and installed in accordance with NFPA 211.

CHAPTER 9

SPECIFIC APPLIANCES, FIREPLACES AND SOLID FUEL-BURNING EQUIPMENT

SECTION 901 GENERAL

901.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the approval, design, installation, construction, maintenance, *alteration* and repair of the appliances and *equipment* specifically identified herein and factory-built fireplaces. The approval, design, installation, construction, maintenance, *alteration* and repair of gas-fired appliances shall be regulated by the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

901.2 General. The requirements of this chapter shall apply to the mechanical *equipment* and appliances regulated by this chapter, in addition to the other requirements of this code.

901.3 Hazardous locations. Fireplaces and solid fuel-burning appliances shall not be installed in hazardous locations.

901.4 Fireplace accessories. Listed and labeled fireplace accessories shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Fireplace accessories shall comply with UL 907.

SECTION 902 MASONRY FIREPLACES

902.1 General. Masonry fireplaces shall be constructed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

SECTION 903 FACTORY-BUILT FIREPLACES

903.1 General. Factory-built fireplaces shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing. Factory-built fireplaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 127.

903.2 Hearth extensions. Hearth extensions of approved factory-built fireplaces shall be installed in accordance with the listing of the fireplace. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area. Listed and labeled hearth extensions shall comply with UL 1618.

903.3 Unvented gas log heaters. An unvented gas log heater shall not be installed in a factory-built fireplace unless the fireplace system has been specifically tested, *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 127.

SECTION 904 PELLET FUEL-BURNING APPLIANCES

904.1 General. Pellet fuel-burning appliances shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ASTM E1509 and shall be installed in accordance with the terms of the listing.

SECTION 905 FIREPLACE STOVES AND ROOM HEATERS

905.1 General. Fireplace stoves and solid-fuel-type room heaters shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing. Fireplace stoves shall be tested in accordance with UL 737. Solid-fuel-type room heaters shall be tested in accordance with UL 1482. Fireplace inserts intended for installation in fireplaces shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with the requirements of UL 1482 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

905.2 Connection to fireplace. The connection of solid fuel appliances to *chimney* flues serving fireplaces shall comply with Sections 801.7 and 801.10.

905.3 Hearth extensions. Hearth extensions for fireplace stoves shall be installed in accordance with the listing of the fireplace stove. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area. Listed and labeled hearth extensions shall comply with UL 1618.

SECTION 906 FACTORY-BUILT BARBECUE APPLIANCES

906.1 General. Factory-built barbecue appliances shall be of an *approved* type and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, this chapter and Chapters 3, 5, 7, 8 and the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

SECTION 907 INCINERATORS AND CREMATORIES

907.1 General. Incinerators and crematories shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 791 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION 908 COOLING TOWERS, EVAPORATIVE CONDENSERS AND FLUID COOLERS

908.1 General. A cooling tower used in conjunction with an air-conditioning *appliance* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Factory-built cooling towers shall be listed in accordance with UL 1995.

908.2 Access. Cooling towers, evaporative condensers and fluid coolers shall be provided with ready access.

908.3 Location. Cooling towers, evaporative condensers and fluid coolers shall be located to prevent the discharge vapor plumes from entering occupied spaces. Plume discharges shall be not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) above or 20 feet (6096 mm) away from any ventilation inlet to a building. Location on the property shall be as required for buildings in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

908.4 Support and anchorage. Supports for cooling towers, evaporative condensers and fluid coolers shall be designed in accordance with the *International Building Code*. Seismic restraints shall be as required by the *International Building Code*.

908.5 Water supply. Water supplies and protection shall be as required by the *International Plumbing Code*.

908.6 Drainage. Drains, overflows and blowdown provisions shall be indirectly connected to an *approved* disposal location. Discharge of chemical waste shall be *approved* by the appropriate regulatory authority.

908.7 Refrigerants and hazardous fluids. Heat exchange *equipment* that contains a refrigerant and that is part of a closed refrigeration system shall comply with Chapter 11. Heat exhange *equipment* containing heat transfer fluids which are flammable, combustible or hazardous shall comply with the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 909
VENTED WALL FURNACES

909.1 General. Vented wall furnaces shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Oil-fired furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 730.

909.2 Location. Vented wall furnaces shall be located so as not to cause a fire hazard to walls, floors, combustible furnishings or doors. Vented wall furnaces installed between bathrooms and adjoining rooms shall not circulate air from bathrooms to other parts of the building.

909.3 Door swing. Vented wall furnaces shall be located so that a door cannot swing within 12 inches (305 mm) of an air inlet or air outlet of such furnace measured at right angles to the opening. Doorstops or door closers shall not be installed to obtain this *clearance*.

909.4 Ducts prohibited. Ducts shall not be attached to wall furnaces. Casing extension boots shall not be installed unless *listed* as part of the *appliance*.

909.5 Manual shutoff valve. A manual shutoff valve shall be installed ahead of all controls.

909.6 Access. Vented wall furnaces shall be provided with access for cleaning of heating surfaces, removal of burners, replacement of sections, motors, controls, filters and other working parts, and for adjustments and lubrication of parts requiring such attention. Panels, grilles and access doors that must be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building construction.

SECTION 910
FLOOR FURNACES

910.1 General. Floor furnaces shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Oil-fired furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 729.

910.2 Placement. Floor furnaces shall not be installed in the floor of any aisle or passageway of any auditorium, public hall, place of assembly, or in any egress element from any such room or space.

With the exception of wall register models, a floor furnace shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to the nearest wall, and wall register models shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to a corner.

The furnace shall be placed such that a drapery or similar combustible object will not be nearer than 12 inches (305 mm) to any portion of the register of the furnace. Floor furnaces shall not be installed in concrete floor construction built on grade. The controlling thermostat for a floor furnace shall be located within the same room or space as the floor furnace or shall be located in an adjacent room or space that is permanently open to the room or space containing the floor furnace.

910.3 Bracing. The floor around the furnace shall be braced and headed with a support framework design in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

910.4 Clearance. The lowest portion of the floor furnace shall have not less than a 6-inch (152 mm) clearance from the grade level; except where the lower 6-inch (152 mm) portion of the floor furnace is sealed by the manufacturer to prevent entrance of water, the minimum clearance shall be reduced to not less than 2 inches (51 mm). Where these clearances are not present, the ground below and to the sides shall be excavated to form a pit under the furnace so that the required clearance is provided beneath the lowest portion of the furnace. A 12-inch (305 mm) minimum clearance shall be provided on all sides except the control side, which shall have an 18-inch (457 mm) minimum clearance.

SECTION 911
DUCT FURNACES

911.1 General. Duct furnaces shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Electric duct furnaces shall comply with UL 1996.

SECTION 912
INFRARED RADIANT HEATERS

912.1 General. Electric infrared radiant heaters shall comply with UL 499.

912.2 Support. Infrared radiant heaters shall be fixed in a position independent of fuel and electric supply lines. Hangers and brackets shall be noncombustible material.

912.3 Clearances. Heaters shall be installed with clearances from combustible material in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION 913
CLOTHES DRYERS

913.1 General. Clothes dryers shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Electric residential clothes dryers shall be tested in accordance with UL 2158. Electric coin-operated clothes dryers shall be tested in accordance with UL 2158. Electric commercial clothes dryers shall be tested in accordance with UL 1240.

913.2 Exhaust required. Clothes dryers shall be exhausted in accordance with Section 504.

913.3 Clearances. Clothes dryers shall be installed with *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 914
SAUNA HEATERS

914.1 Location and protection. Sauna heaters shall be located so as to minimize the possibility of accidental contact by a person in the room.

914.1.1 Guards. Sauna heaters shall be protected from accidental contact by an *approved* guard or barrier of material having a low coefficient of thermal conductivity. The guard shall not substantially affect the transfer of heat from the heater to the room.

914.2 Installation. Sauna heaters shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 875 and shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

914.3 Access. Panels, grilles and access doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building.

914.4 Heat and time controls. Sauna heaters shall be equipped with a thermostat that will limit room temperature to 194°F (90°C). If the thermostat is not an integral part of the sauna heater, the heat-sensing element shall be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ceiling. If the heat-sensing element is a capillary tube and bulb, the assembly shall be attached to the wall or other support, and shall be protected against physical damage.

914.4.1 Timers. A timer, if provided to control main burner operation, shall have a maximum operating time of 1 hour. The control for the timer shall be located outside the sauna room.

914.5 Sauna room. A ventilation opening into the sauna room shall be provided. The opening shall be not less than 4 inches by 8 inches (102 mm by 203 mm) located near the top of the door into the sauna room.

914.5.1 Warning notice. The following permanent notice, constructed of *approved* material, shall be mechanically attached to the sauna room on the outside:

WARNING: DO NOT EXCEED 30 MINUTES IN SAUNA. EXCESSIVE EXPOSURE CAN BE HARMFUL TO HEALTH. ANY PERSON WITH POOR HEALTH SHOULD CONSULT A PHYSICIAN BEFORE USING SAUNA.

The words shall contrast with the background and the wording shall be in letters not less than $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6.4 mm) high.

Exception: This section shall not apply to one- and two-family dwellings.

SECTION 915
ENGINE AND GAS TURBINE-POWERED EQUIPMENT AND APPLIANCES

915.1 General. The installation of liquid-fueled stationary internal *combustion* engines and gas turbines, including exhaust, fuel storage and piping, shall meet the requirements of NFPA 37. Stationary engine generator assemblies shall meet the requirements of UL 2200.

915.2 Powered equipment and appliances. Permanently installed *equipment* and appliances powered by internal *combustion* engines and turbines shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and NFPA 37.

SECTION 916
POOL AND SPA HEATERS

916.1 General. Pool and spa heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Oil-fired pool and spa heaters shall be tested in accordance with UL 726. Electric pool and spa heaters shall be tested in accordance with UL 1261.

SECTION 917
COOKING APPLIANCES

917.1 Cooking appliances. Cooking appliances that are designed for permanent installation, including ranges, ovens, stoves, broilers, grills, fryers, griddles and barbecues, shall be *listed*, *labeled* and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Commercial electric cooking appliances shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 197. Household electric ranges shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 858. Microwave cooking appliances shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 923. Oil-burning stoves shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 896. Solid-fuel-fired ovens shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2162.

917.2 Prohibited location. Cooking appliances designed, tested, *listed* and *labeled* for use in commercial occupancies shall not be installed within *dwelling units* or within any area where domestic cooking operations occur.

917.3 Domestic appliances. Cooking appliances installed within *dwelling units* and within areas where domestic cooking operations occur shall be *listed* and *labeled* as household-type appliances for domestic use.

SECTION 918
FORCED-AIR WARM-AIR FURNACES

918.1 Forced-air furnaces. Oil-fired furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 727. Electric furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 1995. Solid fuel furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 391. Forced-air furnaces shall be installed in accordance with the listings and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

918.2 Minimum duct sizes. The minimum unobstructed total area of the outdoor and return air ducts or openings to a forced-air warm-air furnace shall be not less than 2 square inches per 1,000 Btu/h (4402 mm^2/kW) output rating capacity of the furnace and not less than that specified in the furnace manufacturer's installation instructions. The minimum unobstructed total area of supply ducts from a forced-air warm-air furnace shall not be less than 2 square inches for each 1,000 Btu/h (4402 mm^2/kW) output rating capacity of the furnace and not less than that specified in the furnace manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exception: The total area of the supply air ducts and outdoor and return air ducts shall not be required to be larger than the minimum size required by the furnace manufacturer's installation instructions.

918.3 Heat pumps. The minimum unobstructed total area of the outdoor and return air ducts or openings to a heat pump shall be not less than 6 square inches per 1,000 Btu/h (13 208 mm^2/kW) output rating or as indicated by the conditions of listing of the heat pump. Electric heat pumps shall be tested in accordance with UL 1995.

918.4 Dampers. Volume dampers shall not be placed in the air inlet to a furnace in a manner that will reduce the required air to the furnace.

918.5 Circulating air ducts for forced-air warm-air furnaces. Circulating air for fuel-burning, forced-air-type, warm-air furnaces shall be conducted into the blower housing from outside the furnace enclosure by continuous air-tight ducts.

918.6 Prohibited sources. Outdoor or return air for forced-air heating and cooling systems shall not be taken from the following locations:

1. Less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from an *appliance* vent outlet, a vent opening from a plumbing drainage system or the discharge outlet of an exhaust fan, unless the outlet is 3 feet (914 mm) above the outdoor air inlet.
2. Where there is the presence of objectionable odors, fumes or flammable vapors; or where located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above the surface of any abutting public way or driveway; or where located at grade level by a sidewalk, street, alley or driveway.
3. A hazardous or insanitary location or a refrigeration *machinery room* as defined in this code.
4. A room or space, the volume of which is less than 25 percent of the entire volume served by such system. Where connected by a permanent opening having an area sized in accordance with Sections 918.2 and 918.3, adjoining rooms or spaces shall be considered as a single room or space for the purpose of determining the volume of such rooms or spaces.

   Exception: The minimum volume requirement shall not apply where the amount of return air taken from a room or space is less than or equal to the amount of supply air delivered to such room or space.
5. A closet, bathroom, toilet room, kitchen, garage, boiler room, furnace room or unconditioned attic.

   Exceptions:

   5.1 Where return air intakes are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from cooking appliances, and serve the kitchen area only, taking return air from a kitchen shall not be prohibited.

   5.2 Dedicated forced-air systems serving only a garage shall not be prohibited from obtaining return air from the garage.
6. An unconditioned crawl space by means of direct connection to the return side of a forced air system. Transfer openings in the crawl space enclosure shall not be prohibited.
7. A room or space containing a fuel-burning *appliance* where such room or space serves as the sole source of return air.

   Exceptions:

   7.1. This shall not apply where the fuel-burning *appliance* is a direct-vent *appliance*.

   7.2. This shall not apply where the room or space complies with the following requirements:

   7.2.1. The return air shall be taken from a room or space having a volume exceeding 1 cubic foot for each 10 Btu/h (9.6 L/W) of combined input rating of all fuel-burning appliances therein.

   7.2.2. The volume of supply air discharged back into the same space shall be approximately equal to the volume of return air taken from the space.

   7.2.3. Return-air inlets shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of any *appliance* firebox or draft hood in the same room or space.

   7.3. This shall not apply to rooms or spaces containing solid-fuel-burning appliances, provided that return-air inlets are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the firebox of the appliances.

918.7 Outside opening protection. Outdoor air intake openings shall be protected in accordance with Section 401.5.

918.8 Return-air limitation. Return air from one *dwelling unit* shall not be discharged into another *dwelling unit.*

SECTION 919
CONVERSION BURNERS

919.1 Conversion burners. The installation of conversion burners shall conform to ANSI Z21.8.

SECTION 920
UNIT HEATERS

920.1 General. Unit heaters shall be installed in accordance with the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Oil-fired unit heaters shall be tested in accordance with UL 731.

920.2 Support. Suspended-type unit heaters shall be supported by elements that are designed and constructed to accommodate the weight and dynamic loads. Hangers and brackets shall be of noncombustible material. Suspended-type oil-fired unit heaters shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 31.

920.3 Ductwork. A unit heater shall not be attached to a warm-air duct system unless *listed* for such installation.

SECTION 921
VENTED ROOM HEATERS

921.1 General. Vented room heaters shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 922
KEROSENE AND OIL-FIRED STOVES

922.1 General. Kerosene and oil-fired stoves shall be listed and labeled and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Kerosene and oil-fired stoves shall comply with NFPA 31 and UL 896.

SECTION 923
SMALL CERAMIC KILNS

923.1 General. The provisions of this section shall apply to kilns that are used for ceramics, have a maximum interior volume of 20 cubic feet (0.566 m^3) and are used for hobby and noncommercial purposes. Electric kilns shall comply with UL 499.

923.1.1 Installation. Kilns shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the provisions of this code.

SECTION 924
STATIONARY FUEL CELL POWER SYSTEMS

924.1 General. Stationary fuel cell power systems having a power output not exceeding 10 MW shall be tested in accordance with ANSI/CSA America FC 1 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, NFPA 853, the *International Building Code* and the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 925
MASONRY HEATERS

925.1 General. Masonry heaters shall be constructed in accordance with the *International Building Code.*

SECTION 926
GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEMS

926.1 Installation. The installation of gaseous hydrogen systems shall be in accordance with the applicable requirements of this code, the *International Fire Code*, the *International Fuel Gas Code* and the *International Building Code*.

SECTION 927
RADIANT HEATING SYSTEMS

927.1 General. Electric radiant heating systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and shall be listed for the application.

927.2 Clearances. Clearances for radiant heating panels or elements to any wiring, outlet boxes and junction boxes used for installing electrical devices or mounting luminaires shall be in accordance with the *International Building Code* and NFPA 70.

927.3 Installation on wood or steel framing. Radiant panels installed on wood or steel framing shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Heating panels shall be installed parallel to framing members and secured to the surface of framing members or shall be mounted between framing members.
2. Mechanical fasteners shall penetrate only the unheated portions provided for this purpose. Panels shall not be fastened at any point closer than $^1/_4$ inch (7 mm) to an element. Other methods of attachment of the panels shall be in accordance with the panel installation instructions.
3. Unless listed and labeled for field cutting, heating panels shall be installed as complete units.

927.4 Installation in concrete or masonry. Radiant heating systems installed in concrete or masonry shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Radiant heating systems shall be identified as being suitable for the installation, and shall be secured in place as specified in the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Radiant heating panels and radiant heating panel sets shall not be installed where they bridge expansion joints unless they are protected from expansion and contraction.

927.5 Finish surfaces. Finish materials installed over radiant heating panels and systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Surfaces shall be secured so that fasteners do not pierce the radiant heating elements.

SECTION 928
EVAPORATIVE COOLING EQUIPMENT

928.1 General. Evaporative cooling equipment shall:

1. Be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Be installed on level platforms in accordance with Section 304.10.
3. Have openings in exterior walls or roofs flashed in accordance with the *International Building Code.*
4. Be provided with potable water backflow protection in accordance with Section 608 of the *International Plumbing Code.*
5. Have air intake opening locations in accordance with Section 401.4.

CHAPTER 10

BOILERS, WATER HEATERS AND PRESSURE VESSELS

SECTION 1001 GENERAL

1001.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the installation, *alteration*, and repair of boilers, water heaters, and pressure vessels.

Exceptions:

1. Pressure vessels used for unheated water supply.
2. Portable unfired pressure vessels and Interstate Commerce Commission containers.
3. Containers for bulk oxygen and medical gas.
4. Unfired pressure vessels having a volume of 5 cubic feet (0.14 m^3) or less operating at pressures not exceeding 250 pounds per square inch (psi) (1724 kPa) and located within occupancies of Groups B, F, H, M, R, S, and U.
5. Pressure vessels used in refrigeration systems that are regulated by IMC Chapter 11.
6. Pressure tanks used in conjunction with coaxial cables, telephone cables, power cables, and other similar humidity control systems.
7. Any boiler pressure vessel under the direct jurisdiction of the United States.

1001.2 Anyone who installs a boiler must ensure that the boiler is inspected by the Department of Labor and Industry after installation is complete and before the boiler is placed in operation if the individual or combined Btu input exceeds:

A. 100,000 Btu/hr for steam boilers;

B. 500,000 Btu/hr for hot water supply boilers; or

C. 750,000 Btu/hr for hot water heating boilers.

Boilers utilizing fuel gas systems with Btu/hr inputs that are rated at or below items A to C shall comply with Section 631 of the 2012 IFGC.

Exceptions: Boilers identified in Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.988, including the following, are not subject to this section:

1. Boilers in buildings occupied solely for residential purposes with accommodations for not more than five families.
2. Boilers under the direct jurisdiction of the United States.
3. Boilers located on farms used solely for agricultural or horticultural purposes; for the purposes of this subpart, boilers used for mint oil extraction are considered used for agricultural or horticultural purposes, provided that the owner or lessee complies with the inspection requirements contained in Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.958.

1001.3 The owner of a pressure vessel not specifically exempted by Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.988, must ensure that the pressure vessel is inspected by an insurance company authorized to do business in the state or the Department of Labor and Industry at least every two years.

Exceptions: Pressure vessels identified in Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.988, including the following, are not subject to this subpart:

1. Pressure vessels in buildings occupied solely for residential purposes with accommodations for not more than five families.
2. Pressure vessels under the direct jurisdiction of the United States.
3. Pressure vessels located on farms used solely for agricultural or horticultural purposes; for the purposes of this section, boilers used for mint oil extraction are considered used for agricultural or horticultural purposes, provided that the owner or lessee complies with the inspection requirements contained in Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.958.

1001.4 High-pressure piping for boilers. Pursuant to Minnesota Rules, Chapter 5230, and Minnesota Statutes, Sections 326B.90 to 326B.925, high-pressure piping for boilers shall be regulated by the Department of Labor and Industry for the following operating conditions:

A. Steam systems operating over 15 psi; or

B. Hot water or other heating medium operating over 30 psi and 250°F.

SECTION 1002 WATER HEATERS

1002.1 General. Potable water heaters and hot water storage tanks shall be listed and labeled and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, the *International Plumbing Code* and this code. All water heaters shall be capable of being removed without first removing a permanent portion of the building structure. The potable water connections and relief valves for all water heaters shall conform to the requirements of the *International Plumbing Code* . Domestic electric water heaters shall comply with UL 174 or UL 1453. Commercial electric water heaters shall comply with UL 1453. Oil-fired water heaters shall comply with UL 732. Solid-fuel-fired water heaters shall comply with UL 2523. Thermal solar water heaters shall comply with Chapter 14 and UL 174 or UL 1453.

1002.2 Water heaters utilized for space heating. Water heaters utilized both to supply potable hot water and provide hot water for space-heating applications shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such applications by the manufacturer and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the *International Plumbing Code*.

1002.2.1 Sizing. Water heaters utilized for both potable water heating and space-heating applications shall be sized to prevent the space-heating load from diminishing the required potable water-heating capacity.

1002.2.2 Temperature limitation. Where a combination potable water-heating and space-heating system requires water for space heating at temperatures higher than 140ºF (60ºC), a temperature actuated mixing valve that conforms to ASSE 1017 shall be provided to temper the water supplied to the potable hot water distribution system to a temperature of 140ºF (60ºC) or less.

1002.3 Supplemental water-heating devices. Potable water-heating devices that utilize refrigerant-to-water heat exchangers shall be *approved* and installed in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code* and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION 1003
PRESSURE VESSELS

1003.1 General. All pressure vessels shall be in accordance with the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code,* shall bear the label of an *approved* agency and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1003.2 Piping. All piping materials, fittings, joints, connections and devices associated with systems utilized in conjunction with pressure vessels shall be designed for the specific application and shall be *approved*.

1003.3 Welding. Welding on pressure vessels shall be performed by *approved* welders in compliance with nationally recognized standards.

SECTION 1004
BOILERS

1004.1 Standards. Oil-fired boilers and their control systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 726 or shall utilize burner assemblies and control systems *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 296 and shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 31 and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Electric boilers and their control systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 834. Boilers with an input rating above 400,000 Btu/hr (3660 kW) shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the standards referenced in Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.964, as applicable.

1004.2 Installation. In addition to the requirements of this code, the installation of boilers shall conform to the manufacturer's instructions. Operating instructions of a permanent type shall be attached to the boiler. Boilers shall have all controls set, adjusted, and tested by the installer in accordance with Minnesota Rules, parts 1346.1601 to 1346.1606. A complete control diagram together with complete boiler instructions shall be furnished by the installer: The manufacturer's rating data and the nameplate shall be attached to the boiler.

1004.3 Working clearance. Clearances shall be maintained around boilers, generators, heaters, tanks and related *equipment* and appliances so as to permit inspection, servicing, repair, replacement and visibility of all gauges. When boilers are installed or replaced, clearance shall be provided to allow access for inspection, maintenance and repair. Passageways around all sides of boilers shall have an unobstructed width of not less than 18 inches (457 mm), unless otherwise *approved*.

1004.3.1 Top clearance. Clearances from the tops of boilers to the ceiling or other overhead obstruction shall be in accordance with Table 1004.3.1.

TABLE 1004.3.1
BOILER TOP CLEARANCES

BOILER TYPE	MINIMUM CLEARANCES FROM TOP OF BOILER TO CEILING OR OTHER OVERHEAD OBSTRUCTION (feet)
All boilers with manholes on top of the boiler except where a greater clearance is required in this table.	3
All boilers without manholes on top of the boiler except high-pressure steam boilers and where a greater clearance is required in this table.	2
High-pressure steam boilers with steam generating capacity not exceeding 5,000 pounds per hour.	3
High-pressure steam boilers with steam generating capacity exceeding 5,000 pounds per hour.	7
High-pressure steam boilers having heating surface not exceeding 1,000 square feet (93 m^2).	3
High-pressure steam boilers having heating surface in excess of 1,000 square feet (93 m^2).	7
High-pressure steam boilers with input not exceeding 5,000,000 Btu/h (1465 kW).	3
High-pressure steam boilers with input in excess of 5,000,000 Btu/h (1465 kW).	7
Steam-heating boilers and hot water-heating boilers with input exceeding 5,000,000 Btu/h (1465 kW).	3
Steam-heating boilers exceeding 5,000 pounds of steam per hour (2268 kg/h).	3
Steam-heating boilers and hot water-heating boilers having heating surface exceeding 1,000 square feet (93 m^2).	3

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, 1 pound per hour = 0.4536 Kg/h.

1004.4 Mounting. *Equipment* shall be set or mounted on a level base capable of supporting and distributing the weight contained thereon. Boilers, tanks and *equipment* shall be secured in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1004.5 Floors. Boilers shall be mounted on floors of noncombustible construction, unless *listed* for mounting on combustible flooring.

1004.6 Boiler rooms and enclosures. Boiler rooms and enclosures and access thereto shall comply with the *International Building Code* and Chapter 3 of this code. Boiler rooms shall be equipped with a floor drain or other *approved* means for disposing of liquid waste.

1004.7 Operating adjustments and instructions. Hot water and steam boilers shall have all operating and safety controls set and operationally tested by the installing contractor. A complete control diagram and boiler operating instructions shall be furnished by the installer for each installation.

SECTION 1005 BOILER CONNECTIONS

1005.1 Valves. Every boiler or modular boiler shall have a shutoff valve in the supply and return piping. For multiple boiler or multiple modular boiler installations, each boiler or modular boiler shall have individual shutoff valves in the supply and return piping.

> **Exception:** Shutoff valves are not required in a system having a single low-pressure steam boiler.

1005.2 Potable water supply. The water supply to all boilers shall be connected in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

SECTION 1006 SAFETY AND PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES AND CONTROLS

1006.1 Safety valves for steam boilers. All steam boilers shall be protected with a safety valve.

1006.2 Safety relief valves for hot water boilers. Hot water boilers shall be protected with a safety relief valve.

1006.3 Pressure relief for pressure vessels. All pressure vessels shall be protected with a pressure relief valve or pressure-limiting device as required by the manufacturer's installation instructions for the pressure vessel.

1006.4 Approval of safety and safety relief valves. Safety and safety relief valves shall meet the requirements of Section I, IV or VIII of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, as applicable. All boilers and pressure vessels shall have a safety relief valve stamped with the ASME code symbol and shall be set no higher than the maximum allowable working pressure of the pressure vessel. Safety relief valves shall have a rated volumetric capacity greater than the boiler or pressure vessel can produce at nameplate pressure and shall have a nonadjustable pressure set point below the rating of the boiler or pressure vessel capable of relieving all excess pressure at its pressure set point. Safety and safety relief valves shall have a manual method to test the valve, without endangering the operator, to ensure proper mechanical operation of the valve.

1006.5 Installation. Safety or relief valves shall be installed directly into the safety or relief valve opening on the boiler or pressure vessel. Valves shall not be located on either side of a safety or relief valve connection. The relief valve shall discharge by gravity.

1006.6 Safety and relief valve discharge. Safety and relief valve discharge pipes shall be of rigid pipe that is approved for the temperature and pressure of the system. The discharge pipe shall be no smaller than the diameter of the safety or relief valve outlet and the discharge end shall be reamed and unthreaded. Safety and relief valves shall not discharge so as to be a hazard, a potential cause of damage, or otherwise a nuisance and shall terminate within 18 inches (457 mm) of the floor. High-pressure steam safety valves shall be vented to the outside of the structure in accordance with Minnesota Rules, parts 5225.4100 and 5230.0990 on boilers, pressure vessels, and high-pressure piping under the jurisdiction of the Department of Labor and Industry, as applicable. Where a low-pressure safety valve or a relief valve discharges to the drainage system, the installation shall conform to the *Minnesota Plumbing Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 4715.

1006.7 Boiler safety devices. Boilers shall be equipped with controls and limit devices as required by the manufacturer's installation instructions and the conditions of the listing.

1006.8 Electrical requirements. The power supply to the electrical control system shall be from a two-wire branch circuit that has a grounded conductor, or from an isolation transformer with a two-wire secondary. Where an isolation transformer is provided, one conductor of the secondary winding shall be grounded. Control voltage shall not exceed 150 volts nominal, line to line. Control and limit devices shall interrupt the ungrounded side of the circuit. A means of manually disconnecting the control circuit shall be provided and controls shall be arranged so that when deenergized, the burner shall be inoperative. Such disconnecting means shall be capable of being locked in the off position and shall be provided with ready access.

1006.9 Boiler shutdown switch. A manually operated remote shutdown switch shall be located as required by ASME CSD-1.

> **Exception:** A single hot water boiler with a rated input of less than 400,000 Btu/hr (117 kW).

SECTION 1007 BOILER LOW-WATER CUTOFF

1007.1 General. Steam and hot water boilers shall be protected with a low-water fuel cutoff control to stop the *combustion* operation when the water level drops below the lowest safe permissible water level in accordance with the following items:

1. An automatically fired hot water boiler or group of boilers piped together having a rated input of 400,000 Btu/hr (117 kW) or above shall be equipped with an automatic low-water fuel cutoff to stop the *combustion* operation before the water level drops below the lowest safe permissible water level established by the boiler manufacturer.
2. A boiler installed at an elevation where all radiation in the system is below the lowest safe permissible water level shall be equipped with an automatic low-water fuel cutoff to stop the *combustion* operation when the

water level drops below the lowest safe permissible water level established by the boiler manufacturer.

3. A low-water fuel cutoff shall be installed when recommended by the manufacturer's installation instructions or listing and when special consideration and installations will require a low-water fuel cutoff to protect a hot water or steam boiler.
4. A means shall be provided for testing the operation of the low-water fuel cutoff without requiring the entire system to be drained.
5. A watertube or coil-type boiler requiring forced circulation to prevent overheating of the tubes or coils shall have a flow-sensing device installed, in lieu of the low-water fuel cutoff, to automatically stop the *combustion* operation when the circulating flow is interrupted.

1007.2 Operation. The low-water cutoff shall automatically stop the *combustion* operation of the *appliance* when the water level drops below the lowest safe water level as established by the manufacturer.

SECTION 1008
STEAM BLOWOFF VALVE

1008.1 General. Every steam boiler shall be equipped with a quick-opening blowoff valve. The valve shall be installed in the opening provided on the boiler. The minimum size of the valve shall be the size specified by the boiler manufacturer or the size of the boiler blowoff-valve opening.

1008.2 Discharge. Blowoff valves shall discharge to a safe place of disposal. Where discharging to the drainage system, the installation shall conform to the *International Plumbing Code*.

SECTION 1009
HOT WATER BOILER EXPANSION TANK

1009.1 Where required. An expansion tank shall be installed in every hot water system. For multiple boiler installations, a minimum of one expansion tank is required. Expansion tanks shall be of the closed or open type. Tanks shall be rated for the pressure of the hot water system.

1009.2 Closed-type expansion tanks. Closed-type expansion tanks shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The size of the tank shall be based on the capacity of the hot-water-heating system. The minimum size of the tank shall be determined in accordance with the following equation:

$$V_t = \frac{(0.00041T - 0.0466)V_s}{\left(\frac{P_a}{P_f}\right) - \left(\frac{P_a}{P_o}\right)} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 10-1)}$$

For SI:

$$V_t = \frac{(0.000738T - 0.03348)V_s}{\left(\frac{P_a}{P_f}\right) - \left(\frac{P_a}{P_o}\right)}$$

where:

V_t = Minimum volume of tanks (gallons) (L).

V_s = Volume of system, not including expansion tanks (gallons) (L).

T = Average operating temperature (ºF) (ºC).

P_a = Atmospheric pressure (psi) (kPa).

P_f = Fill pressure (psi) (kPa).

P_o = Maximum operating pressure (psi) (kPa).

1009.3 Open-type expansion tanks. Open-type expansion tanks shall be located a minimum of 4 feet (1219 mm) above the highest heating element. The tank shall be adequately sized for the hot water system. An overflow with a minimum diameter of 1 inch (25 mm) shall be installed at the top of the tank. The overflow shall discharge to the drainage system in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

SECTION 1010
GAUGES

1010.1 Hot water boiler gauges. Every hot water boiler shall have a pressure gauge and a temperature gauge, or a combination pressure and temperature gauge. The gauges shall indicate the temperature and pressure within the normal range of the system's operation.

1010.2 Steam boiler gauges. Every steam boiler shall have a water-gauge glass and a pressure gauge. The pressure gauge shall indicate the pressure within the normal range of the system's operation.

1010.2.1 Water-gauge glass. The gauge glass shall be installed so that the midpoint is at the normal boiler water level.

SECTION 1011
TESTS

1011.1 Tests. Upon completion of the assembly and installation of boilers and pressure vessels, acceptance tests shall be conducted in accordance with the requirements of the Minnesota Statutes, Sections 326B.958 and 326B.966. Where field assembly of pressure vessels or boilers is required, a copy of the completed Manufacturer's Data Report required by the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code* shall be submitted to the building official.

Exception: For all ammonia refrigeration systems, refer to Minnesota Rules, Chapter 5230.

1011.2 Test gauges. An indicating test gauge shall be connected directly to the boiler or pressure vessel where it is visible to the operator throughout the duration of the test. The pressure gauge scale shall be graduated over a range of not less than one and one-half times and not greater than four times the maximum test pressure. All gauges utilized for testing shall be calibrated and certified by the test operator.

CHAPTER 11

REFRIGERATION

SECTION 1101 GENERAL

1101.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, installation, construction and repair of refrigeration systems that vaporize and liquefy a fluid during the refrigerating cycle. Refrigerant piping design and installation, including pressure vessels and pressure relief devices, shall conform to this code. Permanently installed refrigerant storage systems and other components shall be considered as part of the refrigeration system to which they are attached.

> **Exception:** For all ammonia refrigeration systems, refer to Minnesota Rules, Chapter 5230.

1101.2 Factory-built equipment and appliances. *Listed* and *labeled* self-contained, factory-built *equipment* and appliances shall be tested in accordance with UL 207, 412, 471 or 1995. Such *equipment* and appliances are deemed to meet the design, manufacture and factory test requirements of this code if installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1101.3 Protection. Any portion of a refrigeration system that is subject to physical damage shall be protected in an *approved* manner.

1101.4 Water connection. Water supply and discharge connections associated with refrigeration systems shall be made in accordance with this code and the *International Plumbing Code*.

1101.5 Fuel gas connection. Fuel gas devices, *equipment* and appliances used with refrigeration systems shall be installed in accordance with the *International Fuel Gas Code.*

1101.6 General. Refrigeration systems shall comply with the requirements of this code and, except as modified by this code, ASHRAE 15. Ammonia-refrigerating systems shall comply with this code and, except as modified by this code, ASHRAE 15 and IIAR 2.

1101.7 Maintenance. Mechanical refrigeration systems shall be maintained in proper operating condition, free from accumulations of oil, dirt, waste, excessive corrosion, other debris and leaks.

1101.8 Change in refrigerant type. The type of refrigerant in refrigeration systems having a refrigerant circuit containing more than 220 pounds (99.8 kg) of Group A1 or 30 pounds (13.6 kg) of any other group refrigerant shall not be changed without prior notification to the code official and compliance with the applicable code provisions for the new refrigerant type.

[F] 1101.9 Refrigerant discharge. Notification of refrigerant discharge shall be provided in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

1101.10 Locking access port caps. Refrigerant circuit access ports located outdoors shall be fitted with locking-type tamper-resistant caps or shall be otherwise secured to prevent unauthorized access.

SECTION 1102 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

1102.1 General. The system classification, allowable refrigerants, maximum quantity, enclosure requirements, location limitations, and field pressure test requirements shall be determined as follows:

1. Determine the refrigeration system's classification, in accordance with Section 1103.3.
2. Determine the refrigerant classification in accordance with Section 1103.1.
3. Determine the maximum allowable quantity of refrigerant in accordance with Section 1104, based on type of refrigerant, system classification and *occupancy*.
4. Determine the system enclosure requirements in accordance with Section 1104.
5. Refrigeration *equipment* and *appliance* location and installation shall be subject to the limitations of Chapter 3.
6. Nonfactory-tested, field-erected *equipment* and appliances shall be pressure tested in accordance with Section 1108.

1102.2 Refrigerants. The refrigerant shall be that which the *equipment* or *appliance* was designed to utilize or converted to utilize. Refrigerants not identified in Table 1103.1 shall be *approved* before use.

1102.2.1 Mixing. Refrigerants, including refrigerant blends, with different designations in ASHRAE 34 shall not be mixed in a system.

> **Exception:** Addition of a second refrigerant is allowed where permitted by the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer to improve oil return at low temperatures. The refrigerant and amount added shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1102.2.2 Purity. Refrigerants used in refrigeration systems shall be new, recovered or *reclaimed refrigerants* in accordance with Section 1102.2.2.1, 1102.2.2.2 or 1102.2.2.3. Where required by the *equipment* or *appliance* owner or the code official, the installer shall furnish a signed declaration that the refrigerant used meets the requirements of Section 1102.2.2.1, 1102.2.2.2 or 1102.2.2.3.

> **Exception:** The refrigerant used shall meet the purity specifications set by the manufacturer of the *equipment* or *appliance* in which such refrigerant is used where such specifications are different from that specified in Sections 1102.2.2.1, 1102.2.2.2 and 1102.2.2.3.

1102.2.2.1 New refrigerants. Refrigerants shall be of a purity level specified by the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer.

1102.2.2.2 Recovered refrigerants. Refrigerants that are recovered from refrigeration and air-conditioning systems shall not be reused in other than the system from which they were recovered and in other systems of the same owner. *Recovered refrigerants* shall be filtered and dried before reuse. *Recovered refrigerants* that show clear signs of contamination shall not be reused unless reclaimed in accordance with Section 1102.2.2.3.

1102.2.2.3 Reclaimed refrigerants. Used refrigerants shall not be reused in a different owner's *equipment* or appliances unless tested and found to meet the purity requirements of ARI 700. Contaminated refrigerants shall not be used unless reclaimed and found to meet the purity requirements of ARI 700.

SECTION 1103
REFRIGERATION SYSTEM CLASSIFICATION

1103.1 Refrigerant classification. Refrigerants shall be classified in accordance with ASHRAE 34 as listed in Table 1103.1.

1103.2 Occupancy classification. Locations of refrigerating systems are described by *occupancy* classifications that consider the ability of people to respond to potential exposure to refrigerants. Where *equipment* or appliances, other than piping, are located outside a building and within 20 feet (6096 mm) of any building opening, such *equipment* or appliances shall be governed by the *occupancy* classification of the building. *Occupancy* classifications shall be defined as follows:

1. Institutional *occupancy* is that portion of premises from which, because they are disabled, debilitated or confined, occupants cannot readily leave without the assistance of others. Institutional occupancies include, among others, hospitals, nursing homes, asylums and spaces containing locked cells.
2. Public assembly *occupancy* is that portion of premises where large numbers of people congregate and from which occupants cannot quickly vacate the space. Public assembly occupancies include, among others, auditoriums, ballrooms, classrooms, passenger depots, restaurants and theaters.
3. Residential *occupancy* is that portion of premises that provides the occupants with complete independent living facilities, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation. Residential occupancies include, among others, dormitories, hotels, multiunit apartments and private residences.
4. Commercial *occupancy* is that portion of premises where people transact business, receive personal service or purchase food and other goods. Commercial occupancies include, among others, office and professional buildings, markets (but not large mercantile occupancies) and work or storage areas that do not qualify as industrial occupancies.
5. Large mercantile *occupancy* is that portion of premises where more than 100 persons congregate on levels above or below street level to purchase personal merchandise.
6. Industrial *occupancy* is that portion of premises that is not open to the public, where access by authorized persons is controlled, and that is used to manufacture, process or store goods such as chemicals, food, ice, meat or petroleum.
7. Mixed *occupancy* occurs when two or more occupancies are located within the same building. When each *occupancy* is isolated from the rest of the building by tight walls, floors and ceilings and by self-closing doors, the requirements for each *occupancy* shall apply to its portion of the building. When the various occupancies are not so isolated, the *occupancy* having the most stringent requirements shall be the governing *occupancy*.

1103.3 System classification. Refrigeration systems shall be classified according to the degree of probability that refrigerant leaked from a failed connection, seal or component could enter an occupied area. The distinction is based on the basic design or location of the components.

1103.3.1 Low-probability systems. Double-indirect open-spray systems, indirect closed systems and indirect-vented closed systems shall be classified as low-probability systems, provided that all refrigerant-containing piping and fittings are isolated when the quantities in Table 1103.1 are exceeded.

1103.3.2 High-probability systems. Direct systems and indirect open-spray systems shall be classified as high-probability systems.

Exception: An indirect open-spray system shall not be required to be classified as a high-probability system if the pressure of the secondary coolant is at all times (operating and standby) greater than the pressure of the refrigerant.

[F] TABLE 1103.1
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION	DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]	[M] AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE			
					Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m^3	OEL[e]
R-11[d]	CCl_3F	trichlorofluoromethane	A1	2-0-0[b]	0.39	1,100	6.2	C1,000
R-12[d]	CCl_2F_2	dichlorodifluoromethane	A1	2-0-0[b]	5.6	18,000	90	1,000
R-13[d]	$CClF_3$	chlorotrifluoromethane	A1	2-0-0[b]	—	—	—	1,000
R-13B1[d]	$CBrF_3$	bromotrifluoromethane	A1	2-0-0[b]	—	—	—	1,000
R-14	CF_4	tetrafluoromethane (carbon tetrafluoride)	A1	2-0-0[b]	25	110,000	400	1,000
R-22	$CHClF_2$	chlorodifluoromethane	A1	2-0-0[b]	13	59,000	210	1,000
R-23	CHF_3	trifluoromethane (fluoroform)	A1	2-0-0[b]	7.3	41,000	120	1,000
R-32	CH_2F_2	difluoromethane (methylene fluoride)	A2	—	4.8	36,000	77	1,000
R-113[d]	CCl_2FCClF_2	1,1,2-trichloro-1,2,2-trifluoroethane	A1	2-0-0[b]	1.2	2,600	20	1,000
R-114[d]	$CClF_2CClF_2$	1,2-dichloro-1,2,2-tetrafluoroethane	A1	2-0-0[b]	8.7	20,000	140	1,000
R-115	$CClF_2CF_3$	chloropentafluoroethane	A1	—	47	120,000	760	1,000
R-116	CF_3CF_3	hexafluoroethane	A1	1-0-0	34	97,000	550	1,000
R-123	$CHCl_2CF_3$	2,2-dichloro-1,1,1-trifluoroethane	B1	2-0-0[b]	3.5	9,100	57	50
R-124	$CHClFCF_3$	2-chloro-1,1,1,2-tetrafluoroethane	A1	2-0-0[b]	3.5	10,000	56	1,000
R-125	CHF_2CF_3	pentafluoroethane	A1	2-0-0[b]	23	75,000	370	1,000
R-134a	CH_2FCF_3	1,1,1,2-tetrafluoroethane	A1	2-0-0[b]	13	50,000	210	1,000
R-141b	CH_3CCl_2F	1,1-dichloro-1-fluoroethane	—	—	0.78	2,600	12	500
R-142b	CH_3CClF_2	1-chloro-1,1-difluoroethane	A2	—	5.1	20,000	83	1,000
R-143a	CH_3CF_3	1,1,1-trifluoroethane	A2	2-0-0[b]	4.5	21,000	70	1,000
R-152a	CH_3CHF_2	1,1-difluorethane	A2	1-4-0	2	12,000	32	1,000
R-170	CH_3CH_3	ethane	A3	2-4-0	0.54	7,000	8.7	1,000
R-E170	CH_3OCH_3	Methoxymethane (dimethyl ether)	A3	—	1	8,500	16	1,000
R-218	$CF_3CF_2CF_3$	octafluoropropane	A1	2-0-0[b]	43	90,000	690	1,000
R-227ea	CF_3CHFCF_3	1,1,1,2,3,3,3-heptafluoropropane	A1	—	36	84,000	580	1,000
R-236fa	$CF_3CH_2CF_3$	1,1,1,3,3,3-hexafluoropropane	A1	2-0-0[b]	21	55,000	340	1,000
R-245fa	$CHF_2CH_2CF_3$	1,1,1,3,3-pentafluoropropane	B1	2-0-0[b]	12	34,000	190	300
R-290	$CH_3CH_2CH_3$	propane	A3	2-4-0	0.56	5,300	9.5	1,000
R-C318	$-(CF_2)_4-$	octafluorocyclobutane	A1	—	41	80,000	660	1,000

(continued)

[F] TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION	DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]	[M] AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE			
					Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m^3	OEL[e]
R400[d]	zeotrope	R-12/114 (50/50)	A1	2-0-0[b]	10	28,000	160	1,000
R-400[d]	zeotrope	R-12/114 (60/40)	A1		11	30,000	170	1,000
R-401A	zeotrope	R-22/152a/124 (53/13/34)	A1	2-0-0[b]	6.6	27,000	110	1,000
R-401B	zeotrope	R-22/152a/124 (61/11/28)	A1	2-0-0[b]	7.2	30,000	120	1,000
R-401C	zeotrope	R-22/152a/124 (33/15/52)	A1	2-0-0[b]	5.2	20,000	84	1,000
R-402A	zeotrope	R-125/290/22 (60/2/38)	A1	2-0-0[b]	8.5	33,000	140	1,000
R-402B	zeotrope	R-125/290/22 (38/2/60)	A1	2-0-0[b]	15	63,000	240	1,000
R-403A	zeotrope	R-290/22/218 (5.0/75.0/20.0)	A2	2-0-0[b]	7.6	33,000	120	1,000
R-403B	zeotrope	R-290/22/218 (5/56/39)	A1	2-0-0[b]	18	70,000	290	1,000
R-404A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/134a (44/52/4)	A1	2-0-0[b]	31	130,000	500	1,000
R-405A	zeotrope	R-22/152a/142b/C318 (45.0/7.0/5.5/2.5)	—	—	16	57,000	260	1,000
R-406A	zeotrope	R-22/600a/142b (55/4/41)	A2	—	4.7	21,000	25	1,000
R-407A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (20/40/40)	A1	2-0-0[b]	18	78,000	290	1,000
R-407B	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (10/70/20)	A1	2-0-0[b]	20	77,000	320	1,000
R-407C	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (23/25/52)	A1	2-0-0[b]	17	76,000	270	1,000
R-407D	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (15/15/70)	A1	2-0-0[b]	15	65,000	240	1,000
R-407E	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (25/15/60)	A1	2-0-0[b]	16	75,000	260	1,000
R-408A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/22 (7/46/47)	A1	2-0-0[b]	21	95,000	340	1,000
R-409A	zeotrope	R-22/124/142b (60/25/15)	A1	2-0-0[b]	7.1	29,000	110	1,000
R-409B	zeotrope	R-22/124/142b (65/25/10)	A1	2-0-0[b]	7.3	30,000	120	1,000
R-410A	zeotrope	R-32/125 (50/50)	A1	2-0-0[b]	25	130,000	390	1,000
R-410B	zeotrope	R-32/125 (45/55)	A1	2-0-0[b]	24	130,000	390	1,000
R-411A	zeotrope	R-127/22/152a (1.5/87.5/11.0)	A2	—	2.9	14,000	46	990
R-411B	zeotrope	R-1270/22/152a (3/94/3)	A2	—	2.8	13,000	45	980
R-412A	zeotrope	R-22/318/142b (70/5/25)	A2	—	5.1	22,000	82	1,000
R-413A	zeotrope	R-218/134a/600a (9/88/3)	A2	—	5.8	22,000	94	1,000
R-414A	zeotrope	R-22/124/600a/142b (51/28.5/4/16.5)	A1	—	6.4	26,000	100	1,000
R-414B	zeotrope	R-22/124/600a/142b (50/39/1.5/9.5)	A1	—	6	23,000	95	1,000

(continued)

[F] TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION	DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]	[M] AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE			
					Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m³	OEL[e]
R-415A	zeotrope	R-22/152a (82.0/18.0)	A2	—	12	57,000	190	1,000
R-415B	zeotrope	R-22/152a (25.0/75.0)	A2	—	9.3	52,000	120	1,000
R-416A	zeotrope	R-134a/124/600 (59/39.5/1.5)	A1	2-0-0[b]	3.9	14,000	62	1,000
R-417A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600	A1	2-0-0[b]	3.5	13,000	56	1,000
R-418A	zeotrope	R-290/22/152a (1.5/96.0/2.5)	A2	—	13	59,000	200	1,000
R-419A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/E170 (77.0/19.0/4.0)	A2	—	19	70,000	310	1,000
R-420A	zeotrope	R-134a/142b (88.0/0)	A1	2-0-0[b]	12	45,000	190	1,000
R-421A	zeotrope	R-125/134a (58.0/42.0)	A1	2-0-0[b]	17	61,000	280	1,000
R-421B	zeotrope	R-125/134a (85.0/15.0)	A1	2-0-0[b]	21	69,000	330	1,000
R-422A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (85.1/11.5/3.4)	A1	2-0-0[b]	18	63,000	290	1,000
R-422B	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (55.0/42.0/3.0)	A1	2-0-0[b]	16	26,000	250	1,000
R-422C	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (82.0/15.0/3.0)	A1	2-0-0[b]	18	62,000	290	1,000
R-422D	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (65.1/31.5/3.4)	A1	2-0-0[b]	16	58,000	260	1,000
R-423A	zeotrope	R-134a/227ea (52.5/47.5)	A1	2-0-0[c]	19	59,000	310	1,000
R-424A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a/600/601a (50.5/47.0/1.0/0.6)	A1	2-0-0[b]	6.2	23,000	100	970
R-425A	zoetrope	R-32/134a/227ea (18.5/69.5/0)	A1	2-0-0[b]	16	67,000	250	1,000
R-426A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a/601a (5.1/93.0/1.3/0.6)	A1	—	5.2	20,000	83	990
R-427A	zeotrope	R-32/125/143a/134a (15.0/25.0/10.0/50.0)	A1	—	18	76,000	280	1,000
R-428A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/290/600a (77.5/20.0/0.6/1.9)	A1	—	23	83,000	370	1,000
R-429A	zeotrope	R-E170/152a/600a (60.0/10.0/30.0)	A3	—	0.81	6,300	13	1,000
R-430A	zeotrope	R-152a/600a (76.0/24.0)	A3	—	1.3	8,000	21	1,000
R-431A	zeotrope	R-290/152a (71.0/29.0)	A3	—	0.69	5,500	11	1,000
R-432A	zeotrope	R-1270/E170 (80.0/20.0)	A3	—	0.13	1,200	2.1	710
R-433A	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (30.0/70.0)	A3	—	0.34	3,100	5.5	880
R-433B	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (5.0-95.0)	A3	—	0.51	4,500	8.1	950
R-433C	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (25.0-75.0)	A3	—	0.41	3,600	6.6	790
R-434A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/600a (63.2/18.0/16.0/2.8)	A1	—	20	73,000	320	1,000
R-435A	zeotrope	R-E170/152a (80.0/20.0)	A3	—	1.1	8,500	17	1,000
R-436A	zeotrope	R-290/600a (56.0/44.0)	A3	—	0.5	4,000	8	1,000
R-436B	zeotrope	R-290/600a (52.0/48.0)	A3	—	0.5	4,000	8	1,000
R-437A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600/601 (19.5/78.5/1.4/0.6)	A1	—	5	19,000	81	990
R-438A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/600/601a (8.5/45.0/44.2/1.7/0.6)	A1		4.9	19,000	79	990

(continued)

[F] TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION	DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]	[M] AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE			
					Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m^3	OEL[e]
R-500[e]	azeotrope	R-12/152a (73.8/26.2)	A1	2-0-0[b]	7.6	30,000	120	1,000
R-501[d]	azeotrope	R-22/12 (75.0/25.0)	A1	—	13	54,000	210	1,000
R-502[e]	azeotrope	R-22/115 (48.8/51.2)	A1	2-0-0[b]	21	73,000	330	1,000
R-503[e]	azeotrope	R-23/13 (40.1/59.9)	—	2-0-0[b]	—	—	—	1,000
R-504[d]	azeotrope	R-32/115 (48.2/51.8)	—	—	29	140,000	460	1,000
R-507A	azeotrope	R-125/143a (50/50)	A1	2-0-0[b]	32	130,000	520	1,000
R-508A	azeotrope	R-23/116 (39/61)	A1	2-0-0[b]	14	55,000	220	1,000
R-508B	azeotrope	R-23/116 (46/54)	A1	2-0-0[b]	13	52,000	200	1,000
R-509A	azeotrope	R-22/218 (44/56)	A1	2-0-0[b]	24	75,000	390	1,000
R-510A	azeotrope	R-E170/600a (88.0/0)	A3	—	0.87	7,300	14	1,000
R-600	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$	butane	A3	1-4-0	0.1	1,000	2.4	1,000
R-600a	$CH(CH_3)_2CH_3$	2-methylpropane (isobutane)	A3	2-4-0	0.6	4,000	9.6	1,000
R-601	$CH_3CH_2CH_2\ CH_2\ CH_3$	pentane	A3	—	0.2	1,000	2.9	600
R-601a	$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3$	2-methylbutane (isopentane)	A3	—	0.2	1,000	2.9	600
R-717	NH_3	ammonia	B2	3-3-0[c]	0.014	320	0.22	25
R-718	H_2O	water	A1	0-0-0	—	—	—	—
R-744	CO_2	carbon dioxide	A1	2-0-0[b]	4.5	40,000	72	5,000
R-1150	$CH_2{=}CH_2$	ethene (ethylene)	A3	1-4-2	—	—	—	200
R-1234yf	$CF_3CF{=}CH_2$	2,3,3,3-tetrafluoro-1 propene	A2	—	4.7	16,000	75	500
R-1270	$CH_3CH{=}CH_2$	Propene (propylene)	A3	1-4-1	0.1	1,000	1.7	500

For SI: 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m^3.

a. Degrees of hazard are for health, fire, and reactivity, respectively, in accordance with NFPA 704.

b. Reduction to 1-0-0 is allowed if analysis satisfactory to the code official shows that the maximum concentration for a rupture or full loss of refrigerant charge would not exceed the IDLH, considering both the refrigerant quantity and room volume.

c. For installations that are entirely outdoors, use 3-1-0.

d. Class I ozone depleting substance; prohibited for new installations.

e. Occupational Exposure Limit based on the OSHA PEL, ACGIH TLV-TWA, the AIHA WEEL or consistent value on a time-weighted average (TWA) basis (unless noted C for ceiling) for an 8 hr/d and 40 hr/wk.

SECTION 1104
SYSTEM APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

1104.1 General. The refrigerant, *occupancy* and system classification cited in this section shall be determined in accordance with Sections 1103.1, 1103.2 and 1103.3, respectively. For refrigerant blends assigned dual classifications, as formulated and for the worst case of fractionation, the classifications for the worst case of fractionation shall be used.

1104.2 Machinery room. Except as provided in Sections 1104.2.1 and 1104.2.2, all components containing the refrigerant shall be located either outdoors or in a *machinery room* where the quantity of refrigerant in an independent circuit of a system exceeds the amounts shown in Table 1103.1. For refrigerant blends not listed in Table 1103.1, the same requirement shall apply when the amount for any blend component exceeds that indicated in Table 1103.1 for that component. This requirement shall also apply when the combined amount of the blend components exceeds a limit of 69,100 parts per million (ppm) by volume. Machinery rooms required by this section shall be constructed and maintained in accordance with Section 1105 for Group A1 and B1 refrigerants and in accordance with Sections 1105 and 1106 for Group A2, B2, A3 and B3 refrigerants.

Exceptions:

1. Machinery rooms are not required for *listed equipment* and appliances containing not more than 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of refrigerant, regardless of the refrigerant's safety classification, where installed in accordance with the equipment's or appliance's listing and the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. Piping in conformance with Section 1107 is allowed in other locations to connect components installed in a *machinery room* with those installed outdoors.

1104.2.1 Institutional occupancies. The amounts shown in Table 1103.1 shall be reduced by 50 percent for all areas of institutional occupancies except kitchens, laboratories and mortuaries. The total of all Group A2, B2, A3 and B3 refrigerants shall not exceed 550 pounds (250 kg) in occupied areas or machinery rooms.

1104.2.2 Industrial occupancies and refrigerated rooms. This section applies only to industrial occupancies and refrigerated rooms for manufacturing, food and beverage preparation, meat cutting, other processes and storage. Machinery rooms are not required where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The space containing the machinery is separated from other occupancies by tight construction with tight-fitting doors.
2. Access is restricted to authorized personnel.
3. The floor area per occupant is not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2) where machinery is located on floor levels with exits more than 6.6 feet (2012 mm) above the ground. Where provided with egress directly to the outdoors or into *approved* building exits, the minimum floor area shall not apply.
4. Refrigerant detectors are installed as required for machinery rooms in accordance with Section 1105.3.
5. Surfaces having temperatures exceeding 800°F (427°C) and open flames are not present where any Group A2, B2, A3 or B3 refrigerant is used (see Section 1104.3.4).
6. All electrical *equipment* and appliances conform to Class 1, Division 2, *hazardous location* classification requirements of NFPA 70 where the quantity of any Group A2, B2, A3 or B3 refrigerant, other than ammonia, in a single independent circuit would exceed 25 percent of the lower flammability limit (LFL) upon release to the space.
7. All refrigerant-containing parts in systems exceeding 100 horsepower (hp) (74.6 kW) drive power, except evaporators used for refrigeration or dehumidification; condensers used for heating; control and pressure relief valves for either; and connecting piping, shall be located either outdoors or in a *machinery room*.

1104.3 Refrigerant restrictions. Refrigerant applications, maximum quantities and use shall be restricted in accordance with Sections 1104.3.1 through 1104.3.4.

1104.3.1 Air-conditioning for human comfort. In other than industrial occupancies where the quantity in a single independent circuit does not exceed the amount in Table 1103.1, Group B1, B2 and B3 refrigerants shall not be used in high-probability systems for air-conditioning for human comfort.

1104.3.2 Nonindustrial occupancies. Group A2 and B2 refrigerants shall not be used in high-probability systems where the quantity of refrigerant in any independent refrigerant circuit exceeds the amount shown in Table 1104.3.2. Group A3 and B3 refrigerants shall not be used except where *approved*.

Exception: This section does not apply to laboratories where the floor area per occupant is not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2).

1104.3.3 All occupancies. The total of all Group A2, B2, A3 and B3 refrigerants other than R-717, ammonia, shall not exceed 1,100 pounds (499 kg) except where *approved*.

1104.3.4 Protection from refrigerant decomposition. Where any device having an open flame or surface temperature greater than 800°F (427°C) is used in a room containing more than 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of refrigerant in a single independent circuit, a hood and exhaust system shall be provided in accordance with Section 510. Such exhaust system shall exhaust *combustion* products to the outdoors.

Exception: A hood and exhaust system shall not be required:

1. Where the refrigerant is R-717, R-718 or R-744;
2. Where the *combustion* air is ducted from the outdoors in a manner that prevents leaked refrigerant from being combusted; or

3. Where a refrigerant detector is used to stop the *combustion* in the event of a refrigerant leak (see Sections 1105.3 and 1105.5).

1104.4 Volume calculations. Volume calculations shall be in accordance with Sections 1104.4.1 through 1104.4.3.

1104.4.1 Noncommunicating spaces. Where the refrigerant-containing parts of a system are located in one or more spaces that do not communicate through permanent openings or HVAC ducts, the volume of the smallest, enclosed occupied space shall be used to determine the permissible quantity of refrigerant in the system.

1104.4.2 Communicating spaces. Where an evaporator or condenser is located in an air duct system, the volume of the smallest, enclosed occupied space served by the duct system shall be used to determine the maximum allowable quantity of refrigerant in the system.

Exception: If airflow to any enclosed space cannot be reduced below one-quarter of its maximum, the entire space served by the air duct system shall be used to determine the maximum allowable quantity of refrigerant in the system.

1104.4.3 Plenums. Where the space above a suspended ceiling is continuous and part of the supply or return air *plenum* system, this space shall be included in calculating the volume of the enclosed space.

SECTION 1105
MACHINERY ROOM, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

[B] 1105.1 Design and construction. Machinery rooms shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the *International Building Code* and this section.

1105.2 Openings. Ducts and air handlers in the *machinery room* that operate at a lower pressure than the room shall be sealed to prevent any refrigerant leakage from entering the airstream.

[F] 1105.3 Refrigerant detector. Refrigerant detectors in machinery rooms shall be provided as required by Section 606.8 of the *International Fire Code*.

1105.4 Tests. Periodic tests of the mechanical ventilating system shall be performed in accordance with manufacturer's specifications and as required by the code official.

1105.5 Fuel-burning appliances. Fuel-burning appliances and *equipment* having open flames and that use *combustion* air from the *machinery room* shall not be installed in a *machinery room*.

Exceptions:

1. Where the refrigerant is carbon dioxide or water.
2. Fuel-burning appliances shall not be prohibited in the same *machinery room* with refrigerant-containing *equipment* or appliances where *combustion* air is ducted from outside the *machinery room* and sealed in such a manner as to prevent any refrigerant leakage from entering the *combustion* chamber, or where a refrigerant vapor detector is employed to automatically shut off the *combustion* process in the event of refrigerant leakage.

1105.6 Ventilation. Machinery rooms shall be mechanically ventilated to the outdoors.

Exception: Where a refrigerating system is located outdoors more than 20 feet (6096 mm) from any building opening and is enclosed by a penthouse, lean-to or other open structure, natural or mechanical ventilation shall be provided. Location of the openings shall be based on the relative density of the refrigerant to air. The free-aperture cross section for the ventilation of the *machinery room* shall be not less than:

$$F = \sqrt{G} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 11-1)}$$

For SI: $F = 0.138\sqrt{G}$

where:

F = The free opening area in square feet (m^2).

G = The mass of refrigerant in pounds (kg) in the largest system, any part of which is located in the *machinery room*.

1105.6.1 Discharge location. The discharge of the air shall be to the outdoors in accordance with Chapter 5. Exhaust from mechanical ventilation systems shall be discharged not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) from a property line or openings into buildings.

1105.6.2 Makeup air. Provisions shall be made for *makeup air* to replace that being exhausted. Openings for *makeup air* shall be located to avoid intake of *exhaust air*. Supply and exhaust ducts to the *machinery room* shall serve no other area, shall be constructed in accordance with Chapter 5 and shall be covered with corrosion-resistant screen of not less than $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) mesh.

TABLE 1104.3.2
MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE QUANTITIES OF REFRIGERANTS

TYPE OF REFRIGERATION SYSTEM	MAXIMUM POUNDS FOR VARIOUS OCCUPANCIES			
	Institutional	Assembly	Residential	All other occupancies
Sealed absorption system				
In exit access	0	0	3.3	3.3
In adjacent outdoor locations	0	0	22	22
In other than exit access	0	6.6	6.6	6.6
Unit systems				
In other than exit access	0	0	6.6	6.6

For SI: 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

1105.6.3 Ventilation rate. For other than ammonia systems, the mechanical ventilation systems shall be capable of exhausting the minimum quantity of air both at normal operating and emergency conditions, as required by Sections 1105.6.3.1 and 1105.6.3.2. The minimum required ventilation rate for ammonia shall be 30 air changes per hour in accordance with IIAR2. Multiple fans or multispeed fans shall be allowed to produce the emergency ventilation rate and to obtain a reduced airflow for normal ventilation.

1105.6.3.1 Quantity—normal ventilation. During occupied conditions, the mechanical ventilation system shall exhaust the larger of the following:

1. Not less than 0.5 cfm per square foot (0.0025 $m^3/s \bullet m^2$) of *machinery room* area or 20 cfm (0.009 m^3/s) per person; or
2. A volume required to limit the room temperature rise to 18°F (10°C) taking into account the ambient heating effect of all machinery in the room.

1105.6.3.2 Quantity—emergency conditions. Upon actuation of the refrigerant detector required in Section 1105.3, the mechanical ventilation system shall *exhaust air* from the *machinery room* in the following quantity:

$$Q = 100 \times \sqrt{G} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 11-2)}$$

For SI: $Q = 0.07 \times \sqrt{G}$

where:

Q = The airflow in cubic feet per minute (m^3/s).

G = The design mass of refrigerant in pounds (kg) in the largest system, any part of which is located in the *machinery room.*

1105.7 Termination of relief devices. Pressure relief devices, fusible plugs and purge systems located within the *machinery room* shall terminate outside of the structure at a location not less than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the adjoining grade level and not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) from any window, ventilation opening or exit.

1105.8 Ammonia discharge. Pressure relief valves for ammonia systems shall discharge in accordance with ASHRAE 15.

[F] 1105.9 Emergency pressure control system. Refrigeration systems containing more than 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of flammable, toxic or highly toxic refrigerant or ammonia shall be provided with an emergency pressure control system in accordance with Section 606.10 of the *International Fire Code.*

SECTION 1106
MACHINERY ROOM, SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

1106.1 General. Where required by Section 1104.2, the *machinery room* shall meet the requirements of this section in addition to the requirements of Section 1105.

1106.2 Elevated temperature. There shall not be an open flame-producing device or continuously operating hot surface over 800°F (427°C) permanently installed in the room.

1106.3 Ammonia room ventilation. Ventilation systems in ammonia machinery rooms shall be operated continuously at the emergency ventilation rate determined in accordance with Section 1105.6.3.2.

Exceptions:

1. Machinery rooms equipped with a vapor detector that will automatically start the ventilation system at the emergency rate determined in accordance with Section 1105.6.3.2, and that will actuate an alarm at a detection level not to exceed 1,000 ppm; or
2. Machinery rooms conforming to the Class 1, Division 2, *hazardous location* classification requirements of NFPA 70.

1106.4 Flammable refrigerants. Where refrigerants of Groups A2, A3, B2 and B3 are used, the *machinery room* shall conform to the Class 1, Division 2, *hazardous location* classification requirements of NFPA 70.

Exception: Ammonia machinery rooms that are provided with ventilation in accordance with Section 1106.3.

[F] 1106.5 Remote controls. Remote control of the mechanical equipment and appliances located in the machinery room shall comply with Sections 1106.5.1 and 1106.5.2.

[F] 1106.5.1 Refrigeration system emergency shutoff. A clearly identified switch of the break-glass type or with an approved tamper-resistant cover shall provide off-only control of refrigerant compressors, refrigerant pumps, and normally closed, automatic refrigerant valves located in the machinery room. Additionally, this equipment shall be automatically shut off whenever the refrigerant vapor concentration in the machinery room exceeds the vapor detector's upper detection limit or 25 percent of the LEL, whichever is lower.

[F] 1106.5.2 Ventilation system. A clearly identified switch of the break-glass type shall provide on-only control of the *machinery room* ventilation fans.

[F] 1106.6 Emergency signs and labels. Refrigeration units and systems shall be provided with *approved* emergency signs, charts, and labels in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 1107
REFRIGERANT PIPING

1107.1 General. All refrigerant piping shall be installed, tested and placed in operation in accordance with this chapter.

1107.2 Piping location. Refrigerant piping that crosses an open space that affords passageway in any building shall be not less than 7 feet 3 inches (2210 mm) above the floor unless the piping is located against the ceiling of such space. Refrigerant piping shall not be placed in any elevator, dumbwaiter or other shaft containing a moving object or in any shaft that has openings to living quarters or to means of egress. Refrigerant piping shall not be installed in an enclosed public stairway, stair landing or means of egress.

1107.2.1 Piping in concrete floors. Refrigerant piping installed in concrete floors shall be encased in pipe ducts. The piping shall be isolated and supported to prevent damaging vibration, stress and corrosion.

1107.2.2 Refrigerant penetrations. Refrigerant piping shall not penetrate floors, ceilings or roofs.

Exceptions:

1. Penetrations connecting the basement and the first floor.
2. Penetrations connecting the top floor and a machinery penthouse or roof installation.
3. Penetrations connecting adjacent floors served by the refrigeration system.
4. Penetrations by piping in a direct system where the refrigerant quantity does not exceed Table 1103.1 for the smallest occupied space through which the piping passes.
5. In other than industrial occupancies and where the refrigerant quantity exceeds Table 1103.1 for the smallest space, penetrations for piping that connects separate pieces of *equipment* that are either:
    5.1. Enclosed by an *approved* gas-tight, fire-resistive duct or shaft with openings to those floors served by the refrigeration system or
    5.2. Located on the exterior of the building where vented to the outdoors or to the space served by the system and not used as an air shaft, closed court or similar space.

1107.3 Pipe enclosures. Rigid or flexible metal enclosures or pipe ducts shall be provided for soft, annealed copper tubing and used for refrigerant piping erected on the premises and containing other than Group A1 or B1 refrigerants. Enclosures shall not be required for connections between condensing units and the nearest riser box(es), provided such connections do not exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) in length.

1107.4 Condensation. All refrigerating piping and fittings, brine piping and fittings that, during normal operation, will reach a surface temperature below the dew point of the surrounding air, and are located in spaces or areas where condensation will cause a safety hazard to the building occupants, structure, electrical *equipment* or any other *equipment* or appliances, shall be protected in an *approved* manner to prevent such damage.

1107.5 Materials for refrigerant pipe and tubing. Piping materials shall be as set forth in Sections 1107.5.1 through 1107.5.5.

1107.5.1 Steel pipe. Carbon steel pipe with a wall thickness not less than Schedule 80 shall be used for Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant liquid lines for sizes 1.5 inches (38 mm) and smaller. Carbon steel pipe with a wall thickness not less than Schedule 40 shall be used for Group A1 or B1 refrigerant liquid lines 6 inches (152 mm) and smaller, Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant liquid lines sizes 2 inches (51 mm) through 6 inches (152 mm) and all refrigerant suction and discharge lines 6 inches (152 mm) and smaller. Type F steel pipe shall not be used for refrigerant lines having an operating temperature less than -20°F (-29°C).

1107.5.2 Copper and brass pipe. Standard iron-pipe size, copper and red brass (not less than 80-percent copper) pipe shall conform to ASTM B42 and ASTM B43.

1107.5.3 Copper tube. Copper tube used for refrigerant piping erected on the premises shall be seamless copper tube of Type ACR (hard or annealed) complying with ASTM B280. Where *approved*, copper tube for refrigerant piping erected on the premises shall be seamless copper tube of Type K, L or M (drawn or annealed) in accordance with ASTM B88. Annealed temper copper tube shall not be used in sizes larger than a 2-inch (51 mm) nominal size. Mechanical joints shall not be used on annealed temper copper tube in sizes larger than $^{7}/_{8}$-inch (22.2 mm) OD size.

1107.5.4 Copper tubing joints. Copper tubing joints used in refrigerating systems containing Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerants shall be brazed. Soldered joints shall not be used in such refrigerating systems.

1107.5.5 Aluminum tube. Type 3003-0 aluminum tubing with high-pressure fittings shall not be used with methyl chloride and other refrigerants known to attack aluminum.

1107.6 Joints and refrigerant-containing parts in air ducts. Joints and all refrigerant-containing parts of a refrigerating system located in an air duct of an air-conditioning system carrying conditioned air to and from human-occupied space shall be constructed to withstand, without leakage, a pressure of 150 percent of the higher of the design pressure or pressure relief device setting.

1107.7 Exposure of refrigerant pipe joints. Refrigerant pipe joints erected on the premises shall be exposed for visual inspection prior to being covered or enclosed.

1107.8 Stop valves. All systems containing more than 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of a refrigerant in systems using positive-displacement compressors shall have stop valves installed as follows:

1. At the inlet of each compressor, compressor unit or condensing unit.
2. At the discharge outlet of each compressor, compressor unit or condensing unit and of each liquid receiver.

Exceptions:

1. Systems that have a refrigerant pumpout function capable of storing the entire refrigerant charge in a receiver or heat exchanger.
2. Systems that are equipped with provisions for pumpout of the refrigerant using either portable or permanently installed recovery *equipment*.
3. Self-contained systems.

1107.8.1 Liquid receivers. All systems containing 100 pounds (45 kg) or more of a refrigerant, other than systems utilizing nonpositive displacement compressors, shall have stop valves, in addition to those required by Section 1107.8, on each inlet of each liquid receiver. Stop valves shall not be required on the inlet of a receiver in a condensing unit, nor on the inlet of a receiver which is an integral part of the condenser.

1107.8.2 Copper tubing. Stop valves used with soft annealed copper tubing or hard-drawn copper tubing $^7/_8$-inch (22.2 mm) OD standard size or smaller shall be securely mounted, independent of tubing fastenings or supports.

1107.8.3 Identification. Stop valves shall be identified where their intended purpose is not obvious. Numbers shall not be used to label the valves, unless a key to the numbers is located near the valves.

SECTION 1108
FIELD TEST

1108.1 General. Every refrigerant-containing part of every system that is erected on the premises, except compressors, condensers, vessels, evaporators, safety devices, pressure gauges and control mechanisms that are *listed* and factory tested, shall be tested and proved tight after complete installation, and before operation. Tests shall include both the high- and low-pressure sides of each system at not less than the lower of the design pressures or the setting of the pressure relief device(s). The design pressures for testing shall be those listed on the condensing unit, compressor or compressor unit nameplate, as required by ASHRAE 15.

Exceptions:

1. Gas bulk storage tanks that are not permanently connected to a refrigeration system.
2. Systems erected on the premises with copper tubing not exceeding $^5/_8$-inch (15.8 mm) OD, with wall thickness as required by ASHRAE 15, shall be tested in accordance with Section 1108.1, or by means of refrigerant charged into the system at the saturated vapor pressure of the refrigerant at 70°F (21°C) or higher.
3. Limited-charge systems equipped with a pressure relief device, erected on the premises, shall be tested at a pressure not less than one and one-half times the pressure setting of the relief device. If the *equipment* or *appliance* has been tested by the manufacturer at one and one-half times the design pressure, the test after erection on the premises shall be conducted at the design pressure.

1108.1.1 Booster compressor. Where a compressor is used as a booster to obtain an intermediate pressure and discharges into the suction side of another compressor, the booster compressor shall be considered a part of the low side, provided that it is protected by a pressure relief device.

1108.1.2 Centrifugal/nonpositive displacement compressors. In field-testing systems using centrifugal or other nonpositive displacement compressors, the entire system shall be considered as the low-side pressure for field test purposes.

1108.2 Test gases. Tests shall be performed with an inert dried gas including, but not limited to, nitrogen and carbon dioxide. Oxygen, air, combustible gases and mixtures containing such gases shall not be used.

Exception: The use of air is allowed to test R-717, ammonia, systems provided that they are subsequently evacuated before charging with refrigerant.

1108.3 Test apparatus. The means used to build up the test pressure shall have either a pressure-limiting device or a pressure-reducing device and a gauge on the outlet side.

1108.4 Declaration. A certificate of test shall be provided for all systems containing 55 pounds (25 kg) or more of refrigerant. The certificate shall give the name of the refrigerant and the field test pressure applied to the high side and the low side of the system. The certification of test shall be signed by the installer and shall be made part of the public record.

[F] SECTION 1109
PERIODIC TESTING

1109.1 Testing required. The following emergency devices and systems shall be periodically tested in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and as required by the code official:

1. Treatment and flaring systems.
2. Valves and appurtenances necessary to the operation of emergency refrigeration control boxes.
3. Fans and associated *equipment* intended to operate emergency pure ventilation systems.
4. Detection and alarm systems.

CHAPTER 12

HYDRONIC PIPING

SECTION 1201 GENERAL

1201.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the construction, installation, *alteration* and repair of hydronic piping systems. This chapter shall apply to hydronic piping systems that are part of heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems. Such piping systems shall include steam, hot water, chilled water, steam condensate and ground source heat pump loop systems. Potable cold and hot water distribution systems shall be installed in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

1201.2 Sizing. Piping and piping system components for hydronic systems shall be sized for the demand of the system.

1201.3 Standards. As an alternative to the provisions of Sections 1202 and 1203, piping shall be designed, installed, inspected and tested in accordance with ASME B31.9.

SECTION 1202 MATERIAL

1202.1 Piping. Piping material shall conform to the standards cited in this section.

Exception: Embedded piping regulated by Section 1209.

1202.2 Used materials. Reused pipe, fittings, valves or other materials shall be clean and free of foreign materials and shall be *approved* by the code official for reuse.

1202.3 Material rating. Materials shall be rated for the operating temperature and pressure of the hydronic system. Materials shall be suitable for the type of fluid in the hydronic system.

1202.4 Piping materials standards. Hydronic pipe shall conform to the standards listed in Table 1202.4. The exterior of the pipe shall be protected from corrosion and degradation.

TABLE 1202.4 HYDRONIC PIPE

MATERIAL	STANDARD (see Chapter 15)
Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe	ASTM D1527; ASTM D2282
Brass pipe	ASTM B43
Brass tubing	ASTM B135
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	ASTM B42; ASTM B302
Copper or copper-alloy tube (Type K, L or M)	ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM B251
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe	ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442
Cross-linked polyethylene/ aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pressure pipe	ASTM F1281; CSA CAN/CSA-B-137.10
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) tubing	ASTM F876; ASTM F877
Ductile iron pipe	AWWA C151/A21.51; AWWA C115/A21.15
Lead pipe	FS WW-P-325B
Polybutylene (PB) plastic pipe and tubing	ASTM D3309
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe	ASTM F1282; CSA B137.9
Polyethylene (PE) pipe, tubing and fittings (for ground source heat pump loop systems)	ASTM D2513; ASTM D3035; ASTM D2447; ASTM D2683; ASTM F1055; ASTM D2837; ASTM D3350; ASTM D1693
Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe	ASTM F2389
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769
Steel pipe	ASTM A53; ASTM A106
Steel tubing	ASTM A254

1202.5 Pipe fittings. Hydronic pipe fittings shall be *approved* for installation with the piping materials to be installed, and shall conform to the respective pipe standards or to the standards listed in Table 1202.5.

TABLE 1202.5 HYDRONIC PIPE FITTINGS

MATERIAL	STANDARD (see Chapter 15)
Brass	ASTM F1974
Bronze	ASME B16.24
Copper and copper alloys	ASME B16.15; ASME B16.18; ASME B16.22; ASME B16.23; ASME B16.26; ASME B16.29
Ductile iron and gray iron	ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10
Ductile iron	ANSI/AWWA C153/A21.53
Gray iron	ASTM A126
Malleable iron	ASME B16.3
PEX fittings	ASTM F 877; ASTM F1807; ASTM F2159
Plastic	ASTM D2466; ASTM D2467; ASTM D2468; ASTM F438; ASTM F439; ASTM F877; ASTM F2389; ASTM F2735
Steel	ASME B16.5; ASME B16.9; ASME B16.11; ASME B16.28; ASTM A420

1202.6 Valves. Valves shall be constructed of materials that are compatible with the type of piping material and fluids in the system. Valves shall be rated for the temperatures and pressures of the systems in which the valves are installed.

1202.7 Flexible connectors, expansion and vibration compensators. Flexible connectors, expansion and vibration control devices and fittings shall be of an *approved* type.

SECTION 1203 JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

1203.1 Approval. Joints and connections shall be of an *approved* type. Joints and connections shall be tight for the pressure of the hydronic system.

1203.1.1 Joints between different piping materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with *approved* adapter fittings.

1203.2 Preparation of pipe ends. Pipe shall be cut square, reamed and chamfered, and shall be free of burrs and obstructions. Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall not be undercut.

1203.3 Joint preparation and installation. When required by Sections 1203.4 through 1203.14, the preparation and installation of brazed, mechanical, soldered, solvent-cemented, threaded and welded joints shall comply with Sections 1203.3.1 through 1203.3.7.

1203.3.1 Brazed joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

1203.3.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1203.3.3 Soldered joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. A flux conforming to ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32.

1203.3.4 Solvent-cemented joints. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture. An *approved* primer shall be applied to CPVC and PVC pipe-joint surfaces. Joints shall be made while the cement is wet. Solvent cement conforming to the following standards shall be applied to all joint surfaces:

1. ASTM D2235 for ABS joints.
2. ASTM F493 for CPVC joints.
3. ASTM D2564 for PVC joints.

CPVC joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2846.

Exception: For CPVC pipe joint connections, a primer is not required where all of the following conditions apply:

1. The solvent cement used is third-party certified as conforming to ASTM F493.
2. The solvent cement is yellow in color.
3. The solvent cement is used only for joining $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) through 2-inch (51 mm) diameter CPVC pipe and fittings.
4. The CPVC pipe and fittings are manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2846.

1203.3.5 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Schedule 80 or heavier plastic pipe shall be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. Thread lubricant, pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only and shall be *approved* for application on the piping material.

1203.3.6 Welded joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned by an *approved* procedure. Joints shall be welded with an *approved* filler metal.

1203.3.7 Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints. Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1476 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1203.3.8 Mechanically formed tee fittings. Mechanically extracted outlets shall have a height not less than three times the thickness of the branch tube wall.

1203.3.8.1 Full flow assurance. Branch tubes shall not restrict the flow in the run tube. A dimple/depth stop shall be formed in the branch tube to ensure that penetration into the outlet is of the correct depth. For inspection purposes, a second dimple shall be placed $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) above the first dimple. Dimples shall be aligned with the tube run.

1203.3.8.2 Brazed joints. Mechanically formed tee fittings shall be brazed in accordance with Section 1203.3.1.

1203.4 ABS plastic pipe. Joints between ABS plastic pipe or fittings shall be solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.5 Brass pipe. Joints between brass pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.6 Brass tubing. Joints between brass tubing or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical or soldered joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.7 Copper or copper-alloy pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, soldered, threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.8 Copper or copper-alloy tubing. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical or soldered joints conforming to Section 1203.3, flared joints conforming to Section 1203.8.1, push-fit joints conforming to Section 1203.8.2 or press-type joints conforming to Section 1203.8.3.

1203.8.1 Flared joints. Flared joints shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

1203.8.2 Push-fit joints. Push-fit joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1203.8.3 Press joints. *Press joints* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1203.9 CPVC plastic pipe. Joints between CPVC plastic pipe or fittings shall be solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.10 Polybutylene plastic pipe and tubing. Joints between polybutylene plastic pipe and tubing or fittings shall be mechanical joints conforming to Section 1203.3 or heat-fusion joints conforming to Section 1203.10.1.

1203.10.1 Heat-fusion joints. Joints shall be of the socket-fusion or butt-fusion type. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D3309.

1203.11 Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing. Joints between cross-linked polyethylene plastic tubing and fittings shall conform to Sections 1203.11.1 and 1203.11.2. Mechanical joints shall conform to Section 1203.3.

1203.11.1 Compression-type fittings. When compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1203.11.2 Plastic-to-metal connections. Soldering on the metal portion of the system shall be performed at least 18 inches (457 mm) from a plastic-to-metal adapter in the same water line.

1203.12 PVC plastic pipe. Joints between PVC plastic pipe and fittings shall be solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.13 Steel pipe. Joints between steel pipe or fittings shall be mechanical joints that are made with an *approved* elastomeric seal, or shall be threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.14 Steel tubing. Joints between steel tubing or fittings shall be mechanical or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.15 Polyethylene plastic pipe and tubing for ground source heat pump loop systems. Joints between polyethylene plastic pipe and tubing or fittings for ground source heat pump loop systems shall be heat fusion joints conforming to Section 1203.15.1, electrofusion joints conforming to Section 1203.15.2, or stab-type insertion joints conforming to Section 1203.15.3.

1203.15.1 Heat-fusion joints. Joints shall be of the socket-fusion, saddle-fusion or butt-fusion type, joined in accordance with ASTM D2657. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2683 or ASTM D3261.

1203.15.2 Electrofusion joints. Joints shall be of the electrofusion type. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture, and scoured to expose virgin resin. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures for the period of time specified by the manufacturer. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F1055.

1203.15.3 Stab-type insert fittings. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture. Pipe ends shall be chamfered and inserted into the fittings to full depth. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F1924.

1203.16 Polypropylene (PP) plastic. Joints between PP plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 1203.16.1 and 1203.16.2.

1203.16.1 Heat-fusion joints. Heat-fusion joints for polypropylene (PP) pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polypropylene fittings, electro-fusion polypropylene fittings or by butt fusion. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F2389.

1203.16.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints. Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1203.17 Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) plastic tubing. Joints between raised temperature polyethylene tubing and fittings shall conform to Sections 1203.17.1 and 1203.17.2. Mechanical joints shall conform to Section 1203.3.

1203.17.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1203.17.2 PE-RT-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-RT pipe.

1203.18 Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe. Joints between polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene pressure pipe and fittings shall conform to Sections 1203.18.1 and 1203.18.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section 1203.3.

1203.18.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1203.18.2 PE-AL-PE-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-AL-PE pipe.

1203.19 Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pressure pipe. Joints between cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene pressure pipe and fittings shall conform to Sections 1203.19.1 and 1203.19.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section 1203.3.

1203.19.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1203.19.2 PEX-AL-PEX-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PEX-AL-PEX pipe.

SECTION 1204
PIPE INSULATION

1204.1 Insulation characteristics. Pipe insulation installed in buildings shall conform to the requirements of the *International Energy Conservation Code*; shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231; and shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a smoke-developed index not exceeding 450. Insulation installed in an air *plenum* shall comply with Section 602.2.1.

Exception: The maximum flame spread index and smoke-developed index shall not apply to one- and two-family dwellings.

1204.2 Required thickness. Hydronic piping shall be insulated to the thickness required by the *International Energy Conservation Code.*

SECTION 1205
VALVES

1205.1 Where required. Shutoff valves shall be installed in hydronic piping systems in the locations indicated in Sections 1205.1.1 through 1205.1.6.

1205.1.1 Heat exchangers. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the supply and return side of a heat exchanger.

Exception: Shutoff valves shall not be required when heat exchangers are integral with a boiler; or are a component of a manufacturer's boiler and heat exchanger packaged unit and are capable of being isolated from the hydronic system by the supply and return valves required by Section 1005.1.

1205.1.2 Central systems. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the building supply and return of a central utility system.

1205.1.3 Pressure vessels. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the connection to any pressure vessel.

1205.1.4 Pressure-reducing valves. Shutoff valves shall be installed on both sides of a pressure-reducing valve.

1205.1.5 Equipment and appliances. Shutoff valves shall be installed on connections to mechanical *equipment* and appliances. This requirement does not apply to components of a hydronic system such as pumps, air separators, metering devices and similar *equipment*.

1205.1.6 Expansion tanks. Shutoff valves shall be installed at connections to nondiaphragm-type expansion tanks.

1205.2 Reduced pressure. A pressure relief valve shall be installed on the low-pressure side of a hydronic piping system that has been reduced in pressure. The relief valve shall be set at the maximum pressure of the system design. The valve shall be installed in accordance with Section 1006.

SECTION 1206
PIPING INSTALLATION

1206.1 General. Piping, valves, fittings and connections shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of approval.

1206.2 System drain down. Hydronic piping systems shall be designed and installed to permit the system to be drained. Where the system drains to the plumbing drainage system, the installation shall conform to the requirements of the *International Plumbing Code*.

Exception: The buried portions of systems embedded underground or under floors.

1206.3 Protection of potable water. The potable water system shall be protected from backflow in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

1206.4 Pipe penetrations. Openings for pipe penetrations in walls, floors or ceilings shall be larger than the penetrating pipe. Openings through concrete or masonry building elements shall be sleeved. The annular space surrounding pipe penetrations shall be protected in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

1206.5 Clearance to combustibles. A pipe in a hydronic piping system in which the exterior temperature exceeds 250°F (121°C) shall have a minimum *clearance* of 1 inch (25 mm) to combustible materials.

1206.6 Contact with building material. A hydronic piping system shall not be in direct contact with building materials that cause the piping material to degrade or corrode, or that interfere with the operation of the system.

1206.7 Water hammer. The flow velocity of the hydronic piping system shall be controlled to reduce the possibility of water hammer. Where a quick-closing valve creates water hammer, an *approved* water-hammer arrestor shall be installed. The arrestor shall be located within a range as specified by the manufacturer of the quick-closing valve.

1206.8 Steam piping pitch. Steam piping shall be installed to drain to the boiler or the steam trap. Steam systems shall not have drip pockets that reduce the capacity of the steam piping.

1206.9 Strains and stresses. Piping shall be installed so as to prevent detrimental strains and stresses in the pipe. Provisions shall be made to protect piping from damage resulting from expansion, contraction and structural settlement. Piping shall be installed so as to avoid structural stresses or strains within building components.

1206.9.1 Flood hazard. Piping located in a flood hazard area shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to the *design flood elevation*.

1206.10 Pipe support. Pipe shall be supported in accordance with Section 305.

1206.11 Condensation. Provisions shall be made to prevent the formation of condensation on the exterior of piping.

SECTION 1207 TRANSFER FLUID

1207.1 Flash point. The flash point of transfer fluid in a hydronic piping system shall be a minimum of 50°F (28°C) above the maximum system operating temperature.

1207.2 Makeup water. The transfer fluid shall be compatible with the makeup water supplied to the system.

SECTION 1208 TESTS

1208.1 General. Hydronic piping systems other than ground-source heat pump loop systems shall be tested hydrostatically at one and one half times the maximum system design pressure, but not less than 100 psi (689 kPa). The duration of each test shall be not less than 15 minutes. Ground-source heat pump loop systems shall be tested in accordance with Section 1208.1.1.

1208.1.1 Ground source heat pump loop systems. Before connection (header) trenches are backfilled, the assembled loop system shall be pressure tested with water at 100 psi (689 kPa) for 30 minutes with no observed leaks. Flow and pressure loss testing shall be performed and the actual flow rates and pressure drops shall be compared to the calculated design values. If actual flow rate or pressure drop values differ from calculated design values by more than 10 percent, the problem shall be identified and corrected.

SECTION 1209 EMBEDDED PIPING

1209.1 Materials. Piping for heating panels shall be standard-weight steel pipe, Type L copper tubing, polybutylene or other *approved* plastic pipe or tubing rated at 100 psi (689 kPa) at 180°F (82°C).

1209.2 Pressurizing during installation. Piping to be embedded in concrete shall be pressure tested prior to pouring concrete. During pouring, the pipe shall be maintained at the proposed operating pressure.

1209.3 Embedded joints. Joints of pipe or tubing that are embedded in a portion of the building, such as concrete or plaster, shall be in accordance with the requirements of Sections 1209.3.1 through 1209.3.3.

1209.3.1 Steel pipe joints. Steel pipe shall be welded by electrical arc or oxygen/acetylene method.

1209.3.2 Copper tubing joints. Copper tubing shall be joined by brazing with filler metals having a melting point of not less than 1,000°F (538°C).

1209.3.3 Polybutylene joints. Polybutylene pipe and tubing shall be installed in continuous lengths or shall be joined by heat fusion in accordance with Section 1203.10.1.

1209.4 Not embedded related piping. Joints of other piping in cavities or running exposed shall be joined by *approved* methods in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and related sections of this code.

1209.5 Thermal barrier required. Radiant floor heating systems shall be provided with a thermal barrier in accordance with Sections 1209.5.1 through 1209.5.4.

Exception: Insulation shall not be required in engineered systems where it can be demonstrated that the insulation will decrease the efficiency or have a negative effect on the installation.

1209.5.1 Slab-on-grade installation. Radiant piping utilized in slab-on-grade applications shall be provided with insulating materials installed beneath the piping having a minimum *R*-value of 5.

1209.5.2 Suspended floor installation. In suspended floor applications, insulation shall be installed in the joist bay cavity serving the heating space above and shall consist of materials having a minimum *R*-value of 11.

1209.5.3 Thermal break required. A thermal break shall be provided consisting of asphalt expansion joint materials or similar insulating materials at a point where a heated slab meets a foundation wall or other conductive slab.

1209.5.4 Thermal barrier material marking. Insulating materials utilized in thermal barriers shall be installed such that the manufacturer's *R*-value mark is readily observable upon inspection.

CHAPTER 13

FUEL OIL PIPING AND STORAGE

SECTION 1301 GENERAL

1301.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, installation, construction and repair of fuel-oil storage and piping systems. The storage of fuel oil and flammable and combustible liquids shall be in accordance with Chapters 6 and 57 of the *International Fire Code*.

1301.2 Storage and piping systems. Fuel-oil storage systems shall comply with Section 603.3 of the *International Fire Code*. Fuel-oil piping systems shall comply with the requirements of this code.

1301.3 Fuel type. An *appliance* shall be designed for use with the type of fuel to which it will be connected. Such *appliance* shall not be converted from the fuel specified on the rating plate for use with a different fuel without securing reapproval from the code official.

1301.4 Fuel tanks, piping and valves. The tank, piping and valves for appliances burning oil shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this chapter. When an oil burner is served by a tank, any part of which is above the level of the burner inlet connection and where the fuel supply line is taken from the top of the tank, an *approved* antisiphon valve or other siphon-breaking device shall be installed in lieu of the shutoff valve.

1301.5 Tanks abandoned or removed. All exterior above-grade fill piping shall be removed when tanks are abandoned or removed. Tank abandonment and removal shall be in accordance with Section 5704.2.13 of the *International Fire Code.*

SECTION 1302 MATERIAL

1302.1 General. Piping materials shall conform to the standards cited in this section.

1302.2 Rated for system. All materials shall be rated for the operating temperatures and pressures of the system, and shall be compatible with the type of liquid.

1302.3 Pipe standards. Fuel oil pipe shall comply with one of the standards listed in Table 1302.3.

1302.4 Nonmetallic pipe. All nonmetallic pipe shall be *listed* and *labeled* as being acceptable for the intended application for flammable and combustible liquids. Nonmetallic pipe shall be installed only outside, underground.

1302.5 Fittings and valves. Fittings and valves shall be *approved* for the piping systems, and shall be compatible with, or shall be of the same material as, the pipe or tubing.

1302.6 Bending of pipe. Pipe shall be *approved* for bending. Pipe bends shall be made with *approved equipment*. The bend shall not exceed the structural limitations of the pipe.

TABLE 1302.3
FUEL OIL PIPING

MATERIAL	STANDARD (see Chapter 15)
Brass pipe	ASTM B43
Brass tubing	ASTM B135
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	ASTM B42; ASTM B302
Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, L or M)	ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM B280
Labeled pipe	(See Section 1302.4)
Nonmetallic pipe	ASTM D2996
Steel pipe	ASTM A53; ASTM A106
Steel tubing	ASTM A254; ASTM A539

1302.7 Pumps. Pumps that are not part of an *appliance* shall be of a positive-displacement type. The pump shall automatically shut off the supply when not in operation. Pumps shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 343.

1302.8 Flexible connectors and hoses. Flexible connectors and hoses shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 536.

SECTION 1303 JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

1303.1 Approval. Joints and connections shall be *approved* and of a type *approved* for fuel-oil piping systems. All threaded joints and connections shall be made tight with suitable lubricant or pipe compound. Unions requiring gaskets or packings, right or left couplings, and sweat fittings employing solder having a melting point of less than 1,000°F (538°C) shall not be used in oil lines. Cast-iron fittings shall not be used. Joints and connections shall be tight for the pressure required by test.

1303.1.1 Joints between different piping materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with *approved* adapter fittings. Joints between different metallic piping materials shall be made with *approved* dielectric fittings or brass converter fittings.

1303.2 Preparation of pipe ends. All pipe shall be cut square, reamed and chamfered and be free of all burrs and obstructions. Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall not be undercut.

1303.3 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections 1303.4 through 1303.10, the preparation and installation of brazed, mechanical, threaded and welded joints shall comply with Sections 1303.3.1 through 1303.3.4.

1303.3.1 Brazed joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joints shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

1303.3.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1303.3.3 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

1303.3.4 Welded joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned by an *approved* procedure. The joint shall be welded with an *approved* filler metal.

1303.4 Brass pipe. Joints between brass pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, threaded or welded joints complying with Section 1303.3.

1303.5 Brass tubing. Joints between brass tubing or fittings shall be brazed or mechanical joints complying with Section 1303.3.

1303.6 Copper or copper-alloy pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, threaded or welded joints complying with Section 1303.3.

1303.7 Copper or copper-alloy tubing. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing or fittings shall be brazed or mechanical joints complying with Section 1303.3 or flared joints. Flared joints shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

1303.8 Nonmetallic pipe. Joints between nonmetallic pipe or fittings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for the *labeled* pipe and fittings.

1303.9 Steel pipe. Joints between steel pipe or fittings shall be threaded or welded joints complying with Section 1303.3 or mechanical joints complying with Section 1303.9.1.

1303.9.1 Mechanical joints. Joints shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric seal. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Mechanical joints shall be installed outside, underground, unless otherwise *approved*.

1303.10 Steel tubing. Joints between steel tubing or fittings shall be mechanical or welded joints complying with Section 1303.3.

1303.11 Piping protection. Proper allowance shall be made for expansion, contraction, jarring and vibration. Piping other than tubing, connected to underground tanks, except straight fill lines and test wells, shall be provided with flexible connectors, or otherwise arranged to permit the tanks to settle without impairing the tightness of the piping connections.

SECTION 1304 PIPING SUPPORT

1304.1 General. Pipe supports shall be in accordance with Section 305.

SECTION 1305 FUEL OIL SYSTEM INSTALLATION

1305.1 Size. The fuel oil system shall be sized for the maximum capacity of fuel oil required. The minimum size of a supply line shall be $^3/_8$-inch (9.5 mm) inside diameter nominal pipe or $^3/_8$-inch (9.5 mm) od tubing. The minimum size of a return line shall be $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) inside diameter nominal pipe or $^5/_{16}$-inch (7.9 mm) outside diameter tubing. Copper tubing shall have 0.035-inch (0.9 mm) nominal and 0.032-inch (0.8 mm) minimum wall thickness.

1305.2 Protection of pipe, equipment and appliances. All fuel oil pipe, *equipment* and appliances shall be protected from physical damage.

1305.2.1 Flood hazard. All fuel oil pipe, equipment and appliances located in flood hazard areas shall be located above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment or shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

1305.3 Supply piping. Supply piping shall connect to the top of the fuel oil tank. Fuel oil shall be supplied by a transfer pump or automatic pump or by other *approved* means.

Exception: This section shall not apply to inside or aboveground fuel oil tanks.

1305.4 Return piping. Return piping shall connect to the top of the fuel oil tank. Valves shall not be installed on return piping.

1305.5 System pressure. The system shall be designed for the maximum pressure required by the fuel-oil-burning *appliance*. Air or other gases shall not be used to pressurize tanks.

1305.6 Fill piping. A fill pipe shall terminate outside of a building at a point at least 2 feet (610 mm) from any building opening at the same or lower level. A fill pipe shall terminate in a manner designed to minimize spilling when the filling hose is disconnected. Fill opening shall be equipped with a tight metal cover designed to discourage tampering.

1305.7 Vent piping. Liquid fuel vent pipes shall terminate outside of buildings at a point not less than 2 feet (610 mm) measured vertically or horizontally from any building opening. Outer ends of vent pipes shall terminate in a weatherproof vent cap or fitting or be provided with a weatherproof hood. All vent caps shall have a minimum free open area equal to the cross-sectional area of the vent pipe and shall not employ screens finer than No. 4 mesh. Vent pipes shall terminate sufficiently above the ground to avoid being obstructed with snow or ice. Vent pipes from tanks containing heaters shall be extended to a location where oil vapors discharging from the vent will be readily diffused. If the static head with a vent pipe filled with oil exceeds 10 pounds per square inch (psi) (69 kPa), the tank shall be designed for the maximum static head that will be imposed.

Liquid fuel vent pipes shall not be cross connected with fill pipes, lines from burners or overflow lines from auxiliary tanks.

SECTION 1306
OIL GAUGING

1306.1 Level indication. All tanks in which a constant oil level is not maintained by an automatic pump shall be equipped with a method of determining the oil level.

1306.2 Test wells. Test wells shall not be installed inside buildings. For outside service, test wells shall be equipped with a tight metal cover designed to discourage tampering.

1306.3 Inside tanks. The gauging of inside tanks by means of measuring sticks shall not be permitted. An inside tank provided with fill and vent pipes shall be provided with a device to indicate either visually or audibly at the fill point when the oil in the tank has reached a predetermined safe level.

1306.4 Gauging devices. Gauging devices such as liquid level indicators or signals shall be designed and installed so that oil vapor will not be discharged into a building from the liquid fuel supply system. Liquid-level indicating gauges shall comply with UL 180.

1306.5 Gauge glass. A tank used in connection with any oil burner shall not be equipped with a glass gauge or any gauge which, when broken, will permit the escape of oil from the tank.

SECTION 1307
FUEL OIL VALVES

1307.1 Building shutoff. A shutoff valve shall be installed on the fuel-oil supply line at the entrance to the building. Inside or above-ground tanks are permitted to have valves installed at the tank. The valve shall be capable of stopping the flow of fuel oil to the building or to the *appliance* served where the valve is installed at a tank inside the building. Valves shall comply with UL 842.

1307.2 Appliance shutoff. A shutoff valve shall be installed at the connection to each *appliance* where more than one fuel-oil-burning *appliance* is installed.

1307.3 Pump relief valve. A relief valve shall be installed on the pump discharge line where a valve is located downstream of the pump and the pump is capable of exceeding the pressure limitations of the fuel oil system.

1307.4 Fuel-oil heater relief valve. A relief valve shall be installed on the discharge line of fuel-oil-heating appliances.

1307.5 Relief valve operation. The relief valve shall discharge fuel oil when the pressure exceeds the limitations of the system. The discharge line shall connect to the fuel oil tank.

SECTION 1308
TESTING

1308.1 Testing required. Fuel oil piping shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 31.

CHAPTER 14

SOLAR SYSTEMS

SECTION 1401 GENERAL

1401.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, construction, installation, *alteration* and repair of systems, *equipment* and appliances intended to utilize solar energy for space heating or cooling, domestic hot water heating, swimming pool heating or process heating.

1401.2 Potable water supply. Potable water supplies to solar systems shall be protected against contamination in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

> **Exception:** Where all solar system piping is a part of the potable water distribution system, in accordance with the requirements of the *International Plumbing Code*, and all components of the piping system are *listed* for potable water use, cross-connection protection measures shall not be required.

1401.3 Heat exchangers. Heat exchangers used in domestic water-heating systems shall be *approved* for the intended use. The system shall have adequate protection to ensure that the potability of the water supply and distribution system is properly safeguarded.

1401.4 Solar energy equipment and appliances. Solar energy *equipment* and appliances shall conform to the requirements of this chapter and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1401.5 Ducts. Ducts utilized in solar heating and cooling systems shall be constructed and installed in accordance with Chapter 6 of this code.

SECTION 1402 INSTALLATION

1402.1 Access. Access shall be provided to solar energy *equipment* and appliances for maintenance. Solar systems and appurtenances shall not obstruct or interfere with the operation of any doors, windows or other building components requiring operation or access.

1402.2 Protection of equipment. Solar *equipment* exposed to vehicular traffic shall be installed not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the finished floor.

> **Exception:** This section shall not apply where the *equipment* is protected from motor vehicle impact.

1402.3 Controlling condensation. Where attics or structural spaces are part of a passive solar system, ventilation of such spaces, as required by Section 406, is not required where other *approved* means of controlling condensation are provided.

1402.4 Roof-mounted collectors. Roof-mounted solar collectors that also serve as a roof covering shall conform to the requirements for roof coverings in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

> **Exception:** The use of plastic solar collector covers shall be limited to those *approved* plastics meeting the requirements for plastic roof panels in the *International Building Code.*

1402.4.1 Collectors mounted above the roof. When mounted on or above the roof covering, the collector array and supporting construction shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or fire-retardant-treated wood conforming to the *International Building Code* to the extent required for the type of roof construction of the building to which the collectors are accessory.

> **Exception:** The use of plastic solar collector covers shall be limited to those *approved* plastics meeting the requirements for plastic roof panels in the *International Building Code*.

1402.5 Equipment. The solar energy system shall be equipped in accordance with the requirements of Sections 1402.5.1 through 1402.5.4.

1402.5.1 Pressure and temperature. Solar energy system components containing pressurized fluids shall be protected against pressures and temperatures exceeding design limitations with a pressure and temperature relief valve. Each section of the system in which excessive pressures are capable of developing shall have a relief device located so that a section cannot be valved off or otherwise isolated from a relief device. Relief valves shall comply with the requirements of Section 1006.4 and discharge in accordance with Section 1006.6.

1402.5.2 Vacuum. The solar energy system components that are subjected to a vacuum while in operation or during shutdown shall be designed to withstand such vacuum or shall be protected with vacuum relief valves.

1402.5.3 Protection from freezing. System components shall be protected from damage by freezing of heat transfer liquids at the lowest ambient temperatures that will be encountered during the operation of the system.

1402.5.4 Expansion tanks. Liquid single-phase solar energy systems shall be equipped with expansion tanks sized in accordance with Section 1009.

1402.6 Penetrations. Roof and wall penetrations shall be flashed and sealed to prevent entry of water, rodents and insects.

1402.7 Filtering. Air transported to occupied spaces through rock or dust-producing materials by means other than natural convection shall be filtered at the outlet from the heat storage system.

SECTION 1403
HEAT TRANSFER FLUIDS

1403.1 Flash point. The flash point of the actual heat transfer fluid utilized in a solar system shall be not less than 50°F (28°C) above the design maximum nonoperating (no-flow) temperature of the fluid attained in the collector.

1403.2 Flammable gases and liquids. A flammable liquid or gas shall not be utilized as a heat transfer fluid. The flash point of liquids used in occupancies classified in Group H or F shall not be lower unless *approved*.

SECTION 1404
MATERIALS

1404.1 Collectors. Factory-built collectors shall be *listed* and *labeled*, and bear a label showing the manufacturer's name and address, model number, collector dry weight, collector maximum allowable operating and nonoperating temperatures and pressures, minimum allowable temperatures and the types of heat transfer fluids that are compatible with the collector. The label shall clarify that these specifications apply only to the collector.

1404.2 Thermal storage units. Pressurized thermal storage units shall be *listed* and *labeled*, and bear a label showing the manufacturer's name and address, model number, serial number, storage unit maximum and minimum allowable operating temperatures, storage unit maximum and minimum allowable operating pressures and the types of heat transfer fluids compatible with the storage unit. The label shall clarify that these specifications apply only to the thermal storage unit.

CHAPTER 15

REFERENCED STANDARDS

This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 102.8.

Supplemental standards. The standards listed in this part shall supplement the list of referenced standards in Chapter 15 of the 2012 IMC. The standards referenced in this rule shall be considered part of the requirements of this rule to the extent prescribed in each rule or reference.

ACCA

Air Conditioning Contractors of America
2800 Shirlington Road, Suite 300
Arlington, VA 22206

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
Manual D—09	Residential Duct Systems	603.2
183—2007	Peak Cooling and Heating Load Calculations in Buildings Except Low-rise Residential Buildings	312.1

AHRI

Air-Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration Institute
4100 North Fairfax Drive, Suite 200
Arlington, VA 22203

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
700—2006	Purity Specifications for Fluorocarbon and Other Refrigerants	1102.2.2.3

AMCA

Air Movement and Control Association International
30 West University Drive
Arlington Heights, IL 60004

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
550—08	Test Method for High Velocity Wind Driven Rain Resistant Louvers	401.5, 501.3.2

ANSI

American National Standards Institute
11 West 42nd Street
New York, NY 10036

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
Z21.8—1994 (R2002)	Installation of Domestic Gas Conversion Burners	919.1

ASHRAE

American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc.
1791 Tullie Circle, NE
Atlanta, GA 30329

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ASHRAE—2009	ASHRAE Fundamentals Handbook	603.2
15—2010	Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems	1101.6, 1105.8, 1108.1
34—2010	Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants	202, 1102.2.1, 1103.1
62.1—2010	Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality	403.3.2.3.2
154—2011	Ventilation for Commercial Cooking Operations	507.2
180—2008	Standard Practice for Inspection and Maintenance of Commercial Building HVAC Systems	102.3

ASME

American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Three Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
B1.20.1—1983 (R2006)	Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)	1203.3.5, 1303.3.3
B16.3—2006	Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 & 300	Table 1202.5
B16.5—2003	Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings NPS $^1/_2$ through NPS 24	Table 1202.5
B16.9—2007	Factory Made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings	Table 1202.5
B16.11—2005	Forged Fittings, Socket-welding and Threaded	Table 1202.5
B16.15—2006	Cast Bronze Threaded Fittings	Table 1202.5
B16.18—2001 (Reaffirmed 2005)	Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings	513.13.1, Table 1202.5
B16.22—2001 (Reaffirmed 2005)	Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings	513.13.1, Table 1202.5
B16.23—2002 (Reaffirmed 2006)	Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings DWV	Table 1202.5
B16.24—2006	Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Class 150, 300, 400, 600, 900, 1500 and 2500	Table 1202.5
B16.26—2006	Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes	Table 1202.5
B16.28—1994	Wrought Steel Buttwelding Short Radius Elbows and Returns	Table 1202.5
B16.29—2007	Wrought Copper and Wrought Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings-DWV	Table 1202.5
B31.3—2008	Process Piping Code	Minnesota Rule 1346.0101
B31.9—2008	Building Services Piping	1201.3
BPVC—2007	ASME Boiler & Pressure Vessel Code (Sections I, II, IV, V, VIII and IX)	1003.1, 1006.4, 1011.1
CSD-1—2009	Controls and Safety Devices for Automatically Fired Boilers	1004.1, 1006.9

ASSE

American Society of Sanitary Engineering
901 Canterbury, Suite A
Westlake, OH 44145

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
1017—2010	Performance Requirements for Temperature Actuated Mixing Values for Hot Water Distribution Systems	1002.2.2

ASTM

ASTM International
100 Barr Harbor Drive
West Conshohocken, PA 19428

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
A 53/A 53M—07	Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-dipped, Zinc-coated Welded and Seamless	Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3
A 106/A106M—08	Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service	Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3
A 126—04	Specification for Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges and Pipe Fittings	Table 1202.5
A 254—97 (2007)	Specification for Copper Brazed Steel Tubing	Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3
A 420/A 420M—07	Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Low-Temperature Service	Table 1202.5
A 539—99	Specification for Electric-resistance-welded Coiled Steel Tubing for Gas and Fuel Oil Lines	Table 1302.3
B 32—08	Specification for Solder Metal	1203.3.3
B 42—02e01	Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes	513.13.1, 1107.5.2, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3
B 43—98(2004)	Specification for Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes	513.13.1, 1107.5.2, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3
B 68—02	Specification for Seamless Copper Tube, Bright Annealed	513.13.1
B 75—02	Specification for Seamless Copper Tube	Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3
B 88—03	Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube	513.13.1, 1107.5.3, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3
B 135—08a	Specification for Seamless Brass Tube	Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3
B 251—02e01	Specification for General Requirements for Wrought Seamless Copper and Copper-alloy Tube	513.13.1, Table 1202.4
B 280—08	Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service	513.13.1, 1107.4.3, Table 1302.3
B 302—07	Specification for Threadless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes	Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3
B 813—00(2009)	Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube	1203.3.3
C 315—07	Specification for Clay Flue Liners and Chimney Pots	801.16.1, Table 803.10.4
C 411—05	Test Method for Hot-surface Performance of High-temperature Thermal Insulation	604.3
D 56—05	Test Method for Flash Point by Tag Closed Tester	202
D 93—08	Test Method for Flash Point of Pensky-Martens Closed Cup Tester	202
D 1527—99(2005)	Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80	Table 1202.4
D 1693—08	Test Method for Environmental Stress-Cracking of Ethylene Plastics	Table 1202.4
D 1785—06	Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride)(PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80 and 120	Table 1202.4
D 2235—04	Specifications for Solvent Cement for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe and Fittings	1203.3.4
D 2241—05	Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride)(PVC) Pressure-rated Pipe (SDR-Series)	Table 1202.4
D 2282—99(2005)	Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)	Table 1202.4
D 2412—02(2008)	Test Method for Determination of External Loading Characteristics of Plastic Pipe by Parallel-plate Loading	603.8.3
D 2447—03	Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80, Based on Outside Diameter	Table 1202.4
D 2466—06	Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride)(PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40	Table 1202.5
D 2467—06	Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride)(PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80	Table 1202.5
D 2468—96a	Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40	Table 1202.5
D 2513—08b	Specification for Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings	Table 1202.4
D 2564—04e01	Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems	1203.3.4
D 2657—07	Standard Practice for Heat Fusion Joining of Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings	1203.15.1
D 2683—04	Specification for Socket-type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing	Table 1202.4, 1203.15.1
D 2837—08	Test Method for Obtaining Hydrostatic Design Basis for Thermoplastic Pipe Materials or Pressure Design Basis for Thermoplastic Pipe Products	Table 1202.4
D 2846/D 2846M—09	Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Hot and Cold Water Distribution Systems	Table 1202.4, 1203.3.4
D 2996—01(2007)e01	Specification for Filament-wound Fiberglass (Glass Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting Resin) Pipe	Table 1302.3
D 3035—08	Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based on Controlled Outside Diameter	Table 1202.4
D 3278—96(2004)	Test Methods for Flash Point of Liquids by Small Scale Closed-cup Apparatus	202
D 3261—03	Specification for Butt Heat Fusion Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe and Tubing	1203.15.1
D 3309—96a(2002)	Specification for Polybutylene (PB) Plastic Hot and Cold Water Distribution Systems	Table 1202.4, 1203.10.1
D 3350—08	Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Pipe and Fittings Materials	Table 1202.4
E 84—09	Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials	202, 510.8, 602.2.1, 602.2.1.5, 604.3, 1204.1
E 119—08a	Test Method for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials	607.5.2, 607.5.5, 607.6.1, 607.2.1
E 136—09	Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 Degrees C	202
E 814—08b	Test Method for Fire Tests of Through-penetration Fire Stops	506.3.10.2, 506.3.10.3
E 1509—04	Specification for Room Heaters, Pellet Fuel-burning Type	904.1

ASTM—continued

E 1998—02	Standard Guide for Assessing Depressurization-Induced Backdrafting and Spillage from Vented Combustion Appliances	501.4.1, 501.4.3 MNM
E 2231—04	Standard Practice For Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Pipe and Duct Insulation Materials to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics	604.3, 1204.1
E 2336—04	Standard Test Methods for Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Systems	506.3.6, 506.3.10.2
F 438—04	Specification for Socket Type Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40	Table 1202.5
F 439—06	Specification for Socket Type Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80	Table 1202.5
F 441/F 441M—02(2008)	Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80	Table 1202.4
F 442/F 442M—99(2005)e1	Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)	Table 1202.4
F 493—04	Specification for Solvent Cements for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings	1203.3.4
F 876—08b	Specification for Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing	Table 1202.4
F 877—07	Specification for Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Plastic Hot and Cold Water Distribution Systems	Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5
F 1055—98(2006)	Specification for Electrofusion Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing	Table 1202.4, 1203.15.2
F 1281—07	Specification for Crosslinked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Pressure Pipe	Table 1202.4
F 1282—06	Standard Specification for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe	Table 1202.4
F 1476—07	Specification for Performance of Gasketed Mechanical Couplings for Use in Piping Applications	1203.3.7
F 1807—08	Standard Specification for Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR 9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing	Table 1202.5
F 1924—05	Standard Specification for Plastic Mechanical Fittings for Use on Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene Gas Distribution Pipe and Tubing	1203.15.3
F 1974—08	Standard Specification for Metal Insert Fittings for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene and Crosslinked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Crosslinked Polyethylene Composite Pressure Pipe	Table 1202.5
F 2159—05	Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR 9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing	Table 1202.5
F 2389—07e1	Specification for Pressure-rated Polypropylene Piping Systems	Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5
F 2623—08	Standard Specification for Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) SDR 9 Tubing1	Table 1202.4
F 2735—08a	Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings for SDR 9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) and Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing	Table 1202.5
F 2769—09	Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Plastic Hot and Cold-water Tubing and Distribution Systems	Table 1202.4

AWS

American Welding Society
550 N.W. LeJeune Road
P.O. Box 351040
Miami, FL 33135

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
A5.8—2004	Specifications for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding	1203.3.1, 1303.3.1

AWWA

American Water Work Association
6666 West Quincy Avenue
Denver, CO 80235

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
C110/A21.10—03	Standard for Ductile Iron & Gray Iron Fittings, 2 inches Through 48 inches for Water	Table 1202.5
C115/A21.15—99	Standard for Flanged Ductile-iron Pipe with Ductile Iron or Grey-iron Threaded Flanges	Table 1202.4
C151/A21.51—02	Standard for Ductile-iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast for Water	Table 1202.4
C153/A21.53—00	Standard for Ductile-iron Compact Fittings for Water Service	Table 1202.5

CSA

Canadian Standards Association
5060 Spectrum Way
Mississauga, Ontario, Canada L4W 5N6

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
B137.9—05	Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure-Pipe Systems	Table 1202.4
B137.10—05	Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Composite Pressure-pipe Systems	Table 1202.4
ANSI CSA America FC1—03	Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems	924.1

DOL

Department of Labor
Occupational Safety and Health Administration
c/o Superintendent of Documents
US Government Printing Office
Washington, DC 20402-9325

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
29 CFR Part 1910.1000 (2009)	Air Contaminants	502.6
29 CFR Part 1910.1025 (2009)	Toxic and Hazardous Substances	502.19

FS

Federal Specifications*
General Services Administration
7th & D Streets
Specification Section, Room 6039
Washington, DC 20407

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
WW-P-325B (1976)	Pipe, Bends, Traps, Caps and Plugs; Lead (for Industrial Pressure and Soil and Waste Applications	Table 1202.4

*Standards are available from the Supt. of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402-9325

ICC

International Code Council, Inc.
500 New Jersey Ave, NW
6th Floor
Washington, DC 20001

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
IBC—12	International Building Code®	201.3, 202, 301.12, 301.12, 301.14, 301.15, 302.1, 302.2, 304.7, 304.10, 308.8, 308.10, 401.4, 401.6, 406.1, 502.10, 502.10.1, 504.2, 506.3.3, 506.3.10, 506.3.12.2, 506.4.1, 509.1, 510.6, 510.6.3, 510.6.2, 510.7, 511.1.5, 513.1, 513.2, 513.3, 513.4.3, 513.5, 513.5.2, 513.5.2.1, 513.6.2, 513.10.5, 513.12, 513.12.2, 513.20, 602.2.1.5.1, 602.2.1.5.2, 602.3, 603.1, 603.10, 604.5.4, 607.1.1, 607.3.2.1, 607.5.1, 607.5.2, 607.5.3, 607.5.4, 607.5.4.1, 607.5.5, 607.5.5.1, 607.6, 607.6.2, 701.4.1, 701.4.2, 801.3, 801.16.1, 801.18.4, 902.1, 908.3, 908.4, 910.3, 925.1, 1004.6, 1105.1, 1206.4, 1402.4, 1402.4.1
IEBC—12	International Existing Building Code®	101.2

ICC—continued

IECC—12	International Energy Conservation Code®	202, 301.2, 303.3, 312.1, 603.9, 604.1, 1204.1, 1204.2
IFC—12	International Fire Code®	201.3, 310.1, 311.1, 502.4, 502.5, 502.7.2, 502.8.1, 502.9.5, 502.9.5.2, 502.9.5.3, 502.9.8.2, 502.9.8.3, 502.9.8.5, 502.9.8.6, 502.10, 502.10.3, 502.16.2, 509.1, 510.2.1, 510.2.2, 510.4, 511.1.1 513.12.3, 513.15, 513.16, 513.17, 513.18, 513.19, 513.20.2, 513.20.3, 606.2.1, 908.7, 1101.9, 1105.3, 1105.9, 1106.5, 1106.6, 1301.1, 1301.2
IFGC—12	International Fuel Gas Code®	101.2, 201.3, 301.3, 701.1, 801.1, 901.1, 906.1, 1101.5
IPC—12	International Plumbing Code®	201.3, 301.8, 512.2, 908.5, 1002.1, 1002.2, 1002.3, 1005.2, 1006.6, 1008.2, 1009.3, 1101.4, 1201.1, 1206.2, 1206.3, 1401.2
IRC—12	International Residential Code®	101.2

IIAR

International Institute of Ammonia Refrigeration
1110 North Glebe Road
Arlington, VA 22201

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
2—99 (with Addendum A—2005)	Addendum A to Equipment, Design, and Installation of Ammonia Mechanical Refrigerating Systems	1101.6

MSS

Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve & Fittings Industry, Inc.
127 Park Street, N.E.
Vienna, VA 22180

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
SP-69—2002	Pipe Hangers and Supports-Selection and Application	305.4

NAIMA

North American Insulation Manufacturers Association
44 Canal Center Plaza, Suite 310
Alexandria, VA 22314

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
AH116—09	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	603.5, 603.9

NFPA

National Fire Protection Association
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02169-7471

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
30A—12	Code for Motor Fuel-dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages	304.6
31—11	Installation of Oil-burning Equipment	801.2.1, 801.18.1, 801.18.2, 920.2, 922.1, 1308.1
37—10	Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines	915.1, 915.2
45—2011	Standard on Fire Protection for Laboratories Using Chemicals	510.1
54—2012	National Fuel Gas Code	IFGC 301.3
58—11	Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code	502.9.10
69—08	Explosion Prevention Systems	510.8.3
70—11	National Electrical Code	301.7, 306.3.1, 306.4.1, 511.1.1, 513.11, 513.12.1, 602.2.1.1, 1106.3, 1106.4

NFPA—continued

72—10	National Fire Alarm Code	606.3
82—09	Incinerators and Waste and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment	601.1
85—2011	Boiler and Combustion Systems Hazards Code	301.7
90B—2012	Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems	301.7
91—10	Exhaust Systems for Air Conveying of Vapors, Gases, and Noncombustible Particulate Solids	502.9.5.1, 502.17
92B—09	Smoke Management Systems in Malls, Atria and Large Spaces	513.8
96—2014	Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations	Minnesota Rule 1346.0050, 506.3, 506.3.1, 507.7.1
211—10	Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents and Solid Fuel-burning Appliances	806.1
262—11	Standard Method of Test for Flame Travel and Smoke of Wires and Cables for Use in Air-handling Spaces	602.2.1.1
704—12	Identification of the Hazards of Materials for Emergency Response	502.8.4, Table 1103.1, 510.1
853—10	Installation of Stationary Fuel Power Plants	924.1
850 1—97	Single Burner Boiler Operation	1004.1
8502—99	Prevention of Furnace Explosions/Implosions in Multiple Burner Boiler-furnaces	1004.1
8504—96	Atmospheric Fluidized-bed Boiler Operation	1004.1

SMACNA

Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors National Assoc., Inc.
4201 Lafayette Center Drive
Chantilly, VA 20151-1209

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
SMACNA/ANSI—2005	HVAC Duct Construction Standards-Metal and Flexible (2005)	603.4, 603.9
SMACNA—03	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	603.5, 603.9

UL

Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062-2096

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
17—2008	Vent or Chimney Connector Dampers for Oil-fired Appliances	803.6
103—01	Factory-built Chimneys, Residential Type and Building Heating Appliance—with Revisions through March 2010	805.2
127—08	Factory-built Fireplaces—with Revisions through January 2010	805.3, 903.1, 903.3
174—04	Household Electric Storage Tank Water Heaters—with Revisions through May 2006	1002.1
180—03	Liquid-level Indicating Gauges for Oil Burner Fuels—with Revisions through March 2007	1306.4
181—05	Factory-made Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with Revisions through October 2008	512.2, 603.5, 603.6.1, 603.6.2, 604.13
181A—05	Closure Systems for Use with Rigid Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with Revisions through February 2008	603.9
181B—05	Closure Systems for Use with Flexible Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with Revisions through February 2008	603.9
207—2009	Refrigerant-containing Components and Accessories, Nonelectrical	1101.2
263—2003	Standard for Fire Test of Building Construction and Materials—with Revisions through October 2007	607.5.2, 607.5.5, 607.6.1
268—2009	Smoke Detectors for Fire Prevention Signaling	606.1
268A—2008	Smoke Detectors for Duct Application, with Revisions through September 2009	606.1
343—2008	Pumps for Oil-Burning Appliances	1302.7
378—06	Draft Equipment	804.3, 804.3.8
391—2006	Solid-fuel and Combination-fuel Central and Supplementary Furnaces—with Revisions through March 2010	918.1
412—04	Refrigeration Unit Coolers—with Revisions through January 2009	1101.2
471—06	Commercial Refrigerators and Freezers—with Revisions through October 2008	1101.2
499—05	Electric Heating Appliances—with Revisions through August 2008	912.1, 923.1
508—99	Industrial Control Equipment—with Revisions through September 2008	307.2.3
536—97	Flexible Metallic Hose—with Revisions through June 2003	1302.8

UL—continued

555—06	Fire Dampers—with Revisions through May 2010	607.3
555C—06	Ceiling Dampers—with Revisions through May 2010	607.3.1
555S—99	Smoke Dampers—with Revisions through May 2010	607.3.1
586—2009	High-Efficiency, Particulate, Air Filter Units	605.2
641—95	Type L Low-temperature Venting Systems—with Revisions through July 2009	802.1
710—95	Exhaust Hoods for Commercial Cooking Equipment—with Revisions through December 2009	507.1
710B—04	Recirculating Systems with Revisions through April 2006	507.1
723—2008	Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials	510.8, 602.2.1, 602.2.1.5, 604.3, 1204.1
726—95	Oil-fired Boiler Assemblies—with Revisions through April 2010	916.1, 1004.1
727—06	Oil-fired Central Furnaces	918.1
729—03	Oil-fired Floor Furnaces—with Revisions through April 2010	910.1
730—03	Oil-fired Wall Furnaces—with Revisions through April 2010	909.1
731—95	Oil-fired Unit Heaters—with Revisions through April 2010	920.1
732—95	Oil-fired Storage Tank Water Heaters—with Revisions through April 2010	1002.1
737—2007	Fireplace Stoves—with Revisions through January 2010	905.1
762—2010	Outline of Investigation for Power Ventilators for Restaurant Exhaust Appliances	506.5.1
791—06	Residential Incinerators—with revisions through April 2010	907.1
834—04	Heating, Water Supply and Power Boilers Electric—with Revisions through December 2009	1004.1
842—07	Valves for Flammable Fluids	1307.1
858—05	Household Electric Ranges—with Revisions through May 2010	917.1
867—00	Electrostatic Air Cleaners—with Revisions through February 2010	605.2
875—09	Electric Dry Bath Heater—with Revisions through October 2009	914.2
896—93	Oil-burning Stoves—with Revisions through May 2010	917.1, 922.1
900—04	Air Filter Units—with Revisions through November 2009	605.2
923—2008	Microwave Cooking Appliances—with Revisions through June 2010	914.2
907—94	Fireplace Accessories—with Revisions through July 2006	901.4
959—01	Medium Heat Appliance Factory-built Chimneys—with Revisions through June 2010	805.5
1046—00	Grease Filters for Exhaust Ducts	507.11
1240—05	Electric Commercial Clothes—Drying Equipment—with Revisions through October 2009	913.1
1261—01	Electric Water Heaters for Pools and Tubs—with Revisions through May 2008	916.1
1453—04	Electric Booster and Commercial Storage Tank Water Heaters—with Revisions through December 2009	1002.1
1479—03	Fire Tests of Through-penetration Firestops—with Revisions through April 2007	506.3.10.2, 506.3.10.3
1482—2010	Solid-fuel Type Room Heaters	905.1
1618—09	Wall Protectors, Floor Protectors and Hearth Extensions	308.5, 903.2, 905.3
1777—2007	Chimney Liners—with Revisions through July 2009	801.16.1, 801.18.4
1812—2009	Standard for Ducted Heat Recovery Ventilators—with Revisions through June 2010	927.1
1815—2009	Standard for Nonducted Heat Recovery	927.2
1820—04	Fire Test of Pneumatic Tubing for Flame and Smoke Characteristics—with Revisions through February 2009	602.2.1.3
1887—04	Fire Tests of Plastic Sprinkler Pipe for Visible Flame and Smoke Characteristics—with Revisions through February 2009	602.2.1.2
1978—05	Grease Ducts—with Revisions through June 2009	506.3.2
1995—05	Heating and Cooling Equipment—with Revisions through July 2009	911.1, 918.1, 918.3, 1101.2
1996—04	Electric Duct Heaters—with Revisions through December 2006	911.1
2024—2008	Standard for Safety Optical-Fiber and Communications Cable Raceway	602.2.1.1
2043—2008	Fire Test for Heat and Visible Smoke Release for Discrete Products and their Accessories Installed in Air-handling Spaces	602.2.1.4.2
2158—97	Electric Clothes Dryers—with Revisions through March 2009	504.6.3, 913.1
2158A—2006	Outline of Investigation for Clothes Dryer Transition Duct	504.6.3
2162—01	Outline of Investigation for Commercial Wood-fired Baking Ovens-Refractory Type	917.1
2200—98	Stationery Engine Generator Assemblies—with Revisions through December 2009	915.1
2221—01	Tests of Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Assemblies	506.3.10.3
2518—02	Air Dispersion System Materials	603.17
2523—09	Solid Fuel-fired Hydronic Heating Appliances	1002.1, 1004.1

CHAPTER 16

INSTALLATION AND TESTING OF OIL OR LIQUID FUEL-FIRED EQUIPMENT

SECTION 1601

1601.1 General. Chapter 16 governs the installation, testing, or repair of: oil or liquid fuel burners, oil or liquid fuel burning systems, oil or liquid fuel burning *equipment*, and the oil or liquid fuel piping systems installed within, or in conjunction with, buildings or structures. The requirements of this chapter shall apply to the following *equipment*:

1. Equipment utilized to provide control of environmental conditions.

   Exception: *Equipment* and *appliances listed* and *labeled* to an appropriate standard by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, which is qualified to evaluate the *equipment* or *appliance*, when installed and tested according to the manufacturer's installation instructions.

2. Equipment with a fuel input of 1,000,000 Btu/hr or greater.
3. Unlisted equipment.
4. Miscellaneous equipment when required by the building official.

SECTION 1602

1602.1 Placing equipment in operation. After completion of all installations, the installer shall test all safety and operating controls and venting before placing the burner in service. The correct input of liquid fuel shall be determined and the fuel-to-air ratio set. Each oil or liquid fuel burner shall be adjusted to its proper input according to the manufacturer's instructions. Overrating the burners or the *appliance* is prohibited. The input range shall be appropriate to the *appliance*.

1. For conversion burners installed in hot water (liquid) boilers or warm air furnaces, the rate of flow of the oil or liquid fuel in Btu/h shall be adjusted to within plus or minus five percent of the design load, and not to exceed the design rate of the *appliance*.
2. For conversion burners installed in steam boilers, the oil or liquid fuel hourly input demand shall be adjusted to meet the steam load requirements. The oil or liquid fuel input demand necessitated by an oversized boiler shall be established and added to the input demand for load requirements to arrive at a total input demand.

SECTION 1603

1603.1 Pilot operation. Igniter or pilot flames shall be effective to ignite the oil or liquid fuel at the main burner or burners and shall be adequately protected from drafts. Pilot flames shall not become extinguished during the pilot cycle when the main burner or burners are turned on or off in a normal manner either manually or by automatic controls.

SECTION 1604

1604.1 Burner operation. In making tests to determine compliance with the requirements of this section, care shall be exercised to prevent the accumulation of unburned liquid fuel in the *appliance* that might result in an explosion or fire.

1. The flames from the burner shall freely ignite the liquid fuel when operating at the lowest firing position.
2. Burner flames shall not flash back when the liquid fuel is turned on or off by an automatic control mechanism.
3. Main burner flames shall ignite freely from the pilot when the pilot flame is reduced to a minimum point that will actuate the pilot safety device.
4. When ignition is made in a normal manner, the flame shall not flash outside the *appliance*.
5. Burners shall not expel liquid fuel through air openings when operating at prevailing pressure.
6. Burners shall have a proper liquid fuel air mixture to ensure smooth ignition of the main burner.

SECTION 1605

1605.1 Method of test.

1. **Operational checking.** The flue gas, venting, safety, and operating controls of the *appliance* shall be checked to ensure proper and safe operation.
2. **Method of test – atmospheric type/induced draft type/fan assisted types.** The *appliance* shall be allowed to operate until the stack temperature becomes stabilized after which a sample of the undiluted flue products shall be taken from the *appliance* flue outlet. The sample taken shall be analyzed for carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, and oxygen. Stack temperature shall be noted.

   Note: *Appliance* designs incorporating induced draft assemblies may require a flue gas sample to be taken after the draft regulator or induced draft fan.

3. **Performance standards for atmospheric type.**

   a. Minimum of 75 percent efficiency as determined by flue gas analysis method at appliance flue outlet.

b. Carbon monoxide concentration in flue gas not greater than 0.04 percent.

c. Stack temperature not greater than 700°F (371°C), plus ambient.

d. Carbon dioxide concentration between 8 and 13 percent, inclusive.

e. Oxygen concentration between 4 and 10 percent, inclusive.

f. Smoke test no higher than #2 for light oils, or #4 for oils heavier than #4.

g. Draft shall be in accordance with burner manufacturer's specifications.

3a. **Performance standards for induced draft type/fan assisted types.**

a. Minimum of 75 percent efficiency as determined by flue gas analysis method at appliance flue outlet.

b. Carbon monoxide concentration in flue gas not greater than 0.04 percent.

c. Stack temperature not greater than 700°F (371°C), plus ambient.

d. Carbon dioxide concentration between 8 and 13 percent, inclusive.

e. Oxygen concentration between 4 and 10 percent, inclusive.

f. Smoke test no higher than #2 for light oils, or #4 for oils heavier than #4.

g. Draft shall be in accordance with burner manufacturer's specifications.

Note: Induced draft and fan assisted types of *appliances* may require a sample to be taken after the induced draft fan, which may cause oxygen figures in excess of the limits stated. In such cases, safe liquid fuel *combustion* ratios shall be maintained and be consistent with *appliance* listing.

4. **Method of test – power type.** The *appliance* shall be allowed to operate until the stack temperature becomes stabilized after which a sample of the undiluted flue products shall be taken from the *appliance* flue outlet. The sample shall be analyzed for carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, and oxygen. Stack temperature shall be recorded.

5. **Performance standards for power type.**

a. Minimum of 80 percent efficiency as determined by flue gas analysis method at *appliance* flue outlet.

b. Carbon monoxide concentration in the flue gas not greater than 0.04 percent.

c. Stack temperature not greater than 700°F (371°C), plus ambient.

d. Carbon dioxide concentration between 8 and 13 percent, inclusive.

e. Oxygen concentration between 4 and 10 percent, inclusive.

f. Smoke test no higher than #2 for light oils, or #4 for oils heavier than #4.

g. Draft shall be in accordance with burner manufacturer's specifications.

6. **Test records filing; tag.** After completion of the test of newly installed oil or liquid fuel burner *equipment* as provided in this section, complete test records shall be filed with the building official on an *approved* form. The tag stating the date of the test and the name of the installer shall be attached to the *appliance* at the main valve.

7. **Oxygen concentration.**

a. The concentration of oxygen in the undiluted flue products of oil or liquid fuel burners shall in no case be less than 3 percent nor more than 10 percent, shall be in conformance with applicable performance standards and shall be consistent with the appliance listing.

b. The allowable limit of carbon monoxide shall not exceed 0.04 percent.

c. The flue gas temperature of an oil *appliance*, as taken on the *appliance* side of the draft regulator, shall not exceed applicable performance standards and shall be consistent with the *appliance* listing.

8. ***Approved* oxygen trim system.** The oxygen figures may not apply when there is an *approved* oxygen trim system on the burner that is designed for that use, including a low oxygen interlock when *approved* by the building official.

9. **Supervised start-up.**

a. Supervised start-up may be required to verify safe operation of oil or liquid fuel burner and to provide documentation that operation is consistent with this code, listing and *approval*. Supervised start-up is required for all liquid fuel burners listed in b, c, and d. Supervised start-up requires that the liquid fuel burner shall be tested in the presence of the building official in an *approved* manner. Testing shall include safety and operating controls, input, flue gas analysis, and venting. Flue gas shall be tested at high, medium, and low fires. Provisions shall be made in the system to allow firing test in warm weather. After completion of the test of newly installed oil or liquid fuel burner *equipment* as provided in this section, complete test records shall be filed with the building official on an *approved* form. The tag stating the date of the test and the name of the installer shall be attached to the *appliance* at the main valve.

b. Oil and liquid fuel burners of 1,000,000 Btu/hr input or more require a supervised start-up as in a.

c. Installation of oxygen trim systems, modulating dampers, or other draft control or combustion devices require a supervised start-up as in a.

d. All direct fired heaters require a supervised start-up as in a.

10. Control diagram. A complete control diagram of the installation and suitable operating instructions shall be supplied to the building official.

SECTION 1606

1606.1 Equipment information.

A. All installations of gas or fuel burners with input above 400,000 Btu/hr and all combination gas or fuel burners must be *approved* before installation. The following information must be supplied as required by the building official.

1. Name, model, and serial number of the burner.
2. Input rating and type of fuel.
3. Name of the nationally recognized testing laboratory that tested and listed the unit.
4. Name, model, and serial number of the furnace or boiler that the burner will be installed in if not part of a complete package.
5. A complete wiring diagram showing the factory and fuel wiring installed or to be installed including all controls, identified by the brand name and model number.
6. A print of the gas or fuel train from the manual shutoff to the *appliance* showing all controls that will be installed, their names, model numbers, and *approvals*.

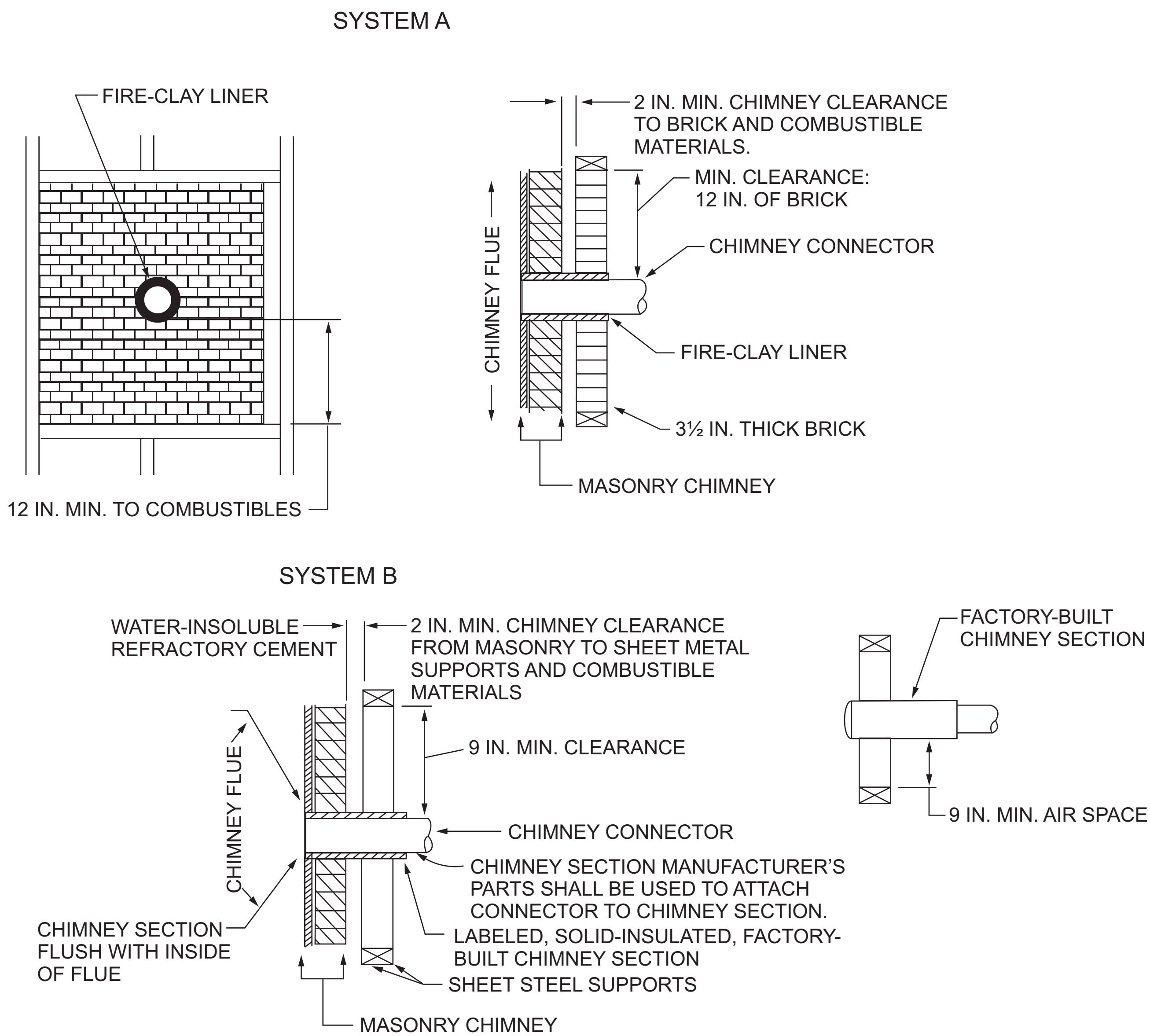
B. All installations of gas or fuel burners with input above 400,000 Btu/hr and all combination gas and oil or other combination fuel burners that are installed in new or renovated boiler or *equipment* rooms, or are installed in a package with the boiler or furnace, shall include the following information in addition to that required in Item A, subitems 1 to 6.

1. A complete piping diagram from the supply source showing all components and materials identified by brand name and model number with relevant *approvals*.
2. Detailed provisions for *combustion air*, venting, and stacks.
3. A floor plan drawn to scale showing all relevant equipment. Plans and specifications shall be *approved* before proceeding with an installation.

APPENDIX A

CHIMNEY CONNECTOR PASS-THROUGHS

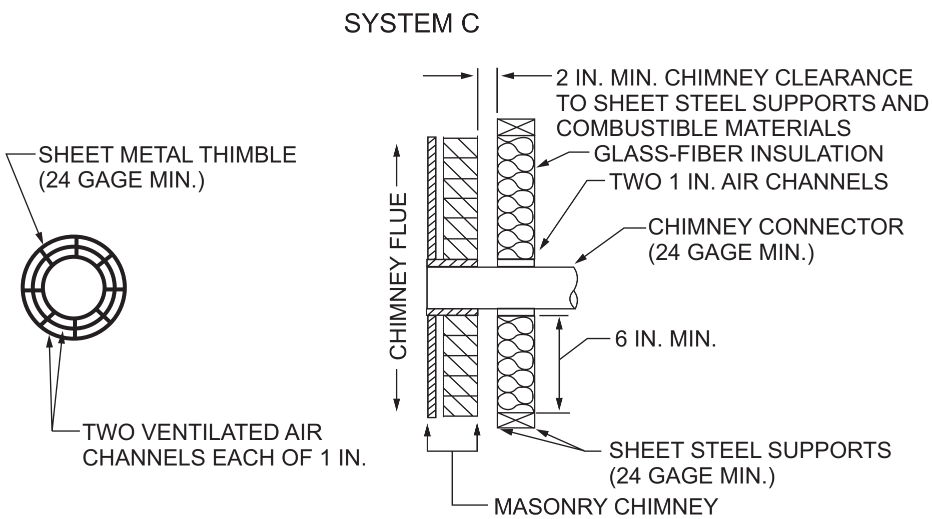
(This appendix is informative and is not part of the code.)

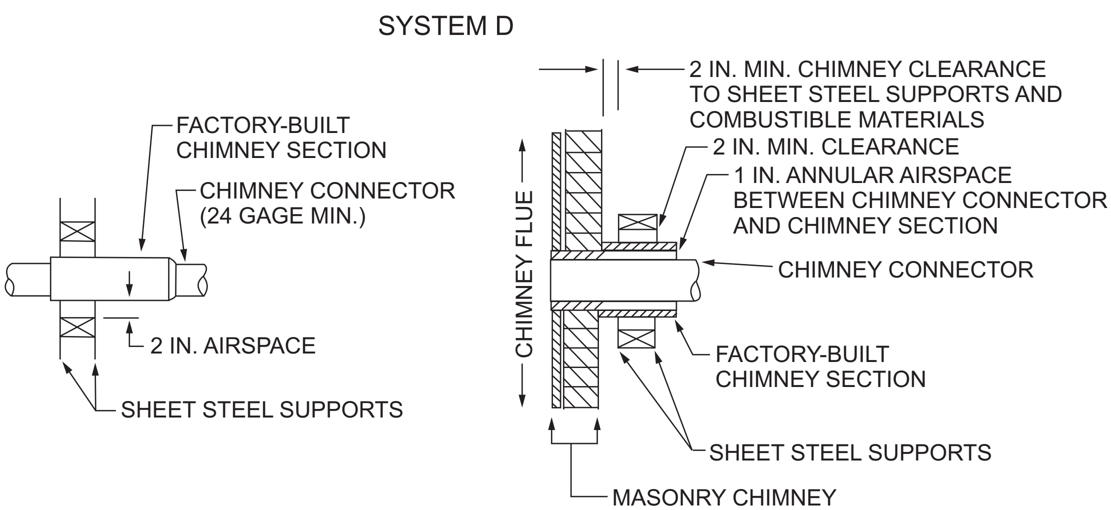


For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE A-1
CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS

(continued)





For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE A-1—continued
CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS

APPENDIX B

RECOMMENDED PERMIT FEE SCHEDULE

(This appendix is informative and is not part of the code.)

B101
MECHANICAL WORK, OTHER THAN GAS PIPING SYSTEMS

B101.1 Initial Fee

For issuing each permit $___

B101.2 Additional Fees

B101.2.1 Fee for inspecting heating, ventilating, ductwork, air-conditioning, exhaust, venting, *combustion* air, pressure vessel, solar, fuel oil and refrigeration systems and *appliance* installations shall be $___ for the first $1,000.00, or fraction thereof, of valuation of the installation plus $___ for each additional $1,000.00 or fraction thereof.

B101.2.2 Fee for inspecting repairs, alterations and additions to an existing system shall be $___ plus $___ for each $1,000.00 or fraction thereof.

B101.2.3 Fee for inspecting boilers (based upon Btu input):

33,000 Btu (1 bhp) to 165,000 (5 bhp)	$ ___
165,001 Btu (5 bhp) to 330,000 (10 bhp)	$ ___
330,001 Btu (10 bhp) to 1,165,000 (52 bhp)	$ ___
1,165,001 Btu (52 bhp) to 3,300,000 (98 bhp)	$ ___
Over 3,300,000 Btu (98 bhp)	$ ___

For SI:1 British thermal unit = 0.2931 W, 1 bhp = 33,475 Btu/hr

B102
FEE FOR REINSPECTION

If it becomes necessary to make a reinspection of a heating, ventilation, air-conditioning or refrigeration system, or boiler installation, the installer of such *equipment* shall pay a reinspection fee of $___.

B103
TEMPORARY OPERATION INSPECTION FEE

When preliminary inspection is requested for purposes of permitting temporary operation of a heating, ventilating, refrigeration, or air-conditioning system, or portion thereof, a fee of $___ shall be paid by the contractor requesting such preliminary inspection. If the system is not *approved* for temporary operation on the first preliminary inspection, the usual reinspection fee shall be charged for each subsequent preliminary inspection for such purpose.

B104
SELF-CONTAINED UNITS LESS THAN 2 TONS

In all buildings, except one- and two-family dwellings, where self-contained air-conditioning units of less than 2 tons are to be installed, the fee charged shall be that for the total cost of all units combined (see B101.2.1 for rate).

INDEX

W

ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 154-2011
(Supersedes ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 154-2003)

ASHRAE STANDARD

Ventilation for Commercial Cooking Operations

Approved by the ASHRAE Standards Committee on January 29, 2011; by the ASHRAE Board of Directors on February 2, 2011; and by the American National Standards Institute on March 3, 2011.

This standard is under continuous maintenance by a Standing Standard Project Committee (SSPC) for which the Standards Committee has established a documented program for regular publication of addenda or revisions, including procedures for timely, documented, consensus action on requests for change to any part of the standard. The change submittal form, instructions, and deadlines may be obtained in electronic form from the ASHRAE Web site (www.ashrae.org) or in paper form from the Manager of Standards. The latest edition of an ASHRAE Standard may be purchased from the ASHRAE Web site (www.ashrae.org) or from ASHRAE Customer Service, 1791 Tullie Circle, NE, Atlanta, GA 30329-2305. E-mail: orders@ashrae.org. Fax: 404-321-5478. Telephone: 404-636-8400 (worldwide), or toll free 1-800-527-4723 (for orders in US and Canada). For reprint permission, go to www.ashrae.org/permissions.

ISSN 1041-2336

American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc.
1791 Tullie Circle NE, Atlanta, GA 30329
www.ashrae.org

ASHRAE Standing Standard Project Committee 154
Cognizant TC: TC 5.10, Kitchen Ventilation
SPLS Liaison: Craig P. Wray

SPECIAL NOTE

This American National Standard (ANS) is a national voluntary consensus standard developed under the auspices of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE). *Consensus* is defined by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI), of which ASHRAE is a member and which has approved this standard as an ANS, as “substantial agreement reached by directly and materially affected interest categories. This signifies the concurrence of more than a simple majority, but not necessarily unanimity. Consensus requires that all views and objections be considered, and that an effort be made toward their resolution.” Compliance with this standard is voluntary until and unless a legal jurisdiction makes compliance mandatory through legislation.

ASHRAE obtains consensus through participation of its national and international members, associated societies, and public review.

ASHRAE Standards are prepared by a Project Committee appointed specifically for the purpose of writing the Standard. The Project Committee Chair and Vice-Chair must be members of ASHRAE; while other committee members may or may not be ASHRAE members, all must be technically qualified in the subject area of the Standard. Every effort is made to balance the concerned interests on all Project Committees.

The Manager of Standards of ASHRAE should be contacted for:

a. interpretation of the contents of this Standard,
b. participation in the next review of the Standard,
c. offering constructive criticism for improving the Standard, or
d. permission to reprint portions of the Standard.

DISCLAIMER

ASHRAE uses its best efforts to promulgate Standards and Guidelines for the benefit of the public in light of available information and accepted industry practices. However, ASHRAE does not guarantee, certify, or assure the safety or performance of any products, components, or systems tested, installed, or operated in accordance with ASHRAE’s Standards or Guidelines or that any tests conducted under its Standards or Guidelines will be nonhazardous or free from risk.

ASHRAE INDUSTRIAL ADVERTISING POLICY ON STANDARDS

ASHRAE Standards and Guidelines are established to assist industry and the public by offering a uniform method of testing for rating purposes, by suggesting safe practices in designing and installing equipment, by providing proper definitions of this equipment, and by providing other information that may serve to guide the industry. The creation of ASHRAE Standards and Guidelines is determined by the need for them, and conformance to them is completely voluntary.

In referring to this Standard or Guideline and in marking of equipment and in advertising, no claim shall be made, either stated or implied, that the product has been approved by ASHRAE.

CONTENTS

ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 154-2011,
Ventilation for Commercial Cooking Operations

NOTE

Approved addenda, errata, or interpretations for this standard can be downloaded free of charge from the ASHRAE Web site at www.ashrae.org/technology.

(This foreword is not part of this standard. It is merely informative and does not contain requirements necessary for conformance to the standard. It has not been processed according to the ANSI requirements for a standard and may contain material that has not been subject to public review or a consensus process. Unresolved objectors on informative material are not offered the right to appeal at ASHRAE or ANSI.)

FOREWORD

First published in 2003, ASHRAE Standard 154 has been thoroughly revised in this edition to make it code enforceable and to provide the most complete design guidance available on commercial kitchen ventilation components and systems. In revising this standard, the project committee has drawn upon recent laboratory research that was sponsored in part by ASHRAE and assembled by the ASHRAE Technical Committee on kitchen ventilation, TC 5.10. It has also relied upon the significant field experiences of the manufacturers, designers, and users of kitchen ventilation systems. The standard is intended to serve as a template for standardization, harmonization, and ongoing revision of related model and adopted codes and to bring consistency to design requirements and applications of commercial kitchen ventilation systems.

The major changes in this edition include the following:

- *In Section 2, the standard's scope has been revised to clarify its focus on three types of systems: kitchen hoods, exhaust systems, and replacement air systems.*
- *In Section 3, new definitions have been added and others revised to provide more explicit guidance to code officials.*
- *In Section 4, Table 1 now specifies when hoods are required for various appliances or cooking operations and defines the duty level for the cooking operation when Type II is used. Table 2 provides the duty level for cooking operations that require a Type 1 hood. Additionally, Section 4 now states that a Type I hood must be listed to the appropriate standard. Tables 3 and 4 have been revised to show updated overhangs and minimum exhaust airflow rates for Type II hoods. Section 4.6 on demand-control ventilation has been added.*
- *In Section 5, duct leakage performance tests to verify that installed ductwork is not leaking have been added.*
- *Section 7, "System Controls," has been added.*

In addition to being written in code-enforceable language, Standard 154 now includes notes and appendices that provide a better understanding of best design practices.

The project committee would like to thank Bob Ajemian, Greg DuChane, Mark Finck, Don Fisher, Jason Greenberg, Doug Horton, Ken Hutchinson, Tom Kuehn, Bruce Lukens, Mike Morgan, Dwayne Sloan, and Tony Spata for their help in revising this standard.

1. PURPOSE

The purpose of this standard is to provide design criteria for acceptable performance in commercial cooking ventilation systems.

2. SCOPE

2.1 This standard covers the following:

a. kitchen hoods,
b. exhaust systems, and
c. replacement air systems.

2.2 This standard shall not be used to circumvent any safety, health, or environmental requirements.

3. DEFINITIONS

air curtain supply: see *air curtain* under *makeup air (dedicated replacement air),* which is under *replacement air.*

appliance: a cooking device or apparatus used in a kitchen that consumes energy provided by gas, electricity, solid fuel, steam, or another fuel source.

appliance duty level: an appliance rating category based upon the exhaust airflow required to capture, contain, and remove the cooking effluent and products of combustion under typical operating conditions with a non-engineered wall-mounted canopy hood (based upon ASHRAE RP-1362[1]). This is different from the historical approach, in which duty levels were based upon the temperature of the cooking surface. The following appliance duty classifications are used in this standard:

- ***light:*** a cooking process requiring an exhaust airflow rate of less than 200 cfm/ft (310 L/s/m) for capture, containment, and removal of the cooking effluent and products of combustion.
- ***medium:*** a cooking process requiring an exhaust airflow rate of 200 to 300 cfm/ft (310 to 460 L/s/m) for capture, containment, and removal of the cooking effluent and products of combustion.
- ***heavy:*** a cooking process requiring an exhaust airflow rate of 300 to 400 cfm/ft (460 to 620 L/s/m) for capture, containment, and removal of the cooking effluent and products of combustion.
- ***extra-heavy:*** a cooking process requiring an exhaust airflow rate greater than 400 cfm/ft (620 L/s/m) for capture, containment, and removal of the cooking effluent and products of combustion.

appliance with integral hood: an electric appliance having an integrated hood system that has been listed to UL Standard 197[2] or UL Standard 710B.[3]

approved: acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

back-wall supply: see *back-wall* under *makeup air (dedicated replacement air),* which is under *replacement air.*

baffle filter: see *grease removal device*.

capture area: the area within an exhaust hood that contains cooking effluent until it is exhausted.

capture and containment (C&C): an exhaust hood's ability to capture and contain the cooking effluent and heat generated during cooking operations.

cartridge filter: see *grease removal device*.

centrifugal fan: see *exhaust fan*.

certified: see *listed*.

compensating hood: see *internal* under *makeup air (dedicated replacement air),* which is under *replacement air.*

commercial cooking appliance: an appliance specifically designed to be used in a food-service-establishment kitchen such as, but not limited to, a restaurant or cafeteria kitchen. Appliances designed for residential use shall be treated as commercial appliances when installed in commercial food-service establishments.

condensate hood: see *hood, Type II hood*.

cooking effluent: the emissions generated by cooking appliances during their operation, such as convective heat, moisture, vapor, products of combustion, smoke, and particulate matter.

demand-control ventilation: a ventilation system that utilizes an automatically controlled variable-speed device, such as a multi-speed fan or variable-speed drive, to modulate the exhaust airflow rates in response to the variation in cooking load.

duct: a conduit for conveying cooking effluent from the hood to the outdoors or for conveying replacement air into a room or space.

ductless hood: a packaged system that incorporates a hood, a fan, and air treatment devices designed to limit the grease and particulate matter in the airstream before reintroducing the treated air into the space.

end skirt: see *side panel*.

exfiltration: see this term under the definition of *replacement air.*

exhaust fan: a fan used to exhaust cooking effluent collected by a hood. Also referred to as a *power ventilator*. The majority of these fans have a centrifugal fan wheel. Fans used in Type I hood applications must include provisions for handling grease and access for cleaning.

- ***roof exhaust fan* or *power roof ventilator:*** a fan designed for curb mounting on a roof and that discharges downward toward the roof, vertically up away from the roof, or horizontally away from the building. Fans that discharge downward may be used only for Type II hood applications.
- ***up-blast exhaust fan:*** a fan designed for curb-mounting on a roof or for wall mounting. Air enters the fan axially but discharges radially from the centrifugal impeller and turns 90 degrees to exit the fan vertically where roof-mounted and horizontally where wall-mounted.
- ***side-wall exhaust fan:*** a fan design similar to an up-blast exhaust fan, but designed to mount outdoors on the side wall of a building. The mounting arrangement and internal construction may be specific to side discharge orientation. The fan discharges horizontally away from the building.
- ***in-line exhaust fan* or *tubular centrifugal fan:*** a fan designed for mounting indoors or outdoors in a section of duct between the hood and the point of discharge. Air enters the fan axially and discharges linear to the entrance.
- ***utility-set exhaust fan:*** a fan typically designed with a single-inlet, a scroll housing, and a backward-inclined or an airfoil centrifugal impeller. It can provide a higher static efficiency capability than a typical power roof ventilator. Air enters the impeller axially and leaves it in a substantially radial direction. These can be mounted indoors or outdoors in-line having additional duct between the fan outlet and the point of discharge.

exhaust fire (actuated) damper: a damper arranged to automatically close to restrict the passage of fire airflow into the exhaust duct.

fire resistance rating: the time rating of a material or assembly indicating its ability to withstand exposure to a fire.

fire suppression system: an automatic fire suppression system that is specifically designed to protect Type I hood system(s) and, where required, the cooking appliances served by the hood system(s).

front-face supply: see *front-face* under *makeup air (dedicated replacement air),* which is under *replacement air.*

grease duct: a duct system for the conveyance of cooking effluent. The system is designed and installed to reduce the accumulation of combustible condensation, thus reducing the possibility of fire within the duct system.

grease laden: containing grease particles and/or grease vapor.

grease removal device: a device designed and installed in a Type I hood to remove grease vapor and/or particles from the airstream. As used in this standard, the term refers to devices that are certified to UL Standard 1046, *Grease Filters for Exhaust Ducts*,[4] or to UL Standard 710, *Exhaust Hoods for Commercial Cooking Equipment*,[5] as part of the hood. Devices include, but are not limited to, the following:

- ***baffle filter:*** a filter typically having a series of vertical baffles designed to capture grease and drain to a grease trough. Filters are removable for cleaning and maintenance of the hood.
- ***cartridge filter:*** a filter having a horizontal slot opening with a series of internal deflectors designed to capture grease and drain to a grease trough. Filters are removable for cleaning and maintenance of the hood.
- ***fixed or stationary extractor:*** a device typically having horizontal slot openings with a series of internal deflectors designed to capture grease and drain to a grease trough. Extractors are not removable from the hood and

typically have access doors for cleaning and maintenance of the hood.

- ***multi-stage extractor or filter:*** these devices consist of a series of two or more grease removal devices located in the hood.
- ***removable extractor:*** any style of grease removal device that is removable from the hood.
- ***water wash:*** a version of the fixed extractor that has a system of built-in nozzles for cleaning the grease removal device.

greasetight: designed to prevent the leakage of grease under normal operating conditions.

hood: a device designed to capture and contain cooking effluent, including grease, smoke, steam, heat, and vapor, until it is exhausted through a duct or recirculating system. Hoods are categorized as Type I or Type II:

1. ***Type I hood:*** a hood used for collecting and removing convective heat, grease particulate, condensable vapor, and smoke. It includes listed grease filters, baffles, or extractors for removing the grease and a fire-suppression system. Type I hoods are installed over cooking appliances, such as ranges, fryers, griddles, broilers, and ovens, that produce smoke or grease-laden vapors. For Type I hoods, The following types of hoods are commonly available:

   a. ***wall-mounted canopy hood:*** a wall canopy exhaust hood is mounted against a wall above a single appliance or a line of appliances, or it may be freestanding with a vertical back panel extending from the rear of the appliance(s) to the hood. It typically overhangs the front and sides of the appliance(s) on all open sides of the hood. The wall acts as a back panel, forcing replacement air to be drawn across the front and/or side(s) of the cooking appliance, thus increasing the effectiveness of the hood to capture and contain effluent generated by the cooking operations. Mounting height varies.

   b. ***single-island canopy hood:*** a single-island canopy hood is placed over a single appliance or line of appliances. It is open on all sides and overhangs the front, rear, and sides of the appliance(s). A single-island canopy is more susceptible to cross-drafts and requires greater exhaust airflow than an equivalent-sized wall-mounted canopy to capture and contain effluent generated by the cooking operations. Mounting height varies.

   c. ***double-island canopy hood:*** a double-island canopy hood is placed over back-to-back appliances or lines of appliances. It is open on all sides and overhangs the front and the sides of the appliance(s). It may have a wall panel between the backs of the appliances. Mounting height varies.

   d. ***backshelf hood:*** also referred to as *non-canopy hood*, *low-proximity hood*, or *sidewall hood* (where wall mounted). Its front lower lip is low over the appliance(s) and is typically set back from the front of the appliance(s), which means there may be no front overhang of appliance(s). It is always closed to the rear of the appliances by a panel where freestanding or by a panel or wall when wall mounted, and its height above the cooking surface varies. This style of hood can be constructed with partial end panels to increase its effectiveness in capturing the effluent generated by the cooking operations.

   e. ***eyebrow hood:*** an eyebrow hood is mounted directly to the face or top of an appliance above the opening(s) or door(s) from which effluent is emitted, overhanging the front of the opening(s) to capture the effluent. Mounting height is fixed.

   f. ***pass-over hood:*** a pass-over hood is a backshelf hood constructed and installed low enough to allow food to be passed over the top. Mounting height varies.

   g. ***ventilated ceiling hood:*** typically installed so that the bottom edge of the hood is flush with the ceiling height.

2. ***Type II hood:*** a hood that collects and removes steam, heat, and products of combustion where grease or smoke is not present. It may or may not have grease filters or baffles and is not designed to have a fire-suppression system. A Type II hood can be used where the cooking operation from each appliance underneath the hood does not produce grease in excess of 3.1×10^{-7} lb/ft^3 (5 mg/m^3) when measured at 500 cfm (236 L/s) exhaust airflow.

hood type: see *hood*, *Type I hood* and *Type II hood*.

infiltration: see this term under the definition of *replacement air*.

interlock, direct: the direct connection between equipment such as common circuit, relays, etc.

interlock, indirect: the indirect connection between equipment through an external controller such as a timeclock, building automation system, heat sensor, etc.

internal discharge makeup air: see *internal* under *makeup air (dedicated replacement air),* which is under *replacement air*.

labeled: equipment or materials to which a label, symbol, or other identifying mark of an organization, acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction, has been attached. This organization is concerned with product evaluation and maintains periodic inspection of the production of labeled equipment or materials. By labeling the equipment or materials, the manufacturer indicates compliance with appropriate standards or performance in a specified manner.

liquid-tight: constructed and performing so as not to permit the leakage of any liquid at any temperature.

listed: equipment or materials included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. This organization is concerned with product evaluation and performs periodic inspections of production of listed equipment or materials. The list states either that the equipment or material meets appropriate standards or that it has been tested and found suitable for use in a specified manner.

makeup air: see *makeup air (dedicated replacement air)* under *replacement air.*

mounting height: typically the height above the finished floor at which the bottom front edge of canopy or non-canopy hood is mounted. Listed hoods are typically rated at the minimum and maximum heights above the cooking surface at which they may be mounted.

multiple-hood exhaust system: a system in which more than one hood is connected to a common exhaust duct and fan system.

multi-stage extractor: see *grease removal device*.

net exhaust flow rate: the exhaust flow rate for a hood, minus any internal discharge makeup air flow rate.

overhang: the horizontal distance that the lower front edge of the hood extends beyond the top horizontal cooking surface of the appliance.

outdoor air: the air outside of a building or air taken from the outdoors and not previously circulated through an HVAC system.

packaged: provided by a manufacturer or vendor in a substantially complete and operable condition.

power roof ventilator: see *exhaust fan.*

recirculating system: see *ductless hood*.

replacement air: outdoor air that is used to replace air removed from a building through an exhaust system. Replacement air may be derived from one or more of the following: makeup air, supply air, transfer air, and infiltration. However, the ultimate source of all replacement air is outdoor air.

- ***makeup air (dedicated replacement air):*** air deliberately brought into the building from the outdoors and supplied to the vicinity of an exhaust hood to replace the air and cooking effluent being exhausted. Makeup air is generally filtered and fan-forced, and it may be heated or cooled depending on the requirements of the application. Makeup air may be delivered through outlets integral to the exhaust hood (compensating hoods) or through outlets in the same room. The following are systems that are commonly used to supply makeup air:

    1. ***air curtain:*** air that is introduced vertically downward through a slot, louvers, or holes along the front edge of the hood or around the perimeter of the hood. This design has also been referred to as *down-discharge*.
    2. ***back-wall:*** air that is introduced behind and/or below the cooking equipment. A makeup air plenum is installed between the back of the hood and the wall. The full-length plenum typically extends down the wall to approximately 6 in. (150 mm) below the cooking surface or 2 to 3 ft (600 to 900 mm) above the floor. The air supplied by this system mostly enters the kitchen space rather than remaining contained in the cooking zone.
    3. ***front-face:*** air that is introduced either horizontally or at a slight downward angle from horizontal from the front of the hood plenum.
    4. ***internal:*** typically in this design, untempered makeup air is introduced directly into the hood cavity. This design has also been referred to as *short-circuit*.
    5. ***perimeter:*** makeup air is discharged vertically downward from a plenum above and outside of the front and sides of the hood.

- ***supply air:*** air entering a space from an air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating system for the purpose of comfort conditioning. Supply air is generally filtered, fan-forced, and heated, cooled, humidified, or dehumidified as necessary to maintain specified temperature and humidity conditions. Only the quantity of outdoor air within the supply airflow is used as replacement air. The following systems are commonly used for delivering supply air:

    1. ***louvered ceiling diffusers:*** ceiling installed, aspirating, two, three, or four-way diffusers. Air should not be directed toward the hood.
    2. ***perforated diffusers:*** a ceiling-installed diffuser with a perforated face. Air should not be directed toward the hoods.
    3. ***linear slot diffusers:*** ceiling-installed diffusers, typically placed around the perimeter of rooms. These have a higher discharge velocity than a louvered ceiling.
    4. ***displacement diffusers:*** floor-, wall-, and ceiling-mounted diffusers with perforated face areas providing laminar low-velocity flow from the face.

- ***transfer air:*** air transferred from one room to another through openings in the room envelope, whether it is transferred intentionally or not. The driving force for transfer air is generally a small pressure differential between the rooms, although one or more fans may be used. Only that portion of air transferred from another room that originated as outdoor air may be considered transfer air.
- ***infiltration:*** leakage or flow of outdoor air into the building or space through openings in the building or space envelope, whether intentional or unintentional. The driving force for infiltration is a negative pressure in a space or building relative to the exterior of the building envelope.
- ***exfiltration:*** leakage or flow of indoor air out of the building or space through openings in the building or space envelope, whether intentional or unintentional. The driving force for exfiltration is a positive pressure in the building or space relative to the exterior of the building envelope.

setback: the horizontal distance that the top horizontal cooking surface of an appliance extends beyond the front edge of a backshelf or pass-over hood.

short-circuit makeup air: see *internal* under *makeup air (dedicated replacement air),* which is under *replacement air.*

side panel: a panel that is attached to the lower edge of the end wall of a hood effectively extending the side of the hood down closer to the cooking appliance.

smoke bomb: a device that combusts to produce a large volume of that smoke, greater than 400 cfm (189 L/s).

smoke candle **or** ***smoke puffer:*** a device that is ignited and combusts to produce smoke or uses a chemical interaction (such as titanium tetrahydrochloride [$TiCL_4$] with humid air) to produce smoke or emits a silica powder to produce smoke.

solid-fuel cooking appliance: an appliance that burns solid fuel such as wood, charcoal, or coal to provide all or part of the heat source for cooking.

supply air: see this term under the definition of *replacement air.*

transfer air: see this term under the definition of *replacement air.*

tubular centrifugal fan: see this term under the definition of *exhaust fan*.

4. EXHAUST HOODS

4.1 Hood Requirements

4.1.1 Type I hoods shall be listed in accordance with UL Standard 710,[5] UL Standard 710B,[3] or UL Standard 710C[6] and shall be installed in accordance with their listing requirements. Type II hoods shall meet the requirements of Sections 4.2 through 4.8. Type I hoods shall meet the requirements of Section 4.2 and Sections 4.5 through 4.8. Where a Type II hood is required, a Type II or listed Type I hood shall be provided.

4.1.2 A performance test of an installed Type I hood shall be carried out as specified in Section 4.8.

4.2 Where Required

4.2.1 Table 1 specifies the Type II hood requirements by appliance description. Table 2 specifies the appliance duty classification as it relates to the Type I hood requirements.

Exception: Equipment that is listed in Table 1 and the additional heat and moisture loads generated by unhooded electric appliances are included in the sensible and latent cooling load calculations to determine the required capacity of the HVAC system.

4.2.2 Type II hoods shall be installed in accordance with the overhangs shown in Table 3 and the net exhaust airflow rates shown in Table 4 based on the maximum appliance duty level shown in Table 1 for the appliances underneath the hood. Type II hoods may also be installed where cooking or dishwashing appliances produce heat, steam, or products of combustion and do not produce grease in excess of 3.1×10^{-7} lb/ft^3 (5 mg/m^3) when measured at an exhaust airflow of 500 cfm (236 L/s).

Note: The 5 mg/m^3 grease concentration when measured at 500 cfm (236 L/s) of exhaust air is equivalent to 9.3×10^{-3} lb/h (4.21×10^{-3} kg/h) of grease generated by the cooking process.

4.2.3 A Type I hood shall be provided where a cooking operation within a commercial or institutional food service facility produces smoke or grease-laden vapors. Appliances that produce greater than 3.1×10^{-7} lb/ft^3 (5 mg/m^3) of grease (when measured at 500 cfm or 236 L/s exhaust airflow) shall require a Type I hood. Type I hoods shall be installed in accordance with the overhangs shown in Table 3.

Exceptions:

a. Cooking appliances not used for commercial purposes and installed within dwelling units.

b. Appliances listed in Table 1 that produce less than 3.1×10^{-7} lb/ft^3 (5 mg/m^3) of grease (when measured at 500 cfm or 236 L/s exhaust airflow). *Note:* The 3.1×10^{-7} lb/ft^3 (5 mg/m^3) grease concentration when measured at 500 cfm (236 L/s) of exhaust air is equivalent to 9.3×10^{-3} lb/h (4.21×10^{-3} kg/h) of grease generated by the cooking process.

4.3 Type II Hood Sizing

4.3.1 Type II hood overhangs and setbacks shall comply with Table 3 on all open sides, measured in the horizontal plane from the inside edge of the hood to the edge of the top horizontal surface of the appliance. The vertical distance between the front lower lip of the hood and appliance cooking surface shall not exceed 4 ft (1219 mm).

Exception: A side overhang is not required where full side panels or panels angled from the front lip of the hood to the front of the appliance at cooking-surface height are installed (see Figure 1).

4.3.2 The spaces between appliances, the backs of appliances, and the spaces from the appliances to walls or end panels shall be included in overall hood dimensions. In the case of island hoods, appliance flues shall be included in the cooking surface dimensions.

4.3.3 Hoods shall be mounted above the cooking surface as follows:

4.3.3.1 Canopy Type Hood. The vertical distance between the front lower edge of the hood and the cooking surface shall not exceed 48 in. (1219 mm). The vertical distance between the front lower edge of the hood and the finished floor shall not be less than 78 in. (1981 mm). The inside hood height shall be at least 24 in. (610 mm).

4.3.3.2 Eyebrow Type Hood. The front lower edge of the hood shall be at least 78 in. (1981 mm) above the finished floor.

4.3.3.3 Backshelf/Pass-Over Type Hood. The vertical distance between the front lower edge of the hood and the cooking surface shall be a maximum of 24 in. (610 mm) above the cooking surface.

4.4 Type II Hood Airflow Rates

4.4.1 The net exhaust flow rate (see definition in Section 3) for Type II hoods shall comply with Table 4. The

TABLE 1 Type II Hood Requirements by Appliance Description

Appliance Description	Size	Hood Not Required[a,b]	Type II Hoods[a]	
			Light Duty	Medium Duty
Cabinet, holding, electric	All	•		
Cabinet, proofing, electric	All	•		
Cheese-melter, electric	All	•		
Coffee maker, electric	All	•		
Cooktop, induction, electric	All	•		
Dishwasher, under-counter, electric	All	•		
Dishwasher, powered sink, electric	All	•		
Drawer warmer, 2 drawer, electric	All	•		
Egg cooker, electric	All	•		
Espresso machine, electric	All	•		
Grill, panini, electric	All	•		
Hot dog cooker, electric	All	•		
Hot plate, countertop, electric	All	•		
Ovens, conveyor, electric	< 6 kW	•		
Ovens, microwave, electric	All	•		
Ovens, warming, electric (add temperature)	All	•		
Popcorn machine, electric	All	•		
Rethermalizer, electric	All	•		
Rice cooker, electric	All	•		
Steam table, electric	All	•		
Steamers, bun, electric	All	•		
Steamer, compartment atmospheric, countertop, electric	All	•		
Steamer, compartment pressurized, countertop, electric	All	•		
Table, hot food, electric	All	•		
Toaster, electric	All	•		
Waffle iron, electric	All	•		
Cheese-melter, gas	All		•	
Dishwasher, conveyor rack, chemical sanitizing	All		•	
Dishwasher, conveyor rack, hot water sanitizing	All		•	
Dishwasher, door-type rack, chemical sanitizing	All		•	
Dishwasher, door-type rack, hot water sanitizing	All		•	
Kettle, steam jacketed, tabletop, electric, gas and direct steam	< 20 gallons		•	
Oven, convection, half-size, electric and gas (non-protein cooking)	All		•	
Pasta cooker, electric	All		•	
Rethermalizer, gas	All		•	
Rice cooker, gas	All		•	
Steamer, atmospheric, gas	All		•	
Steamer, pressurized, gas	All		•	
Steamer, atmospheric, floor-mounted, electric	All		•	
Steamer, pressurized, floor-mounted, electric	All		•	
Kettle, steam-jacketed floor mounted, electric, gas, and direct steam	< 20 gallons		•	
Pasta cooker, gas	All			•
Smoker, electric and gas, pressurized	All			•
Steam-jacketed kettle, floor mounted, electric and gas	≥ 20 gallons			•

[a] A hood shall be provided for an electric appliance if it produces 3.1×10^{-7} lb/ft^3 (5 mg/m^3) of grease or more when measured at 500 cfm (236 L/s). See Section 4.2.1.

[b] Where hoods are not required, the additional heat and moisture loads generated by such appliances shall be accounted for in the sensible and latent loads for the HVAC system.

TABLE 2 Type I Hood Requirements by Appliance Type

Appliance Description	Size	Type I Hoods: Light Duty	Medium Duty	Heavy Duty	Extra-Heavy Duty
Braising pan/tilting skillet, electric	All	•			
Oven, rotisserie, electric and gas	All	•			
Oven, combination, electric and gas	All	•			
Oven, convection, full-size, electric and gas	All	•			
Oven, convection, half-size, electric and gas (protein cooking)	All	•			
Oven, deck, electric and gas	All	•			
Oven, mini-revolving rack, electric and gas	All	•			
Oven, rapid cook, electric	All	•			
Oven, rotisserie, electric and gas	All	•			
Range, discrete element, electric (with or without oven)	All	•			
Salamander, electric and gas	All	•			
Braising pan/tilting skillet, gas	All		•		
Broiler, chain conveyor, electric	All		•		
Broiler, electric, under-fired	All		•		
Conveyor oven, electric	≥ 6 kW		•		
Conveyor oven, gas	All		•		
Fryer, doughnut, electric and gas	All		•		
Fryer, kettle, electric and gas	All		•		
Fryer, open deep-fat, electric and gas	All		•		
Fryer, pressure, electric and gas	All		•		
Griddle, double-sided, electric and gas	All		•		
Griddle, flat, electric and gas	All		•		
Range, cook-top, induction	All		•		
Range, open-burner, gas (with or without oven)	All		•		
Range, hot top, electric and gas	All		•		
Broiler, chain conveyor, gas	All			•	
Broiler, electric and gas, over-fired (upright)	All			•	
Broiler, gas, under-fired	All			•	
Range, wok, gas and electric	All			•	
Appliances using solid fuel (wood, charcoal, briquettes, or mesquite) to provide all or part of the heat source for cooking	All				•

TABLE 3 Minimum Overhang Requirements for Type II Hoods

Type of Hood	End Overhang	Front Overhang	Rear Overhang
Wall-mounted canopy	6 in. (152 mm)	12 in. (305 mm)	N/A
Single-island canopy	12 in. (305 mm)	12 in. (305 mm)	12 in. (154 mm)
Double-island canopy	12 in. (305 mm)	12 in. (305mm)	N/A
Eyebrow	N/A	12 in. (305 mm)	N/A
Backshelf/proximity/pass-over	6 in. (152 mm)	10 in. (254 mm) (setback)	N/A

N/A = not applicable

TABLE 4 Type II Hood Minimum Net Exhaust Airflow Rates

Type of Hood	Minimum Net Exhaust Flow Rate per Linear Hood Length in cfm/ft (L/s/m)	
	Light Duty Equipment	Medium Duty Equipment
Wall-mounted canopy	200 (310)	300 (465)
Single island	400 (620)	500 (775)
Double island	250 (388)	250 (388)
Eyebrow	250 (388)	250 (388)
Backshelf (pass-over)	200 (310)	300 (465)

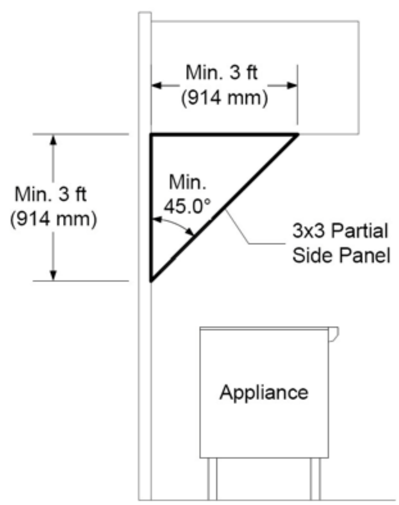


Figure 1 3 × 3 ft partial side panel.

duty level for the hood shall be the duty level of the appliance that has the highest (heaviest) duty level of all the appliances that are installed underneath the hood according to Table 1.

Exception: Type II hoods that are shown by the performance test in Section 4.8 to provide equivalent capture and containment at lower airflow rates.

4.5 Internal Discharge Makeup

4.5.1 Where a Type I or Type II hood has internal discharge makeup air, the makeup air flow shall not exceed 10% of the exhaust airflow. The exhaust airflow required to meet this standard shall be the net exhaust from the hood, calculated as follows:

$$E_{NET} = E_{HOOD} - MA_{ID}$$

where

E_{NET} = net hood exhaust, cfm (L/s)
E_{HOOD} = total hood exhaust, cfm (L/s)
MA_{ID} = makeup air, internal discharge, cfm (L/s)

4.6 Demand-Control Ventilation

4.6.1 The exhaust flow rate is permitted to be reduced during partial load cooking and when there is no cooking through the means of demand-control ventilation.

4.6.1.1 Exhaust rates shall maintain capture and containment of flue gases and cooking effluent from cooking appliances operating at full, partial, or idle load conditions.

4.6.1.2 Replacement air shall be automatically controlled by variable-speed fans, dampers, or equivalent controls to ensure the air balance of the building in accordance with Section 6.2.

4.7 Type I Hood Grease Extraction

4.7.1 Type I hoods shall be provided with a grease removal device in accordance with their listing.

4.7.2 For grease removal devices that report grease removal efficiency, the efficiency data shall be reported as determined by ASTM F2519.[7]

4.8 Hood Performance Test

4.8.1 Type II Hood Performance Test. A performance test shall be conducted upon the completion of—and before final approval of—installation of a ventilation system serving commercial cooking appliances. The test shall verify the rate of exhaust airflow required by Section 4.2. The permit holder shall furnish the necessary test equipment and devices required to perform the tests.

4.8.2 Type I Hood Capture and Containment Test. The permit holder shall verify the capture and containment performance of Type I hoods. A field test shall be conducted with all appliances under the hood at operating temperatures, with all sources of outdoor air providing makeup air for the hood operating, and with all sources of recirculated air providing conditioning for the space in which the hood is located operating. Capture and containment shall be verified visually by observing smoke or steam produced by actual cooking operation or by simulating cooking using devices such as smoke candles or smoke puffers. Smoke bombs shall not be used.

Note: Smoke bombs typically create new effluent from a point source and do not necessarily show whether the cooking effluent is being captured. Actual cooking at the normal production rate is the most reliable method of generating smoke.

5. EXHAUST SYSTEMS

5.1 Duct Systems

5.1.1 Ducts serving Type I hoods shall be constructed of carbon steel of a minimum 16 gauge thickness or stainless steel of a minimum 18 gauge thickness. All seams, joints, and penetrations shall have a liquid-tight continuous external weld.

Exception: Factory-built ducts listed in accordance with UL 1978.[8]

5.1.2 Ducts shall be constructed and installed so that grease cannot collect in any portion thereof, and ducts shall slope not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2% slope) toward the hood or toward an approved grease reservoir. Where horizontal ducts exceed 75 ft (22.8 m) in length, the slope shall not be less than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.3% slope).

Exception: Listed factory-built ducts constructed of a round cross section shall be permitted to be installed at a reduced slope as allowed by their listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

5.1.3 Ducts shall not pass through firewalls, unless enclosed in accordance with the applicable codes and standards.

5.1.4 Ducts shall lead to the exterior of the building.

5.1.5 A separate grease duct system shall be provided for each Type I hood. A separate grease duct system is not required where all of the following conditions are met:

a. all interconnected hoods are located within the same story,
b. all interconnected hoods are located within the same room or in adjoining rooms,
c. interconnecting ducts do not penetrate fire barriers, and
d. the grease duct system does not serve solid fuel-fired appliance(s).

5.1.6 Ducts shall be installed without forming dips or traps that might collect grease, except where unavoidable. In such situations, the duct section having a dip or trap shall be provided with drain access for regular cleanout.

Note: For other duct construction and installation details such as welded duct connections, access openings for inspection and maintenance, clearance to combustible material, interior installation (including fire-rated enclosures and the clearance between the duct and interior surface of the enclosures), exterior installation, and exhaust system termination on the roof or at a wall, refer to NFPA 96,[9] the *International Mechanical Code*,[10] or local codes.

5.1.7 Ducts with field-applied insulation listed in accordance with ASTM E 2336, *Standard Test Methods for Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Systems*,[11] and factory-built ducts with integral insulation listed in accordance with UL 2221, *Tests of Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Assemblies*,[12] are acceptable, where included in NFPA 96,[9] the *International Mechanical Code*,[10] or the *Uniform Mechanical Code*[13] for use as an alternative to a duct and fire-resistance-rated shaft enclosure around the duct.

5.2 Duct Leakage Performance Testing

5.2.1 Prior to the use or concealment of any portion of a grease duct system, a leakage test shall be performed to determine that all welded joints and seams are liquid tight. Ducts shall be considered to be concealed where they are installed in shafts or covered by coatings or wraps that prevent the duct from being visually inspected on all sides. It is permissible to test the duct in sections, provided that, after the duct system is completely assembled, all field-assembled joints, including the duct-to-hood connection, are tested. When the testing is performed in this manner, only the field-assembled joints of listed factory-built grease ducts are required to be tested.

5.2.2 The leakage test shall consist of a light test, an air or water pressure test, or an approved equivalent test. The permit holder shall be responsible for providing the necessary equipment and for performing the test.

5.2.2.1 Light Test. The light test shall be performed by passing a lamp having a power rating of not less than 100 W through the entire section of ductwork to be tested. The lamp shall be open so as to emit light equally in all directions perpendicular to the duct walls. No light from the duct interior shall be visible through any exterior surface.

5.2.2.2 Air Test. The air test shall be performed by sealing the entire duct system from the hood exhaust opening(s) to the duct termination. The sealed duct system shall then be pressurized to a minimum pressure of 1.0 in. (249 Pa) water column and shall be required to hold the initial set pressure for a minimum of 20 min.

5.2.2.3 Water Test. The water test shall be performed by use of a pressure washer operating at a minimum of 1500 psi (10.34 kPa), simulating cleaning operations. The water shall be applied directly to all areas to be tested. No water applied to the duct interior shall be visible on any exterior surface in any volume during the test.

5.3 Airflow Performance

5.3.1 The velocity in the duct shall be at least 500 fpm (2.54 m/s).

Note: This standard does not limit the airflow velocity by specifying a maximum velocity, but due to typical spatial and cost constraints, general design duct velocities between 1500 and 1800 fpm (7.62 and 9.14 m/s) are often used when designing for maximum airflows. Duct velocities greater than 2500 fpm (12.70 m/s) can cause unwanted duct pressure and noise levels.

5.3.2 Lower exhaust airflow than that required for full-load cooking conditions is permitted during no-load cooking conditions, where engineered controls or listed multi-speed or variable-speed controls automatically operate the exhaust system to maintain capture and removal of cooking effluents.

5.4 Fans

5.4.1 Fans shall be of sufficient capacity to provide the required airflow against the system's resistance. Expected air temperatures, altitude, windage, and system effects shall be taken into account when determining fan capacity. Fan air performance shall be tested and certified according to AMCA Standard 210.[14]

Note: Belt-drive fans and adjustable-drive sheaves provide a means of adjusting the fan speed for final system balancing. A variable-speed controller allows a broader range of speed adjustability.

5.4.2 Exhaust fans (up-blast, in-line, or utility-set fans) serving Type I hoods shall be capable of handling hot, grease-laden air and flare-up conditions. Fans shall be designed to contain and properly drain grease removed from the airstream. The fan housing or scroll that contains the grease shall be fully welded so that it is liquid tight. The fan impeller shall be a self-cleaning design.

Exception: Fans that are listed to UL 705, *Standard for Power Ventilators*,[15] and UL 762, *Outline of Investigation for Power Roof Ventilators for Restaurant Exhaust Applications*.[16]

5.4.3 Up-blast fans shall be hinged with tip-over restraints and have a flexible weatherproof electrical cable to permit inspection and cleaning. Utility-set exhaust fans shall be provided with access panels for inspection and cleaning.

5.4.4 Access shall be provided for cleaning the fan wheel. The access opening shall be a minimum of 3 × 5 in. (76 × 127 mm) or have a circular diameter of at least 4 in. (102 mm) on the curvature of the outer fan housing. Fan drive assemblies shall be separated from the airstream. Covers shall be provided with motor weather protection for outdoor installation and belt guards for indoor applications.

5.4.5 The ductwork extending to up-blast fans shall extend a minimum of 18 in. (457 mm) above the roof surface.

5.5 Other Equipment

5.5.1 Thermal recovery units, air pollution control devices, or other devices can be used in the exhaust systems when specifically approved for such use except where prohibited. Refer to Section 514.2 of the Interation Mechanical Code,[10] for prohibited applications.

5.5.2 Clearance, installation, and fire-extinguishing system requirements shall comply with applicable codes and standards.

5.6 Exhaust Discharge

5.6.1 Exhaust systems shall be designed to prevent reentrainment into building intakes. Prevailing winds and velocities shall be considered when locating intake and exhaust openings. The minimum horizontal distance between discharge and intake shall be 10 ft (3 m). Where this horizontal distance is not achievable, the exhaust shall discharge a minimum of 2 ft (0.6 m) above any outdoor air. Exhaust discharge shall not impinge on overhangs, parapets, other equipment, or higher parts of buildings.

Note: Refer to *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*, Chapter 16, for airflow patterns around buildings[17].

5.6.2 Exhaust airstreams for Type I hoods shall be located a minimum of 40 in. (1016 mm) above the finished roof surface and be directed away from roof and building surfaces.

5.6.3 Additional protection for roofing material at the exhaust discharge of a Type I hood shall be provided to prevent material degradation or failure.

5.7 Operation and Maintenance

5.7.1 Exhaust systems shall be operated whenever cooking equipment is turned on through either direct or indirect interlocks.

5.7.2 The entire exhaust system shall be inspected at regular intervals for grease buildup by a properly trained, qualified, and certified company or person(s) acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

5.7.2.1 The schedule of inspection for grease buildup in the exhaust system and cleaning of the exhaust system shall comply with NFPA 96.[9]

5.7.2.2 Upon inspection, if the exhaust system is found to be contaminated with grease deposits, the contaminated portions of the exhaust system shall be thoroughly cleaned by a properly trained, qualified, and certified company or person(s) acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

5.7.3 Inspection and maintenance of thermal recovery units, air pollution control devices, or other devices shall be conducted by properly trained and qualified persons at a frequency specified in the manufacturer's instructions or equipment listing.

6. REPLACEMENT AIR

6.1 Air Introduction

6.1.1 The terminal velocity of air introduced from devices in the kitchen shall not exceed 50 fpm (0.25 m/s) at the lowest edges of the hood.

Note: Using perforated ceiling or perimeter diffusers generally results in a lower terminal velocity at the lower edge of the hood than directional ceiling diffusers.

Note: Best practice is to bring conditioned air into the kitchen away from the hood and distribute it throughout the kitchen to improve worker productivity and comfort as well as to lower hood exhaust rates.

6.1.2 Transfer air from dining or other areas that passes through openings such as windows or walkways shall be sized for air velocities not to exceed 75 fpm (0.381 m/s) based on the free area of the opening. Openings provided for transfer air shall remain open during system operation.

Note: Such openings should be arranged to avoid creating drafts on personnel. Consideration should be given to minimizing air velocity when openings are used as pass-through openings for prepared food.

6.2 Air Balance

6.2.1 Design plans for a facility with a commercial kitchen ventilation system shall include a table or diagram indicating the design outdoor air balance (see example A1 in Informative Appendix A). The design outdoor air balance shall indicate all exhaust and replacement air for the facility, plus the net exfiltration if applicable. The total replacement air airflow rate shall equal the total exhaust airflow rate plus the net exfiltration. It is permissible to supply replacement air to the kitchen space by using transfer air from areas other than the kitchen.

Note: Although individual replacement air sources are not required to be 100% outdoor air, sufficient outdoor air must be introduced into the system to compensate for each exhaust and exfiltration component. For example, for 100 cfm (47 L/s) transfer air from room A to room B to qualify as replacement air, at least 100 cfm (47 L/s) outdoor air must be provided to room A (e.g., as outdoor air to an environmental air system serving room A, infiltration to room A, or transfer air from another room).

6.2.2 Operation of systems where airflows can vary (including, but not limited to, HVAC systems incorporating variable air volume, systems with outdoor air economizer control, or exhaust systems with variable airflow) shall be controlled to comply with the requirements of this standard over the full range of anticipated airflows. Additional air balance diagrams or tables shall be provided as necessary to indicate compliance over the full range of anticipated airflow.

6.2.3 Where the design air balance relies upon transfer air from a source beyond the facility's control (e.g., air drawn into an individual tenant's facility from the common areas of a shopping mall), this source shall be identified.

6.3 Pressure Differentials

6.3.1 The commercial kitchen ventilation system shall be designed to establish pressure differentials to control odor migration and to control dust, dirt, and insects in accordance with the following criteria:

6.3.1.1 The kitchen of a food-service facility shall be maintained under a negative pressure with respect to dining areas and adjacent non-food areas. The maximum negative pressure shall not exceed 0.02 in. water column (5.0 Pa).

6.3.1.2 A freestanding food-service facility (i.e., a food-service facility that entirely occupies a single building) shall be maintained under a positive pressure with respect to outdoors.

Exception: Where migration of food odors to adjacent interior rooms within the same tenancy would not be objectionable. Display cooking under a hood located in the dining area is not considered a kitchen.

6.3.2 Where a food-service facility shares a wall with an adjacent non-food-service facility, such as a retail center or a shopping mall, the food-service facility shall be maintained under a negative pressure with respect to outdoors and the adjacent spaces.

Exceptions:

- Where the separation between the food service facility and the adjacent interior room is sealed substantially airtight to prevent odor migration.
- In shopping malls and other occupancies where a food-service facility is open to another tenancy or to the mall common area, the food-service facility shall be permitted to be under a negative pressure with respect to the non-food-service occupancy.

6.3.3 The pressure in any room in which a draft-hood vented appliance, such as a gas water heater, is located shall be maintained not less than 0.02 in. of water column (5.0 Pa) below outdoor ambient pressure.

7. SYSTEM CONTROLS

7.1 Operating Controls

7.1.1 Replacement air systems shall be interlocked to ensure operation upon activation of the exhaust system.

7.2 Demand-Control Ventilation

7.2.1 Where demand-control ventilation is used, it shall meet the requirements of Section 4.4.3.

8. REFERENCES

1. ASHRAE Research Proposal RP-1362, *Revised Heat Gain and Capture and Containment Exhaust Rates from Typical Commercial Cooking Appliances*, Fisher, D., Swierczyna, R. and Sobiski, P., ASHRAE, 2008.
2. UL 197, *Standard for Commercial Electric Cooking Appliances,* Tenth Edition, dated March 17, 2010, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL.
3. UL 710B, *Standard for Recirculating Systems*, First Edition, dated September 3, 2004, with revisions through and including December 30, 2009, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL.
4. UL 1046, *Grease Filters for Exhaust Ducts*, Third Edition, dated March 28, 2000, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL.
5. UL 710, *Exhaust Hoods for Commercial Cooking Equipment*, Fifth Edition, dated December 28, 1995, with revisions through and including February 2, 2007, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL.
6. UL 710C, *Ultraviolet Radiation Systems for Use in the Ventilation Control of Commercial Cooking Operations*, Issue Number 3, dated September 22, 2006, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL.
7. ASTM F2519-05, *Standard Test Method for Grease Particle Capture Efficiency of Commercial Kitchen Filters and Extractors*, ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA.
8. UL 1978, *Grease Ducts*. Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL.
9. NFPA 96-2008, *Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations*, National Fire Protection Association., Quincy, MA.
10. *International Mechanical Code*, 2009 Edition, International Code Council, Washington, D.C.
11. ASTM E2336-04 (2009), *Standard Test Method for Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Systems*, ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA.
12. UL 2221, *Tests of Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Assemblies*, First Edition, dated September 17, 2001, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL.
13. *Uniform Mechanical Code*, Ninth Edition, dated August 8, 2009. International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Ontario, Canada.
14. ANSI/AMCA 210-07 (ANSI/ASHRAE 51-2007), *Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating*, Air Movement and Control Association, 30 West University Drive, Arlington Heights, IL. 1999.
15. UL 705, *Power Ventilators*, Underwriters Laboratory, Northbrook, IL., 1994.
16. UL 762, *Outline of Investigation for Power Roof Ventilators for Restaurant Exhaust Applications*, dated December 19, 2003, Underwriters Laboratories Inc.
17. *2009 ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*, 2009 Edition, ASHRAE, Atlanta, GA.

(This appendix is not part of this standard. It is merely informative and does not contain requirements necessary for conformance to the standard. It has not been processed according to the ANSI requirements for a standard and may contain material that has not been subject to public review or a consensus process. Unresolved objectors on informative material are not offered the right to appeal at ASHRAE or ANSI.)

INFORMATIVE APPENDIX A— EXAMPLES OF AIR BALANCING

This appendix provides examples of the air balancing required in Section 6.2.1. The first example shows what is used in a conventional restaurant. The second example shows a best-practice design that eliminates the makeup air altogether in the restaurant. This standard also addresses the need for appropriate pressure differentials in a commercial kitchen, whether it is a conventional design or a best-practices design.

A1. CONVENTIONAL AIR BALANCING

In a conventional restaurant, air may be supplied to both the kitchen and dining spaces through many means. Makeup air has typically been introduced into the kitchen space at the hood or through ceiling diffusers. Additionally, the kitchen may have an HVAC system to condition part of the supply air. Table A-1 shows an air balance for a conventional system and Figure A-1 depicts the system graphically.

TABLE A-1 Air Balance for Conventional Restaurant

Kitchen Systems	Airflow In	Airflow Out
HVAC supply (SUP)	1200	—
Makeup air (MUA)	800	—
Makeup air (MUA) to kitchen	900	—
Return air (RA)	—	600
Transfer air (TRA) from dining	700	—
Kitchen exhaust (KX)	—	3000
TOTAL	3600	3600
Dining Room Systems	**Airflow In**	**Airflow Out**
Supply air (SA)	3400	—
Return air (RA)	—	2300
Bathroom exhaust (TX)	—	200
Transfer air to kitchen (TRA)	—	700
TOTAL	3400	3200
Net = 3400 – 3200 = 200 exfiltration		

The units for this table can be either cfm or L/s because the airflow in and airflow out may be expressed in either units as long as they are consistent.

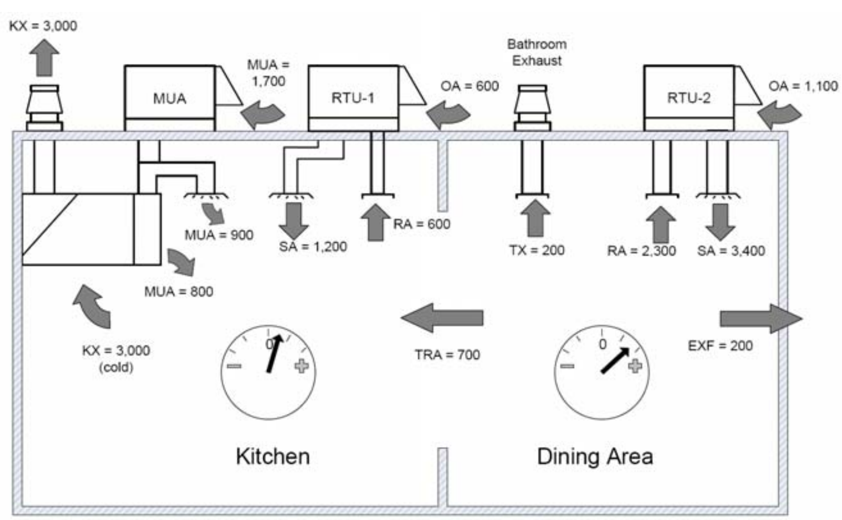


Figure A-1 Conventional restaurant air balance example.

A2. BEST PRACTICE AIR BALANCING

Best practice has changed over the years from using makeup air systems in the kitchen to completely conditioning both the dining and kitchen spaces. For conditioning the kitchen space, either a traditional rooftop unit or a 100% outdoor unit may be used. This approach provides many benefits, including increased occupant comfort and reduced moisture and humidity throughout the facility, which can be a cause of mold and mildew growth, although energy use may increase. The air balance is presented in Table A-2 as well as being shown graphically in Figure A-2.

A3. PRESSURE DIFFERENTIALS

For both the conventional system and best-practice systems, it is important that the kitchen be designed to have a slightly negative pressure and that the overall building be designed to be slightly positive in pressure.

TABLE A-2 Air Balance for Best Practice Restaurant

Kitchen Systems	Airflow In	Airflow Out
HVAC supply (SUP)	2300	—
Transfer air (TRA) from dining	700	—
Kitchen exhaust (KX)	—	3000
TOTAL	3000	3000
Dining Room Systems	**Airflow In**	**Airflow Out**
Supply air (SA)	3400	—
Return air (RA)	—	2300
Bathroom exhaust (TX)	—	200
Transfer air to kitchen (TRA)	—	700
TOTAL	3400	3200
Net = 3400 – 3200 = 200 exfiltration		

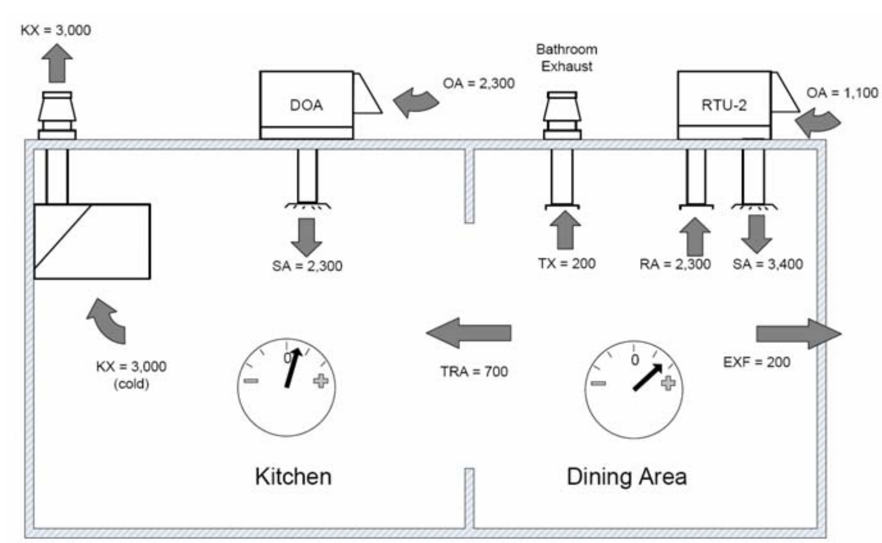


Figure A-2 Best practices restaurant air balance example.

(This appendix is not part of this standard. It is merely informative and does not contain requirements necessary for conformance to the standard. It has not been processed according to the ANSI requirements for a standard and may contain material that has not been subject to public review or a consensus process. Unresolved objectors on informative material are not offered the right to appeal at ASHRAE or ANSI.)

INFORMATIVE APPENDIX B— ALTERNATIVE AIRFLOW CALCULATION METHOD

This appendix presents an alternate airflow calculation method to determine the airflows for specific appliances. This is a modified version of VDI Standard 2052 (see Bibliography, Informative Appendix E), which is a European standard for calculating exhaust airflow for commercial kitchen hoods based on the process loads they must handle. The modifications include adding a hood effectiveness, E_h. Since this standard is looking at a worse-case scenario in terms of capture and containment of effluent from appliances, the simultaneous factor and the fraction of input energy to nameplate energy have been adjusted.

B1. EXHAUST AIRFLOW CALCULATION

The overall kitchen exhaust (shown in Equation B-1) is calculated by summing the thermal plumes from each appliance underneath the hood. This value is then multiplied by a flushout factor that accounts for how the air is introduced (set to 1.35 for ceiling diffusers) and divided by hood effectiveness. For the purpose of unlisted canopy-style hoods, this value is set to 0.7. For unlisted backshelf-style hoods with a setback, a hood effectiveness should be set to 0.5 as shown in Table B-1. An approved method for determining hood effectiveness for listed hoods has not been developed yet.

$$V_e = \left[\sum V_{th} \cdot a \cdot \frac{1}{E_h}\right] + V_h \qquad \text{(B-1)}$$

where

V_e = ventilation exhaust, m^3/h

V_{th} = thermal plume, m^3/h

a = flushout factor, set to 1.35

E_h = hood effectiveness, set to 0.7

V_h = internal (short-circuit) makeup air

TABLE B-1 Unlisted Hood Effectiveness Values

Hood Style	Effectiveness (E_h)
Canopy	0.7
Backshelf	0.5

TABLE B-2 Reduction Factors

Heat Source Location	r
Wall hood	0.63
Island hood	1.00

B2. THERMAL PLUME CALCULATION

The thermal plume from appliances is calculated by Equation B-2 and takes into account the convection heat rising from the appliance, the surface area of the appliance, and the height difference between the appliance surface and bottom of the hood. The reduction factor also takes into account whether the hood is a wall or island application (see Table B-2).

$$V_{th} = k \cdot Q_K^{\frac{1}{3}} \cdot (z + 1.7 \cdot d_h)^{\frac{5}{3}} \cdot r \cdot \varphi \qquad \text{(B-2)}$$

where

k = 18 $m^{4/3}W^{-1/3}h^{-1}$, constant

Q_K = convective heat from appliance, W

z = distance between appliance and hood, m (ft)

d_h = hydraulic diameter of the appliance surface, m (ft) (see Equation B-3)

r = reduction factor for hood location

φ = simultaneous factor, set to 1

The hydraulic diameter calculation is shown in Equation B-3 and takes the length and width of the appliance surface into account.

$$d_h = \frac{2 \cdot L \cdot B}{L + B} \qquad \text{(B-3)}$$

where

L = appliance length, m (ft)

B = appliance width, m (ft)

The convective heat from the appliances is calculated using Equation B-4. The values of Q_s can be obtained from VDI Standard 2052.

$$Q_K = E_r \cdot P \cdot Q_s \qquad \text{(B-4)}$$

where

E_r = fraction of input energy to nameplate rating (assumed to be 50% in VDI Standard 2052), set to 1.0

P = input power of the appliance, kW

Q_s = fraction of input energy converted to direct (convective) heat energy, W

B3. AIRFLOW CALCULATION EXAMPLE

This example will calculate the exhaust airflow for a hood that has two appliances under a generic canopy exhaust hood located at a wall that has a hanging height of 1.98 m above finished floor. The appliances specifications are shown in Table B-3.

The hydraulic diameter for each appliance is calculated using Equation B-3 and the convective energy is calculated using Equation B-4 and the results are shown below:

Appliance	d_h	Q_K, W
Deep-fat fryer	0.524	2106
Griddle	0.813	12,320

The thermal plume airflows are then calculated for each appliance using Equation B-2 and the results are shown below.

Appliance	V_{th}, m^3/h
Deep-fat fryer	446
Griddle	1,167
Total (Σ)	1,623

The final step is to calculate the hood exhaust airflows using Equation B-1 with a hood effectiveness of 0.7 and a flushout factor of 1.35. The resulting hood exhaust airflow is 1842 cfm (3130 m^3/h). The airflows come out to approximately 451 L/s/m (291 cfm/ft), which is close to the current IMC value of 465 L/s/m (300 cfm/ft) for wall canopy hoods.

If the bottom of the hood were installed at 6.98 ft (2.13 m) above the finished floor, note that the resulting hood airflow is 2037 cfm (3461 m^3/h) or 322 cfm/ft (498.7 L/s/m).

TABLE B-3 Example Appliance Specifications

Appliance	Length, mm	Depth, mm	Height, mm	Input, W	Q_s, W/kW
Deep-fat fryer, 2-vat	406	737	913	23.4	90
Gas griddle	1219	610	914	35.2	350

(This appendix is not part of this standard. It is merely informative and does not contain requirements necessary for conformance to the standard. It has not been processed according to the ANSI requirements for a standard and may contain material that has not been subject to public review or a consensus process. Unresolved objectors on informative material are not offered the right to appeal at ASHRAE or ANSI.)

INFORMATIVE APPENDIX C—
HOOD ENERGY SAVINGS CALCULATION

This appendix outlines how to calculate the energy savings when using a listed hood instead of a hood operating at the airflows in Table 4 or another code-required airflow. The exhaust airflows for the listed hood should be designed to provide full capture and containment of the effluent. However, most applications should not be designed to operate at their listed airflows but can be designed to exhaust at rates higher than their listed airflows.

By reducing the exhaust airflow, there are cumulative savings in the hood system. There are motor savings obtained by operating the fan with a smaller motor. Similar savings will be achieved from the reduction in size of the supply fan and motor. Additionally, if the replacement air is conditioned there will be cooling and/or heating savings associated with reducing the quantity of replacement air.

The motor energy savings can be described using Equation D-1.

$$\text{Energy Savings (kWh)} = 0.746 \times t \times (hp_1 - hp_2) \times \frac{1}{\eta} \times LF \tag{D-1}$$

$$hp_2 = hp_1 \times \left(\frac{cfm_2}{cfm_1}\right)^3$$

where

0.746	=	conversion factor, kW/hp
t	=	time of operation, h
hp_1	=	horsepower at initial exhaust rate
hp_2	=	horsepower at lower exhaust rate
η	=	fan motor efficiency
LF	=	load factor

Energy Saving in kilowatt hours

cfm_1 = initial exhaust rate

cfm_2 = lower exhaust rate

The energy savings in kilowatt hours can be multiplied by the local electricity rate to determine a financial savings.

The HVAC energy savings need to take into account the local weather for the specific site being analyzed. Several public domain programs are available to calculate the energy from HVAC systems, including DOE-2 and EnergyPlus. Commercial software such as Trane Trace 700 is also available for performing energy simulations.

(This appendix is not part of this standard. It is merely informative and does not contain requirements necessary for conformance to the standard. It has not been processed according to the ANSI requirements for a standard and may contain material that has not been subject to public review or a consensus process. Unresolved objectors on informative material are not offered the right to appeal at ASHRAE or ANSI.)

INFORMATIVE APPENDIX D— USING ASHRAE STANDARD 154 TO DETERMINE HOOD OVERHANGS AND EXHAUST AIRFLOWS

This appendix provides an example of how to use ASHRAE Standard 154 to determine the overhangs for the hoods. This example also shows how to calculate the heat gain to the space from unhooded appliances. The steps involved include specifying the appliance layout underneath the hood, specifying the hood length and depth, and calculating the exhaust airflow required for the hood and appliances.

Assume that the cooking operation has the following appliances.

Appliances Underneath the Hood:

- Electric Convection Oven: 38 in. (965 mm) L × 41 in. (1041 mm) D × 57 in. (1448 mm) H with a nameplate rating of 10.4 kW
- Electric Braising Pan: 30 gallon (114 L) capacity, which is 38 in. (965 mm) L × 42 in. (1067 mm) D × 39 in. (991 mm) H with a nameplate rating of 12.0 kW
- Stainless Preparation Table: 32 in. (813 mm) L × 26 in. (660 mm) D × 32 in. (813 mm) H
- 4-Burner Gas Range: 34 in. (864 mm) L × 38 in. (965 mm) D × 36 in. (914 mm) H

Unhooded Appliance Descriptions:

- Three (3) Coffee Makers: Nameplate rating of 1140 W
- Conveyor-Rack Dishwasher: 24 in. (610 mm) L × 25 in. (625 mm) D × 34 in. (864 mm) H with a nameplate rating of 7.8 kW

To determine the overall hood size, the minimum length and width need to be calculated as shown in Steps 1 through 3 below.

Step 1: Determine Minimum End and Front Overhangs

Table 3 of this standard contains the minimum side and front hood overhangs based on the style of hood used over the appliances. For this example we will select a wall canopy hood. From Table 3, the minimum side overhangs are 6 in. (152 mm) and the minimum front overhang is 12 in. (305 mm).

Step 2: Determine Minimum Hood Length

To determine the minimum overall hood length, the length (or width) of the individual appliances underneath the hood are added together along with the hood overhang on each end of the hood as shown in Table D-1.

Step 3: Determine the Overall Hood Depth

To determine the minimum overall hood depth, add the maximum appliance depth for the equipment underneath the hood (add standoffs for gas and/or water piping if required) to the minimum front overhang as shown in Table D-2.

After the hood size is determined, the exhaust airflow needs to be calculated as shown in Step 4.

Step 4: Determine the Minimum Exhaust Airflow

The minimum exhaust airflows are a function of both the hood type (which has already been defined as a wall canopy hood) and the minimum duty levels for the appliances operating underneath the hood. From Table 2 of this standard, the duty level for the convection oven is light-duty while for the braising pan and gas range it is medium-duty. Therefore the

TABLE D-1 Minimum Hood Length

Item	Length, in. (mm)
Convection oven	38 (965)
Braising pan	38 (965)
Prep table	32 (813)
Gas range	34 (864)
Left End overhang	6 (152)
Right End overhang	6 (152)
Total	154 (3912)

TABLE D-2 Minimum Hood Depth

Item	Length, in. (mm)
Braising pan	42 (1067)
Front overhang	12 (305)
Total	54 (1372)

maximum duty-level for the appliances underneath the hood is medium-duty. The airflow for this appliance configuration would need to be specified by manufacturers.

Another item that is needed for design engineers to size the HVAC system is an estimation of how much load is being added to the kitchen space from the hooded and unhooded appliances. Steps 5 and 6 show how to perform these calculations.

Step 5: Determine the Heat Gain to Space from Hooded Equipment

If it is desired, the heat gain to space from the equipment underneath the hood can be estimated. Table 5 in Chapter 31 of *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* lists heat gain values for several common appliances. Table D-3 shows the appliance name, the description it is called in Table 5, and the heat gain to space for that appliance. Note that in Table 5 the heat gain is split into three separate components: sensible-radiant heat gain, sensible-convective heat gain, and sensible-latent heat gain. The sensible-radiant heat gain is the radiation from the appliance surface to the room. The sensible-convective heat gain is the dry heat that makes up the thermal plume from the appliance that is captured by the hood, and the latent-convective heat gain is the moisture portion of the thermal plenum captured by the hood. For hooded appliances it is assumed that all of the convective plume is captured and only the sensible-radiant heat gain impacts the heat load to the space.

For the gas range the heat gain should be adjusted since the value in Table 5 of Chapter 31 of *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* only accounted for three burners on. If the heat gain is prorated to account for four burners on (e.g., multiply the heat gain by a factor of 4/3), the resulting heat gain to space from the four-burner range would be approximately 9500 Btu/h. Adding the heat gain from the appliances together, the resulting heat gain to space is estimated to be 11,000 Btu/h.

Step 6: Determine the Heat Gain to Space from Unhooded Equipment

For the unhooded appliances, all of the heat generated by the appliance is added to the space load. It should be noted from Table 1 of this standard that a hood is recommended for use over a rack conveyor dishwasher; however, the user can be exempted from having a hood if the heat load is accounted for and managed by the building HVAC system. From Tables 5A and 5E of Chapter 31 of *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*, the sensible-radiant, sensible-convective, and latent-convective heat gains are added together to get the total heat gain to space. Table D-4 shows the lookup values from Tables 5A and 5E for the unhooded appliances in this example.

TABLE D-3 Hooded Appliance Heat Gain Estimations

Appliance Name	Table 5 Description	Table 5 Sensible-Radiant Heat Gain, Btu/h (W)	Adjusted Heat Gain, Btu/h (W)
Convection oven	Oven: convection full-size	1500 (440)	1500 (440)
30 gallon braising pan	Tilting skillet/braising pan	0 (0)	0 (0)
Four-burner gas range	Rangetop: 3 burners on/oven off	7100 (2081)	9500 (2784)
	TOTAL		11,000 (3224)

TABLE D-4 Unhooded Appliance Heat Gain Estimations

Appliance Name	Table 5 Description	Sensible-Radiant Heat Gain, Btu/h (W)	Sensible-Convective Heat Gain, Btu/h (W)	Latent-Convective Heat Gain, Btu/h (W)	Total Heat Gain, Btu/h (W)
3 Coffee makers	Coffee brewer	200 (59)	300 (88)	700 (205)	1200 (352)
Rack conveyor dishwasher	Dishwasher (conveyor type, hot-water sanitizing, standby)	0 (0)	4750 (1392)	16,970 (4974)	21,720 (6336)
		TOTAL			22,920 (6718)

(This appendix is not part of this standard. It is merely informative and does not contain requirements necessary for conformance to the standard. It has not been processed according to the ANSI requirements for a standard and may contain material that has not been subject to public review or a consensus process. Unresolved objectors on informative material are not offered the right to appeal at ASHRAE or ANSI.)

INFORMATIVE APPENDIX E— INFORMATIVE BIBLIOGRAPHY

ASTM F1704-09, *Standard Test Method for Capture and Containment Performance of Commercial Kitchen Exhaust Ventilation Systems*, ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA.

ASTM F2474-09, *Standard Test Method for Heat Gain to Space Performance of Commercial Kitchen Ventilation/ Appliance Systems*, ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA, 2007.

PIER Report, *Makeup Air Effect On Commercial Kitchen Exhaust System Performance*, Publication P500-03-007F, December, 2002, California Energy Commission.

NFPA17A-2009, *Standard for Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems*, 2002 Edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

2009 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*, American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA.

VDI Standard 2052, *Ventilation Equipment for Kitchens*, Verein Deutscher Ingenieure, April 2006.

LBNL. 1993. *DOE-2*, Version 2.1E. Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, Berkeley, CA.

EERE. 2010. *Energy Plus*, Version 6.0.0. Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy, U.S. Department of Energy, Germantown, MD.

Trane. 2010. *Trace 700*. Trane, Piscataway, NJ.

NOTICE

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SUBMITTING A PROPOSED CHANGE TO THIS STANDARD UNDER CONTINUOUS MAINTENANCE

This standard is maintained under continuous maintenance procedures by a Standing Standard Project Committee (SSPC) for which the Standards Committee has established a documented program for regular publication of addenda or revisions, including procedures for timely, documented, consensus action on requests for change to any part of the standard. SSPC consideration will be given to proposed changes within 13 months of receipt by the manager of standards (MOS).

Proposed changes must be submitted to the MOS in the latest published format available from the MOS. However, the MOS may accept proposed changes in an earlier published format if the MOS concludes that the differences are immaterial to the proposed change submittal. If the MOS concludes that a current form must be utilized, the proposer may be given up to 20 additional days to resubmit the proposed changes in the current format.

ELECTRONIC PREPARATION/SUBMISSION OF FORM FOR PROPOSING CHANGES

An electronic version of each change, which must comply with the instructions in the Notice and the Form, is the preferred form of submittal to ASHRAE Headquarters at the address shown below. The electronic format facilitates both paper-based and computer-based processing. Submittal in paper form is acceptable. The following instructions apply to change proposals submitted in electronic form.

Use the appropriate file format for your word processor and save the file in either a recent version of Microsoft Word (preferred) or another commonly used word-processing program. Please save each change proposal file with a different name (for example, “prop01.doc,” “prop02.doc,” etc.). If supplemental background documents to support changes submitted are included, it is preferred that they also be in electronic form as word-processed or scanned documents.

ASHRAE will accept the following as equivalent to the signature required on the change submittal form to convey non-exclusive copyright:

Files attached to an e-mail:	Electronic signature on change submittal form (as a picture; *.tif, or *.wpg).
Files on a CD:	Electronic signature on change submittal form (as a picture; *.tif, or *.wpg) or a letter with submitter’s signature accompanying the CD or sent by facsimile (single letter may cover all of proponent’s proposed changes).

Submit an e-mail or a CD containing the change proposal files to:
Manager of Standards
ASHRAE
1791 Tullie Circle, NE
Atlanta, GA 30329-2305
E-mail: change.proposal@ashrae.org
(Alternatively, mail paper versions to ASHRAE address or fax to 404-321-5478.)

The form and instructions for electronic submittal may be obtained from the Standards section of ASHRAE’s Home Page, www.ashrae.org, or by contacting a Standards Secretary, 1791 Tullie Circle, NE, Atlanta, GA 30329-2305.
Phone: 404-636-8400. Fax: 404-321-5478. E-mail: standards.section@ashrae.org.

FORM FOR SUBMITTAL OF PROPOSED CHANGE TO AN ASHRAE STANDARD UNDER CONTINUOUS MAINTENANCE

NOTE: Use a separate form for each comment. Submittals (Microsoft Word preferred) may be attached to e-mail (preferred), submitted on a CD, or submitted in paper by mail or fax to ASHRAE, Manager of Standards, 1791 Tullie Circle, NE, Atlanta, GA 30329-2305. E-mail: change.proposal@ashrae.org. Fax: +1-404/321-5478.

1. Submitter:

Affiliation:

Address: City: State: Zip: Country:

Telephone: Fax: E-Mail:

I hereby grant the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. (ASHRAE) the non-exclusive royalty rights, including non-exclusive rights in copyright, in my proposals. I understand that I acquire no rights in publication of the standard in which my proposals in this or other analogous form is used. I hereby attest that I have the authority and am empowered to grant this copyright release.

Submitter's signature: ____ Date: ____________________________

All electronic submittals must have the following statement completed:

I *(insert name)*____, through this electronic signature, hereby grant the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) the non-exclusive royalty rights, including non-exclusive rights in copyright, in my proposals. I understand that I acquire no rights in publication of the standard in which my proposals in this or other analogous form is used. I hereby attest that I have the authority and am empowered to grant this copyright release.

2. Number and year of standard:

3. Page number and clause (section), subclause, or paragraph number:

4. I propose to: *(check one)*

[ ] Change to read as follows
[ ] Delete and substitute as follows
[ ] Add new text as follows
[ ] Delete without substitution

Use underscores to show material to be added (<u>added</u>) and strike through material to be deleted (~~deleted~~). Use additional pages if needed.

5. Proposed change:

6. Reason and substantiation:

7. Will the proposed change increase the cost of engineering or construction? If yes, provide a brief explanation as to why the increase is justified.

[ ] Check if additional pages are attached. Number of additional pages: _______

[ ] Check if attachments or referenced materials cited in this proposal accompany this proposed change. Please verify that all attachments and references are relevant, current, and clearly labeled to avoid processing and review delays. *Please list your attachments here:*

POLICY STATEMENT DEFINING ASHRAE'S CONCERN FOR THE ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT OF ITS ACTIVITIES

ASHRAE is concerned with the impact of its members' activities on both the indoor and outdoor environment. ASHRAE's members will strive to minimize any possible deleterious effect on the indoor and outdoor environment of the systems and components in their responsibility while maximizing the beneficial effects these systems provide, consistent with accepted standards and the practical state of the art.

ASHRAE's short-range goal is to ensure that the systems and components within its scope do not impact the indoor and outdoor environment to a greater extent than specified by the standards and guidelines as established by itself and other responsible bodies.

As an ongoing goal, ASHRAE will, through its Standards Committee and extensive technical committee structure, continue to generate up-to-date standards and guidelines where appropriate and adopt, recommend, and promote those new and revised standards developed by other responsible organizations.

Through its *Handbook*, appropriate chapters will contain up-to-date standards and design considerations as the material is systematically revised.

ASHRAE will take the lead with respect to dissemination of environmental information of its primary interest and will seek out and disseminate information from other responsible organizations that is pertinent, as guides to updating standards and guidelines.

The effects of the design and selection of equipment and systems will be considered within the scope of the system's intended use and expected misuse. The disposal of hazardous materials, if any, will also be considered.

ASHRAE's primary concern for environmental impact will be at the site where equipment within ASHRAE's scope operates. However, energy source selection and the possible environmental impact due to the energy source and energy transportation will be considered where possible. Recommendations concerning energy source selection should be made by its members.

About ASHRAE

The American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE), founded in 1894, is an international organization of some 50,000 members. ASHRAE fulfills its mission of advancing heating, ventilation, air conditioning, and refrigeration to serve humanity and promote a sustainable world through research, standards writing, publishing, and continuing education.

For more information or to become a member of ASHRAE, visit www.ashrae.org.

To stay current with this and other ASHRAE standards and guidelines, visit www.ashrae.org/standards.

— · —

ASHRAE has two collections of standards and guidelines available on CD that include one year of unlimited access to download monthly updates, including addenda, errata, and interpretations. *ASHRAE Standards and Guidelines* contains the complete library, and *Essential Standards* contains ASHRAE's 12 most referenced standards and guidelines. Both include the User's Manuals for Standard 90.1 and Standard 62.1. For more information on these products, visit the Standards and Guidelines section of the ASHRAE bookstore at www.ashrae.org/bookstore.

IMPORTANT NOTICES ABOUT THIS STANDARD

To ensure that you have all of the approved addenda, errata, and interpretations for this standard, visit www.ashrae.org/standards to download them free of charge.

Addenda, errata, and interpretations for ASHRAE standards and guidelines will no longer be distributed with copies of the standards and guidelines. ASHRAE provides these addenda, errata, and interpretations only in electronic form in order to promote more sustainable use of resources.

Product Code: 86486 3/11

2015 MINNESOTA FUEL GAS CODE

SYMBOLS AND NOTATIONS IN THE CODE

➡	=	Indicates where a paragraph or item has been deleted from the requirements of the 2009 *International Fuel Gas Code.*
>	=	Indicates model code language deleted by the State of Minnesota.
	=	Indicates a technical change from the requirements of the 2009 *International Fuel Gas Code*.
M N M N	=	Indicates a State of Minnesota amendment has been made to the 2012 *International Fuel Gas Code.*

MINNESOTA FUEL GAS CODE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

2015 MINNESOTA FUEL GAS CODE

1346.5050 INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE

Parts 1346.5050 to 1346.6014 are known and may be cited as the "*Minnesota Fuel Gas Code*."

Chapters 2 to 8 of the 2012 edition of the *International Fuel Gas Code* (IFGC), as promulgated by the International Code Council, Inc., Washington, DC, are incorporated by reference as part of the *Minnesota Fuel Gas Code* except as qualified by the applicable provisions in Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1300, and as amended in this code. Portions of this code reproduce excerpts from the 2012 IFGC, International Code Council, Inc., Washington, DC, copyright 2012, reproduced with permission, all rights reserved.

The IFGC is not subject to frequent change and a copy of the IFGC, with amendments for use in Minnesota, is available in the office of the commissioner of labor and industry.

1346.5060 REFERENCES TO OTHER INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC) CODES

Subpart 1. General. References to other codes and standards promulgated by the International Code Council in the IMC and IFGC are modified in subparts 2 to 11.

Subp. 2. Building code. References to the *International Building Code* mean the *Minnesota Building Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1305, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.106, subdivision 1.

Subp. 3. Residential code. References to the *International Residential Code* mean the *Minnesota Residential Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1309, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.106, subdivision 1.

Subp. 4. Electrical code. References to the *International Code Council Electrical Code* mean the *Minnesota Electrical Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1315, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.35.

Subp. 5. Mechanical code. References to the *International Mechanical Code* mean the *Minnesota Mechanical Code*, Minnesota Rules, parts 1346.0050 to 1346.1500, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.106, subdivision 1.

Subp. 6. Plumbing code. References to the *International Plumbing Code* mean the *Minnesota Plumbing Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 4715, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.106, subdivisions 1 and 2.

Subp. 7. Private sewage disposal code. References to the *International Private Sewage Disposal Code* mean the Minnesota Pollution Control Agency's minimum standards and criteria for individual sewage treatment systems, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 7080, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Chapters 103F, 103G, 115, and 116.

Subp. 8. Energy conservation code. References to the *International Energy Conservation Code* mean the *Minnesota Residential Energy Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1322, and the *Minnesota Commercial Energy Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1323, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Section 326B.115.

Subp. 9. Property maintenance code. References to the *International Property Maintenance Code* are deleted.

Subp. 10. Fire code. References to the *International Fire Code* mean the *Minnesota State Fire Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 7511, adopted pursuant to Minnesota Statutes, Chapter 299F.

1346.5101 ADMINISTRATION

Subpart 1. Scope. This code shall apply to the installation of fuel gas piping systems, fuel gas appliances, gaseous hydrogen systems, and related accessories in accordance with this code.

Subp. 2. Gaseous hydrogen systems. Gaseous hydrogen systems shall be regulated by IFGC Chapter 7, as amended.

Subp. 3. Piping systems. This code applies to piping systems for natural gas with an operating pressure of 125 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (862 kPa gauge) or less, and for LP-gas with an operating pressure of 20 psig (140 kPa gauge) or less, except as provided in IFGC Section 402.6.1. Coverage shall extend from the point of delivery to the outlet of the appliance shutoff valves. Piping system requirements shall include design, materials, components, fabrication, assembly, installation, testing, inspection, operation, and maintenance.

Subp. 4. Gas appliances. This code applies to gas appliances and related accessories on the side of the meter that supply gas to the building piping system and shall include installation, combustion, and ventilation air and venting and connections to piping systems.

Subp. 5. Systems, appliances, and equipment outside the scope. This code shall not apply to the following:

1. Portable LP-gas appliances and equipment of all types that is not connected to a fixed-fuel piping system.
2. Installation of farm appliances and equipment such as brooders, dehydrators, dryers, and irrigation equipment.
3. Raw material (feedstock) applications except for piping to special atmosphere generators.
4. Oxygen-fuel gas cutting and welding systems.
5. Industrial gas applications using gases such as acetylene and acetylenic compounds, hydrogen, ammonia, carbon monoxide, oxygen, and nitrogen.
6. Petroleum refineries, pipeline compressor or pumping stations, loading terminals, compounding plants, refinery tank farms, and natural gas processing plants.

7. Integrated chemical plants or portions of such plants where flammable or combustible liquids or gases are produced by, or used in, chemical reactions.
8. LP-gas installations at utility gas plants.
9. Liquefied natural gas (LNG) installations.
10. Fuel gas piping in power and atomic energy plants.
11. Proprietary items of equipment, apparatus, or instruments such as gas-generating sets, compressors, and calorimeters.
12. LP-gas equipment for vaporization, gas mixing, and gas manufacturing.
13. Temporary LP-gas piping for buildings under construction or renovation that is not to become part of the permanent piping system.
14. Installation of LP-gas systems for railroad switch heating.
15. Installation of hydrogen gas, LP-gas, and compressed natural gas (CNG) systems on vehicles.
16. Except as provided in IFGC Section 401.1.1, gas piping, meters, gas pressure regulators, and other appurtenances used by the serving gas supplier in the distribution of gas, other than undiluted LP-gas.
17. Building design and construction, except as specified in this rule.
18. Piping systems for mixtures of gas and air within the flammable range with an operating pressure greater than 10 psig (69 kPa gauge).
19. Portable fuel cell appliances that are neither connected to a fixed piping system nor interconnected to a power grid.

Subp. 6. Other fuels. The requirements for the design, installation, maintenance, alteration, and inspection of mechanical systems operating with fuels other than fuel gas shall be regulated by the *Minnesota Mechanical Code*, parts 1346.0050 to 1346.1500.

CHAPTER 1

SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

(Chapter 1 of the IFGC is deleted in its entirety.)

(See 2015 *Minnesota Building Code Administration* included herein.)

CHAPTER 2

DEFINITIONS

SECTION 201 (IFGC) GENERAL

201.1 Scope. Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this code and standard, have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

201.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.

201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the *International Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Mechanical Code* or *International Plumbing Code*, such terms shall have meanings ascribed to them as in those codes.

201.4 Terms not defined. Where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this section, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

SECTION 202 (IFGC) GENERAL DEFINITIONS

[M] ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, *appliance* or *equipment* to be reached by ready *access* or by a means that first requires the removal or movement of a panel, door or similar obstruction (see also "Ready *access*").

AIR CONDITIONER, GAS-FIRED. A gas-burning, automatically operated *appliance* for supplying cooled and/or dehumidified air or chilled liquid.

[M] AIR CONDITIONING. The treatment of air so as to control simultaneously the temperature, humidity, cleanness and distribution of the air to meet the requirements of a conditioned space.

[M] AIR, EXHAUST. Air being removed from any space or piece of *equipment* or *appliance* and conveyed directly to the atmosphere by means of openings or ducts.

[M] AIR-HANDLING UNIT. A blower or fan used for the purpose of distributing supply air to a room, space or area.

[M] AIR, MAKEUP. Air that is provided to replace air being exhausted.

[A] ALTERATION. A change in a system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation.

ANODELESS RISER. A transition assembly in which plastic *piping* is installed and terminated above ground outside of a building.

[M] APPLIANCE. Any apparatus or device that utilizes a fuel or raw material to produce light, heat, power, refrigeration or air conditioning.

APPLIANCE, AUTOMATICALLY CONTROLLED. Appliances equipped with an automatic burner ignition and safety shutoff device and other automatic devices which accomplish complete turn-on and shutoff of the gas to the main burner or burners, and graduate the gas supply to the burner or burners, but do not affect complete shutoff of the gas.

APPLIANCE, FAN-ASSISTED COMBUSTION. An *appliance* equipped with an integral mechanical means to either draw or force products of combustion through the combustion chamber or heat exchanger.

APPLIANCE TYPE.

Low-heat appliance (residential appliance). Any *appliance* in which the products of combustion at the point of entrance to the flue under normal operating conditions have a temperature of 1,000°F (538°C) or less.

Medium-heat appliance. Any *appliance* in which the products of combustion at the point of entrance to the flue under normal operating conditions have a temperature of more than 1,000°F (538°C), but not greater than 2,000°F (1093°C).

APPLIANCE, UNVENTED. An *appliance* designed or installed in such a manner that the products of combustion are not conveyed by a vent or chimney directly to the outside atmosphere.

APPLIANCE, VENTED. An *appliance* designed and installed in such a manner that all of the products of combustion are conveyed directly from the *appliance* to the outside atmosphere through an *approved* chimney or vent system.

APPROVED. "*Approved*" means approval by the building official, pursuant to the *Minnesota State Building Code*, by reason of: inspection, investigation, or testing; accepted principles; computer simulations; research reports; or testing performed by either a licensed engineer or by a locally or nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[A] APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized agency that is *approved* by the code official and regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services.

ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE. The pressure of the weight of air and water vapor on the surface of the earth, approximately 14.7 pounds per square inch (psi) (101 kPa absolute) at sea level.

AUTOMATIC IGNITION. Ignition of gas at the burner(s) when the gas controlling device is turned on, including reignition if the flames on the burner(s) have been extinguished by means other than by the closing of the gas controlling device.

BAFFLE. An object placed in an *appliance* to change the direction of or retard the flow of air, air-gas mixtures or flue gases.

BAROMETRIC DRAFT REGULATOR. A balanced damper device attached to a chimney, vent connector, breeching or flue gas manifold to protect combustion appliances by controlling chimney draft. A double-acting barometric draft regulator is one whose balancing damper is free to move in either direction to protect combustion appliances from both excessive draft and backdraft.

BOILER, LOW-PRESSURE. A self-contained *appliance* for supplying steam or hot water.

Hot water heating boiler. A boiler in which no steam is generated, from which hot water is circulated for heating purposes and then returned to the boiler, and that operates at water pressures not exceeding 160 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (1100 kPa gauge) and at water temperatures not exceeding 250°F (121°C) at or near the boiler *outlet*.

Hot water supply boiler. A boiler, completely filled with water, which furnishes hot water to be used externally to itself, and that operates at water pressures not exceeding 160 psig (1100 kPa gauge) and at water temperatures not exceeding 250°F (121°C) at or near the boiler *outlet*.

Steam heating boiler. A boiler in which steam is generated and that operates at a steam pressure not exceeding 15 psig (100 kPa gauge).

BONDING JUMPER. A conductor installed to electrically connect metallic gas *piping* to the grounding electrode system.

BRAZING. A metal-joining process wherein coalescence is produced by the use of a nonferrous filler metal having a melting point above 1,000°F (538°C), but lower than that of the base metal being joined. The filler material is distributed between the closely fitted surfaces of the joint by capillary action.

BROILER. A general term including salamanders, barbecues and other appliances cooking primarily by radiated heat, excepting toasters.

BTU. Abbreviation for British thermal unit, which is the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 pound (454 g) of water 1°F (0.56°C) (1 Btu = 1055 J).

BURNER. A device for the final conveyance of the gas, or a mixture of gas and air, to the combustion zone.

Induced-draft. A burner that depends on draft induced by a fan that is an integral part of the *appliance* and is located downstream from the burner.

Power. A burner in which gas, air or both are supplied at pressures exceeding, for gas, the line pressure, and for air, atmospheric pressure, with this added pressure being applied at the burner.

[M] CHIMNEY. A primarily vertical structure containing one or more flues, for the purpose of carrying gaseous products of combustion and air from an *appliance* to the outside atmosphere.

Factory-built chimney. A *listed* and *labeled* chimney composed of factory-made components, assembled in the field in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the conditions of the listing.

Masonry chimney. A field-constructed chimney composed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones or concrete.

Metal chimney. A field-constructed chimney of metal.

[M] CLEARANCE. The minimum distance through air measured between the heat-producing surface of the mechanical *appliance*, device or *equipment* and the surface of the *combustible material* or *assembly*.

CLOTHES DRYER. An *appliance* used to dry wet laundry by means of heated air. Dryer classifications are as follows:

Type 1. Factory-built package, multiple production. Primarily used in family living environment. Usually the smallest unit physically and in function output.

Type 2. Factory-built package, multiple production. Used in business with direct intercourse of the function with the public. Not designed for use in individual family living environment.

CODE. For purposes of parts 1346.5050 to 1346.6014, "the code" or "this code" means the portion of this rule that adopts the 2012 *International Fuel Gas Code*, with amendments. MN MN MN

[A] CODE OFFICIAL. The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

[M] COMBUSTIBLE ASSEMBLY. Wall, floor, ceiling or other assembly constructed of one or more component materials that are not defined as noncombustible.

COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL. Any material not defined as noncombustible.

[M] COMBUSTION. In the context of this code, refers to the rapid oxidation of fuel accompanied by the production of heat or heat and light.

COMBUSTION AIR. Air necessary for complete combustion of a fuel, including theoretical air and excess air.

[M] COMBUSTION CHAMBER. The portion of an *appliance* within which combustion occurs.

COMBUSTION PRODUCTS. Constituents resulting from the combustion of a fuel with the oxygen of the air, including inert gases, but excluding excess air.

CONCEALED LOCATION. A location that cannot be accessed without damaging permanent parts of the building structure or finish surface. Spaces above, below or behind readily removable panels or doors shall not be considered as concealed.

CONCEALED PIPING. *Piping* that is located in a *concealed location* (see "*Concealed location*").

CONDENSATE. The liquid that condenses from a gas (including flue gas) caused by a reduction in temperature or increase in pressure.

CONNECTOR, APPLIANCE (Fuel). Rigid metallic pipe and fittings, semirigid metallic tubing and fittings or a *listed* and *labeled* device that connects an *appliance* to the gas *piping* system.

CONNECTOR, CHIMNEY OR VENT. The pipe that connects an *appliance* to a chimney or vent.

[A] CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS. All of the written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of the project necessary for obtaining a mechanical permit.

CONTROL. A manual or automatic device designed to regulate the gas, air, water or electrical supply to, or operation of, a mechanical system.

CONVERSION BURNER. A unit consisting of a burner and its controls for installation in an *appliance* originally utilizing another fuel.

COUNTER APPLIANCES. Appliances such as coffee brewers and coffee urns and any appurtenant water-heating *appliance*, food and dish warmers, hot plates, griddles, waffle bakers and other appliances designed for installation on or in a counter.

CUBIC FOOT. The amount of gas that occupies 1 cubic foot (0.02832 m^3) when at a temperature of 60°F (16°C), saturated with water vapor and under a pressure equivalent to that of 30 inches of mercury (101 kPa).

DAMPER. A manually or automatically controlled device to regulate draft or the rate of flow of air or combustion gases.

DECORATIVE APPLIANCE, VENTED. A vented *appliance* wherein the primary function lies in the aesthetic effect of the flames.

DECORATIVE APPLIANCES FOR INSTALLATION IN VENTED FIREPLACES. A vented *appliance* designed for installation within the fire chamber of a vented *fireplace*, wherein the primary function lies in the aesthetic effect of the flames.

DEMAND. The maximum amount of gas input required per unit of time, usually expressed in cubic feet per hour, or Btu/h (1 Btu/h = 0.2931 W).

[B] DESIGN FLOOD ELEVATION. The elevation of the "design flood," including wave height, relative to the datum specified on the community's legally designated flood hazard map.

DILUTION AIR. Air that is introduced into a draft hood and is mixed with the flue gases.

DIRECT-VENT APPLIANCES. Appliances that are constructed and installed so that all air for combustion is derived directly from the outside atmosphere and all flue gases are discharged directly to the outside atmosphere.

DRAFT. The pressure difference existing between the *appliance* or any component part and the atmosphere, that causes a continuous flow of air and products of combustion through the gas passages of the *appliance* to the atmosphere.

> **Mechanical or induced draft.** The pressure difference created by the action of a fan, blower or ejector that is located between the *appliance* and the chimney or vent termination.
>
> **Natural draft.** The pressure difference created by a vent or chimney because of its height, and the temperature difference between the flue gases and the atmosphere.

DRAFT HOOD. A nonadjustable device built into an *appliance*, or made as part of the vent connector from an *appliance*, that is designed to (1) provide for ready escape of the flue gases from the *appliance* in the event of no draft, backdraft or stoppage beyond the draft hood, (2) prevent a backdraft from entering the *appliance*, and (3) neutralize the effect of stack action of the chimney or gas vent upon operation of the *appliance*.

DRAFT REGULATOR. A device that functions to maintain a desired draft in the *appliance* by automatically reducing the draft to the desired value.

DRIP. The container placed at a low point in a system of *piping* to collect condensate and from which the condensate is removable.

DRY GAS. A gas having a moisture and hydrocarbon dew point below any normal temperature to which the gas *piping* is exposed.

DUCT FURNACE. A warm-air furnace normally installed in an air distribution duct to supply warm air for heating. This definition shall apply only to a warm-air heating *appliance* that depends for air circulation on a blower not furnished as part of the furnace.

[M] DUCT SYSTEM. A continuous passageway for the transmission of air that, in addition to ducts, includes duct fittings, dampers, plenums, fans and accessory air-handling *equipment*.

[A] DWELLING UNIT. A single unit providing complete, independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

EQUIPMENT. Apparatus and devices other than appliances.

EXCESS FLOW VALVE (EFV). A valve designed to activate when the fuel gas passing through it exceeds a prescribed flow rate.

EXTERIOR MASONRY CHIMNEYS. Masonry chimneys exposed to the outdoors on one or more sides below the roof line.

FIREPLACE. A fire chamber and hearth constructed of *noncombustible material* for use with solid fuels and provided with a chimney.

> **Factory-built fireplace.** A *fireplace* composed of *listed* factory-built components assembled in accordance with the terms of listing to form the completed *fireplace*.
>
> **Masonry fireplace.** A hearth and fire chamber of solid masonry units such as bricks, stones, *listed* masonry units or reinforced concrete, provided with a suitable chimney.

FIRING VALVE. A valve of the plug and barrel type designed for use with gas, and equipped with a lever handle for manual operation and a dial to indicate the percentage of opening.

FLAME SAFEGUARD. A device that will automatically shut off the fuel supply to a main burner or group of burners when the means of ignition of such burners becomes inoperative, and when flame failure occurs on the burner or group of burners.

FLASHBACK ARRESTOR CHECK VALVE. A device that will prevent the backflow of one gas into the supply system of another gas and prevent the passage of flame into the gas supply system.

[B] FLOOD HAZARD AREA. The greater of the following two areas:

1. The area within a floodplain subject to a 1 percent or greater chance of flooding in any given year.
2. This area designated as a *flood hazard area* on a community's flood hazard map, or otherwise legally designated.

FLOOR FURNACE. A completely self-contained furnace suspended from the floor of the space being heated, taking air for combustion from outside such space and with means for observing flames and lighting the *appliance* from such space.

Fan type. A floor furnace equipped with a fan which provides the primary means for circulating air.

Gravity type. A floor furnace depending primarily upon circulation of air by gravity. This classification shall also include floor furnaces equipped with booster-type fans which do not materially restrict free circulation of air by gravity flow when such fans are not in operation.

FLUE, APPLIANCE. The passage(s) within an *appliance* through which combustion products pass from the combustion chamber of the *appliance* to the draft hood inlet opening on an *appliance* equipped with a draft hood or to the *outlet* of the *appliance* on an *appliance* not equipped with a draft hood.

FLUE COLLAR. That portion of an *appliance* designed for the attachment of a draft hood, vent connector or venting system.

FLUE GASES. Products of combustion plus excess air in *appliance* flues or heat exchangers.

FLUE LINER (LINING). A system or material used to form the inside surface of a flue in a chimney or vent, for the purpose of protecting the surrounding structure from the effects of combustion products and for conveying combustion products without leakage to the atmosphere.

FUEL GAS. A natural gas, manufactured gas, liquefied petroleum gas or mixtures of these gases.

[M] FURNACE. A completely self-contained heating unit that is designed to supply heated air to spaces remote from or adjacent to the *appliance* location.

FURNACE, CENTRAL. A self-contained *appliance* for heating air by transfer of heat of combustion through metal to the air, and designed to supply heated air through ducts to spaces remote from or adjacent to the *appliance* location.

Downflow furnace. A furnace designed with airflow discharge vertically downward at or near the bottom of the furnace.

Forced air furnace with cooling unit. A single-package unit, consisting of a gas-fired forced-air furnace of one of the types listed below combined with an electrically or fuel gas-powered summer air-conditioning system, contained in a common casing.

Forced-air type. A central furnace equipped with a fan or blower which provides the primary means for circulation of air.

Gravity furnace with booster fan. A furnace equipped with a booster fan that does not materially restrict free circulation of air by gravity flow when the fan is not in operation.

Gravity type. A central furnace depending primarily on circulation of air by gravity.

Horizontal forced-air type. A furnace with airflow through the *appliance* essentially in a horizontal path.

Multiple-position furnace. A furnace designed so that it can be installed with the airflow discharge in the upflow, horizontal or downflow direction.

Upflow furnace. A furnace designed with airflow discharge vertically upward at or near the top of the furnace. This classification includes "highboy" furnaces with the blower mounted below the heating element and "lowboy" furnaces with the blower mounted beside the heating element.

FURNACE, ENCLOSED. A specific heating, or heating and ventilating, furnace incorporating an integral total enclosure and using only outside air for combustion.

FURNACE PLENUM. An air compartment or chamber to which one or more ducts are connected and which forms part of an air distribution system.

GAS CONVENIENCE OUTLET. A permanently mounted, manually operated device that provides the means for connecting an *appliance* to, and disconnecting an *appliance* from, the supply *piping*. The device includes an integral, manually operated valve with a nondisplaceable valve member and is designed so that disconnection of an *appliance* only occurs when the manually operated valve is in the closed position.

GAS PIPING. An installation of pipe, valves or fittings installed on a premises or in a building and utilized to convey fuel gas.

GAS PIPING SYSTEM—LOW PRESSURE. A system that operates at a pressure not exceeding 14 inches of water column. LPG is a pressure not exceeding 14 inches of water column.

GAS PIPING SYSTEM—MEDIUM PRESSURE. A system that operates at a pressure exceeding 14 inches of water column but not exceeding 5 psig. LPG is a pressure exceeding 14 inches of water column but not exceeding 20 psig.

GAS PIPING SYSTEM—HIGH PRESSURE. A system that operates at a pressure exceeding 5 psig. LPG is a pressure exceeding 20 psig.

[F] GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEM. See Section 702.1.

[M] HAZARDOUS LOCATION. Any location considered to be a fire hazard for flammable vapors, dust, combustible fibers or other highly combustible substances. The location is not necessarily categorized in the building code as a high-hazard group classification.

HOUSE PIPING. See "*Piping* system."

[F] HYDROGEN CUT-OFF ROOM. See Section 702.1.

HYDROGEN GENERATING APPLIANCE. See Section 702.1.

IGNITION PILOT. A pilot that operates during the lighting cycle and discontinues during main burner operation.

[M] IGNITION SOURCE. A flame, spark or hot surface capable of igniting flammable vapors or fumes. Such sources include *appliance* burners, burner ignitors and electrical switching devices.

INCINERATOR. An *appliance* used to reduce combustible refuse material to ashes and which is manufactured, sold and installed as a complete unit.

INDUSTRIAL AIR HEATERS, DIRECT-FIRED NON-RECIRCULATING. A heater in which all the products of combustion generated by the burners are released into the air stream being heated. The purpose of the heater is to offset building heat loss by heating only outdoor air.

INDUSTRIAL AIR HEATERS, DIRECT-FIRED RECIRCULATING. A heater in which all the products of combustion generated by the burners are released into the air stream being heated. The purpose of the heater is to offset building heat loss by heating outdoor air, and, if applicable, indoor air.

INFRARED RADIANT HEATER. A heater that directs a substantial amount of its energy output in the form of infrared radiant energy into the area to be heated. Such heaters are of either the vented or unvented type.

JOINT, FLANGED. A joint made by bolting together a pair of flanged ends.

JOINT, FLARED. A metal-to-metal compression joint in which a conical spread is made on the end of a tube that is compressed by a flare nut against a mating flare.

JOINT, MECHANICAL. A general form of gas-tight joints obtained by the joining of metal parts through a positive-holding mechanical construction, such as press joint, flanged joint, threaded joint, flared joint or compression joint.

JOINT, PLASTIC ADHESIVE. A joint made in thermoset plastic *piping* by the use of an adhesive substance which forms a continuous bond between the mating surfaces without dissolving either one of them.

JOINT, PLASTIC HEAT FUSION. A joint made in thermoplastic *piping* by heating the parts sufficiently to permit fusion of the materials when the parts are pressed together.

JOINT, WELDED. A gas-tight joint obtained by the joining of metal parts in molten state.

[A] LABELED. Equipment, materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, inspection agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of the above-labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the *equipment*, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LEAK CHECK. An operation performed on a gas *piping* system to verify that the system does not leak.

LIMIT CONTROL. A device responsive to changes in pressure, temperature or level for turning on, shutting off or throttling the gas supply to an *appliance*.

LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS or LPG (LP-GAS). Liquefied petroleum gas composed predominately of propane, propylene, butanes or butylenes, or mixtures thereof that is gaseous under normal atmospheric conditions, but is capable of being liquefied under moderate pressure at normal temperatures.

[A] LISTED. Equipment, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the code official and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of *listed equipment* or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the *equipment*, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LIVING SPACE. Space within a *dwelling unit* utilized for living, sleeping, eating, cooking, bathing, washing and sanitation purposes.

LOG LIGHTER. A manually operated solid fuel ignition *appliance* for installation in a vented solid fuel-burning *fireplace*.

LUBRICATED PLUG-TYPE VALVE. A valve of the plug and barrel type provided with means for maintaining a lubricant between the bearing surfaces.

MAIN BURNER. A device or group of devices essentially forming an integral unit for the final conveyance of gas or a mixture of gas and air to the combustion zone, and on which combustion takes place to accomplish the function for which the *appliance* is designed.

METER. The instrument installed to measure the volume of gas delivered through it.

MODULATING. Modulating or throttling is the action of a control from its maximum to minimum position in either predetermined steps or increments of movement as caused by its actuating medium.

[M] NONCOMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS. Materials that, when tested in accordance with ASTM E136, have at least three of four specimens tested meeting all of the following criteria:

1. The recorded temperature of the surface and interior thermocouples shall not at any time during the test rise more than 54°F (30°C) above the furnace temperature at the beginning of the test.
2. There shall not be flaming from the specimen after the first 30 seconds.
3. If the weight loss of the specimen during testing exceeds 50 percent, the recorded temperature of the surface and interior thermocouples shall not at any time during the test rise above the furnace air temperature at the beginning of the test, and there shall not be flaming of the specimen.

[A] OCCUPANCY. The purpose for which a building, or portion thereof, is utilized or occupied.

OFFSET (VENT). A combination of *approved* bends that makes two changes in direction bringing one section of the vent out of line but into a line parallel with the other section.

ORIFICE. The opening in a cap, spud or other device whereby the flow of gas is limited and through which the gas is discharged to the burner.

OUTLET. The point at which a gas-fired *appliance* connects to the gas *piping* system.

OXYGEN DEPLETION SAFETY SHUTOFF SYSTEM (ODS). A system designed to act to shut off the gas supply to the main and pilot burners if the oxygen in the surrounding atmosphere is reduced below a predetermined level.

PILOT. A small flame that is utilized to ignite the gas at the main burner or burners.

PIPING. Where used in this code, "*piping*" refers to either pipe or tubing, or both.

Pipe. A rigid conduit of iron, steel, copper, brass or plastic.

Tubing. Semirigid conduit of copper, aluminum, plastic or steel.

PIPING SYSTEM. All fuel *piping*, valves and fittings from the outlet of the *point of delivery* to the outlets of the *appliance* shutoff valves.

PLASTIC, THERMOPLASTIC. A plastic that is capable of being repeatedly softened by increase of temperature and hardened by decrease of temperature.

POINT OF DELIVERY. For natural gas systems, the *point of delivery* is the outlet of the service meter assembly or the outlet of the service regulator or service shutoff valve where a meter is not provided. Where a valve is provided at the outlet of the service meter assembly, such valve shall be considered to be downstream of the *point of delivery*. For undiluted liquefied petroleum gas systems, the point of delivery shall be considered to be the outlet of the service pressure regulator, exclusive of line gas regulators, in the system.

PORTABLE FUEL CELL APPLIANCE. A fuel cell generator of electricity, which is not fixed in place. A portable fuel cell *appliance* utilizes a cord and plug connection to a grid-isolated load and has an integral fuel supply.

POWER VENT APPLIANCE. An *appliance* with a venting system that uses a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under positive static vent pressure.

PRESSURE DROP. The loss in pressure due to friction or obstruction in pipes, valves, fittings, regulators and burners.

PRESSURE TEST. An operation performed to verify the gas-tight integrity of gas *piping* following its installation or modification.

PURGE. To free a gas conduit of air or gas, or a mixture of gas and air.

QUICK-DISCONNECT DEVICE. A hand-operated device that provides a means for connecting and disconnecting an *appliance* or an *appliance* connector to a gas supply and that is equipped with an automatic means to shut off the gas supply when the device is disconnected.

READY ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, *appliance* or *equipment* to be directly reached, without requiring the removal or movement of any panel, door or similar obstruction, and without requiring the use of portable access *equipment* (see "Access").

[A] REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed.

REGULATOR. A device for controlling and maintaining a uniform supply pressure, either pounds-to-inches water column (MP regulator) or inches-to-inches water column (*appliance* regulator).

REGULATOR, GAS APPLIANCE. A pressure regulator for controlling pressure to the manifold of the *appliance*. Types of *appliance* regulators are as follows:

Adjustable.

1. Spring type, limited adjustment. A regulator in which the regulating force acting upon the diaphragm is derived principally from a spring, the loading of which is adjustable over a range of not more than 15 percent of the outlet pressure at the midpoint of the adjustment range.
2. Spring type, standard adjustment. A regulator in which the regulating force acting upon the diaphragm is derived principally from a spring, the loading of which is adjustable. The adjustment means shall be concealed.

Multistage. A regulator for use with a single gas whose adjustment means is capable of being positioned manually or automatically to two or more predetermined outlet pressure settings. Each of these settings shall be adjustable or nonadjustable. The regulator may modulate outlet pressures automatically between its maximum and minimum predetermined outlet pressure settings.

Nonadjustable.

1. Spring type, nonadjustable. A regulator in which the regulating force acting upon the diaphragm is derived principally from a spring, the loading of which is not field adjustable.
2. Weight type. A regulator in which the regulating force acting upon the diaphragm is derived from a weight or combination of weights.

REGULATOR, LINE GAS PRESSURE. A device placed in a gas line between the service pressure regulator and the *appliance* for controlling, maintaining or reducing the pressure in that portion of the *piping* system downstream of the device.

REGULATOR, MEDIUM-PRESSURE (MP Regulator). A line pressure regulator that reduces gas pressure from the range of greater than 0.5 psig (3.4 kPa) and less than or equal to 5 psig (34.5 kPa) to a lower pressure.

REGULATOR, PRESSURE. A device placed in a gas line for reducing, controlling and maintaining the pressure in that portion of the *piping* system downstream of the device.

REGULATOR, SERVICE PRESSURE. For natural gas systems, a device installed by the serving gas supplier to reduce and limit the service line pressure to delivery pressure. For undiluted liquefied petroleum gas systems, the regulator located upstream from all line gas pressure regulators, where installed, and downstream from any first stage or a high pressure regulator in the system.

RELIEF OPENING. The opening provided in a draft hood to permit the ready escape to the atmosphere of the flue products from the draft hood in the event of no draft, back draft or stoppage beyond the draft hood, and to permit air into the draft hood in the event of a strong chimney updraft.

RELIEF VALVE (DEVICE). A safety valve designed to forestall the development of a dangerous condition by relieving either pressure, temperature or vacuum in the hot water supply system.

RELIEF VALVE, PRESSURE. An automatic valve that opens and closes a relief vent, depending on whether the pressure is above or below a predetermined value.

RELIEF VALVE, TEMPERATURE.

Manual reset type. A valve that automatically opens a relief vent at a predetermined temperature and that must be manually returned to the closed position.

Reseating or self-closing type. An automatic valve that opens and closes a relief vent, depending on whether the temperature is above or below a predetermined value.

RELIEF VALVE, VACUUM. A valve that automatically opens and closes a vent for relieving a vacuum within the hot water supply system, depending on whether the vacuum is above or below a predetermined value.

RISER, GAS. A vertical pipe supplying fuel gas.

ROOM HEATER, UNVENTED. See “Unvented room heater.”

ROOM HEATER, VENTED. A free-standing heating unit used for direct heating of the space in and adjacent to that in which the unit is located (see also “Vented room heater”).

SAFETY SHUTOFF DEVICE. See “Flame safeguard.”

[B] SHAFT. An enclosed space extending through one or more stories of a building, connecting vertical openings in successive floors, or floors and the roof.

[B] SLEEPING UNIT. A room or space in which people sleep, which can also include permanent provisions for living, eating and either sanitation or kitchen facilities, but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are also part of a *dwelling unit* are not sleeping units.

SPECIFIC GRAVITY. As applied to gas, specific gravity is the ratio of the weight of a given volume to that of the same volume of air, both measured under the same condition.

STATIONARY FUEL CELL POWER PLANT. A self-contained package or factory-matched packages which constitute an automatically operated assembly of integrated systems for generating electrical energy and recoverable thermal energy that is permanently connected and fixed in place.

THERMOSTAT.

Electric switch type. A device that senses changes in temperature and controls electrically, by means of separate components, the flow of gas to the burner(s) to maintain selected temperatures.

Integral gas valve type. An automatic device, actuated by temperature changes, designed to control the gas supply to the burner(s) in order to maintain temperatures between predetermined limits, and in which the thermal actuating element is an integral part of the device.

1. Graduating thermostat. A thermostat in which the motion of the valve is approximately in direct proportion to the effective motion of the thermal element induced by temperature change.
2. Snap-acting thermostat. A thermostat in which the thermostatic valve travels instantly from the closed to the open position, and vice versa.

[P] THIRD-PARTY CERTIFICATION AGENCY. An approved agency operating a product or material certification system that incorporates initial product testing, assessment and surveillance of a manufacturer’s quality control system.

[P] THIRD-PARTY CERTIFIED. Certification obtained by the manufacturer indicating that the function and performance characteristics of a product or material have been determined by testing and ongoing surveillance by an approved third-party certification agency. Assertion of certification is in the form of identification in accordance with the requirements of the third-party certification agency.

[P] THIRD-PARTY TESTED. Procedure by which an approved testing laboratory provides documentation that a product, material or system conforms to specified requirements.

TRANSITION FITTINGS, PLASTIC TO STEEL. An adapter for joining plastic pipe to steel pipe. The purpose of this fitting is to provide a permanent, pressure-tight connection between two materials which cannot be joined directly one to another.

UNIT HEATER.

High-static pressure type. A self-contained, automatically controlled, vented *appliance* having integral means for circulation of air against 0.2 inch (15 mm H_2O) or greater static pressure. Such *appliance* is equipped with provisions for attaching an outlet air duct and, where the *appliance* is for indoor installation remote from the space to be heated, is also equipped with provisions for attaching an inlet air duct.

Low-static pressure type. A self-contained, automatically controlled, vented *appliance*, intended for installation in the space to be heated without the use of ducts, having integral means for circulation of air. Such units are allowed to be equipped with louvers or face extensions made in accordance with the manufacturer’s specifications.

UNLISTED BOILER. A boiler not *listed* by a nationally recognized testing agency.

UNVENTED ROOM HEATER. An unvented heating *appliance* designed for stationary installation and utilized to provide comfort heating. Such appliances provide radiant heat or convection heat by gravity or fan circulation directly from the heater and do not utilize ducts.

VALVE. A device used in *piping* to control the gas supply to any section of a system of *piping* or to an *appliance*.

Appliance shutoff. A valve located in the *piping* system, used to isolate individual appliances for purposes such as service or replacement.

Automatic. An automatic or semiautomatic device consisting essentially of a valve and operator that control the gas supply to the burner(s) during operation of an *appliance*. The operator shall be actuated by application of gas pressure on a flexible diaphragm, by electrical means, by mechanical means, or by other *approved* means.

Automatic gas shutoff. A valve used in conjunction with an automatic gas shutoff device to shut off the gas supply to a water-heating system. It shall be constructed integrally with the gas shutoff device or shall be a separate assembly.

Individual main burner. A valve that controls the gas supply to an individual main burner.

Main burner control. A valve that controls the gas supply to the main burner manifold.

Manual main gas-control. A manually operated valve in the gas line for the purpose of completely turning on or shutting off the gas supply to the *appliance*, except to pilot or pilots that are provided with independent shutoff.

Manual reset. An automatic shutoff valve installed in the gas supply *piping* and set to shut off when unsafe conditions occur. The device remains closed until manually reopened.

Service shutoff. A valve, installed by the serving gas supplier between the service meter or source of supply and the customer *piping* system, to shut off the entire *piping* system.

VENT. A pipe or other conduit composed of factory-made components, containing a passageway for conveying combustion products and air to the atmosphere, *listed* and *labeled* for use with a specific type or class of *appliance*.

Special gas vent. A vent *listed* and *labeled* for use with *listed* Category II, III and IV appliances.

Type B vent. A vent *listed* and *labeled* for use with appliances with draft hoods and other Category I appliances that are *listed* for use with Type B vents.

Type BW vent. A vent *listed* and *labeled* for use with wall furnaces.

Type L vent. A vent *listed* and *labeled* for use with appliances that are *listed* for use with Type L or Type B vents.

VENT CONNECTOR. See "Connector."

VENT GASES. Products of combustion from appliances plus excess air plus dilution air in the vent connector, gas vent or chimney above the draft hood or draft regulator.

VENT PIPING.

Breather. *Piping* run from a pressure-regulating device to the outdoors, designed to provide a reference to atmospheric pressure. If the device incorporates an integral pressure relief mechanism, a breather vent can also serve as a relief vent.

Relief. *Piping* run from a pressure-regulating or pressure-limiting device to the outdoors, designed to provide for the safe venting of gas in the event of excessive pressure in the gas *piping* system.

VENTED APPLIANCE CATEGORIES. Appliances that are categorized for the purpose of vent selection are classified into the following four categories:

Category I. An *appliance* that operates with a nonpositive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that avoids excessive condensate production in the vent.

Category II. An *appliance* that operates with a nonpositive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that is capable of causing excessive condensate production in the vent.

Category III. An *appliance* that operates with a positive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that avoids excessive condensate production in the vent.

Category IV. An *appliance* that operates with a positive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that is capable of causing excessive condensate production in the vent.

VENTED ROOM HEATER. A vented self-contained, freestanding, nonrecessed *appliance* for furnishing warm air to the space in which it is installed, directly from the heater without duct connections.

VENTED WALL FURNACE. A self-contained vented *appliance* complete with grilles or equivalent, designed for incorporation in or permanent attachment to the structure of a building, mobile home or travel trailer, and furnishing heated air circulated by gravity or by a fan directly into the space to be heated through openings in the casing. This definition shall exclude floor furnaces, unit heaters and central furnaces as herein defined.

VENTING SYSTEM. A continuous open passageway from the flue collar or draft hood of an *appliance* to the outside atmosphere for the purpose of removing flue or vent gases. A venting system is usually composed of a vent or a chimney and vent connector, if used, assembled to form the open passageway.

Forced-draft venting system. A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under positive static vent pressure.

Induced draft venting system. A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under nonpositive static vent pressure.

Mechanical draft venting system. A venting system designed to remove flue or vent gases by mechanical means, that consists of an induced draft portion under non-positive static pressure or a forced draft portion under positive static pressure.

Natural draft venting system. A venting system designed to remove flue or vent gases under nonpositive static vent pressure entirely by natural draft.

WALL HEATER, UNVENTED-TYPE. A room heater of the type designed for insertion in or attachment to a wall or partition. Such heater does not incorporate concealed venting arrangements in its construction and discharges all products of combustion through the front into the room being heated.

WATER HEATER. Any heating *appliance* or *equipment* that heats potable water and supplies such water to the potable hot water distribution system.

CHAPTER 3

GENERAL REGULATIONS

SECTION 301 (IFGC) GENERAL

301.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the approval and installation of all *equipment* and appliances that comprise parts of the installations regulated by this code in accordance with Section 101.2.

301.1.1 Other fuels. The requirements for combustion and dilution air for gas-fired appliances shall be governed by Section 304. The requirements for combustion and dilution air for appliances operating with fuels other than fuel gas shall be regulated by the *International Mechanical Code*.

301.2 Energy utilization. Heating, ventilating and air-conditioning systems of all structures shall be designed and installed for efficient utilization of energy in accordance with the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

301.3 Listed and labeled. Appliances regulated by this code shall be *listed* and *labeled* to an appropriate standard by a nationally recognized testing laboratory which is qualified to evaluate the *appliance*, unless otherwise *approved* in accordance with the administrative provisions of the *Minnesota Building Code*, Minnesota Rules, Chapter 1300. The approval of unlisted *appliances* shall be based upon engineering evaluation. Unlisted *appliances* shall be installed with clearances to *combustibles* in accordance with NFPA 54. Unlisted *appliances* with a fuel input rating of less than 12,500,000 Btu/hr (3660 kW) shall have fuel gas trains, controls and safety devices installed in accordance with Part CF, *Combustion Side Control*, of ASME CSD-1. Unlisted *appliances* with a fuel input rating of 12,500,000 Btu/hr (3660 kW) or greater shall have fuel gas trains, controls and safety devices installed in accordance with NFPA 85.

301.4 Labeling. Labeling shall be in accordance with the procedures set forth in Sections 301.4.1 through 301.4.2.3.

301.4.1 Testing. An *approved* agency shall test a representative sample of the appliances being *labeled* to the relevant standard or standards. The *approved* agency shall maintain a record of all of the tests performed. The record shall provide sufficient detail to verify compliance with the test standard.

301.4.2 Inspection and identification. The *approved* agency shall periodically perform an inspection, which shall be in-plant if necessary, of the appliances to be *labeled*. The inspection shall verify that the *labeled* appliances are representative of the appliances tested.

301.4.2.1 Independent. The agency to be *approved* shall be objective and competent. To confirm its objectivity, the agency shall disclose all possible conflicts of interest.

301.4.2.2 Equipment. An *approved* agency shall have adequate *equipment* to perform all required tests. The *equipment* shall be periodically calibrated.

301.4.2.3 Personnel. An *approved* agency shall employ experienced personnel educated in conducting, supervising and evaluating tests.

301.5 Label information. A permanent factory-applied nameplate(s) shall be affixed to appliances on which shall appear in legible lettering, the manufacturer's name or trademark, the model number, serial number and, for *listed* appliances, the seal or mark of the testing agency. A label shall also include the hourly rating in British thermal units per hour (Btu/h) (W); the type of fuel *approved* for use with the *appliance*; and the minimum *clearance* requirements.

301.6 Plumbing connections. Potable water supply and building drainage system connections to appliances regulated by this code shall be in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

301.7 Fuel types. Appliances shall be designed for use with the type of fuel gas that will be supplied to them.

301.7.1 Appliance fuel conversion. Appliances shall not be converted to utilize a different fuel gas except where complete instructions for such conversion are provided in the installation instructions, by the serving gas supplier or by the *appliance* manufacturer.

301.8 Vibration isolation. Where means for isolation of vibration of an *appliance* is installed, an *approved* means for support and restraint of that *appliance* shall be provided.

301.9 Repair. Defective material or parts shall be replaced or repaired in such a manner so as to preserve the original approval or listing.

301.10 Wind resistance. Appliances and supports that are exposed to wind shall be designed and installed to resist the wind pressures determined in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

[B] 301.11 Flood hazard. For structures located in flood hazard areas, the appliance, equipment and system installations regulated by this code shall be located at or above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment.

Exception: The appliance, equipment and system installations regulated by this code are permitted to be located below the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment provided that they are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the components and to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to such elevation.

301.12 Seismic resistance. When earthquake loads are applicable in accordance with the *International Building Code*, the supports shall be designed and installed for the seismic forces in accordance with that code.

301.13 Ducts. All ducts required for the installation of systems regulated by this code shall be designed and installed in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

301.14 Rodentproofing. Buildings or structures and the walls enclosing habitable or occupiable rooms and spaces in which persons live, sleep or work, or in which feed, food or foodstuffs are stored, prepared, processed, served or sold, shall be constructed to protect against rodents in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

301.15 Prohibited location. The appliances, *equipment* and systems regulated by this code shall not be located in an elevator shaft.

SECTION 302 (IFGC) STRUCTURAL SAFETY

[B] 302.1 Structural safety. The building shall not be weakened by the installation of any gas *piping*. In the process of installing or repairing any gas *piping*, the finished floors, walls, ceilings, tile work or any other part of the building or premises which is required to be changed or replaced shall be left in a safe structural condition in accordance with the requirements of the *International Building Code*.

[B] 302.2 Penetrations of floor/ceiling assemblies and fire-resistance-rated assemblies. Penetrations of floor/ceiling assemblies and assemblies required to have a fire-resistance rating shall be protected in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

[B] 302.3 Cutting, notching and boring in wood members. The cutting, notching and boring of wood members shall comply with Sections 302.3.1 through 302.3.4.

[B] 302.3.1 Engineered wood products. Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glued-laminated members and I-joists are prohibited except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a registered design professional.

[B] 302.3.2 Joist notching and boring. Notching at the ends of joists shall not exceed one-fourth the joist depth. Holes bored in joists shall not be within 2 inches (51 mm) of the top and bottom of the joist and their diameter shall not exceed one-third the depth of the member. Notches in the top or bottom of the joist shall not exceed one-sixth the depth and shall not be located in the middle one-third of the span.

[B] 302.3.3 Stud cutting and notching. In exterior walls and bearing partitions, any wood stud is permitted to be cut or notched to a depth not exceeding 25 percent of its width. Cutting or notching of studs to a depth not greater than 40 percent of the width of the stud is permitted in nonload-bearing partitions supporting no loads other than the weight of the partition.

[B] 302.3.4 Bored holes. A hole not greater in diameter than 40 percent of the stud depth is permitted to be bored in any wood stud. Bored holes not greater than 60 percent of the depth of the stud are permitted in nonload-bearing partitions or in any wall where each bored stud is doubled, provided not more than two such successive doubled studs are so bored. In no case shall the edge of the bored hole be nearer than $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm) to the edge of the stud. Bored holes shall not be located at the same section of a stud as a cut or notch.

[B] 302.4 Alterations to trusses. Truss members and components shall not be cut, drilled, notched, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without the written concurrence and approval of a registered design professional. Alterations resulting in the addition of loads to any member, such as HVAC *equipment* and water heaters, shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting such additional loading.

[B] 302.5 Cutting, notching and boring holes in structural steel framing. The cutting, notching and boring of holes in structural steel framing members shall be as prescribed by the registered design professional.

[B] 302.6 Cutting, notching and boring holes in cold-formed steel framing. Flanges and lips of load-bearing, cold-formed steel framing members shall not be cut or notched. Holes in webs of load-bearing, cold-formed steel framing members shall be permitted along the centerline of the web of the framing member and shall not exceed the dimensional limitations, penetration spacing or minimum hole edge distance as prescribed by the registered design professional. Cutting, notching and boring holes of steel floor/roof decking shall be as prescribed by the registered design professional.

[B] 302.7 Cutting, notching and boring holes in nonstructural cold-formed steel wall framing. Flanges and lips of nonstructural cold-formed steel wall studs shall be permitted along the centerline of the web of the framing member, shall not exceed $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in width or 4 inches (102 mm) in length, and the holes shall not be spaced less than 24 inches (610 mm) center to center from another hole or less than 10 inches (254 mm) from the bearing end.

SECTION 303 (IFGC) APPLIANCE LOCATION

303.1 General. Appliances shall be located as required by this section, specific requirements elsewhere in this code and the conditions of the *equipment* and *appliance* listing.

303.2 Hazardous locations. Appliances shall not be located in a *hazardous location* unless *listed* and *approved* for the specific installation.

303.3 Prohibited locations. Appliances shall not be located in sleeping rooms, bathrooms, toilet rooms, storage closets or surgical rooms, or in a space that opens only into such rooms or spaces, except where the installation complies with one of the following:

1. The *appliance* is a direct-vent *appliance* installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Vented room heaters, wall furnaces, vented decorative appliances, vented gas fireplaces, vented gas fireplace heaters and decorative appliances for installation in vented solid fuel-burning fireplaces are installed in

rooms that meet the required volume criteria of Section 304.5.

3. Deleted.

4. Deleted.

5. The *appliance* is installed in a room or space that opens only into a bedroom or bathroom, and such room or space is used for no other purpose and is provided with a solid weather-stripped door equipped with an *approved* self-closing device. All *combustion air* shall be taken directly from the outdoors in accordance with Section 304.6.

303.4 Protection from vehicle impact damage. Appliances shall not be installed in a location subject to vehicle impact damage except where protected by an *approved* means.

303.5 Indoor locations. Furnaces and boilers installed in closets and alcoves shall be *listed* for such installation.

303.6 Outdoor locations. Appliances installed in outdoor locations shall be either *listed* for outdoor installation or provided with protection from outdoor environmental factors that influence the operability, durability and safety of the appliances.

303.7 Pit locations. Appliances installed in pits or excavations shall not come in direct contact with the surrounding soil. The sides of the pit or excavation shall be held back a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) from the *appliance*. Where the depth exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below adjoining grade, the walls of the pit or excavation shall be lined with concrete or masonry, such concrete or masonry shall extend a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above adjoining grade and shall have sufficient lateral load-bearing capacity to resist collapse. The *appliance* shall be protected from flooding in an *approved* manner.

SECTION 304 (IFGS)
COMBUSTION, VENTILATION AND DILUTION AIR

304.1 General. Air for combustion, ventilation and dilution of flue gases for appliances installed in buildings shall be provided by application of one of the methods prescribed in Sections 304.5 through 304.9. Where the requirements of Section 304.5 are not met, outdoor air shall be introduced in accordance with one of the methods prescribed in Sections 304.6 through 304.9. *Direct-vent appliances*, gas appliances of other than natural draft design and vented gas appliances other than Category I shall be provided with combustion, ventilation and dilution air in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions. Refer to IFGC Appendix E for Worksheet E-1, "Residential Combustion Air Calculation Method," and Table E-1, "Residential Combustion Air Required Volume," in part 1346.6012.

Exceptions:

1. Direct vent *appliances*.

2. Type 1 clothes dryers that are provided with *makeup air* in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

3. Replacement of a fuel gas utilization *appliance* that complies with all of the following conditions:

   3.1. Replacement *appliance* has a Btu/hr (kW) input rating not greater than 30 percent above the original *appliance* input rating.

   3.2. *Combustion air* provisions meet the code requirements in effect at the time of the original installation.

   3.3. Replacement *appliance* shall not cause an existing mechanical system to become unsafe, hazardous, or overloaded.

4. Combustion air may be determined using Table 304.1 for gas-fired appliances when combustion air is provided from a single opening from the outdoors, commencing within 12 inches of the bottom of the enclosure.

5. Combustion air for power burner appliances equipped with a draft control device and having an input above 400,000 Btu/hr shall have a net free area of 0.2 square inches per 1,000 Btu/hr. Combustion air shall be provided from a single opening from the outdoors, terminating within 12 inches of the bottom of the enclosure. In lieu of this requirement, combustion air requirements specified by the manufacturer for a specific power burner appliance may be approved by the building official.

6. Combustion air for power burner appliances not equipped with a draft control device and having an input above 400,000 Btu/hr shall have a net free area of 0.1 square inches per 1,000 Btu/hr. Combustion air shall be provided from a single opening from the outdoors, terminating within 12 inches of the bottom of the enclosure. In lieu of this requirement, combustion air requirements specified by the manufacturer for a specific power burner appliance may be approved by the building official.

304.2 Appliance location. Appliances shall be located so as not to interfere with proper circulation of combustion, ventilation and dilution air.

304.3 Draft hood/regulator location. Where used, a draft hood or a barometric draft regulator shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the *appliance* served so as to prevent any difference in pressure between the hood or regulator and the *combustion air* supply.

304.4 Makeup air provisions. Where exhaust fans, clothes dryers and kitchen ventilation systems interfere with the operation of appliances, makeup air shall be provided.

304.5 Indoor combustion air. The required volume of indoor air shall be determined in accordance with Section 304.5.1 or 304.5.2, except that where the air infiltration rate is known to be less than 0.40 air changes per hour (ACH), Section 304.5.2 shall be used. The total required volume shall be the sum of the required volume calculated for all appliances located within the space. Rooms communicating directly with the space in which the appliances are installed through openings not furnished with doors, and through *combustion air*

TABLE 304.1
COMBUSTION AIR REQUIREMENTS FOR GAS-FIRED APPLIANCES WHEN THE COMBINED INPUT IS UP TO AND INCLUDING 400,000 Btu/hr

TOTAL INPUT OF APPLIANCES[1], THOUSANDS OF Btu/hr (kW)	REQUIRED FREE AREA OF AIR-SUPPLY OPENING OR DUCT, SQUARE INCHES (sq mm)	ACCEPTABLE APPROXIMATE ROUND DUCT EQUIVALENT DIAMETER[2], INCH (mm)
25 (8)	7 (4,500)	3 (75)
50 (15)	7 (4,500)	3 (75)
75 (23)	11 (7,000)	4 (100)
100 (30)	14 (9,000)	4 (100)
125 (37)	18 (12,000)	5 (125)
150 (45)	22 (14,000)	5 (125)
175 (53)	25 (16,000)	6 (150)
200 (60)	29 (19,000)	6 (150)
225 (68)	32 (21,000)	6 (150)
250 (75)	36 (23,000)	7 (175)
275 (83)	40 (26,000)	7 (175)
300 (90)	43 (28,000)	7 (175)
325 (98)	47 (30,000)	8 (200)
350 (105)	50 (32,000)	8 (200)
375 (113)	54 (35,000)	8 (200)
400 (120)	58 (37,000)	9 (225)

1. For total inputs falling between listed capacities, use next largest listed input.
2. If flexible duct is used, increase the duct diameter by one inch.*
*Flexible duct shall be stretched with minimal sags.

openings sized and located in accordance with Section 304.5.3, are considered to be part of the required volume.

304.5.1 Standard method. The minimum required volume shall be 50 cubic feet per 1,000 Btu/h (4.8 m^3/kW) of the *appliance* input rating.

304.5.2 Known air-infiltration-rate method. Where the air infiltration rate of a structure is known, the minimum required volume shall be determined as follows:

For appliances other than fan-assisted, calculate volume using Equation 3-1.

$$Required\ Volume_{other} \geq \frac{21\ \text{ft}^3}{ACH}\left(\frac{I_{other}}{1{,}000\ \text{Btu/h}}\right)$$

(Equation 3-1)

For fan-assisted appliances, calculate volume using Equation 3-2.

$$Required\ Volume_{fan} \geq \frac{15\ \text{ft}^3}{ACH}\left(\frac{I_{fan}}{1{,}000\ \text{Btu/h}}\right)$$

(Equation 3-2)

where:

I_{other} = All appliances other than fan assisted (input in Btu/h).

I_{fan} = Fan-assisted *appliance* (input in Btu/h).

ACH = Air change per hour (percent of volume of space exchanged per hour, expressed as a decimal).

For purposes of this calculation, an infiltration rate greater than 0.60 ACH shall not be used in Equations 3-1 and 3-2.

304.5.3 Indoor opening size and location. Openings used to connect indoor spaces shall be sized and located in accordance with Sections 304.5.3.1 and 304.5.3.2 (see Figure 304.5.3).

304.5.3.1 Combining spaces on the same story. Each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 square inch per 1,000 Btu/h (2,200 mm^2/kW) of the total input rating of all appliances in the space, but not less than 100 square inches (0.06 m^2). One opening shall commence within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top and one opening shall commence within 12 inches (305 mm) of the bottom of the enclosure. The minimum dimension of air openings shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

304.5.3.2 Combining spaces in different stories. The volumes of spaces in different stories shall be considered as communicating spaces where such spaces are connected by one or more openings in doors or floors having a total minimum free area of 2 square inches per 1,000 Btu/h (4402 mm^2/kW) of total input rating of all appliances.

304.6 Outdoor combustion air. Outdoor *combustion air* shall be provided through opening(s) to the outdoors in accordance with Section 304.6.1 or 304.6.2. The minimum dimension of air openings shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

304.6.1 Two-permanent-openings method. Deleted.

304.6.2 One-permanent-opening method. When any natural draft *appliances* are installed, one permanent opening, commencing within 12 inches (300 mm) of the bottom of the enclosure, shall be provided. When other than natural draft *appliances* are installed, one permanent opening, commencing within 12 inches (300 mm) of the top of the enclosure, shall be provided. The *appliances* shall have clearances of at least 1 inch (25 mm) from the sides and back and 6 inches (160 mm) from the front of the *appliance*. The opening shall directly communicate with the outdoors or shall communicate through a vertical or horizontal duct to the outdoors or spaces that freely communicate with the outdoors and shall have a minimum free area of 1 inch^2 /3,000 Btu/hr (700 mm^2/kW) of the total input rating of all *appliances* located in the enclosure.

304.7 Combination indoor and outdoor combustion air. The use of a combination of indoor and outdoor *combustion air* shall be in accordance with Sections 304.7.1 through 304.7.3.

304.7.1 Indoor openings. Where used, openings connecting the interior spaces shall comply with Section 304.5.3.

304.7.2 Outdoor opening location. Outdoor opening(s) shall be located in accordance with Section 304.6.

304.7.3 Outdoor opening(s) size. The outdoor opening(s) size shall be calculated in accordance with the following:

1. The ratio of interior spaces shall be the available volume of all communicating spaces divided by the required volume.
2. The outdoor size reduction factor shall be one minus the ratio of interior spaces.
3. The minimum size of outdoor opening(s) shall be the full size of outdoor opening(s) calculated in accordance with Section 304.6, multiplied by the reduction factor. The minimum dimension of air openings shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

304.8 Engineered installations. Engineered *combustion air* installations shall provide an adequate supply of combustion, ventilation and dilution air and shall be *approved*.

304.9 Mechanical combustion air supply. Where all *combustion air* is provided by a mechanical air supply system, the *combustion air* shall be supplied from the outdoors at a rate not less than 0.35 cubic feet per minute per 1,000 Btu/h (0.034 m^3/min per kW) of total input rating of all appliances located within the space.

304.9.1 Makeup air. Where exhaust fans are installed, makeup air shall be provided to replace the exhausted air.

304.9.2 Appliance interlock. Each of the appliances served shall be interlocked with the mechanical air supply system to prevent main burner operation when the mechanical air supply system is not in operation.

304.9.3 Combined combustion air and ventilation air system. Where *combustion air* is provided by the building's mechanical ventilation system, the system shall provide the specified *combustion air* rate in addition to the required ventilation air.

304.10 Louvers and grilles. The required size of openings for combustion, ventilation and dilution air shall be based on the net free area of each opening. Where the free area through a design of louver, grille or screen is known, it shall be used in calculating the size opening required to provide the free area specified. Where the design and free area of louvers and grilles are not known, it shall be assumed that wood louvers will have 25-percent free area and metal louvers and grilles will have 75-percent free area. Screens shall have a mesh size not smaller than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm). Nonmotorized louvers and grilles shall be fixed in the open position. Motorized louvers shall be interlocked with the *appliance* so that they are proven to be in the full open position prior to main burner ignition and during main burner operation. Means shall be provided to prevent the main burner from igniting if the louvers fail to open during burner start-up and to shut down the main burner if the louvers close during operation.

304.11 Combustion air ducts. *Combustion air* ducts shall comply with the following:

1. Ducts shall be of galvanized steel or an equivalent corrosion-resistant material. If flexible duct is used, increase the duct diameter by one inch. Flexible duct shall be stretched with minimal sags.
2. Ducts shall terminate in an unobstructed space, allowing free movement of *combustion air* to the *appliances*.
3. Ducts shall serve a single space.
4. Ducts shall not service both upper and lower *combustion air* openings where both such openings are used. The separation between ducts serving upper and lower *combustion air* openings shall be maintained to the source of *combustion air*.
5. Ducts shall not terminate in an attic space.
6. The remaining space surrounding a *chimney* liner, gas vent, special gas vent, or plastic piping installed within a masonry, metal or factory-built *chimney* shall not be used to supply *combustion air*.

   Exception: Direct vent gas-fired *appliances* designed for installation in a solid fuel-burning fireplace where installed in accordance with the *listing* and the manufacturer's instructions.
7. Vertical ducts shall not extend through two or more stories without prior *approval* from the building official.
8. Ducts shall not terminate in the return air plenum of a forced-air heating system unless installed in accordance with the heating *equipment* manufacturer's installation instructions.
9. *Combustion air* intake openings shall be located to avoid intake of exhaust air in accordance with IMC Section 401.5 and IFGC Section 503.8 and shall be covered with corrosion-resistant screen of not less than $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) mesh.
10. *Combustion air* intake openings shall be located at least 12 inches (305 mm) above adjoining grade level.
11. When both *makeup air* and *combustion air* openings are required, they shall be provided through separate openings to the outdoors.

    Exception: *Combination makeup air* and *combustion air* systems may be *approved* by the building official where they are reasonably equivalent in terms of health, safety, and durability.

304.12 Protection from fumes and gases. Where corrosive or flammable process fumes or gases, other than products of combustion, are present, means for the disposal of such fumes or gases shall be provided. Such fumes or gases include carbon monoxide, hydrogen sulfide, ammonia, chlorine and halogenated hydrocarbons.

In barbershops, beauty shops and other facilities where chemicals that generate corrosive or flammable products, such as aerosol sprays, are routinely used, nondirect vent-type appliances shall be located in a mechanical room separated or partitioned off from other areas with provisions for *combustion air* and dilution air from the outdoors. *Direct-vent appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION 305 (IFGC) INSTALLATION

305.1 General. *Equipment* and appliances shall be installed as required by the terms of their approval, in accordance with the conditions of listing, the manufacturer's instructions and this code. Manufacturers' installation instructions shall be available on the job site at the time of inspection. Where a code provision is less restrictive than the conditions of the listing of the *equipment* or *appliance* or the manufacturer's installation instructions, the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions shall apply.

Unlisted appliances *approved* in accordance with Section 301.3 shall be limited to uses recommended by the manufacturer and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the provisions of this code and the requirements determined by the code official.

305.2 Hazardous area. *Equipment* and appliances having an *ignition source* shall not be installed in Group H occupancies or control areas where open use, handling or dispensing of combustible, flammable or explosive materials occurs.

305.3 Elevation of ignition source. *Equipment* and appliances having an *ignition source* shall be elevated such that the source of ignition is not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor in hazardous locations and public garages, private garages, repair garages, motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the *living space* of a *dwelling unit* and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

Exception: Elevation of the *ignition source* is not required for appliances that are *listed* as flammable vapor ignition resistant.

305.3.1 (IFGS) Installation in residential garages. In residential garages where appliances are installed in a separate, enclosed space having *access* only from outside of the garage, such appliances shall be permitted to be installed at floor level, provided that the required *combustion air* is taken from the exterior of the garage.

305.3.2 Parking garages. Connection of a parking garage with any room in which there is a fuel-fired *appliance* shall be by means of a vestibule providing a two-doorway separation, except that a single door is permitted where the sources of ignition in the *appliance* are elevated in accordance with Section 305.3.

Exception: This section shall not apply to *appliance* installations complying with Section 305.4.

305.4 Public garages. Appliances located in public garages, motor fuel-dispensing facilities, repair garages or other areas frequented by motor vehicles shall be installed a minimum of 8 feet (2438 mm) above the floor. Where motor vehicles are capable of passing under an appliance, the appliance shall be installed at the clearances required by the appliance manufacturer and not less than 1 foot (305 mm) higher than the tallest vehicle garage door opening.

Exception: The requirements of this section shall not apply where the appliances are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Section 305.3 and NFPA 30A.

305.5 Private garages. Appliances located in private garages shall be installed with a minimum *clearance* of 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor.

Exception: The requirements of this section shall not apply where the appliances are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Section 305.3.

305.6 Construction and protection. Boiler rooms and furnace rooms shall be protected as required by the *International Building Code*.

305.7 Clearances from grade. *Equipment* and appliances installed at grade level shall be supported on a level concrete slab or other *approved* material extending not less than 3-inches (76 mm) above adjoining grade or shall be suspended not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above adjoining grade. Such supports shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

305.8 Clearances to combustible construction. Heat-producing *equipment* and appliances shall be installed to maintain the required clearances to combustible construction as specified in the listing and manufacturer's instructions. Such clearances shall be reduced only in accordance with Section 308. Clearances to combustibles shall include such considerations as door swing, drawer pull, overhead projections or shelving and window swing. Devices, such as door stops or limits and closers, shall not be used to provide the required clearances.

305.9 (IFGS) Parking structures. Appliances installed in enclosed, basement and underground parking structures shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 88A.

305.10 (IFGS) Repair garages. Appliances installed in repair garages shall be installed in a detached building or room, separated from repair areas by walls or partitions, floors or floor-ceiling assemblies that are constructed so as to prohibit the transmission of vapors and having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour, and that have no openings in the wall separating the repair area within 8 feet (2438 mm) of the floor. Wall penetrations shall be firestopped. Air for combustion purposes shall be obtained from the outdoors.

The *appliance* room shall not be used for the storage of *combustible materials*.

Exceptions:

1. Overhead heaters where installed not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) above the floor shall be permitted.
2. Heating appliances for vehicle repair areas where there is no dispensing or transferring of Class I or II flammable or combustible liquids or liquefied petroleum gas shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 30A.

305.11 (IFGS) Installation in aircraft hangars. Heaters in aircraft hangars shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 409.

305.12 (IFGS) Avoid strain on gas piping. Appliances shall be supported and connected to the *piping* so as not to exert undue strain on the connections.

SECTION 306 (IFGC) ACCESS AND SERVICE SPACE

[M] 306.1 Access for maintenance and replacement. Appliances shall be accessible for inspection, service, repair and replacement without disabling the function of a fire-resistance-rated assembly or removing permanent construction, other appliances, or any other *piping* or ducts not connected to the *appliance* being inspected, serviced, repaired or replaced. A level working space at least 30 inches deep and 30 inches wide (762 mm by 762 mm) shall be provided in front of the control side to service an *appliance*.

[M] 306.2 Appliances in rooms. Rooms containing appliances shall be provided with a door and an unobstructed passageway measuring not less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide and 80 inches (2032 mm) high.

Exception: Within a *dwelling unit*, appliances installed in a compartment, alcove, basement or similar space shall be provided with *access* by an opening or door and an unobstructed passageway measuring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide and large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance* in the space, provided that a level service space of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and the height of the *appliance*, but not less than 30 inches (762 mm), is present at the front or service side of the *appliance* with the door open.

[M] 306.3 Appliances in attics. Attics containing appliances shall be provided with an opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance*. The passageway shall not be less than 30 inches (762 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the *appliance*. The passageway shall have continuous solid flooring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present at the front or service side of the *appliance*. The clear *access* opening dimensions shall be a minimum of 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance*.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway and level service space are not required where the *appliance* is capable of being serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) high for its entire length, the passageway shall be not greater than 50 feet (15 250 mm) in length.

[M] 306.3.1 Electrical requirements. A luminaire controlled by a switch located at the required passageway opening and a receptacle outlet shall be provided at or near the *appliance* location in accordance with NFPA 70.

[M] 306.4 Appliances under floors. Under-floor spaces containing appliances shall be provided with an *access* opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to remove the largest *appliance*. The passageway shall not be less than 30 inches (762 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide, nor more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the *appliance*. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present at the front or service side of the *appliance*. If the depth of the passageway or the service space exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below the adjoining grade, the walls of the passageway shall be lined with concrete or masonry extending 4 inches (102 mm) above the adjoining grade and having sufficient lateral-bearing capacity to resist collapse. The clear *access* opening dimensions shall be a minimum of 22 inches by 30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance*.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway is not required where the level service space is present when the *access* is open and the *appliance* is capable of being serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is not less than 6 feet high (1829 mm) for its entire length, the passageway shall not be limited in length.

[M] 306.4.1 Electrical requirements. A luminaire controlled by a switch located at the required passageway opening and a receptacle outlet shall be provided at or near the *appliance* location in accordance with NFPA 70.

306.5 Mechanical equipment and appliances on roofs or elevated structures. Where mechanical *equipment* or *appliances* requiring periodic inspection, service or maintenance are installed on roofs or elevated structures, a permanent stair shall be provided for access.

Exception: A portable ladder may be used for dwellings, replacement equipment and *appliances* on existing buildings, and for exterior roof access points not exceeding 16 feet (4.9 m) above grade, unless the building official determines that the unique shape of the roof does not allow safe access with a portable ladder.

The permanent stair shall be as required by relevant safety regulations, but shall not be less than the following:

1. The stair shall be installed at an angle of not more than 60 degrees measured from the horizontal plane.

2. The stair shall have flat treads at least 6 inches (152 mm) deep and a clear width of at least 18 inches (457 mm) with equally spaced risers at least 10.5 inches (267 mm) high and not exceeding 14 inches (356 mm).

3. The stair shall have intermediate landings not exceeding 18 feet (5.5 m) vertically.

4. Continuous handrails shall be installed on both sides of the stair.

5. Interior stairs shall terminate at the under side of the roof at a hatch or scuttle of at least 8 square feet (0.74 m^2) with a minimum dimension of 20 inches (508 mm).

6. When a roof access hatch or scuttle is located within 10 feet (3.0 m) of a roof edge, a guard shall be installed in accordance with IFGC Section 306.6.

7. Exterior stairs shall terminate at the roof access point or at a level landing of at least 8 square feet (0.74 m^2) with a minimum dimension of 20 inches (508 mm). The landing shall have a guard installed in accordance with IFGC Section 306.6.

[M] 306.5.1 Sloped roofs. Where appliances, *equipment*, fans or other components that require service are installed on a roof having a slope of 3 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) or greater and having an edge more than 30 inches (762 mm) above grade at such edge, a level platform shall be provided on each side of the *appliance* or *equipment* to which *access* is required for service, repair or maintenance. The platform shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in any dimension and shall be provided with guards. The guards shall extend not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the platform, shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a 21-inch-diameter (533 mm) sphere and shall comply with the loading requirements for guards specified in the *International Building Code*. *Access* shall not require walking on roofs having a slope greater than 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope). Where *access* involves obstructions greater than 30 inches (762 mm) in height, such obstructions shall be provided with ladders installed in accordance with Section 306.5 or stairs installed in accordance with the requirements specified in the *International Building Code* in the path of travel to and from appliances, fans or *equipment* requiring service.

[M] 306.5.2 Electrical requirements. A receptacle outlet shall be provided at or near the *appliance* location in accordance with NFPA 70.

306.5.3 Permanent ladders. Where a change in roof elevation greater than 30 inches (762 mm) but not exceeding 16 feet (4.9 m) exists, a permanent ladder shall be provided. The ladder may be vertical and shall be as required by relevant safety regulations, but shall not be less than the following:

1. Width shall be at least 16 inches (406 mm).

2. Rung spacing shall be a maximum of 14 inches (356 mm).

3. Toe space shall be at least 6 inches (152 mm).

4. Side railings shall extend at least 30 inches (762 mm) above the roof or parapet wall.

[M] 306.6 Guards. Guards shall be provided where appliances or other components that require service and roof hatch openings are located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of a roof edge or open side of a walking surface and such edge or open side is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor, roof or grade below. The guard shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) beyond each end of such appliances, components and roof hatch openings and the top of the guard shall be located not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the elevated surface adjacent to the guard. The guard shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a 21-inch-diameter (533 mm) sphere and shall comply with the loading requirements for guards specified in the *International Building Code*.

SECTION 307 (IFGC)
CONDENSATE DISPOSAL

307.1 Evaporators and cooling coils. Condensate drainage systems shall be provided for *equipment* and appliances containing evaporators and cooling coils in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code.*

307.2 Fuel-burning appliances. Liquid combustion byproducts of condensing appliances shall be collected and discharged to an *approved* plumbing fixture or disposal area in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Condensate *piping* shall be of *approved* corrosion-resistant material and shall not be smaller than the drain connection on the *appliance*. Such *piping* shall maintain a minimum slope in the direction of discharge of not less than one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope).

[M] 307.3 Drain pipe materials and sizes. Components of the condensate disposal system shall be cast iron, galvanized steel, copper, cross-linked polyethylene, polybutylene, polyethylene, ABS, CPVC or PVC pipe or tubing. All components shall be selected for the pressure and temperature rating of the installation. Joints and connections shall be made in accordance with the applicable provisions of Chapter 7 of the *International Plumbing Code* relative to the material type. Condensate waste and drain line size shall be not less than $^3/_4$-inch (19 mm) internal diameter and shall not decrease in size from the drain pan connection to the place of condensate disposal. Where the drain pipes from more than one unit are manifolded together for condensate drainage, the pipe or tubing shall be sized in accordance with an *approved* method.

307.4 Traps. Condensate drains shall be trapped as required by the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer.

307.5 Auxiliary drain pan. Category IV condensing appliances shall be provided with an auxiliary drain pan where damage to any building component will occur as a result of stoppage in the condensate drainage system. Such pan shall be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 307 of the *International Mechanical Code.*

Exception: An auxiliary drain pan shall not be required for appliances that automatically shut down operation in the event of a stoppage in the condensate drainage system.

SECTION 308 (IFGS) CLEARANCE REDUCTION

308.1 Scope. This section shall govern the reduction in required clearances to *combustible materials*, including gypsum board, and *combustible assemblies* for chimneys, vents, appliances, devices and equipment. Clearance requirements for air-conditioning equipment and central heating boilers and furnaces shall comply with Sections 308.3 and 308.4.

308.2 Reduction table. The allowable *clearance* reduction shall be based on one of the methods specified in Table 308.2 or shall utilize an assembly *listed* for such application. Where required clearances are not listed in Table 308.2, the reduced clearances shall be determined by linear interpolation between the distances listed in the table. Reduced clearances shall not be derived by extrapolation below the range of the table. The reduction of the required clearances to combustibles for *listed* and *labeled* appliances and *equipment* shall be in accordance with the requirements of this section except that such clearances shall not be reduced where reduction is specifically prohibited by the terms of the *appliance* or *equipment* listing [see Figures 308.2(1) through 308.2(3)].

TABLE 308.2 [a through k]
REDUCTION OF CLEARANCES WITH SPECIFIED FORMS OF PROTECTION

TYPE OF PROTECTION APPLIED TO AND COVERING ALL SURFACES OF COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL WITHIN THE DISTANCE SPECIFIED AS THE REQUIRED CLEARANCE WITH NO PROTECTION [see Figures 308.2(1), 308.2(2), and 308.2(3)]	WHERE THE REQUIRED CLEARANCE WITH NO PROTECTION FROM APPLIANCE, VENT CONNECTOR, OR SINGLE-WALL METAL PIPE IS: (inches)									
	36		18		12		9		6	
	Allowable clearances with specified protection (inches)									
	Use Column 1 for clearances above appliance or horizontal connector. Use Column 2 for clearances from appliance, vertical connector and single-wall metal pipe.									
	Above Col. 1	Sides and rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and rear Col. 2
1. $3^1/_2$-inch-thick masonry wall without ventilated airspace	—	24	—	12	—	9	—	6	—	5
2. $^1/_2$-inch insulation board over 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts	24	18	12	9	9	6	6	5	4	3
3. 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal over 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts reinforced with wire on rear face with ventilated airspace	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
4. $3^1/_2$-inch-thick masonry wall with ventilated airspace	—	12	—	6	—	6	—	6	—	6
5. 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	2
6. $^1/_2$-inch-thick insulation board with ventilated airspace	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
7. 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace over 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
8. 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts sandwiched between two sheets 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F - 32)/1.8], 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/m^3, 1 Btu per inch per square foot per hour per °F = 0.144 W/m^2 · K.

a. Reduction of clearances from *combustible materials* shall not interfere with combustion air, draft hood clearance and relief, and accessibility of servicing.

b. All clearances shall be measured from the outer surface of the *combustible material* to the nearest point on the surface of the appliance, disregarding any intervening protection applied to the *combustible material*.

c. Spacers and ties shall be of *noncombustible material*. No spacer or tie shall be used directly opposite an appliance or connector.

d. For all clearance reduction systems using a ventilated airspace, adequate provision for air circulation shall be provided as described [see Figures 308.2(2) and 308.2(3)].

e. There shall be at least 1 inch between clearance reduction systems and combustible walls and ceilings for reduction systems using ventilated airspace.

f. Where a wall protector is mounted on a single flat wall away from corners, it shall have a minimum 1-inch air gap. To provide air circulation, the bottom and top edges, or only the side and top edges, or all edges shall be left open.

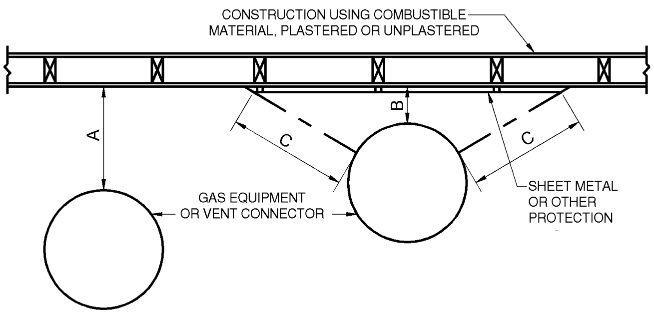
g. Mineral wool batts (blanket or board) shall have a minimum density of 8 pounds per cubic foot and a minimum melting point of 1500°F.

h. Insulation material used as part of a clearance reduction system shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu per inch per square foot per hour per °F or less.

i. There shall be at least 1 inch between the appliance and the protector. In no case shall the clearance between the appliance and the combustible surface be reduced below that allowed in this table.

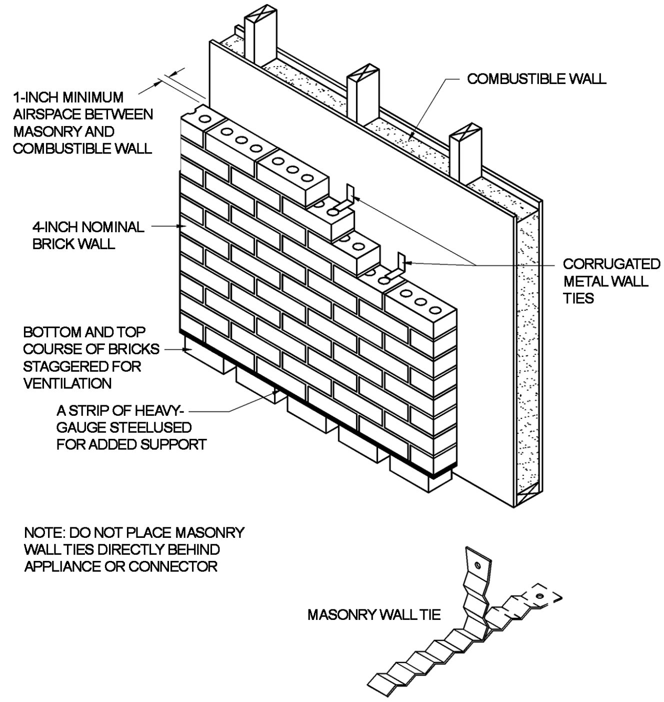
j. All clearances and thicknesses are minimum; larger clearances and thicknesses are acceptable.

k. Listed single-wall connectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.



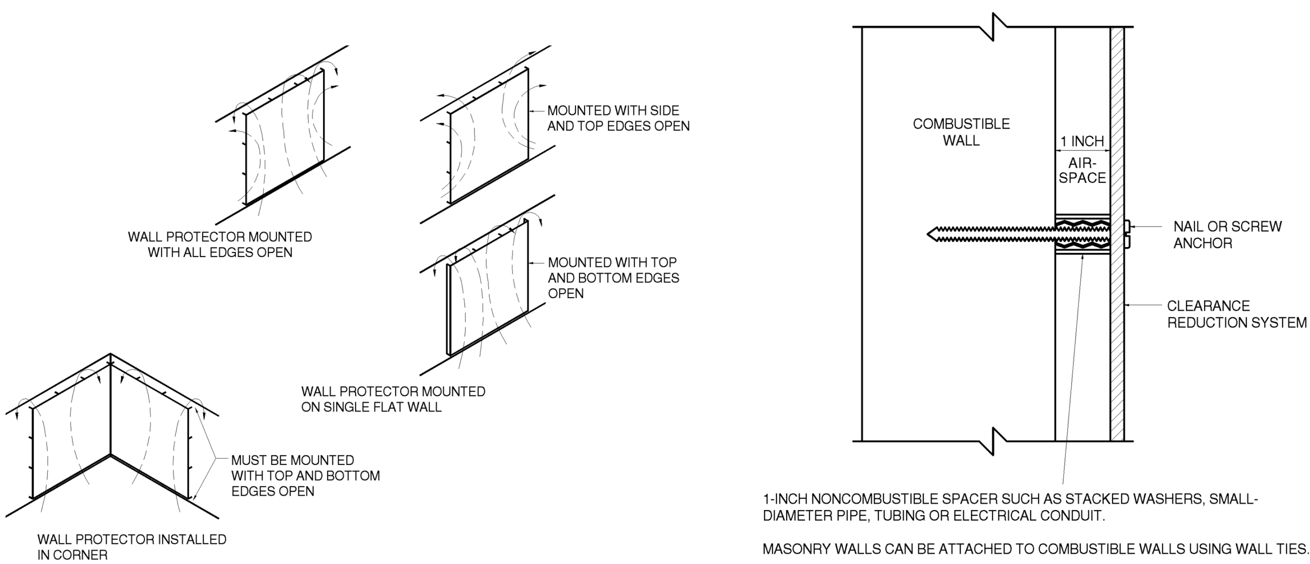
"A" equals the clearance with no protection.
"B" equals the reduced clearance permitted in accordance with Table 308.2. The protection applied to the construction using *combustible material* shall extend far enough in each direction to make "C" equal to "A."

**FIGURE 308.2(1)
EXTENT OF PROTECTION NECESSARY TO REDUCE CLEARANCES FROM APPLIANCE OR VENT CONNECTIONS**



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE 308.2(3)
MASONRY CLEARANCE REDUCTION SYSTEM**



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE 308.2(2)
WALL PROTECTOR CLEARANCE REDUCTION SYSTEM**

308.3 Clearances for indoor air-conditioning appliances. *Clearance* requirements for indoor air-conditioning appliances shall comply with Sections 308.3.1 through 308.3.4.

308.3.1 Appliance clearances. Air-conditioning appliances shall be installed with clearances in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

308.3.2 Clearance reduction. Air-conditioning appliances shall be permitted to be installed with reduced clearances to *combustible material*, provided that the *combustible material* or *appliance* is protected as described in Table 308.2 and such reduction is allowed by the manufacturer's instructions.

308.3.3 Plenum clearances. Where the *furnace plenum* is adjacent to plaster on metal lath or *noncombustible material* attached to *combustible material*, the *clearance* shall be measured to the surface of the plaster or other noncombustible finish where the *clearance* specified is 2 inches (51 mm) or less.

308.3.4 Clearance from supply ducts. Supply air ducts connecting to listed central heating furnaces shall have the same minimum clearance to combustibles as required for the furnace supply plenum for a distance of not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the supply plenum. Clearance is not required beyond the 3-foot (914 mm) distance.

308.4 Central-heating boilers and furnaces. *Clearance* requirements for central-heating boilers and furnaces shall comply with Sections 308.4.1 through 308.4.5. The *clearance* to these appliances shall not interfere with *combustion air*; draft hood *clearance* and relief; and accessibility for servicing.

308.4.1 Appliance clearances. Central-heating furnaces and low-pressure boilers shall be installed with clearances in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

308.4.2 Clearance reduction. Central-heating furnaces and low-pressure boilers shall be permitted to be installed with reduced clearances to *combustible material* provided that the *combustible material* or *appliance* is protected as described in Table 308.2 and such reduction is allowed by the manufacturer's instructions.

308.4.3 Clearance for servicing appliances. Front *clearance* shall be sufficient for servicing the burner and the furnace or boiler.

308.4.4 Plenum clearances. Where the *furnace plenum* is adjacent to plaster on metal lath or *noncombustible material* attached to *combustible material*, the *clearance* shall be measured to the surface of the plaster or other noncombustible finish where the *clearance* specified is 2 inches (51 mm) or less.

308.4.5 Clearance from supply ducts. Supply air ducts connecting to listed central heating furnaces shall have the same minimum clearance to combustibles as required for the furnace supply plenum for a distance of not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the supply plenum. Clearance is not required beyond the 3-foot (914 mm) distance.

SECTION 309 (IFGC) ELECTRICAL

309.1 Grounding. Gas *piping* shall not be used as a grounding electrode.

309.2 Connections. Electrical connections between appliances and the building wiring, including the grounding of the appliances, shall conform to NFPA 70.

SECTION 310 (IFGS) ELECTRICAL BONDING

310.1 Pipe and tubing other than CSST. Each above-ground portion of a gas *piping* system other than corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) that is likely to become energized shall be electrically continuous and bonded to an effective ground-fault current path. Gas *piping* other than CSST shall be considered to be bonded where it is connected to appliances that are connected to the *equipment* grounding conductor of the circuit supplying that *appliance*.

310.1.1 CSST. Corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) gas *piping* systems shall be bonded to the electrical service grounding electrode system. The bonding jumper shall connect to a metallic pipe or fitting between the *point of delivery* and the first downstream CSST fitting. The bonding jumper shall be not smaller than 6 AWG copper wire or equivalent. Gas piping systems that contain one or more segments of CSST shall be bonded in accordance with this section.

CHAPTER 4

GAS PIPING INSTALLATIONS

SECTION 401 (IFGC) GENERAL

401.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, installation, modification and maintenance of *piping* systems. The applicability of this code to *piping* systems extends from the *point of delivery* to the connections with the *appliances* and includes the design, materials, components, fabrication, assembly, installation, testing, inspection, operation and maintenance of such *piping* systems.

401.1.1 Utility piping systems located within buildings. Utility service *piping* located within buildings shall be installed in accordance with the structural safety and fire protection provisions of the International Building Code.

401.2 Liquefied petroleum gas storage. The storage system for liquefied petroleum gas shall be designed and installed in accordance with the International Fire Code and NFPA 58.

401.3 Modifications to existing systems. In modifying or adding to existing *piping* systems, sizes shall be maintained in accordance with this chapter.

401.4 Additional appliances. Where an additional *appliance* is to be served, the existing *piping* shall be checked to determine if it has adequate capacity for all *appliances* served. If inadequate, the existing system shall be enlarged as required or separate *piping* of adequate capacity shall be provided.

401.5 Identification. For other than steel pipe, exposed *piping* shall be identified by a yellow label marked "Gas" in black letters. The marking shall be spaced at intervals not exceeding 5 feet (1524 mm). The marking shall not be required on pipe located in the same room as the *appliance* served.

401.6 Interconnections. Where two or more meters are installed on the same premises but supply separate consumers, the *piping* systems shall not be interconnected on the *outlet* side of the meters.

401.7 Piping meter identification. *Piping* from multiple meter installations shall be marked with an *approved* permanent identification by the installer so that the *piping* system supplied by each meter is readily identifiable.

401.8 Minimum sizes. All pipe utilized for the installation, extension and *alteration* of any *piping* system shall be sized to supply the full number of outlets for the intended purpose and shall be sized in accordance with Section 402.

401.9 Identification. Each length of pipe and tubing and each pipe fitting, utilized in a fuel gas system, shall bear the identification of the manufacturer.

401.10 Third-party testing and certification. All piping, tubing and fittings shall comply with the applicable referenced standards, specifications and performance criteria of this code and shall be identified in accordance with Section 401.9. Piping, tubing and fittings shall either be tested by an approved third-party testing agency or certified by an approved *third-party certification agency*.

SECTION 402 (IFGS) PIPE SIZING

402.1 General considerations. Piping systems shall be of such size and so installed as to provide a supply of gas sufficient to meet the maximum demand and supply gas to each *appliance* inlet at not less than the minimum supply pressure required by the *appliance*.

402.2 Maximum gas demand. The volumetric flow rate of gas to be provided, in cubic feet per hour, shall be calculated using the manufacturer's input ratings of the *appliances* served adjusted for altitude. Where an input rating is not indicated, the gas supplier, *appliance* manufacturer or a qualified agency shall be contacted, or the rating from Table 402.2 shall be used for estimating the volumetric flow rate of gas to be supplied.

The total connected hourly load shall be used as the basis for pipe sizing, assuming that all appliances could be operating at full capacity simultaneously. Where a diversity of load can be established, pipe sizing shall be permitted to be based on such loads.

402.3 Sizing. Gas *piping* shall be sized in accordance with one of the following:

1. Pipe sizing tables or sizing equations in accordance with Section 402.4.
2. The sizing tables included in a *listed piping* system's manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. Other *approved* engineering methods.

402.4 Sizing tables and equations. Where Tables 402.4(1) through 402.4(35) are used to size *piping* or tubing, the pipe length shall be determined in accordance with Section 402.4.1, 402.4.2 or 402.4.3.

Where Equations 4-1 and 4-2 are used to size *piping* or tubing, the pipe or tubing shall have smooth inside walls and the pipe length shall be determined in accordance with Section 402.4.1, 402.4.2 or 402.4.3.

1. Low-pressure gas equation [Less than $1^1/_2$ pounds per square inch (psi) (10.3 kPa)]:

$$D = \frac{Q^{0.381}}{19.17\left(\frac{\Delta H}{C_r \times L}\right)^{0.206}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-1)}$$

2. High-pressure gas equation [$1^1/_2$ psi (10.3 kPa) and above]:

$$D = \frac{Q^{0.381}}{18.93\left[\frac{(P_1^2 - P_2^2) \times Y}{C_r \times L}\right]^{0.206}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-2)}$$

where:

D = Inside diameter of pipe, inches (mm).

Q = Input rate *appliance*(s), cubic feet per hour at 60°F (16°C) and 30-inch mercury column.

P_1 = Upstream pressure, psia (P_1 + 14.7).

P_2 = Downstream pressure, psia (P_2 + 14.7).

L = Equivalent length of pipe, feet.

ΔH = Pressure drop, inch water column (27.7 inch water column = 1 psi).

TABLE 402.4
C_r AND Y VALUES FOR NATURAL GAS AND UNDILUTED PROPANE AT STANDARD CONDITIONS

GAS	EQUATION FACTORS	
	C_r	Y
Natural gas	0.6094	0.9992
Undiluted propane	1.2462	0.9910

For SI: 1 cubic foot = 0.028 m^3, 1 foot = 305 mm,
1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.293 W.

402.4.1 Longest length method. The pipe size of each section of gas *piping* shall be determined using the longest length of *piping* from the *point of delivery* to the most remote *outlet* and the load of the section.

402.4.2 Branch length method. Pipe shall be sized as follows:

1. Pipe size of each section of the longest pipe run from the *point of delivery* to the most remote *outlet* shall be determined using the longest run of *piping* and the load of the section.
2. The pipe size of each section of branch *piping* not previously sized shall be determined using the length of *piping* from the *point of delivery* to the most remote *outlet* in each branch and the load of the section.

402.4.3 Hybrid pressure. The pipe size for each section of higher pressure gas *piping* shall be determined using the longest length of *piping* from the *point of delivery* to the most remote line pressure regulator. The pipe size from the line pressure regulator to each *outlet* shall be determined using the length of *piping* from the regulator to the most remote outlet served by the regulator.

402.5 Allowable pressure drop. The design pressure loss in any *piping* system under maximum probable flow conditions, from the *point of delivery* to the inlet connection of the *appliance*, shall be such that the supply pressure at the *appliance* is greater than or equal to the minimum pressure required by the *appliance*.

402.6 Maximum design operating pressure. The maximum design operating pressure for *piping* systems located inside buildings shall not exceed 5 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (34 kPa gauge) except where one or more of the following conditions are met:

1. The *piping* system is welded.
2. The *piping* is located in a ventilated chase or otherwise enclosed for protection against accidental gas accumulation.
3. The *piping* is located inside buildings or separate areas of buildings used exclusively for:
   3.1. Industrial processing or heating;
   3.2. Research;
   3.3. Warehousing; or
   3.4. Boiler or mechanical rooms.
4. The *piping* is a temporary installation for buildings under construction.
5. The piping serves appliances or *equipment* used for agricultural purposes.
6. The *piping* system is an LP-gas *piping* system with a design operating pressure greater than 20 psi (137.9 kPa) and complies with NFPA 58.

402.6.1 Liquefied petroleum gas systems. LP-gas systems designed to operate below -5°F (-21°C) or with butane or a propane-butane mix shall be designed to either accommodate liquid LP-gas or prevent LP-gas vapor from condensing into a liquid.

TABLE 402.2
APPROXIMATE GAS INPUT FOR TYPICAL APPLIANCES

APPLIANCE	INPUT BTU/H (Approx.)
Space Heating Units	
Hydronic boiler	
Single family	100,000
Multifamily, per unit	60,000
Warm-air furnace	
Single family	100,000
Multifamily, per unit	60,000
Space and Water Heating Units	
Hydronic boiler	
Single family	120,000
Multifamily, per unit	75,000
Water Heating Appliances	
Water heater, automatic instantaneous	
Capacity at 2 gal./minute	142,800
Capacity at 4 gal./minute	285,000
Capacity at 6 gal./minute	428,400
Water heater, automatic storage, 30- to 40-gal. tank	35,000
Water heater, automatic storage, 50-gal. tank	50,000
Water heater, domestic, circulating or side-arm	35,000
Cooking Appliances	
Built-in oven or broiler unit, domestic	25,000
Built-in top unit, domestic	40,000
Range, free-standing, domestic	65,000
Other Appliances	
Barbecue	40,000
Clothes dryer, Type 1 (domestic)	35,000
Gas fireplace, direct-vent	40,000
Gas light	2,500
Gas log	80,000
Refrigerator	3,000

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.293 W, 1 gallon = 3.785 L,
1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	0.3 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(1) SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

PIPE SIZE (inch)														
Nominal	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**	**2 1/2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**8**	**10**	**12**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**	**5.047**	**6.065**	**7.981**	**10.020**	**11.938**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour**													
10	131	273	514	1,060	1,580	3,050	4,860	8,580	17,500	31,700	51,300	105,000	191,000	303,000
20	90	188	353	726	1,090	2,090	3,340	5,900	12,000	21,800	35,300	72,400	132,000	208,000
30	72	151	284	583	873	1,680	2,680	4,740	9,660	17,500	28,300	58,200	106,000	167,000
40	62	129	243	499	747	1,440	2,290	4,050	8,270	15,000	24,200	49,800	90,400	143,000
50	55	114	215	442	662	1,280	2,030	3,590	7,330	13,300	21,500	44,100	80,100	127,000
60	50	104	195	400	600	1,160	1,840	3,260	6,640	12,000	19,500	40,000	72,600	115,000
70	46	95	179	368	552	1,060	1,690	3,000	6,110	11,100	17,900	36,800	66,800	106,000
80	42	89	167	343	514	989	1,580	2,790	5,680	10,300	16,700	34,200	62,100	98,400
90	40	83	157	322	482	928	1,480	2,610	5,330	9,650	15,600	32,100	58,300	92,300
100	38	79	148	304	455	877	1,400	2,470	5,040	9,110	14,800	30,300	55,100	87,200
125	33	70	131	269	403	777	1,240	2,190	4,460	8,080	13,100	26,900	48,800	77,300
150	30	63	119	244	366	704	1,120	1,980	4,050	7,320	11,900	24,300	44,200	70,000
175	28	58	109	224	336	648	1,030	1,820	3,720	6,730	10,900	22,400	40,700	64,400
200	26	54	102	209	313	602	960	1,700	3,460	6,260	10,100	20,800	37,900	59,900
250	23	48	90	185	277	534	851	1,500	3,070	5,550	8,990	18,500	33,500	53,100
300	21	43	82	168	251	484	771	1,360	2,780	5,030	8,150	16,700	30,400	48,100
350	19	40	75	154	231	445	709	1,250	2,560	4,630	7,490	15,400	28,000	44,300
400	18	37	70	143	215	414	660	1,170	2,380	4,310	6,970	14,300	26,000	41,200
450	17	35	66	135	202	389	619	1,090	2,230	4,040	6,540	13,400	24,400	38,600
500	16	33	62	127	191	367	585	1,030	2,110	3,820	6,180	12,700	23,100	36,500
550	15	31	59	121	181	349	556	982	2,000	3,620	5,870	12,100	21,900	34,700
600	14	30	56	115	173	333	530	937	1,910	3,460	5,600	11,500	20,900	33,100
650	14	29	54	110	165	318	508	897	1,830	3,310	5,360	11,000	20,000	31,700
700	13	27	52	106	159	306	488	862	1,760	3,180	5,150	10,600	19,200	30,400
750	13	26	50	102	153	295	470	830	1,690	3,060	4,960	10,200	18,500	29,300
800	12	26	48	99	148	285	454	802	1,640	2,960	4,790	9,840	17,900	28,300
850	12	25	46	95	143	275	439	776	1,580	2,860	4,640	9,530	17,300	27,400
900	11	24	45	93	139	267	426	752	1,530	2,780	4,500	9,240	16,800	26,600
950	11	23	44	90	135	259	413	731	1,490	2,700	4,370	8,970	16,300	25,800
1,000	11	23	43	87	131	252	402	711	1,450	2,620	4,250	8,720	15,800	25,100
1,100	10	21	40	83	124	240	382	675	1,380	2,490	4,030	8,290	15,100	23,800
1,200	NA	20	39	79	119	229	364	644	1,310	2,380	3,850	7,910	14,400	22,700
1,300	NA	20	37	76	114	219	349	617	1,260	2,280	3,680	7,570	13,700	21,800
1,400	NA	19	35	73	109	210	335	592	1,210	2,190	3,540	7,270	13,200	20,900
1,500	NA	18	34	70	105	203	323	571	1,160	2,110	3,410	7,010	12,700	20,100
1,600	NA	18	33	68	102	196	312	551	1,120	2,030	3,290	6,770	12,300	19,500
1,700	NA	17	32	66	98	189	302	533	1,090	1,970	3,190	6,550	11,900	18,800
1,800	NA	16	31	64	95	184	293	517	1,050	1,910	3,090	6,350	11,500	18,300
1,900	NA	16	30	62	93	178	284	502	1,020	1,850	3,000	6,170	11,200	17,700
2,000	NA	16	29	60	90	173	276	488	1,000	1,800	2,920	6,000	10,900	17,200

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(2)
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

	PIPE SIZE (inch)													
Nominal	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**	**2 1/2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**8**	**10**	**12**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**	**5.047**	**6.065**	**7.981**	**10.020**	**11.938**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour**													
10	172	360	678	1,390	2,090	4,020	6,400	11,300	23,100	41,800	67,600	139,000	252,000	399,000
20	118	247	466	957	1,430	2,760	4,400	7,780	15,900	28,700	46,500	95,500	173,000	275,000
30	95	199	374	768	1,150	2,220	3,530	6,250	12,700	23,000	37,300	76,700	139,000	220,000
40	81	170	320	657	985	1,900	3,020	5,350	10,900	19,700	31,900	65,600	119,000	189,000
50	72	151	284	583	873	1,680	2,680	4,740	9,660	17,500	28,300	58,200	106,000	167,000
60	65	137	257	528	791	1,520	2,430	4,290	8,760	15,800	25,600	52,700	95,700	152,000
70	60	126	237	486	728	1,400	2,230	3,950	8,050	14,600	23,600	48,500	88,100	139,000
80	56	117	220	452	677	1,300	2,080	3,670	7,490	13,600	22,000	45,100	81,900	130,000
90	52	110	207	424	635	1,220	1,950	3,450	7,030	12,700	20,600	42,300	76,900	122,000
100	50	104	195	400	600	1,160	1,840	3,260	6,640	12,000	19,500	40,000	72,600	115,000
125	44	92	173	355	532	1,020	1,630	2,890	5,890	10,600	17,200	35,400	64,300	102,000
150	40	83	157	322	482	928	1,480	2,610	5,330	9,650	15,600	32,100	58,300	92,300
175	37	77	144	296	443	854	1,360	2,410	4,910	8,880	14,400	29,500	53,600	84,900
200	34	71	134	275	412	794	1,270	2,240	4,560	8,260	13,400	27,500	49,900	79,000
250	30	63	119	244	366	704	1,120	1,980	4,050	7,320	11,900	24,300	44,200	70,000
300	27	57	108	221	331	638	1,020	1,800	3,670	6,630	10,700	22,100	40,100	63,400
350	25	53	99	203	305	587	935	1,650	3,370	6,100	9,880	20,300	36,900	58,400
400	23	49	92	189	283	546	870	1,540	3,140	5,680	9,190	18,900	34,300	54,300
450	22	46	86	177	266	512	816	1,440	2,940	5,330	8,620	17,700	32,200	50,900
500	21	43	82	168	251	484	771	1,360	2,780	5,030	8,150	16,700	30,400	48,100
550	20	41	78	159	239	459	732	1,290	2,640	4,780	7,740	15,900	28,900	45,700
600	19	39	74	152	228	438	699	1,240	2,520	4,560	7,380	15,200	27,500	43,600
650	18	38	71	145	218	420	669	1,180	2,410	4,360	7,070	14,500	26,400	41,800
700	17	36	68	140	209	403	643	1,140	2,320	4,190	6,790	14,000	25,300	40,100
750	17	35	66	135	202	389	619	1,090	2,230	4,040	6,540	13,400	24,400	38,600
800	16	34	63	130	195	375	598	1,060	2,160	3,900	6,320	13,000	23,600	37,300
850	16	33	61	126	189	363	579	1,020	2,090	3,780	6,110	12,600	22,800	36,100
900	15	32	59	122	183	352	561	992	2,020	3,660	5,930	12,200	22,100	35,000
950	15	31	58	118	178	342	545	963	1,960	3,550	5,760	11,800	21,500	34,000
1,000	14	30	56	115	173	333	530	937	1,910	3,460	5,600	11,500	20,900	33,100
1,100	14	28	53	109	164	316	503	890	1,810	3,280	5,320	10,900	19,800	31,400
1,200	13	27	51	104	156	301	480	849	1,730	3,130	5,070	10,400	18,900	30,000
1,300	12	26	49	100	150	289	460	813	1,660	3,000	4,860	9,980	18,100	28,700
1,400	12	25	47	96	144	277	442	781	1,590	2,880	4,670	9,590	17,400	27,600
1,500	11	24	45	93	139	267	426	752	1,530	2,780	4,500	9,240	16,800	26,600
1,600	11	23	44	89	134	258	411	727	1,480	2,680	4,340	8,920	16,200	25,600
1,700	11	22	42	86	130	250	398	703	1,430	2,590	4,200	8,630	15,700	24,800
1,800	10	22	41	84	126	242	386	682	1,390	2,520	4,070	8,370	15,200	24,100
1,900	10	21	40	81	122	235	375	662	1,350	2,440	3,960	8,130	14,800	23,400
2,000	NA	20	39	79	119	229	364	644	1,310	2,380	3,850	7,910	14,400	22,700

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 402.4(3) SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	3.0 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

INTENDED USE: Initial supply pressure of 8.0 inches w.c. or greater									
PIPE SIZE (inch)									
Nominal	**$^1/_2$**	**$^3/_4$**	**1**	**$1^1/_4$**	**$1^1/_2$**	**2**	**$2^1/_2$**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour**								
10	454	949	1,787	3,669	5,497	10,588	16,875	29,832	43,678
20	312	652	1,228	2,522	3,778	7,277	11,598	20,503	30,020
30	250	524	986	2,025	3,034	5,844	9,314	16,465	24,107
40	214	448	844	1,733	2,597	5,001	7,971	14,092	20,632
50	190	397	748	1,536	2,302	4,433	7,065	12,489	18,286
60	172	360	678	1,392	2,085	4,016	6,401	11,316	16,569
70	158	331	624	1,280	1,919	3,695	5,889	10,411	15,243
80	147	308	580	1,191	1,785	3,437	5,479	9,685	14,181
90	138	289	544	1,118	1,675	3,225	5,140	9,087	13,305
100	131	273	514	1,056	1,582	3,046	4,856	8,584	12,568
125	116	242	456	936	1,402	2,700	4,303	7,608	11,139
150	105	219	413	848	1,270	2,446	3,899	6,893	10,092
175	96	202	380	780	1,169	2,251	3,587	6,342	9,285
200	90	188	353	726	1,087	2,094	3,337	5,900	8,638
250	80	166	313	643	964	1,856	2,958	5,229	7,656
300	72	151	284	583	873	1,681	2,680	4,738	6,937
350	66	139	261	536	803	1,547	2,456	4,359	6,382
400	62	129	243	499	747	1,439	2,294	4,055	5,937
450	58	121	228	468	701	1,350	2,152	3,804	5,570
500	55	114	215	442	662	1,275	2,033	3,594	5,262
550	52	109	204	420	629	1,211	1,931	3,413	4,997
600	50	104	195	400	600	1,156	1,842	3,256	4,767
650	47	99	187	384	575	1,107	1,764	3,118	4,565
700	46	95	179	368	552	1,063	1,695	2,996	4,386
750	44	92	173	355	532	1,024	1,632	2,886	4,225
800	42	89	167	343	514	989	1,576	2,787	4,080
850	41	86	162	332	497	957	1,526	2,697	3,949
900	40	83	157	322	482	928	1,479	2,615	3,828
950	39	81	152	312	468	901	1,436	2,539	3,718
1,000	38	79	148	304	455	877	1,397	2,470	3,616
1,100	36	75	141	289	432	833	1,327	2,346	3,435
1,200	34	71	134	275	412	794	1,266	2,238	3,277
1,300	33	68	128	264	395	761	1,212	2,143	3,138
1,400	31	65	123	253	379	731	1,165	2,059	3,014
1,500	30	63	119	244	366	704	1,122	1,983	2,904
1,600	29	61	115	236	353	680	1,083	1,915	2,804
1,700	28	59	111	228	342	658	1,048	1,854	2,714
1,800	27	57	108	221	331	638	1,017	1,797	2,631
1,900	27	56	105	215	322	619	987	1,745	2,555
2,000	26	54	102	209	313	602	960	1,698	2,485

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	6.0 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(4)
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

INTENDED USE: Initial supply pressure of 11.0 inches w.c. or greater									
PIPE SIZE (inch)									
Nominal	**$^1/_2$**	**$^3/_4$**	**1**	**$1^1/_4$**	**$1^1/_2$**	**2**	**$2^1/_2$**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour**								
10	660	1,380	2,600	5,338	7,999	15,405	24,553	43,405	63,551
20	454	949	1,787	3,669	5,497	10,588	16,875	29,832	43,678
30	364	762	1,435	2,946	4,415	8,502	13,551	23,956	35,075
40	312	652	1,228	2,522	3,778	7,277	11,598	20,503	30,020
50	276	578	1,089	2,235	3,349	6,449	10,279	18,172	26,606
60	250	524	986	2,025	3,034	5,844	9,314	16,465	24,107
70	230	482	907	1,863	2,791	5,376	8,568	15,147	22,178
80	214	448	844	1,733	2,597	5,001	7,971	14,092	20,632
90	201	420	792	1,626	2,437	4,693	7,479	13,222	19,359
100	190	397	748	1,536	2,302	4,433	7,065	12,489	18,286
125	168	352	663	1,361	2,040	3,928	6,261	11,069	16,207
150	153	319	601	1,234	1,848	3,559	5,673	10,029	14,684
175	140	293	553	1,135	1,700	3,275	5,219	9,227	13,509
200	131	273	514	1,056	1,582	3,046	4,856	8,584	12,568
250	116	242	456	936	1,402	2,700	4,303	7,608	11,139
300	105	219	413	848	1,270	2,446	3,899	6,893	10,093
350	96	202	380	780	1,169	2,251	3,587	6,342	9,285
400	90	188	353	726	1,087	2,094	3,337	5,900	8,638
450	84	176	332	681	1,020	1,965	3,131	5,535	8,105
500	80	166	313	643	964	1,856	2,958	5,229	7,656
550	76	158	297	611	915	1,762	2,809	4,966	7,271
600	72	151	284	583	873	1,681	2,680	4,738	6,937
650	69	144	272	558	836	1,610	2,566	4,537	6,643
700	66	139	261	536	803	1,547	2,465	4,359	6,382
750	64	134	252	516	774	1,490	2,375	4,199	6,148
800	62	129	243	499	747	1,439	2,294	4,055	5,937
850	60	125	235	483	723	1,393	2,220	3,924	5,745
900	58	121	228	468	701	1,350	2,152	3,804	5,570
950	56	118	221	454	681	1,311	2,090	3,695	5,410
1,000	55	114	215	442	662	1,275	2,033	3,594	5,262
1,100	52	109	204	420	629	1,211	1,931	3,413	4,997
1,200	50	104	195	400	600	1,156	1,842	3,256	4,767
1,300	47	99	187	384	575	1,107	1,764	3,118	4,565
1,400	46	95	179	368	552	1,063	1,695	2,996	4,386
1,500	44	92	173	355	532	1,024	1,632	2,886	4,225
1,600	42	89	167	343	514	989	1,576	2,787	4,080
1,700	41	86	162	332	497	957	1,526	2,697	3,949
1,800	40	83	157	322	482	928	1,479	2,615	3,828
1,900	39	81	152	312	468	901	1,436	2,539	3,718
2,000	38	79	148	304	455	877	1,397	2,470	3,616

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(5)
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

PIPE SIZE (inch)									
Nominal	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**	**2 1/2**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour**								
10	1,510	3,040	5,560	11,400	17,100	32,900	52,500	92,800	189,000
20	1,070	2,150	3,930	8,070	12,100	23,300	37,100	65,600	134,000
30	869	1,760	3,210	6,590	9,880	19,000	30,300	53,600	109,000
40	753	1,520	2,780	5,710	8,550	16,500	26,300	46,400	94,700
50	673	1,360	2,490	5,110	7,650	14,700	23,500	41,500	84,700
60	615	1,240	2,270	4,660	6,980	13,500	21,400	37,900	77,300
70	569	1,150	2,100	4,320	6,470	12,500	19,900	35,100	71,600
80	532	1,080	1,970	4,040	6,050	11,700	18,600	32,800	67,000
90	502	1,010	1,850	3,810	5,700	11,000	17,500	30,900	63,100
100	462	934	1,710	3,510	5,260	10,100	16,100	28,500	58,200
125	414	836	1,530	3,140	4,700	9,060	14,400	25,500	52,100
150	372	751	1,370	2,820	4,220	8,130	13,000	22,900	46,700
175	344	695	1,270	2,601	3,910	7,530	12,000	21,200	43,300
200	318	642	1,170	2,410	3,610	6,960	11,100	19,600	40,000
250	279	583	1,040	2,140	3,210	6,180	9,850	17,400	35,500
300	253	528	945	1,940	2,910	5,600	8,920	15,800	32,200
350	232	486	869	1,790	2,670	5,150	8,210	14,500	29,600
400	216	452	809	1,660	2,490	4,790	7,640	13,500	27,500
450	203	424	759	1,560	2,330	4,500	7,170	12,700	25,800
500	192	401	717	1,470	2,210	4,250	6,770	12,000	24,400
550	182	381	681	1,400	2,090	4,030	6,430	11,400	23,200
600	174	363	650	1,330	2,000	3,850	6,130	10,800	22,100
650	166	348	622	1,280	1,910	3,680	5,870	10,400	21,200
700	160	334	598	1,230	1,840	3,540	5,640	9,970	20,300
750	154	322	576	1,180	1,770	3,410	5,440	9,610	19,600
800	149	311	556	1,140	1,710	3,290	5,250	9,280	18,900
850	144	301	538	1,100	1,650	3,190	5,080	8,980	18,300
900	139	292	522	1,070	1,600	3,090	4,930	8,710	17,800
950	135	283	507	1,040	1,560	3,000	4,780	8,460	17,200
1,000	132	275	493	1,010	1,520	2,920	4,650	8,220	16,800
1,100	125	262	468	960	1,440	2,770	4,420	7,810	15,900
1,200	119	250	446	917	1,370	2,640	4,220	7,450	15,200
1,300	114	239	427	878	1,320	2,530	4,040	7,140	14,600
1,400	110	230	411	843	1,260	2,430	3,880	6,860	14,000
1,500	106	221	396	812	1,220	2,340	3,740	6,600	13,500
1,600	102	214	382	784	1,180	2,260	3,610	6,380	13,000
1,700	99	207	370	759	1,140	2,190	3,490	6,170	12,600
1,800	96	200	358	736	1,100	2,120	3,390	5,980	12,200
1,900	93	195	348	715	1,070	2,060	3,290	5,810	11,900
2,000	91	189	339	695	1,040	2,010	3,200	5,650	11,500

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	3.0 psi
Pressure Drop	2.0 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(6)
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

PIPE SIZE (inch)									
Nominal	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**	**2 1/2**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour**								
10	2,350	4,920	9,270	19,000	28,500	54,900	87,500	155,000	316,000
20	1,620	3,380	6,370	13,100	19,600	37,700	60,100	106,000	217,000
30	1,300	2,720	5,110	10,500	15,700	30,300	48,300	85,400	174,000
40	1,110	2,320	4,380	8,990	13,500	25,900	41,300	73,100	149,000
50	985	2,060	3,880	7,970	11,900	23,000	36,600	64,800	132,000
60	892	1,870	3,520	7,220	10,800	20,800	33,200	58,700	120,000
70	821	1,720	3,230	6,640	9,950	19,200	30,500	54,000	110,000
80	764	1,600	3,010	6,180	9,260	17,800	28,400	50,200	102,000
90	717	1,500	2,820	5,800	8,680	16,700	26,700	47,100	96,100
100	677	1,420	2,670	5,470	8,200	15,800	25,200	44,500	90,800
125	600	1,250	2,360	4,850	7,270	14,000	22,300	39,500	80,500
150	544	1,140	2,140	4,400	6,590	12,700	20,200	35,700	72,900
175	500	1,050	1,970	4,040	6,060	11,700	18,600	32,900	67,100
200	465	973	1,830	3,760	5,640	10,900	17,300	30,600	62,400
250	412	862	1,620	3,330	5,000	9,620	15,300	27,100	55,300
300	374	781	1,470	3,020	4,530	8,720	13,900	24,600	50,100
350	344	719	1,350	2,780	4,170	8,020	12,800	22,600	46,100
400	320	669	1,260	2,590	3,870	7,460	11,900	21,000	42,900
450	300	627	1,180	2,430	3,640	7,000	11,200	19,700	40,200
500	283	593	1,120	2,290	3,430	6,610	10,500	18,600	38,000
550	269	563	1,060	2,180	3,260	6,280	10,000	17,700	36,100
600	257	537	1,010	2,080	3,110	5,990	9,550	16,900	34,400
650	246	514	969	1,990	2,980	5,740	9,150	16,200	33,000
700	236	494	931	1,910	2,860	5,510	8,790	15,500	31,700
750	228	476	897	1,840	2,760	5,310	8,470	15,000	30,500
800	220	460	866	1,780	2,660	5,130	8,180	14,500	29,500
850	213	445	838	1,720	2,580	4,960	7,910	14,000	28,500
900	206	431	812	1,670	2,500	4,810	7,670	13,600	27,700
950	200	419	789	1,620	2,430	4,670	7,450	13,200	26,900
1,000	195	407	767	1,580	2,360	4,550	7,240	12,800	26,100
1,100	185	387	729	1,500	2,240	4,320	6,890	12,200	24,800
1,200	177	369	695	1,430	2,140	4,120	6,570	11,600	23,700
1,300	169	353	666	1,370	2,050	3,940	6,290	11,100	22,700
1,400	162	340	640	1,310	1,970	3,790	6,040	10,700	21,800
1,500	156	327	616	1,270	1,900	3,650	5,820	10,300	21,000
1,600	151	316	595	1,220	1,830	3,530	5,620	10,000	20,300
1,700	146	306	576	1,180	1,770	3,410	5,440	9,610	19,600
1,800	142	296	558	1,150	1,720	3,310	5,270	9,320	19,000
1,900	138	288	542	1,110	1,670	3,210	5,120	9,050	18,400
2,000	134	280	527	1,080	1,620	3,120	4,980	8,800	18,000

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	5.0 psi
Pressure Drop	3.5 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(7) SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

PIPE SIZE (inch)									
Nominal	**$^1/_2$**	**$^3/_4$**	**1**	**$1^1/_4$**	**$1^1/_2$**	**2**	**$2^1/_2$**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour**								
10	3,190	6,430	11,800	24,200	36,200	69,700	111,000	196,000	401,000
20	2,250	4,550	8,320	17,100	25,600	49,300	78,600	139,000	283,000
30	1,840	3,720	6,790	14,000	20,900	40,300	64,200	113,000	231,000
40	1,590	3,220	5,880	12,100	18,100	34,900	55,600	98,200	200,000
50	1,430	2,880	5,260	10,800	16,200	31,200	49,700	87,900	179,000
60	1,300	2,630	4,800	9,860	14,800	28,500	45,400	80,200	164,000
70	1,200	2,430	4,450	9,130	13,700	26,400	42,000	74,300	151,000
80	1,150	2,330	4,260	8,540	12,800	24,700	39,300	69,500	142,000
90	1,060	2,150	3,920	8,050	12,100	23,200	37,000	65,500	134,000
100	979	1,980	3,620	7,430	11,100	21,400	34,200	60,400	123,000
125	876	1,770	3,240	6,640	9,950	19,200	30,600	54,000	110,000
150	786	1,590	2,910	5,960	8,940	17,200	27,400	48,500	98,900
175	728	1,470	2,690	5,520	8,270	15,900	25,400	44,900	91,600
200	673	1,360	2,490	5,100	7,650	14,700	23,500	41,500	84,700
250	558	1,170	2,200	4,510	6,760	13,000	20,800	36,700	74,900
300	506	1,060	1,990	4,090	6,130	11,800	18,800	33,300	67,800
350	465	973	1,830	3,760	5,640	10,900	17,300	30,600	62,400
400	433	905	1,710	3,500	5,250	10,100	16,100	28,500	58,100
450	406	849	1,600	3,290	4,920	9,480	15,100	26,700	54,500
500	384	802	1,510	3,100	4,650	8,950	14,300	25,200	51,500
550	364	762	1,440	2,950	4,420	8,500	13,600	24,000	48,900
600	348	727	1,370	2,810	4,210	8,110	12,900	22,900	46,600
650	333	696	1,310	2,690	4,030	7,770	12,400	21,900	44,600
700	320	669	1,260	2,590	3,880	7,460	11,900	21,000	42,900
750	308	644	1,210	2,490	3,730	7,190	11,500	20,300	41,300
800	298	622	1,170	2,410	3,610	6,940	11,100	19,600	39,900
850	288	602	1,130	2,330	3,490	6,720	10,700	18,900	38,600
900	279	584	1,100	2,260	3,380	6,520	10,400	18,400	37,400
950	271	567	1,070	2,190	3,290	6,330	10,100	17,800	36,400
1,000	264	551	1,040	2,130	3,200	6,150	9,810	17,300	35,400
1,100	250	524	987	2,030	3,030	5,840	9,320	16,500	33,600
1,200	239	500	941	1,930	2,900	5,580	8,890	15,700	32,000
1,300	229	478	901	1,850	2,770	5,340	8,510	15,000	30,700
1,400	220	460	866	1,780	2,660	5,130	8,180	14,500	29,500
1,500	212	443	834	1,710	2,570	4,940	7,880	13,900	28,400
1,600	205	428	806	1,650	2,480	4,770	7,610	13,400	27,400
1,700	198	414	780	1,600	2,400	4,620	7,360	13,000	26,500
1,800	192	401	756	1,550	2,330	4,480	7,140	12,600	25,700
1,900	186	390	734	1,510	2,260	4,350	6,930	12,300	25,000
2,000	181	379	714	1,470	2,200	4,230	6,740	11,900	24,300

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	0.3 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(8) SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

		TUBE SIZE (inch)								
Nominal	**K & L**	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
	ACR	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
Outside		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour**								
10		20	42	85	148	210	448	806	1,270	2,650
20		14	29	58	102	144	308	554	873	1,820
30		11	23	47	82	116	247	445	701	1,460
40		10	20	40	70	99	211	381	600	1,250
50		NA	17	35	62	88	187	337	532	1,110
60		NA	16	32	56	79	170	306	482	1,000
70		NA	14	29	52	73	156	281	443	924
80		NA	13	27	48	68	145	262	413	859
90		NA	13	26	45	64	136	245	387	806
100		NA	12	24	43	60	129	232	366	761
125		NA	11	22	38	53	114	206	324	675
150		NA	10	20	34	48	103	186	294	612
175		NA	NA	18	31	45	95	171	270	563
200		NA	NA	17	29	41	89	159	251	523
250		NA	NA	15	26	37	78	141	223	464
300		NA	NA	13	23	33	71	128	202	420
350		NA	NA	12	22	31	65	118	186	387
400		NA	NA	11	20	28	61	110	173	360
450		NA	NA	11	19	27	57	103	162	338
500		NA	NA	10	18	25	54	97	153	319
550		NA	NA	NA	17	24	51	92	145	303
600		NA	NA	NA	16	23	49	88	139	289
650		NA	NA	NA	15	22	47	84	133	277
700		NA	NA	NA	15	21	45	81	128	266
750		NA	NA	NA	14	20	43	78	123	256
800		NA	NA	NA	14	20	42	75	119	247
850		NA	NA	NA	13	19	40	73	115	239
900		NA	NA	NA	13	18	39	71	111	232
950		NA	NA	NA	13	18	38	69	108	225
1,000		NA	NA	NA	12	17	37	67	105	219
1,100		NA	NA	NA	12	16	35	63	100	208
1,200		NA	NA	NA	11	16	34	60	95	199
1,300		NA	NA	NA	11	15	32	58	91	190
1,400		NA	NA	NA	10	14	31	56	88	183
1,500		NA	NA	NA	NA	14	30	54	84	176
1,600		NA	NA	NA	NA	13	29	52	82	170
1,700		NA	NA	NA	NA	13	28	50	79	164
1,800		NA	NA	NA	NA	13	27	49	77	159
1,900		NA	NA	NA	NA	12	26	47	74	155
2,000		NA	NA	NA	NA	12	25	46	72	151

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(9)
SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

		TUBE SIZE (inch)								
Nominal	K & L	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
	ACR	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
Outside		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour								
10		27	55	111	195	276	590	1,060	1,680	3,490
20		18	38	77	134	190	406	730	1,150	2,400
30		15	30	61	107	152	326	586	925	1,930
40		13	26	53	92	131	279	502	791	1,650
50		11	23	47	82	116	247	445	701	1,460
60		10	21	42	74	105	224	403	635	1,320
70		NA	19	39	68	96	206	371	585	1,220
80		NA	18	36	63	90	192	345	544	1,130
90		NA	17	34	59	84	180	324	510	1,060
100		NA	16	32	56	79	170	306	482	1,000
125		NA	14	28	50	70	151	271	427	890
150		NA	13	26	45	64	136	245	387	806
175		NA	12	24	41	59	125	226	356	742
200		NA	11	22	39	55	117	210	331	690
250		NA	NA	20	34	48	103	186	294	612
300		NA	NA	18	31	44	94	169	266	554
350		NA	NA	16	28	40	86	155	245	510
400		NA	NA	15	26	38	80	144	228	474
450		NA	NA	14	25	35	75	135	214	445
500		NA	NA	13	23	33	71	128	202	420
550		NA	NA	13	22	32	68	122	192	399
600		NA	NA	12	21	30	64	116	183	381
650		NA	NA	12	20	29	62	111	175	365
700		NA	NA	11	20	28	59	107	168	350
750		NA	NA	11	19	27	57	103	162	338
800		NA	NA	10	18	26	55	99	156	326
850		NA	NA	10	18	25	53	96	151	315
900		NA	NA	NA	17	24	52	93	147	306
950		NA	NA	NA	17	24	50	90	143	297
1,000		NA	NA	NA	16	23	49	88	139	289
1,100		NA	NA	NA	15	22	46	84	132	274
1,200		NA	NA	NA	15	21	44	80	126	262
1,300		NA	NA	NA	14	20	42	76	120	251
1,400		NA	NA	NA	13	19	41	73	116	241
1,500		NA	NA	NA	13	18	39	71	111	232
1,600		NA	NA	NA	13	18	38	68	108	224
1,700		NA	NA	NA	12	17	37	66	104	217
1,800		NA	NA	NA	12	17	36	64	101	210
1,900		NA	NA	NA	11	16	35	62	98	204
2,000		NA	NA	NA	11	16	34	60	95	199

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(10) SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

INTENDED USE: SIZING BETWEEN HOUSE LINE REGULATOR AND THE APPLIANCE										
TUBE SIZE (inch)										
Nominal	K & L	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
	ACR	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
Outside		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour								
10		39	80	162	283	402	859	1,550	2,440	5,080
20		27	55	111	195	276	590	1,060	1,680	3,490
30		21	44	89	156	222	474	853	1,350	2,800
40		18	38	77	134	190	406	730	1,150	2,400
50		16	33	68	119	168	359	647	1,020	2,130
60		15	30	61	107	152	326	586	925	1,930
70		13	28	57	99	140	300	539	851	1,770
80		13	26	53	92	131	279	502	791	1,650
90		12	24	49	86	122	262	471	742	1,550
100		11	23	47	82	116	247	445	701	1,460
125		NA	20	41	72	103	219	394	622	1,290
150		NA	18	37	65	93	198	357	563	1,170
175		NA	17	34	60	85	183	329	518	1,080
200		NA	16	32	56	79	170	306	482	1,000
250		NA	14	28	50	70	151	271	427	890
300		NA	13	26	45	64	136	245	387	806
350		NA	12	24	41	59	125	226	356	742
400		NA	11	22	39	55	117	210	331	690
450		NA	10	21	36	51	110	197	311	647
500		NA	NA	20	34	48	103	186	294	612
550		NA	NA	19	32	46	98	177	279	581
600		NA	NA	18	31	44	94	169	266	554
650		NA	NA	17	30	42	90	162	255	531
700		NA	NA	16	28	40	86	155	245	510
750		NA	NA	16	27	39	83	150	236	491
800		NA	NA	15	26	38	80	144	228	474
850		NA	NA	15	26	36	78	140	220	459
900		NA	NA	14	25	35	75	135	214	445
950		NA	NA	14	24	34	73	132	207	432
1,000		NA	NA	13	23	33	71	128	202	420
1,100		NA	NA	13	22	32	68	122	192	399
1,200		NA	NA	12	21	30	64	116	183	381
1,300		NA	NA	12	20	29	62	111	175	365
1,400		NA	NA	11	20	28	59	107	168	350
1,500		NA	NA	11	19	27	57	103	162	338
1,600		NA	NA	10	18	26	55	99	156	326
1,700		NA	NA	10	18	25	53	96	151	315
1,800		NA	NA	NA	17	24	52	93	147	306
1,900		NA	NA	NA	17	24	50	90	143	297
2,000		NA	NA	NA	16	23	49	88	139	289

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	17.0 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(11)
SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

		TUBE SIZE (inch)								
Nominal	K & L	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
	ACR	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
Outside		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour								
10		190	391	796	1,390	1,970	4,220	7,590	12,000	24,900
20		130	269	547	956	1,360	2,900	5,220	8,230	17,100
30		105	216	439	768	1,090	2,330	4,190	6,610	13,800
40		90	185	376	657	932	1,990	3,590	5,650	11,800
50		79	164	333	582	826	1,770	3,180	5,010	10,400
60		72	148	302	528	749	1,600	2,880	4,540	9,460
70		66	137	278	486	689	1,470	2,650	4,180	8,700
80		62	127	258	452	641	1,370	2,460	3,890	8,090
90		58	119	243	424	601	1,280	2,310	3,650	7,590
100		55	113	229	400	568	1,210	2,180	3,440	7,170
125		48	100	203	355	503	1,080	1,940	3,050	6,360
150		44	90	184	321	456	974	1,750	2,770	5,760
175		40	83	169	296	420	896	1,610	2,540	5,300
200		38	77	157	275	390	834	1,500	2,370	4,930
250		33	69	140	244	346	739	1,330	2,100	4,370
300		30	62	126	221	313	670	1,210	1,900	3,960
350		28	57	116	203	288	616	1,110	1,750	3,640
400		26	53	108	189	268	573	1,030	1,630	3,390
450		24	50	102	177	252	538	968	1,530	3,180
500		23	47	96	168	238	508	914	1,440	3,000
550		22	45	91	159	226	482	868	1,370	2,850
600		21	43	87	152	215	460	829	1,310	2,720
650		20	41	83	145	206	441	793	1,250	2,610
700		19	39	80	140	198	423	762	1,200	2,500
750		18	38	77	135	191	408	734	1,160	2,410
800		18	37	74	130	184	394	709	1,120	2,330
850		17	35	72	126	178	381	686	1,080	2,250
900		17	34	70	122	173	370	665	1,050	2,180
950		16	33	68	118	168	359	646	1,020	2,120
1,000		16	32	66	115	163	349	628	991	2,060
1,100		15	31	63	109	155	332	597	941	1,960
1,200		14	29	60	104	148	316	569	898	1,870
1,300		14	28	57	100	142	303	545	860	1,790
1,400		13	27	55	96	136	291	524	826	1,720
1,500		13	26	53	93	131	280	505	796	1,660
1,600		12	25	51	89	127	271	487	768	1,600
1,700		12	24	49	86	123	262	472	744	1,550
1,800		11	24	48	84	119	254	457	721	1,500
1,900		11	23	47	81	115	247	444	700	1,460
2,000		11	22	45	79	112	240	432	681	1,420

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(12)
SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

TUBE SIZE (inch)										
Nominal	K & L	$^1/_4$	$^3/_8$	$^1/_2$	$^5/_8$	$^3/_4$	1	$1^1/_4$	$1^1/_2$	2
	ACR	$^3/_8$	$^1/_2$	$^5/_8$	$^3/_4$	$^7/_8$	$1^1/_8$	$1^3/_8$	—	—
Outside		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour								
10		245	506	1,030	1,800	2,550	5,450	9,820	15,500	32,200
20		169	348	708	1,240	1,760	3,750	6,750	10,600	22,200
30		135	279	568	993	1,410	3,010	5,420	8,550	17,800
40		116	239	486	850	1,210	2,580	4,640	7,310	15,200
50		103	212	431	754	1,070	2,280	4,110	6,480	13,500
60		93	192	391	683	969	2,070	3,730	5,870	12,200
70		86	177	359	628	891	1,900	3,430	5,400	11,300
80		80	164	334	584	829	1,770	3,190	5,030	10,500
90		75	154	314	548	778	1,660	2,990	4,720	9,820
100		71	146	296	518	735	1,570	2,830	4,450	9,280
125		63	129	263	459	651	1,390	2,500	3,950	8,220
150		57	117	238	416	590	1,260	2,270	3,580	7,450
175		52	108	219	383	543	1,160	2,090	3,290	6,850
200		49	100	204	356	505	1,080	1,940	3,060	6,380
250		43	89	181	315	448	956	1,720	2,710	5,650
300		39	80	164	286	406	866	1,560	2,460	5,120
350		36	74	150	263	373	797	1,430	2,260	4,710
400		33	69	140	245	347	741	1,330	2,100	4,380
450		31	65	131	230	326	696	1,250	1,970	4,110
500		30	61	124	217	308	657	1,180	1,870	3,880
550		28	58	118	206	292	624	1,120	1,770	3,690
600		27	55	112	196	279	595	1,070	1,690	3,520
650		26	53	108	188	267	570	1,030	1,620	3,370
700		25	51	103	181	256	548	986	1,550	3,240
750		24	49	100	174	247	528	950	1,500	3,120
800		23	47	96	168	239	510	917	1,450	3,010
850		22	46	93	163	231	493	888	1,400	2,920
900		22	44	90	158	224	478	861	1,360	2,830
950		21	43	88	153	217	464	836	1,320	2,740
1,000		20	42	85	149	211	452	813	1,280	2,670
1,100		19	40	81	142	201	429	772	1,220	2,540
1,200		18	38	77	135	192	409	737	1,160	2,420
1,300		18	36	74	129	183	392	705	1,110	2,320
1,400		17	35	71	124	176	376	678	1,070	2,230
1,500		16	34	68	120	170	363	653	1,030	2,140
1,600		16	33	66	116	164	350	630	994	2,070
1,700		15	31	64	112	159	339	610	962	2,000
1,800		15	30	62	108	154	329	592	933	1,940
1,900		14	30	60	105	149	319	575	906	1,890
2,000		14	29	59	102	145	310	559	881	1,830

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.5 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(13)
SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

INTENDED USE		Pipe sizing between point of delivery and the house line regulator. Total load supplied by a single house line regulator not exceeding 150 cubic feet per hour.								
		TUBE SIZE (inch)								
Nominal	**K & L**	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
	ACR	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
Outside		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour**								
10		303	625	1,270	2,220	3,150	6,740	12,100	19,100	39,800
20		208	430	874	1,530	2,170	4,630	8,330	13,100	27,400
30		167	345	702	1,230	1,740	3,720	6,690	10,600	22,000
40		143	295	601	1,050	1,490	3,180	5,730	9,030	18,800
50		127	262	532	931	1,320	2,820	5,080	8,000	16,700
60		115	237	482	843	1,200	2,560	4,600	7,250	15,100
70		106	218	444	776	1,100	2,350	4,230	6,670	13,900
80		98	203	413	722	1,020	2,190	3,940	6,210	12,900
90		92	190	387	677	961	2,050	3,690	5,820	12,100
100		87	180	366	640	907	1,940	3,490	5,500	11,500
125		77	159	324	567	804	1,720	3,090	4,880	10,200
150		70	144	294	514	729	1,560	2,800	4,420	9,200
175		64	133	270	472	670	1,430	2,580	4,060	8,460
200		60	124	252	440	624	1,330	2,400	3,780	7,870
250		53	110	223	390	553	1,180	2,130	3,350	6,980
300		48	99	202	353	501	1,070	1,930	3,040	6,320
350		44	91	186	325	461	984	1,770	2,790	5,820
400		41	85	173	302	429	916	1,650	2,600	5,410
450		39	80	162	283	402	859	1,550	2,440	5,080
500		36	75	153	268	380	811	1,460	2,300	4,800
550		35	72	146	254	361	771	1,390	2,190	4,560
600		33	68	139	243	344	735	1,320	2,090	4,350
650		32	65	133	232	330	704	1,270	2,000	4,160
700		30	63	128	223	317	676	1,220	1,920	4,000
750		29	60	123	215	305	652	1,170	1,850	3,850
800		28	58	119	208	295	629	1,130	1,790	3,720
850		27	57	115	201	285	609	1,100	1,730	3,600
900		27	55	111	195	276	590	1,060	1,680	3,490
950		26	53	108	189	268	573	1,030	1,630	3,390
1,000		25	52	105	184	261	558	1,000	1,580	3,300
1,100		24	49	100	175	248	530	954	1,500	3,130
1,200		23	47	95	167	237	505	910	1,430	2,990
1,300		22	45	91	160	227	484	871	1,370	2,860
1,400		21	43	88	153	218	465	837	1,320	2,750
1,500		20	42	85	148	210	448	806	1,270	2,650
1,600		19	40	82	143	202	432	779	1,230	2,560
1,700		19	39	79	138	196	419	753	1,190	2,470
1,800		18	38	77	134	190	406	731	1,150	2,400
1,900		18	37	74	130	184	394	709	1,120	2,330
2,000		17	36	72	126	179	383	690	1,090	2,270

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. Where this table is used to size the tubing upstream of a line pressure regulator, the pipe or tubing downstream of the line pressure regulator shall be sized using a pressure drop not greater than 1 inch w.c.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	5.0 psi
Pressure Drop	3.5 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(14) SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

TUBE SIZE (inch)										
Nominal	K & L	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
	ACR	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
Outside		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour								
10		511	1,050	2,140	3,750	5,320	11,400	20,400	32,200	67,100
20		351	724	1,470	2,580	3,650	7,800	14,000	22,200	46,100
30		282	582	1,180	2,070	2,930	6,270	11,300	17,800	37,000
40		241	498	1,010	1,770	2,510	5,360	9,660	15,200	31,700
50		214	441	898	1,570	2,230	4,750	8,560	13,500	28,100
60		194	400	813	1,420	2,020	4,310	7,750	12,200	25,500
70		178	368	748	1,310	1,860	3,960	7,130	11,200	23,400
80		166	342	696	1,220	1,730	3,690	6,640	10,500	21,800
90		156	321	653	1,140	1,620	3,460	6,230	9,820	20,400
100		147	303	617	1,080	1,530	3,270	5,880	9,270	19,300
125		130	269	547	955	1,360	2,900	5,210	8,220	17,100
150		118	243	495	866	1,230	2,620	4,720	7,450	15,500
175		109	224	456	796	1,130	2,410	4,350	6,850	14,300
200		101	208	424	741	1,050	2,250	4,040	6,370	13,300
250		90	185	376	657	932	1,990	3,580	5,650	11,800
300		81	167	340	595	844	1,800	3,250	5,120	10,700
350		75	154	313	547	777	1,660	2,990	4,710	9,810
400		69	143	291	509	722	1,540	2,780	4,380	9,120
450		65	134	273	478	678	1,450	2,610	4,110	8,560
500		62	127	258	451	640	1,370	2,460	3,880	8,090
550		58	121	245	429	608	1,300	2,340	3,690	7,680
600		56	115	234	409	580	1,240	2,230	3,520	7,330
650		53	110	224	392	556	1,190	2,140	3,370	7,020
700		51	106	215	376	534	1,140	2,050	3,240	6,740
750		49	102	207	362	514	1,100	1,980	3,120	6,490
800		48	98	200	350	497	1,060	1,910	3,010	6,270
850		46	95	194	339	481	1,030	1,850	2,910	6,070
900		45	92	188	328	466	1,000	1,790	2,820	5,880
950		43	90	182	319	452	967	1,740	2,740	5,710
1,000		42	87	177	310	440	940	1,690	2,670	5,560
1,100		40	83	169	295	418	893	1,610	2,530	5,280
1,200		38	79	161	281	399	852	1,530	2,420	5,040
1,300		37	76	154	269	382	816	1,470	2,320	4,820
1,400		35	73	148	259	367	784	1,410	2,220	4,630
1,500		34	70	143	249	353	755	1,360	2,140	4,460
1,600		33	68	138	241	341	729	1,310	2,070	4,310
1,700		32	65	133	233	330	705	1,270	2,000	4,170
1,800		31	63	129	226	320	684	1,230	1,940	4,040
1,900		30	62	125	219	311	664	1,200	1,890	3,930
2,000		29	60	122	213	302	646	1,160	1,830	3,820

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(15)
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

	TUBE SIZE (EHD)													
Flow Designation	13	15	18	19	23	25	30	31	37	39	46	48	60	62
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour													
5	46	63	115	134	225	270	471	546	895	1,037	1,790	2,070	3,660	4,140
10	32	44	82	95	161	192	330	383	639	746	1,260	1,470	2,600	2,930
15	25	35	66	77	132	157	267	310	524	615	1,030	1,200	2,140	2,400
20	22	31	58	67	116	137	231	269	456	536	888	1,050	1,850	2,080
25	19	27	52	60	104	122	206	240	409	482	793	936	1,660	1,860
30	18	25	47	55	96	112	188	218	374	442	723	856	1,520	1,700
40	15	21	41	47	83	97	162	188	325	386	625	742	1,320	1,470
50	13	19	37	42	75	87	144	168	292	347	559	665	1,180	1,320
60	12	17	34	38	68	80	131	153	267	318	509	608	1,080	1,200
70	11	16	31	36	63	74	121	141	248	295	471	563	1,000	1,110
80	10	15	29	33	60	69	113	132	232	277	440	527	940	1,040
90	10	14	28	32	57	65	107	125	219	262	415	498	887	983
100	9	13	26	30	54	62	101	118	208	249	393	472	843	933
150	7	10	20	23	42	48	78	91	171	205	320	387	691	762
200	6	9	18	21	38	44	71	82	148	179	277	336	600	661
250	5	8	16	19	34	39	63	74	133	161	247	301	538	591
300	5	7	15	17	32	36	57	67	95	148	226	275	492	540

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
2. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	3.0 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(16)
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

INTENDED USE: Initial supply pressure of 8.0 inches w.c. or greater													
	TUBE SIZE (EHD)												
Flow Designation	13	15	18	19	23	25	30	31	37	46	48	60	62
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour												
5	120	160	277	327	529	649	1,180	1,370	2,140	4,430	5,010	8,800	10,100
10	83	112	197	231	380	462	828	958	1,530	3,200	3,560	6,270	7,160
15	67	90	161	189	313	379	673	778	1,250	2,540	2,910	5,140	5,850
20	57	78	140	164	273	329	580	672	1,090	2,200	2,530	4,460	5,070
25	51	69	125	147	245	295	518	599	978	1,960	2,270	4,000	4,540
30	46	63	115	134	225	270	471	546	895	1,790	2,070	3,660	4,140
40	39	54	100	116	196	234	407	471	778	1,550	1,800	3,180	3,590
50	35	48	89	104	176	210	363	421	698	1,380	1,610	2,850	3,210
60	32	44	82	95	161	192	330	383	639	1,260	1,470	2,600	2,930
70	29	41	76	88	150	178	306	355	593	1,170	1,360	2,420	2,720
80	27	38	71	82	141	167	285	331	555	1,090	1,280	2,260	2,540
90	26	36	67	77	133	157	268	311	524	1,030	1,200	2,140	2,400
100	24	34	63	73	126	149	254	295	498	974	1,140	2,030	2,280
150	19	27	52	60	104	122	206	240	409	793	936	1,660	1,860
200	17	23	45	52	91	106	178	207	355	686	812	1,440	1,610
250	15	21	40	46	82	95	159	184	319	613	728	1,290	1,440
300	13	19	37	42	75	87	144	168	234	559	665	1,180	1,320

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
2. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	6.0 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(17)
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

INTENDED USE: Initial supply pressure of 11.0 inches w.c. or greater													
	TUBE SIZE (EHD)												
Flow Designation	13	15	18	19	23	25	30	31	37	46	48	60	62
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour												
5	173	229	389	461	737	911	1,690	1,950	3,000	6,280	7,050	12,400	14,260
10	120	160	277	327	529	649	1,180	1,370	2,140	4,430	5,010	8,800	10,100
15	96	130	227	267	436	532	960	1,110	1,760	3,610	4,100	7,210	8,260
20	83	112	197	231	380	462	828	958	1,530	3,120	3,560	6,270	7,160
25	74	99	176	207	342	414	739	855	1,370	2,790	3,190	5,620	6,400
30	67	90	161	189	313	379	673	778	1,250	2,540	2,910	5,140	5,850
40	57	78	140	164	273	329	580	672	1,090	2,200	2,530	4,460	5,070
50	51	69	125	147	245	295	518	599	978	1,960	2,270	4,000	4,540
60	46	63	115	134	225	270	471	546	895	1,790	2,070	3,660	4,140
70	42	58	106	124	209	250	435	505	830	1,660	1,920	3,390	3,840
80	39	54	100	116	196	234	407	471	778	1,550	1,800	3,180	3,590
90	37	51	94	109	185	221	383	444	735	1,460	1,700	3,000	3,390
100	35	48	89	104	176	210	363	421	698	1,380	1,610	2,850	3,210
150	28	39	73	85	145	172	294	342	573	1,130	1,320	2,340	2,630
200	24	34	63	73	126	149	254	295	498	974	1,140	2,030	2,280
250	21	30	57	66	114	134	226	263	447	870	1,020	1,820	2,040
300	19	27	52	60	104	122	206	240	409	793	936	1,660	1,860

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
2. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 402.4(18)
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	2 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

	TUBE SIZE (EHD)													
Flow Designation	13	15	18	19	23	25	30	31	37	39	46	48	60	62
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour**													
10	270	353	587	700	1,100	1,370	2,590	2,990	4,510	5,037	9,600	10,700	18,600	21,600
25	166	220	374	444	709	876	1,620	1,870	2,890	3,258	6,040	6,780	11,900	13,700
30	151	200	342	405	650	801	1,480	1,700	2,640	2,987	5,510	6,200	10,900	12,500
40	129	172	297	351	567	696	1,270	1,470	2,300	2,605	4,760	5,380	9,440	10,900
50	115	154	266	314	510	624	1,140	1,310	2,060	2,343	4,260	4,820	8,470	9,720
75	93	124	218	257	420	512	922	1,070	1,690	1,932	3,470	3,950	6,940	7,940
80	89	120	211	249	407	496	892	1,030	1,640	1,874	3,360	3,820	6,730	7,690
100	79	107	189	222	366	445	795	920	1,470	1,685	3,000	3,420	6,030	6,880
150	64	87	155	182	302	364	646	748	1,210	1,389	2,440	2,800	4,940	5,620
200	55	75	135	157	263	317	557	645	1,050	1,212	2,110	2,430	4,290	4,870
250	49	67	121	141	236	284	497	576	941	1,090	1,890	2,180	3,850	4,360
300	44	61	110	129	217	260	453	525	862	999	1,720	1,990	3,520	3,980
400	38	52	96	111	189	225	390	453	749	871	1,490	1,730	3,060	3,450
500	34	46	86	100	170	202	348	404	552	783	1,330	1,550	2,740	3,090

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds $^3/_4$ psi, DO NOT USE THIS TABLE. Consult with the regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator may vary with flow rate.
2. CAUTION: Capacities shown in the table might exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with the regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.
3. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
4. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
5. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 402.4(19)
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	5.0 psi
Pressure Drop	3.5 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

	TUBE SIZE (EHD)													
Flow Designation	13	15	18	19	23	25	30	31	37	39	46	48	60	62
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour**													
10	523	674	1,080	1,300	2,000	2,530	4,920	5,660	8,300	9,140	18,100	19,800	34,400	40,400
25	322	420	691	827	1,290	1,620	3,080	3,540	5,310	5,911	11,400	12,600	22,000	25,600
30	292	382	632	755	1,180	1,480	2,800	3,230	4,860	5,420	10,400	11,500	20,100	23,400
40	251	329	549	654	1,030	1,280	2,420	2,790	4,230	4,727	8,970	10,000	17,400	20,200
50	223	293	492	586	926	1,150	2,160	2,490	3,790	4,251	8,020	8,930	15,600	18,100
75	180	238	403	479	763	944	1,750	2,020	3,110	3,506	6,530	7,320	12,800	14,800
80	174	230	391	463	740	915	1,690	1,960	3,020	3,400	6,320	7,090	12,400	14,300
100	154	205	350	415	665	820	1,510	1,740	2,710	3,057	5,650	6,350	11,100	12,800
150	124	166	287	339	548	672	1,230	1,420	2,220	2,521	4,600	5,200	9,130	10,500
200	107	143	249	294	478	584	1,060	1,220	1,930	2,199	3,980	4,510	7,930	9,090
250	95	128	223	263	430	524	945	1,090	1,730	1,977	3,550	4,040	7,110	8,140
300	86	116	204	240	394	479	860	995	1,590	1,813	3,240	3,690	6,500	7,430
400	74	100	177	208	343	416	742	858	1,380	1,581	2,800	3,210	5,650	6,440
500	66	89	159	186	309	373	662	766	1,040	1,422	2,500	2,870	5,060	5,760

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds $^3/_4$ psi, DO NOT USE THIS TABLE. Consult with the regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator may vary with flow rate.
2. CAUTION: Capacities shown in the table might exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with the regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.
3. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
4. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
5. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	0.3 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(20)
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE

	PIPE SIZE (inch)							
Nominal OD	$^1/_2$	$^3/_4$	1	$1^1/_4$	$1^1/_2$	2	3	4
Designation	SDR 9	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 10	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11
Actual ID	0.660	0.860	1.077	1.328	1.554	1.943	2.864	3.682
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**							
10	153	305	551	955	1,440	2,590	7,170	13,900
20	105	210	379	656	991	1,780	4,920	9,520
30	84	169	304	527	796	1,430	3,950	7,640
40	72	144	260	451	681	1,220	3,380	6,540
50	64	128	231	400	604	1,080	3,000	5,800
60	58	116	209	362	547	983	2,720	5,250
70	53	107	192	333	503	904	2,500	4,830
80	50	99	179	310	468	841	2,330	4,500
90	46	93	168	291	439	789	2,180	4,220
100	44	88	159	275	415	745	2,060	3,990
125	39	78	141	243	368	661	1,830	3,530
150	35	71	127	221	333	598	1,660	3,200
175	32	65	117	203	306	551	1,520	2,940
200	30	60	109	189	285	512	1,420	2,740
250	27	54	97	167	253	454	1,260	2,430
300	24	48	88	152	229	411	1,140	2,200
350	22	45	81	139	211	378	1,050	2,020
400	21	42	75	130	196	352	974	1,880
450	19	39	70	122	184	330	914	1,770
500	18	37	66	115	174	312	863	1,670

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.
Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(21)
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE

	PIPE SIZE (inch)							
Nominal OD	$^1/_2$	$^3/_4$	1	$1^1/_4$	$1^1/_2$	2	3	4
Designation	SDR 9	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 10	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11
Actual ID	0.660	0.860	1.077	1.328	1.554	1.943	2.864	3.682
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**							
10	201	403	726	1,260	1,900	3,410	9,450	18,260
20	138	277	499	865	1,310	2,350	6,490	12,550
30	111	222	401	695	1,050	1,880	5,210	10,080
40	95	190	343	594	898	1,610	4,460	8,630
50	84	169	304	527	796	1,430	3,950	7,640
60	76	153	276	477	721	1,300	3,580	6,930
70	70	140	254	439	663	1,190	3,300	6,370
80	65	131	236	409	617	1,110	3,070	5,930
90	61	123	221	383	579	1,040	2,880	5,560
100	58	116	209	362	547	983	2,720	5,250
125	51	103	185	321	485	871	2,410	4,660
150	46	93	168	291	439	789	2,180	4,220
175	43	86	154	268	404	726	2,010	3,880
200	40	80	144	249	376	675	1,870	3,610
250	35	71	127	221	333	598	1,660	3,200
300	32	64	115	200	302	542	1,500	2,900
350	29	59	106	184	278	499	1,380	2,670
400	27	55	99	171	258	464	1,280	2,480
450	26	51	93	160	242	435	1,200	2,330
500	24	48	88	152	229	411	1,140	2,200

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

TABLE 402.4(22) POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE

	PIPE SIZE (inch)							
Nominal OD	$^{1}/_{2}$	$^{3}/_{4}$	1	$1^{1}/_{4}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	2	3	4
Designation	SDR 9	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 10	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11
Actual ID	0.660	0.860	1.077	1.328	1.554	1.943	2.864	3.682
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**							
10	1,860	3,720	6,710	11,600	17,600	31,600	87,300	169,000
20	1,280	2,560	4,610	7,990	12,100	21,700	60,000	116,000
30	1,030	2,050	3,710	6,420	9,690	17,400	48,200	93,200
40	878	1,760	3,170	5,490	8,300	14,900	41,200	79,700
50	778	1,560	2,810	4,870	7,350	13,200	36,600	70,700
60	705	1,410	2,550	4,410	6,660	12,000	33,100	64,000
70	649	1,300	2,340	4,060	6,130	11,000	30,500	58,900
80	603	1,210	2,180	3,780	5,700	10,200	28,300	54,800
90	566	1,130	2,050	3,540	5,350	9,610	26,600	51,400
100	535	1,070	1,930	3,350	5,050	9,080	25,100	48,600
125	474	949	1,710	2,970	4,480	8,050	22,300	43,000
150	429	860	1,550	2,690	4,060	7,290	20,200	39,000
175	395	791	1,430	2,470	3,730	6,710	18,600	35,900
200	368	736	1,330	2,300	3,470	6,240	17,300	33,400
250	326	652	1,180	2,040	3,080	5,530	15,300	29,600
300	295	591	1,070	1,850	2,790	5,010	13,900	26,800
350	272	544	981	1,700	2,570	4,610	12,800	24,700
400	253	506	913	1,580	2,390	4,290	11,900	22,900
450	237	475	856	1,480	2,240	4,020	11,100	21,500
500	224	448	809	1,400	2,120	3,800	10,500	20,300
550	213	426	768	1,330	2,010	3,610	9,990	19,300
600	203	406	733	1,270	1,920	3,440	9,530	18,400
650	194	389	702	1,220	1,840	3,300	9,130	17,600
700	187	374	674	1,170	1,760	3,170	8,770	16,900
750	180	360	649	1,130	1,700	3,050	8,450	16,300
800	174	348	627	1,090	1,640	2,950	8,160	15,800
850	168	336	607	1,050	1,590	2,850	7,890	15,300
900	163	326	588	1,020	1,540	2,770	7,650	14,800
950	158	317	572	990	1,500	2,690	7,430	14,400
1,000	154	308	556	963	1,450	2,610	7,230	14,000
1,100	146	293	528	915	1,380	2,480	6,870	13,300
1,200	139	279	504	873	1,320	2,370	6,550	12,700
1,300	134	267	482	836	1,260	2,270	6,270	12,100
1,400	128	257	463	803	1,210	2,180	6,030	11,600
1,500	124	247	446	773	1,170	2,100	5,810	11,200
1,600	119	239	431	747	1,130	2,030	5,610	10,800
1,700	115	231	417	723	1,090	1,960	5,430	10,500
1,800	112	224	404	701	1,060	1,900	5,260	10,200
1,900	109	218	393	680	1,030	1,850	5,110	9,900
2,000	106	212	382	662	1,000	1,800	4,970	9,600

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 402.4(23)
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC TUBING

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	0.3 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

	PLASTIC TUBING SIZE (CTS) (inch)	
Nominal OD	$^1/_2$	$^3/_4$
Designation	SDR 7	SDR 11
Actual ID	0.445	0.927
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**	
10	54	372
20	37	256
30	30	205
40	26	176
50	23	156
60	21	141
70	19	130
80	18	121
90	17	113
100	16	107
125	14	95
150	13	86
175	12	79
200	11	74
225	10	69
250	NA	65
275	NA	62
300	NA	59
350	NA	54
400	NA	51
450	NA	47
500	NA	45

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm,
1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa,
1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W,
1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 402.4(24)
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC TUBING

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

	PLASTIC TUBING SIZE (CTS) (inch)	
Nominal OD	$^1/_2$	$^3/_4$
Designation	SDR 7	SDR 11
Actual ID	0.445	0.927
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**	
10	72	490
20	49	337
30	39	271
40	34	232
50	30	205
60	27	186
70	25	171
80	23	159
90	22	149
100	21	141
125	18	125
150	17	113
175	15	104
200	14	97
225	13	91
250	12	86
275	11	82
300	11	78
350	10	72
400	NA	67
450	NA	63
500	NA	59

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm,
1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa,
1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W,
1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	10.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

TABLE 402.4(25)
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

INTENDED USE	Pipe sizing between first stage (high-pressure regulator) and second stage (low-pressure regulator).								
	PIPE SIZE (inch)								
Nominal	1/2	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2	2 1/2	3	4
Actual ID	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610	2.067	2.469	3.068	4.026
Length (ft)	Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
10	3,320	6,950	13,100	26,900	40,300	77,600	124,000	219,000	446,000
20	2,280	4,780	9,000	18,500	27,700	53,300	85,000	150,000	306,000
30	1,830	3,840	7,220	14,800	22,200	42,800	68,200	121,000	246,000
40	1,570	3,280	6,180	12,700	19,000	36,600	58,400	103,000	211,000
50	1,390	2,910	5,480	11,300	16,900	32,500	51,700	91,500	187,000
60	1,260	2,640	4,970	10,200	15,300	29,400	46,900	82,900	169,000
70	1,160	2,430	4,570	9,380	14,100	27,100	43,100	76,300	156,000
80	1,080	2,260	4,250	8,730	13,100	25,200	40,100	70,900	145,000
90	1,010	2,120	3,990	8,190	12,300	23,600	37,700	66,600	136,000
100	956	2,000	3,770	7,730	11,600	22,300	35,600	62,900	128,000
125	848	1,770	3,340	6,850	10,300	19,800	31,500	55,700	114,000
150	768	1,610	3,020	6,210	9,300	17,900	28,600	50,500	103,000
175	706	1,480	2,780	5,710	8,560	16,500	26,300	46,500	94,700
200	657	1,370	2,590	5,320	7,960	15,300	24,400	43,200	88,100
250	582	1,220	2,290	4,710	7,060	13,600	21,700	38,300	78,100
300	528	1,100	2,080	4,270	6,400	12,300	19,600	34,700	70,800
350	486	1,020	1,910	3,930	5,880	11,300	18,100	31,900	65,100
400	452	945	1,780	3,650	5,470	10,500	16,800	29,700	60,600
450	424	886	1,670	3,430	5,140	9,890	15,800	27,900	56,800
500	400	837	1,580	3,240	4,850	9,340	14,900	26,300	53,700
550	380	795	1,500	3,070	4,610	8,870	14,100	25,000	51,000
600	363	759	1,430	2,930	4,400	8,460	13,500	23,900	48,600
650	347	726	1,370	2,810	4,210	8,110	12,900	22,800	46,600
700	334	698	1,310	2,700	4,040	7,790	12,400	21,900	44,800
750	321	672	1,270	2,600	3,900	7,500	12,000	21,100	43,100
800	310	649	1,220	2,510	3,760	7,240	11,500	20,400	41,600
850	300	628	1,180	2,430	3,640	7,010	11,200	19,800	40,300
900	291	609	1,150	2,360	3,530	6,800	10,800	19,200	39,100
950	283	592	1,110	2,290	3,430	6,600	10,500	18,600	37,900
1,000	275	575	1,080	2,230	3,330	6,420	10,200	18,100	36,900
1,100	261	546	1,030	2,110	3,170	6,100	9,720	17,200	35,000
1,200	249	521	982	2,020	3,020	5,820	9,270	16,400	33,400
1,300	239	499	940	1,930	2,890	5,570	8,880	15,700	32,000
1,400	229	480	903	1,850	2,780	5,350	8,530	15,100	30,800
1,500	221	462	870	1,790	2,680	5,160	8,220	14,500	29,600
1,600	213	446	840	1,730	2,590	4,980	7,940	14,000	28,600
1,700	206	432	813	1,670	2,500	4,820	7,680	13,600	27,700
1,800	200	419	789	1,620	2,430	4,670	7,450	13,200	26,900
1,900	194	407	766	1,570	2,360	4,540	7,230	12,800	26,100
2,000	189	395	745	1,530	2,290	4,410	7,030	12,400	25,400

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	10.0 psi
Pressure Drop	3.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

TABLE 402.4(26)
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

INTENDED USE	**Pipe sizing between first stage (high-pressure regulator) and second stage (low-pressure regulator).**								
	PIPE SIZE (inch)								
Nominal	1/2	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2	2 1/2	3	4
Actual ID	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610	2.067	2.469	3.068	4.026
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	5,890	12,300	23,200	47,600	71,300	137,000	219,000	387,000	789,000
20	4,050	8,460	15,900	32,700	49,000	94,400	150,000	266,000	543,000
30	3,250	6,790	12,800	26,300	39,400	75,800	121,000	214,000	436,000
40	2,780	5,810	11,000	22,500	33,700	64,900	103,000	183,000	373,000
50	2,460	5,150	9,710	19,900	29,900	57,500	91,600	162,000	330,000
60	2,230	4,670	8,790	18,100	27,100	52,100	83,000	147,000	299,000
70	2,050	4,300	8,090	16,600	24,900	47,900	76,400	135,000	275,000
80	1,910	4,000	7,530	15,500	23,200	44,600	71,100	126,000	256,000
90	1,790	3,750	7,060	14,500	21,700	41,800	66,700	118,000	240,000
100	1,690	3,540	6,670	13,700	20,500	39,500	63,000	111,000	227,000
125	1,500	3,140	5,910	12,100	18,200	35,000	55,800	98,700	201,000
150	1,360	2,840	5,360	11,000	16,500	31,700	50,600	89,400	182,000
175	1,250	2,620	4,930	10,100	15,200	29,200	46,500	82,300	167,800
200	1,160	2,430	4,580	9,410	14,100	27,200	43,300	76,500	156,100
250	1,030	2,160	4,060	8,340	12,500	24,100	38,400	67,800	138,400
300	935	1,950	3,680	7,560	11,300	21,800	34,800	61,500	125,400
350	860	1,800	3,390	6,950	10,400	20,100	32,000	56,500	115,300
400	800	1,670	3,150	6,470	9,690	18,700	29,800	52,600	107,300
450	751	1,570	2,960	6,070	9,090	17,500	27,900	49,400	100,700
500	709	1,480	2,790	5,730	8,590	16,500	26,400	46,600	95,100
550	673	1,410	2,650	5,450	8,160	15,700	25,000	44,300	90,300
600	642	1,340	2,530	5,200	7,780	15,000	23,900	42,200	86,200
650	615	1,290	2,420	4,980	7,450	14,400	22,900	40,500	82,500
700	591	1,240	2,330	4,780	7,160	13,800	22,000	38,900	79,300
750	569	1,190	2,240	4,600	6,900	13,300	21,200	37,400	76,400
800	550	1,150	2,170	4,450	6,660	12,800	20,500	36,200	73,700
850	532	1,110	2,100	4,300	6,450	12,400	19,800	35,000	71,400
900	516	1,080	2,030	4,170	6,250	12,000	19,200	33,900	69,200
950	501	1,050	1,970	4,050	6,070	11,700	18,600	32,900	67,200
1,000	487	1,020	1,920	3,940	5,900	11,400	18,100	32,000	65,400
1,100	463	968	1,820	3,740	5,610	10,800	17,200	30,400	62,100
1,200	442	923	1,740	3,570	5,350	10,300	16,400	29,000	59,200
1,300	423	884	1,670	3,420	5,120	9,870	15,700	27,800	56,700
1,400	406	849	1,600	3,280	4,920	9,480	15,100	26,700	54,500
1,500	391	818	1,540	3,160	4,740	9,130	14,600	25,700	52,500
1,600	378	790	1,490	3,060	4,580	8,820	14,100	24,800	50,700
1,700	366	765	1,440	2,960	4,430	8,530	13,600	24,000	49,000
1,800	355	741	1,400	2,870	4,300	8,270	13,200	23,300	47,600
1,900	344	720	1,360	2,780	4,170	8,040	12,800	22,600	46,200
2,000	335	700	1,320	2,710	4,060	7,820	12,500	22,000	44,900

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 402.4(27)
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE	**Pipe sizing between 2 psig service and line pressure regulator.**								
	PIPE SIZE (inch)								
Nominal	1/2	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2	2 1/2	3	4
Actual ID	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610	2.067	2.469	3.068	4.026
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	2,680	5,590	10,500	21,600	32,400	62,400	99,500	176,000	359,000
20	1,840	3,850	7,240	14,900	22,300	42,900	68,400	121,000	247,000
30	1,480	3,090	5,820	11,900	17,900	34,500	54,900	97,100	198,000
40	1,260	2,640	4,980	10,200	15,300	29,500	47,000	83,100	170,000
50	1,120	2,340	4,410	9,060	13,600	26,100	41,700	73,700	150,000
60	1,010	2,120	4,000	8,210	12,300	23,700	37,700	66,700	136,000
70	934	1,950	3,680	7,550	11,300	21,800	34,700	61,400	125,000
80	869	1,820	3,420	7,020	10,500	20,300	32,300	57,100	116,000
90	815	1,700	3,210	6,590	9,880	19,000	30,300	53,600	109,000
100	770	1,610	3,030	6,230	9,330	18,000	28,600	50,600	103,000
125	682	1,430	2,690	5,520	8,270	15,900	25,400	44,900	91,500
150	618	1,290	2,440	5,000	7,490	14,400	23,000	40,700	82,900
175	569	1,190	2,240	4,600	6,890	13,300	21,200	37,400	76,300
200	529	1,110	2,080	4,280	6,410	12,300	19,700	34,800	71,000
250	469	981	1,850	3,790	5,680	10,900	17,400	30,800	62,900
300	425	889	1,670	3,440	5,150	9,920	15,800	27,900	57,000
350	391	817	1,540	3,160	4,740	9,120	14,500	25,700	52,400
400	364	760	1,430	2,940	4,410	8,490	13,500	23,900	48,800
450	341	714	1,340	2,760	4,130	7,960	12,700	22,400	45,800
500	322	674	1,270	2,610	3,910	7,520	12,000	21,200	43,200
550	306	640	1,210	2,480	3,710	7,140	11,400	20,100	41,100
600	292	611	1,150	2,360	3,540	6,820	10,900	19,200	39,200
650	280	585	1,100	2,260	3,390	6,530	10,400	18,400	37,500
700	269	562	1,060	2,170	3,260	6,270	9,990	17,700	36,000
750	259	541	1,020	2,090	3,140	6,040	9,630	17,000	34,700
800	250	523	985	2,020	3,030	5,830	9,300	16,400	33,500
850	242	506	953	1,960	2,930	5,640	9,000	15,900	32,400
900	235	490	924	1,900	2,840	5,470	8,720	15,400	31,500
950	228	476	897	1,840	2,760	5,310	8,470	15,000	30,500
1,000	222	463	873	1,790	2,680	5,170	8,240	14,600	29,700
1,100	210	440	829	1,700	2,550	4,910	7,830	13,800	28,200
1,200	201	420	791	1,620	2,430	4,680	7,470	13,200	26,900
1,300	192	402	757	1,550	2,330	4,490	7,150	12,600	25,800
1,400	185	386	727	1,490	2,240	4,310	6,870	12,100	24,800
1,500	178	372	701	1,440	2,160	4,150	6,620	11,700	23,900
1,600	172	359	677	1,390	2,080	4,010	6,390	11,300	23,000
1,700	166	348	655	1,340	2,010	3,880	6,180	10,900	22,300
1,800	161	337	635	1,300	1,950	3,760	6,000	10,600	21,600
1,900	157	327	617	1,270	1,900	3,650	5,820	10,300	21,000
2,000	152	318	600	1,230	1,840	3,550	5,660	10,000	20,400

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.
Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	1.50

TABLE 402.4(28)
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

INTENDED USE	**Pipe sizing between single- or second-stage (low pressure) regulator and appliance.**								
	PIPE SIZE (inch)								
Nominal	1/2	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2	2 1/2	3	4
Actual ID	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610	2.067	2.469	3.068	4.026
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	291	608	1,150	2,350	3,520	6,790	10,800	19,100	39,000
20	200	418	787	1,620	2,420	4,660	7,430	13,100	26,800
30	160	336	632	1,300	1,940	3,750	5,970	10,600	21,500
40	137	287	541	1,110	1,660	3,210	5,110	9,030	18,400
50	122	255	480	985	1,480	2,840	4,530	8,000	16,300
60	110	231	434	892	1,340	2,570	4,100	7,250	14,800
80	101	212	400	821	1,230	2,370	3,770	6,670	13,600
100	94	197	372	763	1,140	2,200	3,510	6,210	12,700
125	89	185	349	716	1,070	2,070	3,290	5,820	11,900
150	84	175	330	677	1,010	1,950	3,110	5,500	11,200
175	74	155	292	600	899	1,730	2,760	4,880	9,950
200	67	140	265	543	814	1,570	2,500	4,420	9,010
250	62	129	243	500	749	1,440	2,300	4,060	8,290
300	58	120	227	465	697	1,340	2,140	3,780	7,710
350	51	107	201	412	618	1,190	1,900	3,350	6,840
400	46	97	182	373	560	1,080	1,720	3,040	6,190
450	42	89	167	344	515	991	1,580	2,790	5,700
500	40	83	156	320	479	922	1,470	2,600	5,300
550	37	78	146	300	449	865	1,380	2,440	4,970
600	35	73	138	283	424	817	1,300	2,300	4,700
650	33	70	131	269	403	776	1,240	2,190	4,460
700	32	66	125	257	385	741	1,180	2,090	4,260
750	30	64	120	246	368	709	1,130	2,000	4,080
800	29	61	115	236	354	681	1,090	1,920	3,920
850	28	59	111	227	341	656	1,050	1,850	3,770
900	27	57	107	220	329	634	1,010	1,790	3,640
950	26	55	104	213	319	613	978	1,730	3,530
1,000	25	53	100	206	309	595	948	1,680	3,420
1,100	25	52	97	200	300	578	921	1,630	3,320
1,200	24	50	95	195	292	562	895	1,580	3,230
1,300	23	48	90	185	277	534	850	1,500	3,070
1,400	22	46	86	176	264	509	811	1,430	2,930
1,500	21	44	82	169	253	487	777	1,370	2,800
1,600	20	42	79	162	243	468	746	1,320	2,690
1,700	19	40	76	156	234	451	719	1,270	2,590
1,800	19	39	74	151	226	436	694	1,230	2,500
1,900	18	38	71	146	219	422	672	1,190	2,420
2,000	18	37	69	142	212	409	652	1,150	2,350

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	10.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

TABLE 402.4(29)
SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

INTENDED USE		Sizing between first stage (high-pressure regulator) and second stage (low-pressure regulator).								
		TUBE SIZE (in.)								
Nominal	K & L	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
	ACR	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
Outside		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
10		513	1,060	2,150	3,760	5,330	11,400	20,500	32,300	67,400
20		352	727	1,480	2,580	3,670	7,830	14,100	22,200	46,300
30		283	584	1,190	2,080	2,940	6,290	11,300	17,900	37,200
40		242	500	1,020	1,780	2,520	5,380	9,690	15,300	31,800
50		215	443	901	1,570	2,230	4,770	8,590	13,500	28,200
60		194	401	816	1,430	2,020	4,320	7,780	12,300	25,600
70		179	369	751	1,310	1,860	3,980	7,160	11,300	23,500
80		166	343	699	1,220	1,730	3,700	6,660	10,500	21,900
90		156	322	655	1,150	1,630	3,470	6,250	9,850	20,500
100		147	304	619	1,080	1,540	3,280	5,900	9,310	19,400
125		131	270	549	959	1,360	2,910	5,230	8,250	17,200
150		118	244	497	869	1,230	2,630	4,740	7,470	15,600
175		109	225	457	799	1,130	2,420	4,360	6,880	14,300
200		101	209	426	744	1,060	2,250	4,060	6,400	13,300
250		90	185	377	659	935	2,000	3,600	5,670	11,800
300		81	168	342	597	847	1,810	3,260	5,140	10,700
350		75	155	314	549	779	1,660	3,000	4,730	9,840
400		70	144	292	511	725	1,550	2,790	4,400	9,160
450		65	135	274	480	680	1,450	2,620	4,130	8,590
500		62	127	259	453	643	1,370	2,470	3,900	8,120
550		59	121	246	430	610	1,300	2,350	3,700	7,710
600		56	115	235	410	582	1,240	2,240	3,530	7,350
650		54	111	225	393	558	1,190	2,140	3,380	7,040
700		51	106	216	378	536	1,140	2,060	3,250	6,770
750		50	102	208	364	516	1,100	1,980	3,130	6,520
800		48	99	201	351	498	1,060	1,920	3,020	6,290
850		46	96	195	340	482	1,030	1,850	2,920	6,090
900		45	93	189	330	468	1,000	1,800	2,840	5,910
950		44	90	183	320	454	970	1,750	2,750	5,730
1,000		42	88	178	311	442	944	1,700	2,680	5,580
1,100		40	83	169	296	420	896	1,610	2,540	5,300
1,200		38	79	161	282	400	855	1,540	2,430	5,050
1,300		37	76	155	270	383	819	1,470	2,320	4,840
1,400		35	73	148	260	368	787	1,420	2,230	4,650
1,500		34	70	143	250	355	758	1,360	2,150	4,480
1,600		33	68	138	241	343	732	1,320	2,080	4,330
1,700		32	66	134	234	331	708	1,270	2,010	4,190
1,800		31	64	130	227	321	687	1,240	1,950	4,060
1,900		30	62	126	220	312	667	1,200	1,890	3,940
2,000		29	60	122	214	304	648	1,170	1,840	3,830

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	1.50

TABLE 402.4(30) SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

INTENDED USE		Sizing between single or second stage (low-pressure regulator) and appliance.								
		TUBE SIZE (inch)								
Nominal	K & L	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
	ACR	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
Outside		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
10		45	93	188	329	467	997	1,800	2,830	5,890
20		31	64	129	226	321	685	1,230	1,950	4,050
30		25	51	104	182	258	550	991	1,560	3,250
40		21	44	89	155	220	471	848	1,340	2,780
50		19	39	79	138	195	417	752	1,180	2,470
60		17	35	71	125	177	378	681	1,070	2,240
70		16	32	66	115	163	348	626	988	2,060
80		15	30	61	107	152	324	583	919	1,910
90		14	28	57	100	142	304	547	862	1,800
100		13	27	54	95	134	287	517	814	1,700
125		11	24	48	84	119	254	458	722	1,500
150		10	21	44	76	108	230	415	654	1,360
175		NA	20	40	70	99	212	382	602	1,250
200		NA	18	37	65	92	197	355	560	1,170
250		NA	16	33	58	82	175	315	496	1,030
300		NA	15	30	52	74	158	285	449	936
350		NA	14	28	48	68	146	262	414	861
400		NA	13	26	45	63	136	244	385	801
450		NA	12	24	42	60	127	229	361	752
500		NA	11	23	40	56	120	216	341	710
550		NA	11	22	38	53	114	205	324	674
600		NA	10	21	36	51	109	196	309	643
650		NA	NA	20	34	49	104	188	296	616
700		NA	NA	19	33	47	100	180	284	592
750		NA	NA	18	32	45	96	174	274	570
800		NA	NA	18	31	44	93	168	264	551
850		NA	NA	17	30	42	90	162	256	533
900		NA	NA	17	29	41	87	157	248	517
950		NA	NA	16	28	40	85	153	241	502
1,000		NA	NA	16	27	39	83	149	234	488
1,100		NA	NA	15	26	37	78	141	223	464
1,200		NA	NA	14	25	35	75	135	212	442
1,300		NA	NA	14	24	34	72	129	203	423
1,400		NA	NA	13	23	32	69	124	195	407
1,500		NA	NA	13	22	31	66	119	188	392
1,600		NA	NA	12	21	30	64	115	182	378
1,700		NA	NA	12	20	29	62	112	176	366
1,800		NA	NA	11	20	28	60	108	170	355
1,900		NA	NA	11	19	27	58	105	166	345
2,000		NA	NA	11	19	27	57	102	161	335

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. NA means a flow of less than 10,000 Btu/hr.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

TABLE 402.4(31)
SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

INTENDED USE		**Tube sizing between 2 psig service and line pressure regulator.**								
		TUBE SIZE (inch)								
Nominal	**K & L**	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
	ACR	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
Outside		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10		413	852	1,730	3,030	4,300	9,170	16,500	26,000	54,200
20		284	585	1,190	2,080	2,950	6,310	11,400	17,900	37,300
30		228	470	956	1,670	2,370	5,060	9,120	14,400	29,900
40		195	402	818	1,430	2,030	4,330	7,800	12,300	25,600
50		173	356	725	1,270	1,800	3,840	6,920	10,900	22,700
60		157	323	657	1,150	1,630	3,480	6,270	9,880	20,600
70		144	297	605	1,060	1,500	3,200	5,760	9,090	18,900
80		134	276	562	983	1,390	2,980	5,360	8,450	17,600
90		126	259	528	922	1,310	2,790	5,030	7,930	16,500
100		119	245	498	871	1,240	2,640	4,750	7,490	15,600
125		105	217	442	772	1,100	2,340	4,210	6,640	13,800
150		95	197	400	700	992	2,120	3,820	6,020	12,500
175		88	181	368	644	913	1,950	3,510	5,540	11,500
200		82	168	343	599	849	1,810	3,270	5,150	10,700
250		72	149	304	531	753	1,610	2,900	4,560	9,510
300		66	135	275	481	682	1,460	2,620	4,140	8,610
350		60	124	253	442	628	1,340	2,410	3,800	7,920
400		56	116	235	411	584	1,250	2,250	3,540	7,370
450		53	109	221	386	548	1,170	2,110	3,320	6,920
500		50	103	209	365	517	1,110	1,990	3,140	6,530
550		47	97	198	346	491	1,050	1,890	2,980	6,210
600		45	93	189	330	469	1,000	1,800	2,840	5,920
650		43	89	181	316	449	959	1,730	2,720	5,670
700		41	86	174	304	431	921	1,660	2,620	5,450
750		40	82	168	293	415	888	1,600	2,520	5,250
800		39	80	162	283	401	857	1,540	2,430	5,070
850		37	77	157	274	388	829	1,490	2,350	4,900
900		36	75	152	265	376	804	1,450	2,280	4,750
950		35	72	147	258	366	781	1,410	2,220	4,620
1,000		34	71	143	251	356	760	1,370	2,160	4,490
1,100		32	67	136	238	338	721	1,300	2,050	4,270
1,200		31	64	130	227	322	688	1,240	1,950	4,070
1,300		30	61	124	217	309	659	1,190	1,870	3,900
1,400		28	59	120	209	296	633	1,140	1,800	3,740
1,500		27	57	115	201	286	610	1,100	1,730	3,610
1,600		26	55	111	194	276	589	1,060	1,670	3,480
1,700		26	53	108	188	267	570	1,030	1,620	3,370
1,800		25	51	104	182	259	553	1,000	1,570	3,270
1,900		24	50	101	177	251	537	966	1,520	3,170
2,000		23	48	99	172	244	522	940	1,480	3,090

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	1.50

TABLE 402.4(32)
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

INTENDED USE: SIZING BETWEEN SINGLE OR SECOND STAGE (Low Pressure) REGULATOR AND THE APPLIANCE SHUTOFF VALVE														
	TUBE SIZE (EHD)													
Flow Designation	13	15	18	19	23	25	30	31	37	39	46	48	60	62
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**													
5	72	99	181	211	355	426	744	863	1,420	1,638	2,830	3,270	5,780	6,550
10	50	69	129	150	254	303	521	605	971	1,179	1,990	2,320	4,110	4,640
15	39	55	104	121	208	248	422	490	775	972	1,620	1,900	3,370	3,790
20	34	49	91	106	183	216	365	425	661	847	1,400	1,650	2,930	3,290
25	30	42	82	94	164	192	325	379	583	762	1,250	1,480	2,630	2,940
30	28	39	74	87	151	177	297	344	528	698	1,140	1,350	2,400	2,680
40	23	33	64	74	131	153	256	297	449	610	988	1,170	2,090	2,330
50	20	30	58	66	118	137	227	265	397	548	884	1,050	1,870	2,080
60	19	26	53	60	107	126	207	241	359	502	805	961	1,710	1,900
70	17	25	49	57	99	117	191	222	330	466	745	890	1,590	1,760
80	15	23	45	52	94	109	178	208	307	438	696	833	1,490	1,650
90	15	22	44	50	90	102	169	197	286	414	656	787	1,400	1,550
100	14	20	41	47	85	98	159	186	270	393	621	746	1,330	1,480
150	11	15	31	36	66	75	123	143	217	324	506	611	1,090	1,210
200	9	14	28	33	60	69	112	129	183	283	438	531	948	1,050
250	8	12	25	30	53	61	99	117	163	254	390	476	850	934
300	8	11	23	26	50	57	90	107	147	234	357	434	777	854

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
2. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

TABLE 402.4(33)
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

INTENDED USE: SIZING BETWEEN 2 PSI SERVICE AND THE LINE PRESSURE REGULATOR														
	TUBE SIZE (EHD)													
Flow Designation	13	15	18	19	23	25	30	31	37	39	46	48	60	62
Length (ft)	Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour													
10	426	558	927	1,110	1,740	2,170	4,100	4,720	7,130	7,958	15,200	16,800	29,400	34,200
25	262	347	591	701	1,120	1,380	2,560	2,950	4,560	5,147	9,550	10,700	18,800	21,700
30	238	316	540	640	1,030	1,270	2,330	2,690	4,180	4,719	8,710	9,790	17,200	19,800
40	203	271	469	554	896	1,100	2,010	2,320	3,630	4,116	7,530	8,500	14,900	17,200
50	181	243	420	496	806	986	1,790	2,070	3,260	3,702	6,730	7,610	13,400	15,400
75	147	196	344	406	663	809	1,460	1,690	2,680	3,053	5,480	6,230	11,000	12,600
80	140	189	333	393	643	768	1,410	1,630	2,590	2,961	5,300	6,040	10,600	12,200
100	124	169	298	350	578	703	1,260	1,450	2,330	2,662	4,740	5,410	9,530	10,900
150	101	137	245	287	477	575	1,020	1,180	1,910	2,195	3,860	4,430	7,810	8,890
200	86	118	213	248	415	501	880	1,020	1,660	1,915	3,340	3,840	6,780	7,710
250	77	105	191	222	373	448	785	910	1,490	1,722	2,980	3,440	6,080	6,900
300	69	96	173	203	343	411	716	829	1,360	1,578	2,720	3,150	5,560	6,300
400	60	82	151	175	298	355	616	716	1,160	1,376	2,350	2,730	4,830	5,460
500	53	72	135	158	268	319	550	638	1,030	1,237	2,100	2,450	4,330	4,880

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.293 1 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds $^1/_2$ psi (based on 13 in. w.c. outlet pressure), DO NOT USE THIS TABLE. Consult with the regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator may vary with flow rate.
2. CAUTION: Capacities shown in the table might exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with the regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.
3. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
4. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
5. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	5.0 psi
Pressure Drop	3.5 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

TABLE 402.4(34)
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

	TUBE SIZE (EHD)													
Flow Designation	13	15	18	19	23	25	30	31	37	39	46	48	60	62
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**													
10	826	1,070	1,710	2,060	3,150	4,000	7,830	8,950	13,100	14,441	28,600	31,200	54,400	63,800
25	509	664	1,090	1,310	2,040	2,550	4,860	5,600	8,400	9,339	18,000	19,900	34,700	40,400
30	461	603	999	1,190	1,870	2,340	4,430	5,100	7,680	8,564	16,400	18,200	31,700	36,900
40	396	520	867	1,030	1,630	2,030	3,820	4,400	6,680	7,469	14,200	15,800	27,600	32,000
50	352	463	777	926	1,460	1,820	3,410	3,930	5,990	6,717	12,700	14,100	24,700	28,600
75	284	376	637	757	1,210	1,490	2,770	3,190	4,920	5,539	10,300	11,600	20,300	23,400
80	275	363	618	731	1,170	1,450	2,680	3,090	4,770	5,372	9,990	11,200	19,600	22,700
100	243	324	553	656	1,050	1,300	2,390	2,760	4,280	4,830	8,930	10,000	17,600	20,300
150	196	262	453	535	866	1,060	1,940	2,240	3,510	3,983	7,270	8,210	14,400	16,600
200	169	226	393	464	755	923	1,680	1,930	3,050	3,474	6,290	7,130	12,500	14,400
250	150	202	352	415	679	828	1,490	1,730	2,740	3,124	5,620	6,390	11,200	12,900
300	136	183	322	379	622	757	1,360	1,570	2,510	2,865	5,120	5,840	10,300	11,700
400	117	158	279	328	542	657	1,170	1,360	2,180	2,498	4,430	5,070	8,920	10,200
500	104	140	251	294	488	589	1,050	1,210	1,950	2,247	3,960	4,540	8,000	9,110

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1 Table does not include effect of pressure drop across line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds1 psi, DO NOT USE THIS TABLE. Consult with the regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drop across regulator may vary with the flow rate.

2. CAUTION: Capacities shown in the table might exceed maximum capacity of selected regulator. Consult with the tubing manufacturer for guidance.
3. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
4. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
5. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	1.50

TABLE 402.4(35)
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE

INTENDED USE	PE pipe sizing between integral two-stage regulator at tank or second stage (low-pressure regulator) and building.							
	PIPE SIZE (inch)							
Nominal OD	1/2	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2	3	4
Designation	SDR 9	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 10	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11
Actual ID	0.660	0.860	1.077	1.328	1.554	1.943	2.864	3.682
Length (ft)	Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour							
10	340	680	1,230	2,130	3,210	5,770	16,000	30,900
20	233	468	844	1,460	2,210	3,970	11,000	21,200
30	187	375	677	1,170	1,770	3,180	8,810	17,000
40	160	321	580	1,000	1,520	2,730	7,540	14,600
50	142	285	514	890	1,340	2,420	6,680	12,900
60	129	258	466	807	1,220	2,190	6,050	11,700
70	119	237	428	742	1,120	2,010	5,570	10,800
80	110	221	398	690	1,040	1,870	5,180	10,000
90	103	207	374	648	978	1,760	4,860	9,400
100	98	196	353	612	924	1,660	4,590	8,900
125	87	173	313	542	819	1,470	4,070	7,900
150	78	157	284	491	742	1,330	3,690	7,130
175	72	145	261	452	683	1,230	3,390	6,560
200	67	135	243	420	635	1,140	3,160	6,100
250	60	119	215	373	563	1,010	2,800	5,410
300	54	108	195	338	510	916	2,530	4,900
350	50	99	179	311	469	843	2,330	4,510
400	46	92	167	289	436	784	2,170	4,190
450	43	87	157	271	409	736	2,040	3,930
500	41	82	148	256	387	695	1,920	3,720

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

TABLE 402.4(36)
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE

INTENDED USE	PE pipe sizing between 2 psig service regulator and line pressure regulator.							
	PIPE SIZE (inch)							
Nominal OD	1/2	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2	3	4
Designation	SDR 9	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 10	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11
Actual ID	0.660	0.860	1.077	1.328	1.554	1.943	2.864	3.682
Length (ft)	Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour							
10	3,130	6,260	11,300	19,600	29,500	53,100	147,000	284,000
20	2,150	4,300	7,760	13,400	20,300	36,500	101,000	195,000
30	1,730	3,450	6,230	10,800	16,300	29,300	81,100	157,000
40	1,480	2,960	5,330	9,240	14,000	25,100	69,400	134,100
50	1,310	2,620	4,730	8,190	12,400	22,200	61,500	119,000
60	1,190	2,370	4,280	7,420	11,200	20,100	55,700	108,000
70	1,090	2,180	3,940	6,830	10,300	18,500	51,300	99,100
80	1,010	2,030	3,670	6,350	9,590	17,200	47,700	92,200
90	952	1,910	3,440	5,960	9,000	16,200	44,700	86,500
100	899	1,800	3,250	5,630	8,500	15,300	42,300	81,700
125	797	1,600	2,880	4,990	7,530	13,500	37,500	72,400
150	722	1,450	2,610	4,520	6,830	12,300	33,900	65,600
175	664	1,330	2,400	4,160	6,280	11,300	31,200	60,300
200	618	1,240	2,230	3,870	5,840	10,500	29,000	56,100
250	548	1,100	1,980	3,430	5,180	9,300	25,700	49,800
300	496	994	1,790	3,110	4,690	8,430	23,300	45,100
350	457	914	1,650	2,860	4,320	7,760	21,500	41,500
400	425	851	1,530	2,660	4,020	7,220	12,000	38,600
450	399	798	1,440	2,500	3,770	6,770	18,700	36,200
500	377	754	1,360	2,360	3,560	6,390	17,700	34,200
550	358	716	1,290	2,240	3,380	6,070	16,800	32,500
600	341	683	1,230	2,140	3,220	5,790	16,000	31,000
650	327	654	1,180	2,040	3,090	5,550	15,400	29,700
700	314	628	1,130	1,960	2,970	5,330	14,700	28,500
750	302	605	1,090	1,890	2,860	5,140	14,200	27,500
800	292	585	1,050	1,830	2,760	4,960	13,700	26,500
850	283	566	1,020	1,770	2,670	4,800	13,300	25,700
900	274	549	990	1,710	2,590	4,650	12,900	24,900
950	266	533	961	1,670	2,520	4,520	12,500	24,200
1,000	259	518	935	1,620	2,450	4,400	12,200	23,500
1,100	246	492	888	1,540	2,320	4,170	11,500	22,300
1,200	234	470	847	1,470	2,220	3,980	11,000	21,300
1,300	225	450	811	1,410	2,120	3,810	10,600	20,400
1,400	216	432	779	1,350	2,040	3,660	10,100	19,600
1,500	208	416	751	1,300	1,960	3,530	9,760	18,900
1,600	201	402	725	1,260	1,900	3,410	9,430	18,200
1,700	194	389	702	1,220	1,840	3,300	9,130	17,600
1,800	188	377	680	1,180	1,780	3,200	8,850	17,100
1,900	183	366	661	1,140	1,730	3,110	8,590	16,600
2,000	178	356	643	1,110	1,680	3,020	8,360	16,200

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	1.50

TABLE 402.4(37)
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC TUBING

INTENDED USE	PE pipe sizing between integral two-stage regulator at tank or second stage (low-pressure regulator) and building.	
Plastic Tubing Size (CTS) (inch)		
Nominal OD	1/2	1
Designation	SDR 7	SDR 11
Actual ID	0.445	0.927
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour	
10	121	828
20	83	569
30	67	457
40	57	391
50	51	347
60	46	314
70	42	289
80	39	269
90	37	252
100	35	238
125	31	211
150	28	191
175	26	176
200	24	164
225	22	154
250	21	145
275	20	138
300	19	132
350	18	121
400	16	113
450	15	106
500	15	100

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm,
1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa,
1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.293 1 W,
1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.0 1745 rad.

Note: All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

SECTION 403 (IFGS) PIPING MATERIALS

403.1 General. Materials used for *piping* systems shall comply with the requirements of this chapter or shall be *approved*.

403.2 Used materials. Pipe, fittings, valves and other materials shall not be used again except where they are free of foreign materials and have been ascertained to be adequate for the service intended.

403.3 Other materials. Material not covered by the standards specifications listed herein shall be investigated and tested to determine that it is safe and suitable for the proposed service, and, in addition, shall be recommended for that service by the manufacturer and shall be *approved* by the code official.

403.4 Metallic pipe. Metallic pipe shall comply with Sections 403.4.1 through 403.4.4.

403.4.1 Cast iron. Cast-iron pipe shall not be used.

403.4.2 Steel. Steel and wrought-iron pipe shall be at least of standard weight (Schedule 40) and shall comply with one of the following standards:

1. ASME B36.10, 10M;
2. ASTM A53/A53M; or
3. ASTM A106.

403.4.3 Copper and brass. Copper and brass pipe shall not be used if the gas contains more than an average of 0.3 grains of hydrogen sulfide per 100 standard cubic feet of gas (0.7 milligrams per 100 liters). Threaded copper, brass and aluminum-alloy pipe shall not be used with gases corrosive to such materials.

403.4.4 Aluminum. Aluminum-alloy pipe shall comply with ASTM B241 (except that the use of alloy 5456 is prohibited), and shall be marked at each end of each length indicating compliance. Aluminum-alloy pipe shall be coated to protect against external corrosion where it is in contact with masonry, plaster or insulation, or is subject to repeated wettings by such liquids as water, detergents or sewage. Aluminum-alloy pipe shall not be used in exterior locations or underground.

403.5 Metallic tubing. Seamless copper, aluminum alloy and steel tubing shall not be used with gases corrosive to such materials.

403.5.1 Steel tubing. Steel tubing shall comply with ASTM A254.

403.5.2 Copper and brass tubing. Copper tubing shall comply with Standard Type K or L of ASTM B88 or ASTM B280.

Copper and brass tubing shall not be used if the gas contains more than an average of 0.3 grains of hydrogen sulfide per 100 standard cubic feet of gas (0.7 milligrams per 100 liters).

403.5.3 Aluminum tubing. Aluminum-alloy tubing shall comply with ASTM B210 or ASTM B241. Aluminum-alloy tubing shall be coated to protect against external corrosion where it is in contact with masonry, plaster or insulation, or is subject to repeated wettings by such liquids as water, detergent or sewage.

Aluminum-alloy tubing shall not be used in exterior locations or underground.

403.5.4 Corrugated stainless steel tubing. Corrugated stainless steel tubing shall be *listed* in accordance with ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26.

403.6 Plastic pipe, tubing and fittings. Polyethylene plastic pipe, tubing and fittings used to supply fuel gas shall conform to the 2009 edition of ASTM D2513. Such pipe shall be marked "Gas" and "ASTM D2513."

Plastic pipe, tubing and fittings, other than polyethylene, shall be identified and conform to the 2008 edition of ASTM D2513. Such pipe shall be marked "Gas" and "ASTM D2513."

403.6.1 Anodeless risers. Plastic pipe, tubing and anodeless risers shall comply with the following:

1. Factory-assembled anodeless risers shall be recommended by the manufacturer for the gas used and shall be leak tested by the manufacturer in accordance with written procedures.
2. Service head adapters and field-assembled anodeless risers incorporating service head adapters shall be recommended by the manufacturer for the gas used, and shall be designed and certified to meet the requirements of Category I of the 2009 edition of ASTM D2513, and U.S. Department of Transportation, Code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Part 192.281(e). The manufacturer shall provide the user with qualified installation instructions as prescribed by the U.S. Department of Transportation, Code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Part 192.283(b).

403.6.2 LP-gas systems. The use of plastic pipe, tubing and fittings in undiluted liquefied petroleum gas *piping* systems shall be in accordance with NFPA 58.

403.6.3 Regulator vent piping. Plastic pipe and fittings used to connect regulator vents to remote vent terminations shall be PVC conforming to ANSI/UL 651. PVC vent *piping* shall not be installed indoors.

403.7 Workmanship and defects. Pipe, tubing and fittings shall be clear and free from cutting burrs and defects in structure or threading, and shall be thoroughly brushed, and chip and scale blown.

Defects in pipe, tubing and fittings shall not be repaired. Defective pipe, tubing and fittings shall be replaced.

403.8 Protective coating. Where in contact with material, or passing through concrete or other abrasive material or atmosphere exerting a corrosive action, metallic *piping* and fittings coated with a corrosion-resistant material, sleeve, or casing shall be used. Steel pipe exposed in exterior locations shall be galvanized or coated with *approved* corrosion-resistant material. External or internal coatings or linings used on *piping* or components shall not be considered as adding strength.

403.9 Metallic pipe threads. Metallic pipe and fitting threads shall be taper pipe threads and shall comply with ASME B1.20.1.

403.9.1 Damaged threads. Pipe with threads that are stripped, chipped, corroded or otherwise damaged shall not be used. Where a weld opens during the operation of cutting or threading, that portion of the pipe shall not be used.

403.9.2 Number of threads. Field threading of metallic pipe shall be in accordance with Table 403.9.2.

TABLE 403.9.2
SPECIFICATIONS FOR THREADING METALLIC PIPE

IRON PIPE SIZE (inches)	APPROXIMATE LENGTH OF THREADED PORTION (inches)	APPROXIMATE NUMBER OF THREADS TO BE CUT
1/2	3/4	10
3/4	3/4	10
1	7/8	10
1 1/4	1	11
1 1/2	1	11
2	1	11
2 1/2	1 1/2	12
3	1 1/2	12
4	1 5/8	13

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

403.9.3 Thread joint compounds. Thread joint compounds shall be resistant to the action of liquefied petroleum gas or to any other chemical constituents of the gases to be conducted through the *piping*.

403.10 Metallic piping joints and fittings. The type of *piping* joint used shall be suitable for the pressure-temperature conditions and shall be selected giving consideration to joint tightness and mechanical strength under the service conditions. The joint shall be able to sustain the maximum end force caused by the internal pressure and any additional forces caused by temperature expansion or contraction, vibration, fatigue or the weight of the pipe and its contents.

403.10.1 Pipe joints. Pipe joints shall be threaded, flanged, brazed, welded, or made with press connect fittings complying with ANSI LC 4. Where nonferrous pipe is brazed, the brazing materials shall have a melting point in excess of 1,000°F (538°C). Brazing alloys shall not contain more than 0.05 percent phosphorus.

403.10.2 Tubing joints. Tubing joints shall be either made with *approved* gas tubing fittings or brazed with a material having a melting point in excess of 1,000°F (538°C), or made by press connect fittings complying with ANSI LC 4, *Press-Connect Copper and Copper Alloy, Fittings for Use in Fuel Gas Distribution Systems*. Brazing alloys shall not contain more than 0.05 percent phosphorus.

403.10.3 Flared joints. Flared joints shall be used only in systems constructed from nonferrous pipe and tubing where experience or tests have demonstrated that the joint is suitable for the conditions and where provisions are made in the design to prevent separation of the joints.

403.10.4 Metallic fittings. Metallic fittings, including valves, strainers, and filters, shall comply with the following:

1. Threaded fittings in sizes larger than 2 inches (51 mm) shall not be used except where *approved*.
2. Fittings used with steel or wrought-iron pipe shall be steel, brass, bronze, or malleable iron.
3. Fittings used with copper or brass pipe shall be copper, brass, or bronze.
4. Fittings used with aluminum alloy pipe shall be of aluminum alloy.
5. Brass, bronze, or copper fittings. Fittings, if exposed to soil, shall have a minimum 80 percent copper content.
6. Aluminum alloy fittings. Threads shall not form the joint seal.
7. Zinc-aluminum alloy fittings. Fittings shall not be used in systems containing flammable gas-air mixtures.

403.11 Plastic pipe, joints and fittings. Plastic pipe, tubing and fittings shall be joined in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Such joint shall comply with the following:

1. The joint shall be designed and installed so that the longitudinal pull-out resistance of the joint will be at least equal to the tensile strength of the plastic *piping* material.
2. Heat-fusion joints shall be made in accordance with qualified procedures that have been established and proven by test to produce gas-tight joints at least as strong as the pipe or tubing being joined. Joints shall be made with the joining method recommended by the pipe manufacturer. Heat fusion fittings shall be marked "ASTM D2513."
3. Where compression-type mechanical joints are used, the gasket material in the fitting shall be compatible with the plastic *piping* and with the gas distributed by the system. An internal tubular rigid stiffener shall be used in conjunction with the fitting. The stiffener shall be flush with the end of the pipe or tubing and shall extend at least to the outside end of the compression fitting when installed. The stiffener shall be free of rough or sharp edges and shall not be a force fit in the plastic. Split tubular stiffeners shall not be used.
4. Plastic *piping* joints and fittings for use in liquefied petroleum gas *piping* systems shall be in accordance with NFPA 58.

403.12 Flanges. All flanges shall comply with ASME B16.1, ASME B16.20 or MSS SP-6. The pressure-temperature ratings shall equal or exceed that required by the application.

403.12.1 Flange facings. Standard facings shall be permitted for use under this code. Where 150-pound (1034 kPa) pressure-rated steel flanges are bolted to Class 125 cast-iron flanges, the raised face on the steel flange shall be removed.

403.12.2 Lapped flanges. Lapped flanges shall be used only above ground or in exposed locations accessible for inspection.

403.13 Flange gaskets. Material for gaskets shall be capable of withstanding the design temperature and pressure of the *piping* system, and the chemical constituents of the gas being conducted, without change to its chemical and physical properties. The effects of fire exposure to the joint shall be considered in choosing material. Acceptable materials include metal (plain or corrugated), composition, and aluminum "O" rings and spiral wound metal gaskets. When a flanged joint is opened, the gasket shall be replaced. Full-face gaskets shall be used with all bronze and cast-iron flanges.

SECTION 404 (IFGC)
PIPING SYSTEM INSTALLATION

404.1 Installation of materials. All materials used shall be installed in strict accordance with the standards under which the materials are accepted and approved. In the absence of such installation procedures, the manufacturer's instructions shall be followed. Where the requirements of referenced standards or manufacturer's instructions do not conform to minimum provisions of this code, the provisions of this code shall apply.

404.2 CSST. CSST piping systems shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their approval, the conditions of listing, the manufacturer's instructions and this code.

404.3 Prohibited locations. *Piping* shall not be installed in or through a ducted supply, return or exhaust, or a clothes chute, chimney or gas vent, dumbwaiter or elevator shaft. *Piping* installed downstream of the *point of delivery* shall not extend through any townhouse unit other than the unit served by such *piping*.

404.4 Piping in solid partitions and walls. Concealed *piping* shall not be located in solid partitions and solid walls, unless installed in a chase or casing.

404.5 Piping in concealed locations. Portions of a *piping* system installed in concealed locations shall not have unions, tubing fittings, right and left couplings, bushings, compression couplings and swing joints made by combinations of fittings.

Exceptions:

1. Tubing joined by brazing.
2. Fittings *listed* for use in concealed locations.

404.6 Underground penetrations prohibited. Gas *piping* shall not penetrate building foundation walls at any point below grade. Gas *piping* shall enter and exit a building at a point above grade and the annular space between the pipe and the wall shall be sealed. If necessary due to structural conditions, underground *piping* may be installed with prior approval from the building official.

404.7 Protection against physical damage. In concealed locations, where *piping* other than black or galvanized steel is installed through holes or notches in wood studs, joists, rafters or similar members less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, the pipe shall be protected by shield plates. Protective steel shield plates having a minimum thickness of 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage) shall cover the area of the pipe where the member is notched or bored and shall extend a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above sole plates, below top plates and to each side of a stud, joist or rafter.

404.8 Piping in solid floors. *Piping* in solid floors shall be laid in channels in the floor and covered in a manner that will allow access to the *piping* with a minimum amount of damage to the building. Where such piping is subject to exposure to excessive moisture or corrosive substances, the *piping* shall be protected in an *approved* manner. As an alternative to installation in channels, the *piping* shall be installed in a conduit of Schedule 40 steel, wrought iron, PVC, or ABS pipe in accordance with IFGC Section 404.8.1 or 404.8.2. If necessary due to structural conditions, *piping* may be installed in other locations with prior *approval* from the building official.

404.8.1 Conduit with one end terminating outdoors. The conduit shall extend into an occupiable portion of the building and, at the point where the conduit terminates in the building, the space between the conduit and the gas *piping* shall be sealed to prevent the possible entrance of any gas leakage. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the pipe emerges from the floor. If the end sealing is capable of withstanding the full pressure of the gas pipe, the conduit shall be designed for the same pressure as the pipe. Such conduit shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) outside the building, shall be vented above grade to the outdoors and shall be installed so as prevent the entrance of water and insects.

404.8.2 Conduit with both ends terminating indoors. Where the conduit originates and terminates within the same building, the conduit shall originate and terminate in an accessible portion of the building and shall not be sealed. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the pipe emerges from the floor.

404.9 Above-ground outdoor piping. All *piping* installed outdoors shall be elevated not less than $3^1/_2$ inches (152 mm) above ground and where installed across roof surfaces, shall be elevated not less than $3^1/_2$ inches (152 mm) above the roof surface. *Piping* installed above ground, outdoors, and installed across the surface of roofs shall be securely supported and located where it will be protected from physical damage. Where passing through an outside wall, the *piping* shall also be protected against corrosion by coating or wrapping with an inert material. Where *piping* is encased in a protective pipe sleeve, the annular space between the *piping* and the sleeve shall be sealed.

404.10 Isolation. Metallic *piping* and metallic tubing that conveys fuel gas from an LP-gas storage container shall be provided with an *approved* dielectric fitting to electrically isolate the underground portion of the pipe or tube from the above ground portion that enters a building. Such dielectric fitting shall be installed above ground, outdoors.

404.11 Protection against corrosion. Metallic pipe or tubing exposed to corrosive action, such as soil condition or moisture, shall be protected in an *approved* manner. Zinc coatings (galvanizing) shall not be deemed adequate protection for gas *piping* underground. Where dissimilar metals are joined underground, an insulating coupling or fitting shall be used. *Piping* shall not be laid in contact with cinders.

404.11.1 Prohibited use. Uncoated threaded or socket welded joints shall not be used in *piping* in contact with soil or where internal or external crevice corrosion is known to occur.

404.11.2 Protective coatings and wrapping. Pipe protective coatings and wrappings shall be *approved* for the application and shall be factory applied.

Exception: Where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, field application of coatings and wrappings shall be permitted for pipe nipples, fittings and locations where the factory coating or wrapping has been damaged or necessarily removed at joints.

404.12 Minimum burial depth. Underground *piping* systems shall be installed a minimum depth of 12 inches (305 mm) below grade, except as provided for in Section 404.12.1.

404.12.1 Individual outside appliances. Individual lines to outside lights, grills or other *appliance*s shall be installed a minimum of 8 inches (203 mm) below finished grade, provided that such installation is *approved* and is installed in locations not susceptible to physical damage.

404.13 Trenches. The trench shall be graded so that the pipe has a firm, substantially continuous bearing on the bottom of the trench.

404.14 Piping underground beneath buildings. *Piping* installed underground beneath buildings is prohibited except where the *piping* is encased in a conduit of wrought iron, plastic pipe, or steel pipe designed to withstand the superimposed loads and with prior *approval* from the building official. Such conduit shall extend into an occupiable portion of the building and, at the point where the conduit terminates in the building, the space between the conduit and the gas *piping* shall be sealed to prevent the possible entrance of any gas leakage. Where the end sealing is capable of withstanding the full pressure of the gas pipe, the conduit shall be designed for the same pressure as the pipe. Such conduit shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) outside the building, shall be vented above grade to the outdoors, and shall be installed so as to prevent the entrance of water and insects. Such conduit shall be identified with a yellow label marked "Gas" in black letters, spaced at intervals not exceeding 5 feet (1524 mm), and shall be located a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) below the bottom of the concrete floor. The conduit shall be protected from corrosion in accordance with IFGC Section 404.11.

404.14.1 Conduit with one end terminating outdoors. The conduit shall extend into an occupiable portion of the building and, at the point where the conduit terminates in the building, the space between the conduit and the gas *piping* shall be sealed to prevent the possible entrance of any gas leakage. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the pipe emerges from the floor. Where the end sealing is capable of withstanding the full pressure of the gas pipe, the conduit shall be designed for the same pressure as the pipe. Such conduit shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) outside of the building, shall be vented above grade to the outdoors and shall be installed so as to prevent the entrance of water and insects.

404.14.2 Conduit with both ends terminating indoors. Where the conduit originates and terminates within the same building, the conduit shall originate and terminate in an accessible portion of the building and shall not be sealed. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the pipe emerges from the floor.

404.15 Outlet closures. Gas *outlets* that do not connect to *appliance*s shall be capped gas tight.

Exception: *Listed* and *labeled* flush-mounted-type quick-disconnect devices and *listed* and *labeled* gas convenience outlets shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

404.16 Location of outlets. The unthreaded portion of *piping outlets* shall extend not less than l inch (25 mm) through finished ceilings and walls and where extending through floors or outdoor patios and slabs, shall not be less than 2 inches (51 mm) above them. The outlet fitting or *piping* shall be securely supported. *Outlets* shall not be placed behind doors. *Outlets* shall be located in the room or space where the *appliance* is installed.

Exception: *Listed* and *labeled* flush-mounted-type quick-disconnect devices and *listed* and *labeled* gas convenience *outlets* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

404.17 Plastic pipe. The installation of plastic pipe shall comply with Sections 404.17.1 through 404.17.3.

404.17.1 Limitations. Plastic pipe shall be installed outdoors underground only. Plastic pipe shall not be used within or under any building or slab or be operated at pressures greater than 100 psig (689 kPa) for natural gas or 30 psig (207 kPa) for LP-gas.

Exceptions:

1. Plastic pipe shall be permitted to terminate above ground outside of buildings where installed in premanufactured anodeless risers or service head adapter risers that are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. Plastic pipe shall be permitted to terminate with a wall head adapter within buildings where the plastic pipe is inserted in a *piping* material for fuel gas use in buildings.
3. Plastic pipe shall be permitted under outdoor patio, walkway and driveway slabs provided that the burial depth complies with Section 404.12.

404.17.2 Connections. Connections made outdoors and underground between metallic and plastic *piping* shall be made only with transition fittings conforming with ASTMD 2513 Category I or ASTM F1973.

404.17.3 Tracer. A yellow insulated copper tracer wire or other *approved* conductor shall be installed adjacent to underground nonmetallic *piping*. *Access* shall be provided to the tracer wire or the tracer wire shall terminate above ground at each end of the nonmetallic *piping*. The tracer wire size shall not be less than 18 AWG and the insulation type shall be suitable for direct burial.

404.18 Prohibited devices. A device shall not be placed inside the *piping* or fittings that will reduce the cross-sectional area or otherwise obstruct the free flow of gas.

Exceptions:

1. Approved gas filters.
2. An approved fitting or device where the gas piping system has been sized to accommodate the pressure drop of the fitting or device.

404.19 Testing of piping. Before any system of *piping* is put in service or concealed, it shall be tested to ensure that it is gas tight. Testing, inspection and purging of *piping* systems shall comply with Section 406.

SECTION 405 (IFGS) PIPING BENDS AND CHANGES IN DIRECTION

405.1 General. Changes in direction of pipe shall be permitted to be made by the use of fittings, factory bends or field bends.

405.2 Metallic pipe. Metallic pipe bends shall comply with the following:

1. Bends shall be made only with bending tools and procedures intended for that purpose.
2. All bends shall be smooth and free from buckling, cracks or other evidence of mechanical damage.
3. The longitudinal weld of the pipe shall be near the neutral axis of the bend.
4. Pipe shall not be bent through an arc of more than 90 degrees (1.6 rad).
5. The inside radius of a bend shall be not less than six times the outside diameter of the pipe.

405.3 Plastic pipe. Plastic pipe bends shall comply with the following:

1. The pipe shall not be damaged and the internal diameter of the pipe shall not be effectively reduced.
2. Joints shall not be located in pipe bends.
3. The radius of the inner curve of such bends shall not be less than 25 times the inside diameter of the pipe.
4. Where the *piping* manufacturer specifies the use of special bending tools or procedures, such tools or procedures shall be used.

405.4 Elbows. Factory-made welding elbows or transverse segments cut therefrom shall have an arc length measured along the crotch at least 1 inch (25 mm) in pipe sizes 2 inches (51 mm) and larger.

SECTION 406 (IFGS) INSPECTION, TESTING AND PURGING

406.1 General. Prior to acceptance and initial operation, all *piping* installations shall be visually inspected and pressure tested to determine that the materials, design, fabrication and installation practices comply with the requirements of this code.

406.1.1 Inspections. Inspection shall consist of visual examination, during or after manufacture, fabrication, assembly or pressure tests.

406.1.2 Alterations, repairs and additions. In the event *alterations*, repairs or *additions* are made following the pressure test, the affected *piping* shall be tested.

Exception: *Equipment* or *appliance* replacement, minor *alterations*, repairs, or *additions*, provided the work is inspected and connections are tested with a noncorrosive leak-detecting fluid or other leak-detecting methods *approved* by the building official.

406.1.3 New branches. Where new branches are installed to new *appliance*s, only the newly installed branches shall be required to be pressure tested. Connections between the new *piping* and the existing *piping* shall be tested with a noncorrosive leak-detecting fluid or other *approved* leak-detecting methods.

406.1.4 Section testing. A *piping* system shall be permitted to be tested as a complete unit or in sections. Under no circumstances shall a valve in a line be used as a bulkhead between gas in one section of the *piping* system and test medium in an adjacent section, unless two valves are installed in series with a valved "telltale" located between these valves. A valve shall not be subjected to the test pressure unless it can be determined that the valve, including the valve-closing mechanism, is designed to safely withstand the test pressure.

406.1.5 Regulators and valve assemblies. Deleted.

406.1.6 Pipe clearing. Prior to testing, the interior of the pipe shall be cleared of all foreign material.

406.2 Test medium. The test medium shall be air, nitrogen, carbon dioxide or an inert gas. Oxygen shall not be used.

406.3 Test preparation. Pipe joints, including welds, shall be left exposed for examination during the test.

Exception: Covered or concealed pipe end joints that have been previously tested in accordance with this code.

406.3.1 Expansion joints. Expansion joints shall be provided with temporary restraints, if required, for the additional thrust load under test.

406.3.2 Appliance and equipment isolation. *Appliance*s and *equipment* that are not to be included in the test shall be either disconnected from the *piping* or isolated by blanks, blind flanges or caps. Flanged joints at which blinds are inserted to blank off other *equipment* during the test shall not be required to be tested.

406.3.3 Appliance and equipment disconnection. Where the *piping* system is connected to *appliance*s or *equipment* designed for operating pressures of less than the test pressure, such *appliance*s or *equipment* shall be isolated from the *piping* system by disconnecting them and capping the outlet(s).

406.3.4 Valve isolation. Where the *piping* system is connected to *appliance*s or *equipment* designed for operating pressures equal to or greater than the test pressure, such *appliance*s or *equipment* shall be isolated from the *piping* system by closing the individual *appliance* or *equipment* shutoff valve(s).

406.3.5 Testing precautions. All testing of *piping* systems shall be performed in a manner that protects the safety of employees and the public during the test.

406.4 Test pressure measurement. Test pressure shall be measured with a manometer or with a pressure-measuring device designed and calibrated to read, record or indicate a pressure loss caused by leakage during the pressure test period. The source of pressure shall be isolated before the pressure tests are made. Mechanical gauges used to measure test pressures shall have a range such that the highest end of the scale is not greater than five times the test pressure.

406.4.1 Test pressure. The test pressure to be used shall be no less than one and one-half times the proposed maximum working pressure, but not less than 25 psig (172 kPa gauge), irrespective of design pressure. Where the test pressure exceeds 125 psig (862 kPa gauge), the test pressure shall not exceed a value that produces a hoop stress in the piping greater than 50 percent of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

406.4.2 Test duration. Test duration shall be not less than one-half hour. When testing a system in a single-family dwelling, the test duration shall be permitted to be reduced to 10 minutes with prior *approval* from the building official.

406.4.3 Test gauges. Tests which utilize dial gauges shall be performed with gauges of 2 psi (13.8 kPa) incrementation or less and shall have a pressure range not greater than twice the test pressure applied. The test pressure shall be within the middle 50 percent of the test gauge pressure range.

406.5 Detection of leaks and defects. The *piping* system shall withstand the test pressure specified without showing any evidence of leakage or other defects.

Any reduction of test pressures as indicated by pressure gauges shall be deemed to indicate the presence of a leak unless such reduction can be readily attributed to some other cause.

406.5.1 Detection methods. The leakage shall be located by means of an *approved* gas detector, a noncorrosive leak detection fluid or other *approved* leak detection methods. Matches, candles, open flames or other methods that could provide a source of ignition shall not be used.

406.5.2 Corrections. Where leakage or other defects are located, the affected portion of the *piping* system shall be repaired or replaced and retested.

406.6 Piping system and equipment leakage check. Leakage checking of systems and *equipment* shall be in accordance with Sections 406.6.1 through 406.6.4.

406.6.1 Test gases. Leak checks using fuel gas shall be permitted in *piping* systems that have been pressure tested in accordance with Section 406.

406.6.2 Before turning gas on. During the process of turning gas on into a system of new gas *piping*, the entire system shall be inspected to determine that there are no open fittings or ends and that all valves at unused outlets are closed and plugged or capped.

406.6.3 Leak check. Immediately after the gas is turned on into a new system or into a system that has been initially restored after an interruption of service, the *piping* system shall be checked for leakage. Where leakage is indicated, the gas supply shall be shut off until the necessary repairs have been made.

406.6.4 Placing appliances and equipment in operation. *Appliance*s and *equipment* shall not be placed in operation until after the *piping* system has been checked for leakage in accordance with Section 406.6.3, the piping system has been purged in accordance with Section 406.7 and the connections to the appliances have been checked for leakage.

406.7 Purging. The purging of piping shall be in accordance with Sections 406.7.1 through 406.7.3.

406.7.1 Piping systems required to be purged outdoors. The purging of piping systems shall be in accordance with the provisions of Sections 406.7.1.1 through 406.7.1.4 where the piping system meets either of the following:

1. The design operating gas pressure is greater than 2 psig (13.79 kPa).
2. The piping being purged contains one or more sections of pipe or tubing meeting the size and length criteria of Table 406.7.1.1.

406.7.1.1 Removal from service. Where existing gas piping is opened, the section that is opened shall be isolated from the gas supply and the line pressure vented in accordance with Section 406.7.1.3. Where gas piping meeting the criteria of Table 406.7.1.1 is removed from service, the residual fuel gas in the piping shall be displaced with an inert gas.

TABLE 406.7.1.1
SIZE AND LENGTH OF PIPING

NOMINAL PIPE SIZE (inches)[a]	LENGTH OF PIPING (feet)
≥ 2 1/2 < 3	> 50
≥ 3 < 4	> 30
≥ 4 < 6	> 15
≥ 6 < 8	> 10
≥ 8	Any length

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. CSST EHD size of 62 is equivalent to nominal 2-inch pipe or tubing size.

406.7.1.2 Placing in operation. Where gas piping containing air and meeting the criteria of Table 406.7.1.1 is placed in operation, the air in the piping shall first be displaced with an inert gas. The inert gas shall then be displaced with fuel gas in accordance with Section 406.7.1.3.

406.7.1.3 Outdoor discharge of purged gases. The open end of a piping system being pressure vented or purged shall discharge directly to an outdoor location. Purging operations shall comply with all of the following requirements:

1. The point of discharge shall be controlled with a shutoff valve.
2. The point of discharge shall be located at least 10 feet (3048 mm) from sources of ignition, at least 10 feet (3048 mm) from building openings and at least 25 feet (7620 mm) from mechanical air intake openings.
3. During discharge, the open point of discharge shall be continuously attended and monitored with a combustible gas indicator that complies with Section 406.7.1.4.
4. Purging operations introducing fuel gas shall be stopped when 90 percent fuel gas by volume is detected within the pipe.
5. Persons not involved in the purging operations shall be evacuated from all areas within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the point of discharge.

406.7.1.4 Combustible gas indicator. Combustible gas indicators shall be listed and shall be calibrated in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Combustible gas indicators shall numerically display a volume scale from zero percent to 100 percent in 1 percent or smaller increments.

406.7.2 Piping systems allowed to be purged indoors or outdoors. The purging of piping systems shall be in accordance with the provisions of Section 406.7.2.1 where the piping system meets both of the following:

1. The design operating gas pressure is 2 psig (13.79 kPa) or less.
2. The piping being purged is constructed entirely from pipe or tubing not meeting the size and length criteria of Table 406.7.1.1.

406.7.2.1 Purging procedure. The piping system shall be purged in accordance with one or more of the following:

1. The piping shall be purged with fuel gas and shall discharge to the outdoors.
2. The piping shall be purged with fuel gas and shall discharge to the indoors or outdoors through an appliance burner not located in a combustion chamber. Such burner shall be provided with a continuous source of ignition.
3. The piping shall be purged with fuel gas and shall discharge to the indoors or outdoors through a burner that has a continuous source of ignition and that is designed for such purpose.
4. The piping shall be purged with fuel gas that is discharged to the indoors or outdoors, and the point of discharge shall be monitored with a listed combustible gas detector in accordance with Section 406.7.2.2. Purging shall be stopped when fuel gas is detected.
5. The piping shall be purged by the gas supplier in accordance with written procedures.

406.7.2.2 Combustible gas detector. Combustible gas detectors shall be listed and shall be calibrated or tested in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Combustible gas detectors shall be capable of indicating the presence of fuel gas.

406.7.3 Purging appliances and equipment. After the piping system has been placed in operation, appliances and equipment shall be purged before being placed into operation.

SECTION 407 (IFGC) PIPING SUPPORT

407.1 General. *Piping* shall be provided with support in accordance with Section 407.2.

407.2 Design and installation. *Piping* shall be supported with metal pipe hooks, metal pipe straps, metal bands, metal brackets, metal hangers or building structural components, suitable for the size of *piping*, of adequate strength and quality, and located at intervals so as to prevent or damp out excessive vibration. *Piping* shall be anchored to prevent undue strains on connected *appliance*s and shall not be supported by other *piping*. Pipe hangers and supports shall conform to the requirements of MSS SP-58 and shall be spaced in accordance with Section 415. Supports, hangers and anchors shall be installed so as not to interfere with the free expansion and contraction of the *piping* between anchors. All parts of the supporting *equipment* shall be designed and installed so they will not be disengaged by movement of the supported *piping*.

SECTION 408 (IFGC) DRIPS AND SLOPED PIPING

408.1 Slopes. *Piping* for other than dry gas conditions shall be sloped not less than $^1/_4$ inch in 15 feet (6.3 mm in 4572 mm) to prevent traps.

408.2 Drips. Where wet gas exists, a drip shall be provided at any point in the line of pipe where condensate could collect. A drip shall also be provided at the outlet of the meter and shall be installed so as to constitute a trap wherein an accumulation of condensate will shut off the flow of gas before the condensate will run back into the meter.

408.3 Location of drips. Drips shall be provided with ready access to permit cleaning or emptying. A drip shall not be located where the condensate is subject to freezing.

408.4 Sediment trap. A sediment trap shall be installed before all automatically controlled gas *appliances* where a sediment trap is not incorporated as part of the *appliance*. The sediment trap shall be installed as close to the inlet of the *appliance* as practical, before any regulator or automatic gas valve, and ahead of all pounds-to-inches pressure regulators. The sediment trap shall be either a tee fitting with a capped nipple, a minimum of 3 inches (80 mm) in length, in the bottom opening of the run of the tee, or other device *approved* as an effective sediment trap. If a tee fitting is used, it shall provide a 90-degree change of direction of gas flow and the cap shall be at an elevation lower than the tee fitting.

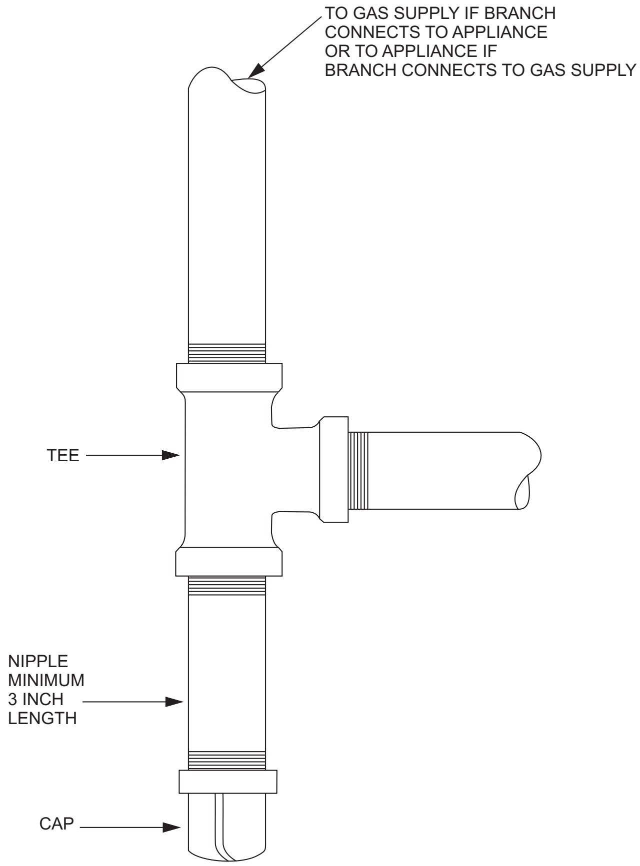


FIGURE 408.4
METHOD OF INSTALLING A TEE FITTING SEDIMENT TRAP

SECTION 409 (IFGC) SHUTOFF VALVES

409.1 General. *Piping* systems shall be provided with shutoff valves in accordance with this section.

409.1.1 Valve approval. Shutoff valves shall be of an *approved* type; shall be constructed of materials compatible with the *piping*; and shall comply with the standard that is applicable for the pressure and application, in accordance with Table 409.1.1.

409.1.2 Prohibited locations. Shutoff valves shall be prohibited in concealed locations and *furnace plenums*.

409.1.3 Access to shutoff valves. Shutoff valves shall be located in places so as to provide *access* for operation and shall be installed so as to be protected from damage.

409.1.4 Main shutoff valve. *Piping* systems shall be provided with an *approved* main shutoff valve before the first branch line. The main shutoff valve shall be installed in the first available location inside the building that provides ready access and shall have a permanently attached handle.

Exception: Gas piping that serves an appliance on the roof of a building shall install the shutoff valve on the roof, ten feet or more from the roof's edge, before the first branch line.

Main shutoff valves controlling several gas piping systems shall be protected from physical damage and shall be placed an adequate distance from each other so they will be easy to operate.

409.2 Meter valve. Every meter shall be equipped with a shutoff valve located on the side of the meter that supplies gas to the building piping system. The main shutoff valve required in subpart 1 shall serve as the shutoff valve.

409.3 Shutoff valves for multiple-house line systems. Where a single meter is used to supply gas to more than one building or tenant, a separate shutoff valve shall be provided for each building or tenant.

409.3.1 Multiple tenant buildings. In multiple tenant buildings, where a common piping system is installed to supply other than one- and two-family dwellings, shutoff valves shall be provided for each tenant. Each tenant shall have access to the shutoff valve serving that tenant's space. A main shutoff valve shall be installed in a common utility room or otherwise located to provide ready access to all tenants of the building, and it shall not be located in a locked room without prior permission from the building official.

409.3.2 Individual buildings. In a common system serving more than one building, shutoff valves shall be installed outdoors at each building.

409.3.3 Identification of shutoff valves. Each house line shutoff valve shall be plainly marked with an identification tag attached by the installer so that the *piping* systems supplied by such valves are readily identified.

409.4 MP regulator valves. A *listed* shutoff valve shall be installed immediately ahead of each MP regulator.

TABLE 409.1.1
MANUAL GAS VALVE STANDARDS

VALVE STANDARDS	APPLIANCE SHUTOFF VALVE APPLICATION UP TO $^1/_2$ psig PRESSURE	OTHER VALVE APPLICATIONS			
		UP TO $^1/_2$ psig PRESSURE	UP TO 2 psig PRESSURE	UP TO 5 psig PRESSURE	UP TO 125 psig PRESSURE
ANSI Z21.15	X	—	—	—	—
ASME B16.44	X	X	X[a]	X[b]	—
ASME B16.33	X	X	X	X	X

For SI: 1 pound per square inch gauge = 6.895 kPa.
a. If labeled 2G.
b. If labeled 5G.

409.5 Appliance shutoff valve. Each *appliance* shall be provided with a shutoff valve in accordance with Section 409.5.1, 409.5.2 or 409.5.3.

409.5.1 Located within same room. The shutoff valve shall be located in the same room as the *appliance*. The shutoff valve shall be within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the *appliance*, and shall be installed upstream of the union, connector or quick disconnect device it serves. Such shutoff valves shall be provided with *access*. *Appliance* shutoff valves located in the firebox of a *fireplace* shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.

409.5.2 Vented decorative appliances and room heaters. Shutoff valves for vented decorative appliances, room heaters and decorative appliances for installation in vented *fireplaces* shall be permitted to be installed in an area remote from the appliances where such valves are provided with ready *access*. Such valves shall be permanently identified and shall serve no other *appliance*. The *piping* from the shutoff valve to within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the *appliance* shall be designed, sized and installed in accordance with Sections 401 through 408.

409.5.3 Located at manifold. Where the *appliance* shutoff valve is installed at a manifold, such shutoff valve shall be located within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the *appliance* served and shall be readily accessible and permanently identified. The *piping* from the manifold to within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the *appliance* shall be designed, sized and installed in accordance with Sections 401 through 408.

409.6 Shutoff valve for laboratories. Where provided with two or more fuel gas outlets, including table-, bench- and hood-mounted outlets, each laboratory space in educational, research, commercial and industrial occupancies shall be provided with a single dedicated shutoff valve through which all such gas outlets shall be supplied. The dedicated shutoff valve shall be readily accessible, located within the laboratory space served, located adjacent to the egress door from the space and shall be identified by approved signage stating "Gas Shutoff."

SECTION 410 (IFGC) FLOW CONTROLS

410.1 Pressure regulators. A line pressure regulator shall be installed where the *appliance* is designed to operate at a lower pressure than the supply pressure. Line gas pressure regulators shall be *listed* as complying with ANSI Z21.80. *Access* shall be provided to pressure regulators. Pressure regulators shall be protected from physical damage. Regulators installed on the exterior of the building shall be *approved* for outdoor installation.

410.2 MP regulators. MP pressure regulators shall comply with the following:

1. The MP regulator shall be *approved* and shall be suitable for the inlet and outlet gas pressures for the application.
2. The MP regulator shall maintain a reduced outlet pressure under lockup (no-flow) conditions.
3. The capacity of the MP regulator, determined by published ratings of its manufacturer, shall be adequate to supply the *appliance*s served.
4. The MP pressure regulator shall be provided with *access*. Where located indoors, the regulator shall be vented to the outdoors or shall be equipped with a leak-limiting device, in either case complying with Section 410.3.
5. A tee fitting with one opening capped or plugged shall be installed between the MP regulator and its upstream shutoff valve. Such tee fitting shall be positioned to allow connection of a pressure-measuring instrument and to serve as a sediment trap.
6. A tee fitting with one opening capped or plugged shall be installed not less than 10 pipe diameters downstream of the MP regulator outlet. Such tee fitting shall be positioned to allow connection of a pressure-measuring instrument.

410.3 Venting of regulators. Pressure regulators that require a vent shall be vented directly to the outdoors. The vent shall be designed to prevent the entry of insects, water and foreign objects.

Exception: A vent to the outdoors is not required for regulators equipped with and *labeled* for utilization with an *approved* vent-limiting device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

410.3.1 Vent piping. Vent *piping* for relief vents and breather vents shall be constructed of materials allowed for gas *piping* in accordance with Section 403. Vent *piping* shall be not smaller than the vent connection on the pressure regulating device. Vent *piping* serving relief vents and combination relief and breather vents shall be run independently to the outdoors and shall serve only a single device vent. Vent *piping* serving only breather vents is permitted to be connected in a manifold arrangement where sized in accordance with an *approved* design that minimizes back-pressure in the event of diaphragm rupture. Regulator vent *piping* shall not exceed the length specified in the regulator manufacturer's instructions.

410.4 Excess flow valves. Where automatic *excess flow valves* are installed, they shall be listed for the application and shall be sized and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

410.5 Flashback arrestor check valve. Where fuel gas is used with oxygen in any hot work operation, a listed protective device that serves as a combination flashback arrestor and backflow check valve shall be installed at an approved location on both the fuel gas and oxygen supply lines. Where the pressure of the piped fuel gas supply is insufficient to ensure such safe operation, approved equipment shall be installed between the gas meter and the appliance that increases pressure to the level required for such safe operation.

SECTION 411 (IFGC)
APPLIANCE AND MANUFACTURED HOME CONNECTIONS

411.1 Connecting appliances. Except as required by Section 411.1.1, *appliance*s shall be connected to the *piping* system by one of the following:

1. Rigid metallic pipe and fittings.
2. Corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
3. Semirigid metallic tubing and metallic fittings. Lengths shall not exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) and shall be located entirely in the same room as the *appliance*. Semirigid metallic tubing shall not enter a motor-operated *appliance* through an unprotected knockout opening.
4. *Listed* and *labeled appliance* connectors in compliance with ANSI Z21.24 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and located entirely in the same room as the *appliance*.
5. *Listed* and *labeled* quick-disconnect devices used in conjunction with *listed* and *labeled appliance* connectors.
6. *Listed* and *labeled* convenience outlets used in conjunction with *listed* and *labeled appliance* connectors.
7. Listed and *labeled* outdoor *appliance* connectors in compliance with ANSI Z21.75/CSA 6.27 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

411.1.1 Commercial cooking appliances. Commercial cooking *appliance*s installed on casters and *appliance*s that are moved for cleaning and sanitation purposes shall be connected to the *piping* system with an *appliance* connector listed as complying with ANSI Z21.69 or in accordance with Item 1 or 3 of Section 411.1.

411.1.2 Protection against damage. Connectors and tubing shall be installed so as to be protected against physical damage.

411.1.3 Connector installation. *Appliance* fuel connectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Sections 411.1.3.1 through 411.1.3.4.

411.1.3.1 Maximum length. Connectors shall have an overall length not to exceed 6 feet (1829 mm). Measurement shall be made along the centerline of the connector. Only one connector shall be used for each *appliance*.

Exception: Rigid metallic *piping* used to connect an *appliance* to the *piping* system shall be permitted to have a total length greater than 6 feet (1829 mm), provided that the connecting pipe is sized as part of the *piping* system in accordance with Section 402 and the location of the *appliance* shutoff valve complies with Section 409.5.

411.1.3.2 Minimum size. Connectors shall have the capacity for the total demand of the connected *appliance*.

411.1.3.3 Prohibited locations and penetrations. Connectors shall not be concealed within, or extended through, walls, floors, partitions, ceilings or *appliance* housings.

Exceptions:

1. Connectors constructed of materials allowed for *piping* systems in accordance with Section 403 shall be permitted to pass through walls, floors, partitions and ceilings where installed in accordance with Section 409.5.2 or 409.5.3.
2. Rigid steel pipe connectors shall be permitted to extend through openings in *appliance* housings.
3. *Fireplace* inserts that are factory equipped with grommets, sleeves or other means of protection in accordance with the listing of the *appliance*.
4. Semirigid tubing and *listed* connectors shall be permitted to extend through an opening in an *appliance* housing, cabinet or casing where the tubing or connector is protected against damage.

411.1.3.4 Shutoff valve. A shutoff valve not less than the nominal size of the connector shall be installed ahead of the connector in accordance with Section 409.5.

411.1.4 Movable appliances. Where appliances are equipped with casters or are otherwise subject to periodic movement or relocation for purposes such as routine cleaning and maintenance, such appliances shall be connected to the supply system *piping* by means of an *approved* flexible connector designed and *labeled* for the application. Such flexible connectors shall be installed and protected against physical damage in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

411.1.5 (IFGS) Connection of gas engine-powered air conditioners. Internal combustion engines shall not be rigidly connected to the gas supply *piping*.

411.1.6 Unions. A union fitting shall be provided for *appliance*s connected by rigid metallic pipe. Such unions shall be accessible and located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the *appliance*.

411.2 Manufactured home connections. Manufactured homes shall be connected to the distribution *piping* system by one of the following materials:

1. Metallic pipe in accordance with Section 403.4.
2. Metallic tubing in accordance with Section 403.5.
3. *Listed* and *labeled* connectors in compliance with ANSI Z21.75/CSA 6.27 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

411.3 Suspended low-intensity infrared tube heaters. Suspended low-intensity infrared tube heaters shall be connected to the building *piping* system with a connector *listed* for the application complying with ANSI Z21.24/CGA 6.10. The connector shall be installed as specified by the tube heater manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 412 (IFGC) LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS MOTOR VEHICLE FUEL-DISPENSING FACILITIES

[F] 412.1 General. Motor fuel-dispensing facilities for LP-gas fuel shall be in accordance with this section and the *International Fire Code*. The operation of LP-gas motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall be regulated by the *International Fire Code*

[F] 412.2 Storage and dispensing. Storage vessels and *equipment* used for the storage or dispensing of LP-gas shall be *approved* or *listed* in accordance with Sections 412.3 and 412.4

[F] 412.3 Approved equipment. Containers; pressure-relief devices, including pressure-relief valves; and pressure regulators and *piping* used for LP-gas shall be *approved*.

[F] 412.4 Listed equipment. Hoses, hose connections, vehicle fuel connections, dispensers, LP-gas pumps and electrical *equipment* used for LP-gas shall be listed.

[F] 412.5 Attendants. Motor vehicle fueling operations shall be conducted by qualified attendants or in accordance with Section 412.8 by persons trained in the proper handling of LP-gas.

[F] 412.6 Location. In addition to the fuel dispensing requirements of the *International Fire Code*, the point of transfer for dispensing operations shall be 25 feet (7620 mm) or more from buildings having combustible exterior wall surfaces, buildings having noncombustible exterior wall surfaces that are not part of a 1-hour fire-resistance-rated assembly or buildings having combustible overhangs, property which could be built on public streets, or sidewalks and railroads; and at least 10 feet (3048 mm) from driveways and buildings having noncombustible exterior wall surfaces that are part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly having a rating of 1 hour or more.

Exception: The point of transfer for dispensing operations need not be separated from canopies providing weather protection for the dispensing *equipment* constructed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

Liquefied petroleum gas containers shall be located in accordance with the *International Fire Code*. Liquefied petroleum gas storage and dispensing *equipment* shall be located outdoors and in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 412.7 Installation of dispensing devices and equipment. The installation and operation of LP-gas dispensing systems shall be in accordance with this section and the *International Fire Code*. Liquefied petroleum gas dispensers and dispensing stations shall be installed in accordance with manufacturers' specifications and their listing.

[F] 412.7.1 Valves. A manual shutoff valve and an excess flow-control check valve shall be located in the liquid line between the pump and the dispenser inlet where the dispensing device is installed at a remote location and is not part of a complete storage and dispensing unit mounted on a common base.

An excess flow-control check valve or an emergency shutoff valve shall be installed in or on the dispenser at the point at which the dispenser hose is connected to the liquid *piping*. A differential backpressure valve shall be considered equivalent protection. A *listed* shutoff valve shall be located at the discharge end of the transfer hose.

[F] 412.7.2 Hoses. Hoses and *piping* for the dispensing of LP-gas shall be provided with hydrostatic relief valves. The hose length shall not exceed 18 feet (5486 mm). An *approved* method shall be provided to protect the hose against mechanical damage.

[F] 412.7.3 Vehicle impact protection. Vehicle impact protection for LP-gas storage containers, pumps and dispensers shall be provided in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 412.8 Private fueling of motor vehicles. Self-service LP-gas dispensing systems, including key, code and card lock dispensing systems, shall not be open to the public and shall be limited to the filling of permanently mounted fuel containers on LP-gas powered vehicles. In addition to the requirements in the *International Fire Code*, self-service LP-gas dispensing systems shall be provided with an emergency shutoff switch located within 100 feet (30 480 mm) of, but not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) from, dispensers and the owner of the dispensing facility shall ensure the safe operation of the system and the training of users.

SECTION 413 (IFGC) COMPRESSED NATURAL GAS MOTOR VEHICLE FUEL-DISPENSING FACILITIES

[F] 413.1 General. Motor fuel-dispensing facilities for CNG fuel shall be in accordance with this section and the *International Fire Code*. The operation of CNG motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall be regulated by the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 413.2 General. Storage vessels and *equipment* used for the storage, compression or dispensing of CNG shall be *approved* or *listed* in accordance with Sections 413.2.1 through 413.2.3.

[F] 413.2.1 Approved equipment. Containers; compressors; pressure-relief devices, including pressure-relief valves; and pressure regulators and *piping* used for CNG shall be *approved*.

[F] 413.2.2 Listed equipment. Hoses, hose connections, dispensers, gas detection systems and electrical *equipment* used for CNG shall be *listed*. Vehicle fueling connections shall be *listed* and *labeled*.

[F] 413.2.3 General. Residential fueling *appliance*s shall be *listed*. The capacity of a residential fueling *appliance* shall not exceed 5 standard cubic feet per minute (0.14 standard cubic meter/min) of natural gas.

[F] 413.3 Location of dispensing operations and equipment. Compression, storage and dispensing *equipment* shall be located above ground outside.

Exceptions:

1. Compression, storage or dispensing *equipment* is allowed in buildings of noncombustible construction, as set forth in the *International Building Code*,

which are unenclosed for three-quarters or more of the perimeter.

2. Compression, storage and dispensing *equipment* is allowed to be located indoors or in vaults in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

3. Residential fueling *appliance*s and *equipment* shall be allowed to be installed indoors in accordance with the *equipment* manufacturer's instructions and Section 413.4.3.

[F] 413.3.1 Location on property. In addition to the fuel-dispensing requirements of the *International Fire Code*, compression, storage and dispensing *equipment* not located in vaults complying with the *International Fire Code* and other than residential fueling appliances shall not be installed:

1. Beneath power lines.

2. Less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the nearest building or property that could be built on, public street, sidewalk or source of ignition.

   Exception: Dispensing *equipment* need not be separated from canopies that provide weather protection for the dispensing *equipment* and are constructed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

3. Less than 25 feet (7620 mm) from the nearest rail of any railroad track.

4. Less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the nearest rail of any railroad main track or any railroad or transit line where power for train propulsion is provided by an outside electrical source, such as third rail or overhead catenary.

5. Less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the vertical plane below the nearest overhead wire of a trolley bus line.

[F] 413.4 Residential fueling appliance installation. Residential fueling *appliance*s shall be installed in accordance with Sections 413.4.1 through 413.4.3.

[F] 413.4.1 Gas connections. Residential fueling appliances shall be connected to the premises' gas *piping* system without causing damage to the *piping* system or the connection to the internal *appliance* apparatus.

[F] 413.4.2 Outdoor installation. Residential fueling *appliance*s located outdoors shall be installed on a firm, noncombustible base.

[F] 413.4.3 Indoor installation. Where located indoors, residential fueling *appliance*s shall be vented to the outdoors. A gas detector set to operate at one-fifth of the lower limit of flammability of natural gas shall be installed in the room or space containing the *appliance*. The detector shall be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the highest point in the room or space. The detector shall stop the operation of the *appliance* and activate an audible or a visual alarm.

[F] 413.5 Private fueling of motor vehicles. Self-service CNG-dispensing systems, including key, code and card lock dispensing systems, shall be limited to the filling of permanently mounted fuel containers on CNG-powered vehicles.

In addition to the requirements in the *International Fire Code*, the owner of a self-service CNG-dispensing facility shall ensure the safe operation of the system and the training of users.

[F] 413.6 Pressure regulators. Pressure regulators shall be designed, installed or protected so their operation will not be affected by the elements (freezing rain, sleet, snow, ice, mud or debris). This protection is allowed to be integral with the regulator.

[F] 413.7 Valves. *Piping* to *equipment* shall be provided with a remote manual shutoff valve. Such valve shall be provided with ready access.

[F] 413.8 Emergency shutdown control. An emergency shutdown device shall be located within 75 feet (22 860 mm) of, but not less than 25 feet (7620 mm) from, dispensers and shall also be provided in the compressor area. Upon activation, the emergency shutdown system shall automatically shut off the power supply to the compressor and close valves between the main gas supply and the compressor and between the storage containers and dispensers.

[F] 413.9 Discharge of CNG from motor vehicle fuel storage containers. The discharge of CNG from motor vehicle fuel cylinders for the purposes of maintenance, cylinder certification, calibration of dispensers or other activities shall be in accordance with this section. The discharge of CNG from motor vehicle fuel cylinders shall be accomplished through a closed transfer system or an *approved* method of atmospheric venting in accordance with Section 413.9.1 or 413.9.2.

[F] 413.9.1 Closed transfer system. A documented procedure which explains the logical sequence for discharging the cylinder shall be provided to the code official for review and approval. The procedure shall include what actions the operator will take in the event of a low-pressure or high-pressure natural gas release during the discharging activity. A drawing illustrating the arrangement of *piping*, regulators and *equipment* settings shall be provided to the code official for review and approval. The drawing shall illustrate the *piping* and regulator arrangement and shall be shown in spatial relation to the location of the compressor, storage vessels and emergency shutdown devices.

[F] 413.9.2 Atmospheric venting. Atmospheric venting of motor vehicle fuel cylinders shall be in accordance with Sections 413.9.2.1 through 413.9.2.6.

[F] 413.9.2.1 Plans and specifications. A drawing illustrating the location of the vessel support, *piping*, the method of grounding and bonding, and other requirements specified herein shall be provided to the code official for review and approval.

[F] 413.9.2.2 Cylinder stability. A method of rigidly supporting the vessel during the venting of CNG shall be provided. The selected method shall provide not less than two points of support and shall prevent the horizontal and lateral movement of the vessel. The system shall be designed to prevent the movement of the vessel based on the highest gas-release velocity through valve orifices at the vessel's rated pressure and volume. The structure or appurtenance shall be constructed of *noncombustible materials*.

[F] 413.9.2.3 Separation. The structure or appurtenance used for stabilizing the cylinder shall be separated from the site *equipment*, features and exposures and shall be located in accordance with Table 413.9.2.3.

[F] TABLE 413.9.2.3
SEPARATION DISTANCE FOR ATMOSPHERIC VENTING OF CNG

EQUIPMENT OR FEATURE	MINIMUM SEPARATION (feet)
Buildings	25
Building openings	25
Lot lines	15
Public ways	15
Vehicles	25
CNG compressor and storage vessels	25
CNG dispensers	25

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

[F] 413.9.2.4 Grounding and bonding. The structure or appurtenance used for supporting the cylinder shall be grounded in accordance with NFPA 70. The cylinder valve shall be bonded prior to the commencement of venting operations.

[F] 413.9.2.5 Vent tube. A vent tube that will divert the gas flow to the atmosphere shall be installed on the cylinder prior to the commencement of the venting and purging operation. The vent tube shall be constructed of pipe or tubing materials *approved* for use with CNG in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

The vent tube shall be capable of dispersing the gas a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) above grade level. The vent tube shall not be provided with a rain cap or other feature which would limit or obstruct the gas flow.

At the connection fitting of the vent tube and the CNG cylinder, a *listed* bidirectional detonation flame arrester shall be provided.

[F] 413.9.2.6 Signage. Approved NO SMOKING signs shall be posted within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the cylinder support structure or appurtenance. *Approved* CYLINDER SHALL BE BONDED signs shall be posted on the cylinder support structure or appurtenance.

SECTION 414 (IFGC) SUPPLEMENTAL AND STANDBY GAS SUPPLY

414.1 Use of air or oxygen under pressure. Where air or oxygen under pressure is used in connection with the gas supply, effective means such as a backpressure regulator and relief valve shall be provided to prevent air or oxygen from passing back into the gas *piping*. Where oxygen is used, installation shall be in accordance with NFPA 51.

414.2 Interconnections for standby fuels. Where supplementary gas for standby use is connected downstream from a meter or a service regulator where a meter is not provided, a device to prevent backflow shall be installed. A three-way valve installed to admit the standby supply and at the same time shut off the regular supply shall be permitted to be used for this purpose.

SECTION 415 (IFGS) PIPING SUPPORT INTERVALS

415.1 Interval of support. *Piping* shall be supported at intervals not exceeding the spacing specified in Table 415.1. Spacing of supports for CSST shall be in accordance with the CSST manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE 415.1
SUPPORT OF PIPING

STEEL PIPE, NOMINAL SIZE OF PIPE (inches)	SPACING OF SUPPORTS (feet)	NOMINAL SIZE OF TUBING (SMOOTH-WALL) (inch O.D.)	SPACING OF SUPPORTS (feet)
$^1/_2$	6	$^1/_2$	4
$^3/_4$ or 1	8	$^5/_8$ or $^3/_4$	6
$1^1/_4$ or larger (horizontal)	10	$^7/_8$ or 1 (horizontal)	8
$1^1/_4$ or larger (vertical)	Every floor level	1 or larger (vertical)	Every floor level

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

SECTION 416 (IFGS) OVERPRESSURE PROTECTION DEVICES

416.1 General. Overpressure protection devices shall be provided in accordance with this section to prevent the pressure in the *piping* system from exceeding the pressure that would cause unsafe operation of any connected and properly adjusted *appliances*.

416.2 Protection methods. The requirements of this section shall be considered to be met and a *piping* system deemed to have overpressure protection where a service or line pressure regulator plus one other device are installed such that the following occur:

1. Each device limits the pressure to a value that does not exceed the maximum working pressure of the downstream system.
2. The individual failure of either device does not result in the overpressurization of the downstream system.

416.3 Device maintenance. The pressure regulating, limiting and relieving devices shall be maintained; and inspection procedures shall be devised or instrumentation installed to detect failures or malfunctions of such devices; and replacements or repairs shall be made.

416.4 Where required. A pressure-relieving or pressure-limiting device shall not be required where: (1) the gas does not contain materials that could seriously interfere with the operation of the service or line pressure regulator; (2) the operating pressure of the gas source is 60 psi (414 kPa) or less; and

(3) the service or line pressure regulator has all of the following design features or characteristics:

1. Pipe connections to the service or line regulator do not exceed 2 inches (51 mm) nominal diameter.
2. The regulator is self-contained with no external static or control *piping*.
3. The regulator has a single port valve with an orifice diameter not greater than that recommended by the manufacturer for the maximum gas pressure at the regulator inlet.
4. The valve seat is made of resilient material designed to withstand abrasion of the gas, impurities in the gas and cutting by the valve, and to resist permanent deformation where it is pressed against the valve port.
5. The regulator is capable, under normal operating conditions, of regulating the downstream pressure within the necessary limits of accuracy and of limiting the discharge pressure under no-flow conditions to not more than 150 percent of the discharge pressure maintained under flow conditions.

416.5 Devices. Pressure-relieving or pressure-limiting devices shall be one of the following:

1. Spring-loaded relief device.
2. Pilot-loaded back pressure regulator used as a relief valve and designed so that failure of the pilot system or external control *piping* will cause the regulator relief valve to open.
3. A monitoring regulator installed in series with the service or line pressure regulator.
4. A series regulator installed upstream from the service or line regulator and set to continuously limit the pressure on the inlet of the service or line regulator to the maximum working pressure of the downstream *piping* system.
5. An automatic shutoff device installed in series with the service or line pressure regulator and set to shut off when the pressure on the downstream *piping* system reaches the maximum working pressure or some other predetermined pressure less than the maximum working pressure. This device shall be designed so that it will remain closed until manually reset.
6. A liquid seal relief device that can be set to open accurately and consistently at the desired pressure.

The devices shall be installed either as an integral part of the service or line pressure regulator or as separate units. Where separate pressure-relieving or pressure-limiting devices are installed, they shall comply with Sections 416.5.1 through 416.5.6.

416.5.1 Construction and installation. Pressure relieving and pressure-limiting devices shall be constructed of materials so that the operation of the devices will not be impaired by corrosion of external parts by the atmosphere or of internal parts by the gas. Pressure-relieving and pressure-limiting devices shall be designed and installed so that they can be operated to determine whether the valve is free. The devices shall also be designed and installed so that they can be tested to determine the pressure at which they will operate and examined for leakage when in the closed position.

416.5.2 External control piping. External control *piping* shall be protected from falling objects, excavations and other causes of damage and shall be designed and installed so that damage to any control *piping* will not render both the regulator and the overpressure protective device inoperative.

416.5.3 Setting. Each pressure-relieving or pressure-limiting device shall be set so that the pressure does not exceed a safe level beyond the maximum allowable working pressure for the connected *piping* and appliances.

416.5.4 Unauthorized operation. Where unauthorized operation of any shutoff valve can make a pressure relieving valve or pressure limiting device inoperative, one of the following shall apply:

1. The valve shall be locked in the open position. Authorized personnel shall be instructed in the importance of leaving the shutoff valve open and of being present while the shutoff valve is closed so that it can be locked in the open position before leaving the premises.
2. Duplicate relief valves shall be installed, each having adequate capacity to protect the system, and the isolating valves and three-way valves shall be arranged so that only one safety device can be rendered inoperative at a time.

416.5.5 Vents. The discharge stacks, vents and outlet parts of all pressure-relieving and pressure-limiting devices shall be located so that gas is safely discharged to the outdoors. Discharge stacks and vents shall be designed to prevent the entry of water, insects and other foreign material that could cause blockage. The discharge stack or vent line shall be at least the same size as the outlet of the pressure-relieving device.

416.5.6 Size of fittings, pipe and openings. The fittings, pipe and openings located between the system to be protected and the pressure-relieving device shall be sized to prevent hammering of the valve and to prevent impairment of relief capacity.

CHAPTER 5

CHIMNEYS AND VENTS

SECTION 501 (IFGC) GENERAL

501.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the installation, maintenance, repair and approval of factory-built chimneys, chimney liners, vents and connectors and the utilization of masonry chimneys serving gas-fired appliances. The requirements for the installation, maintenance, repair and approval of factory-built chimneys, chimney liners, vents and connectors serving appliances burning fuels other than fuel gas shall be regulated by the *International Mechanical Code*. The construction, repair, maintenance and approval of masonry chimneys shall be regulated by the *International Building Code*.

501.2 General. Every *appliance* shall discharge the products of combustion to the outdoors, except for appliances exempted by Section 501.8.

501.3 Masonry chimneys. Masonry chimneys shall be constructed in accordance with Section 503.5.3 and the *International Building Code*.

501.4 Minimum size of chimney or vent. Chimneys and vents shall be sized in accordance with Sections 503 and 504.

501.5 Abandoned inlet openings. Abandoned inlet openings in chimneys and vents shall be closed by an *approved* method.

501.6 Positive pressure. Where an *appliance* equipped with a mechanical forced draft system creates a positive pressure in the venting system, the venting system shall be designed for positive pressure applications.

501.7 Connection to fireplace. Connection of any *appliance* to chimney flues serving *fireplaces* is prohibited. Refer to IFGC Section 602 for decorative appliances for installation in fireplaces and IFGC Section 603 for log lighters.

501.7.1 Closure and access. A noncombustible seal shall be provided below the point of connection to prevent entry of room air into the flue. Means shall be provided for *access* to the flue for inspection and cleaning.

501.7.2 Connection to factory-built fireplace flue. An *appliance* shall not be connected to a flue serving a factory-built *fireplace* unless the *appliance* is specifically *listed* for such installation. The connection shall be made in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

501.7.3 Connection to masonry fireplace flue. A connector shall extend from the *appliance* to the flue serving a masonry *fireplace* such that the flue gases are exhausted directly into the flue. The connector shall be accessible or removable for inspection and cleaning of both the connector and the flue. *Listed* direct connection devices shall be installed in accordance with their listing.

501.8 Appliances not required to be vented. The following *appliances* shall not be required to be vented.

1. Ranges.
2. Built-in domestic cooking units *listed* and marked for optional venting.
3. Hot plates and laundry stoves.
4. Type 1 clothes dryers (Type 1 clothes dryers shall be exhausted in accordance with the requirements of IFGC Sections 613 and 614).
5. A single booster-type automatic instantaneous water heater, where designed and used solely for the sanitizing rinse requirements of a dishwashing machine, provided that the heater is installed in a commercial kitchen having a mechanical exhaust system. Where installed in this manner, the draft hood, if required, shall be in place and unaltered and the draft hood outlet shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) vertically and 6 inches (152 mm) horizontally from any surface other than the heater.
6. Refrigerators.
7. Counter *appliances*.
8. Direct-fired *make-up air* heaters.
9. Specialized *equipment* of limited input such as laboratory burners and gas lights. Automatically operated *equipment* vented with a hood or exhaust system shall comply with IFGC Section 503.3.4. Where the *appliances* and *equipment* listed in Items 5 to 9 are installed so that the aggregate input rating exceeds 20 Btu/hr per cubic foot (207 watts per m^3) of volume of the room or space in which such *appliances* and *equipment* are installed, one or more shall be provided with venting systems or other *approved* means for conveying the vent gases to the outdoor atmosphere so that the aggregate input rating of the remaining unvented *appliances* and *equipment* does not exceed the 20 Btu/hr per cubic foot (207 watts per m^3) figure. Where the room or space in which the *equipment* or *appliance* is installed is directly connected to another room or space by a doorway, archway, or other opening of comparable size that cannot be closed, the volume of such adjacent room or space shall be permitted to be included in the calculations.

501.9 Chimney entrance. Connectors shall connect to a masonry chimney flue at a point not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the lowest portion of the interior of the chimney flue.

501.10 Connections to exhauster. *Appliance* connections to a chimney or vent equipped with a power exhauster shall be made on the inlet side of the exhauster. Joints on the positive pressure side of the exhauster shall be sealed to prevent flue-gas leakage as specified by the manufacturer's installation instructions for the exhauster.

501.11 Masonry chimneys. Masonry chimneys utilized to vent appliances shall be located, constructed and sized as specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions for the appliances being vented and Section 503.

501.12 Residential and low-heat appliances flue lining systems. An *approved* metallic liner shall be installed in masonry chimneys used to vent gas *appliances*. The liner shall comply with one of the following:

1. Aluminum (1100 or 3003 alloy or equivalent) not less than 0.032 inches thick to 8 inches diameter.
2. Stainless steel (304 or 430 alloy or equivalent) not less than 26 gauge (0.018 inches thick) to 8 inches diameter or not less than 24 gauge (0.024 inches thick) 8 inches diameter and larger.
3. Listed vent systems.

Exception: Metallic liners are not required when each *appliance* connected into the masonry chimney has a minimum input rating greater than 400,000 Btu/hr.

501.13 Category I appliance flue lining systems. Flue lining systems for use with Category I appliances shall be limited to the following:

1. Flue lining systems complying with Section 501.12.
2. Chimney lining systems *listed* and *labeled* for use with gas appliances with draft hoods and other Category I gas appliances *listed* and *labeled* for use with Type B vents.

501.14 Category II, III and IV appliance venting systems. The design, sizing and installation of vents for Category II, III and IV appliances shall be in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

501.15 Existing chimneys and vents. Where an *appliance* is permanently disconnected from an existing chimney or vent, or where an *appliance* is connected to an existing chimney or vent during the process of a new installation, the chimney or vent shall comply with Sections 501.15.1 through 501.15.4.

501.15.1 Size. The chimney or vent shall be resized as necessary to control flue gas condensation in the interior of the chimney or vent and to provide the *appliance* or appliances served with the required draft. For Category I appliances, the resizing shall be in accordance with Section 502.

501.15.2 Flue passageways. The flue gas passageway shall be free of obstructions and combustible deposits and shall be cleaned if previously used for venting a solid or liquid fuel-burning *appliance* or *fireplace*. The flue liner, chimney inner wall or vent inner wall shall be continuous and shall be free of cracks, gaps, perforations or other damage or deterioration which would allow the escape of combustion products, including gases, moisture and creosote.

501.15.3 Cleanout. Masonry chimney flues shall be provided with a cleanout opening having a minimum height of 6 inches (152 mm). The upper edge of the opening shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the lowest chimney inlet opening. The cleanout shall be provided with a tight-fitting, noncombustible cover.

501.15.4 Clearances. Chimneys and vents shall have airspace *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with the *International Building Code* and the chimney or vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exception: Masonry chimneys without the required airspace clearances shall be permitted to be used if lined or relined with a chimney lining system *listed* for use in chimneys with reduced clearances in accordance with UL 1777. The chimney *clearance* shall be not less than permitted by the terms of the chimney liner listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

501.15.4.1 Fireblocking. Noncombustible fireblocking shall be provided in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

SECTION 502 (IFGC) VENTS

502.1 General. All vents, except as provided in Section 503.7, shall be *listed* and *labeled*. Type B and BW vents shall be tested in accordance with UL 441. Type L vents shall be tested in accordance with UL 641. Vents for Category II and III appliances shall be tested in accordance with UL 1738. Plastic vents for Category IV appliances shall not be required to be *listed* and *labeled* where such vents are as specified by the *appliance* manufacturer and are installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

502.2 Connectors required. Connectors shall be used to connect appliances to the vertical chimney or vent, except where the chimney or vent is attached directly to the *appliance*. Vent connector size, material, construction and installation shall be in accordance with Section 503.

502.3 Vent application. The application of vents shall be in accordance with Table 503.4.

502.4 Insulation shield. Where vents pass through insulated assemblies, an insulation shield constructed of steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) shall be installed to provide *clearance* between the vent and the insulation material. The *clearance* shall not be less than the *clearance* to combustibles specified by the vent manufacturer's installation instructions. Where vents pass through attic space, the shield shall terminate not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above the insulation materials and shall be secured in place to prevent displacement. Insulation shields provided as part of a *listed* vent system shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

502.5 Installation. Vent systems shall be sized, installed and terminated in accordance with the vent and *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions and Section 503.

502.6 Support of vents. All portions of vents shall be adequately supported for the design and weight of the materials employed.

502.7 Protection against physical damage. In concealed locations, where a vent is installed through holes or notches in studs, joists, rafters or similar members less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, the vent shall be protected by shield plates. Protective steel shield plates having a minimum thickness of 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage) shall cover the area of the vent where the member is notched or bored and shall extend a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above sole plates, below top plates and to each side of a stud, joist or rafter.

SECTION 503 (IFGS) VENTING OF APPLIANCES

503.1 General. The venting of appliances shall be in accordance with Sections 503.2 through 503.16.

503.2 Venting systems required. Except as permitted in Sections 503.2.1 through 503.2.4 and 501.8, all appliances shall be connected to venting systems.

503.2.1 Ventilating hoods. Ventilating hoods and exhaust systems shall be permitted to be used to vent appliances installed in commercial applications and to vent industrial appliances, such as where the process itself requires fume disposal.

503.2.2 Well-ventilated spaces. Deleted.

503.2.3 Direct-vent appliances. *Listed direct-vent appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Section 503.8, Item 3.

503.2.4 Appliances with integral vents. Appliances incorporating integral venting means shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Section 503.8, Items 1 and 2.

503.2.5 Incinerators. Commercial-industrial-type incinerators shall be vented in accordance with NFPA 82.

503.3 Design and construction. Venting systems shall be designed and constructed so as to convey all flue and vent gases to the outdoors.

503.3.1 Appliance draft requirements. A venting system shall satisfy the draft requirements of the *appliance* in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

503.3.2 Design and construction. Appliances required to be vented shall be connected to a venting system designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of Sections 503.4 through 503.16.

503.3.3 Mechanical draft systems. Mechanical draft systems shall comply with the following:

1. Mechanical draft systems shall be *listed* and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions for both the *appliance* and the mechanical draft system.
2. Appliances requiring venting shall be permitted to be vented by means of mechanical draft systems of either forced or induced draft design.
3. Forced draft systems and all portions of induced draft systems under positive pressure during operation shall be designed and installed so as to prevent leakage of flue or vent gases into a building.
4. Vent connectors serving appliances vented by natural draft shall not be connected into any portion of mechanical draft systems operating under positive pressure.
5. Where a mechanical draft system is employed, provisions shall be made to prevent the flow of gas to the main burners when the draft system is not performing so as to satisfy the operating requirements of the *appliance* for safe performance.
6. The exit terminals of mechanical draft systems shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above finished ground level where located adjacent to public walkways and shall be located as specified in Section 503.8, Items 1 and 2.

503.3.4 Ventilating hoods and exhaust systems. Ventilating hoods and exhaust systems shall be permitted to be used to vent appliances installed in commercial applications. Where automatically operated appliances, other than commercial cooking appliances, are vented through a ventilating hood or exhaust system equipped with a damper or with a power means of exhaust, provisions shall be made to allow the flow of gas to the main burners only when the damper is open to a position to properly vent the *appliance* and when the power means of exhaust is in operation.

503.3.5 Air ducts and furnace plenums. Venting systems shall not extend into or pass through any fabricated air duct or *furnace plenum.*

503.3.6 Above-ceiling air-handling spaces. Where a venting system passes through an above-ceiling air-handling space or other nonducted portion of an air-handling system, the venting system shall conform to one of the following requirements:

1. The venting system shall be a *listed* special gas vent; other venting system serving a Category III or Category IV *appliance;* or other positive pressure vent, with joints sealed in accordance with the *appliance* or vent manufacturer's instructions.
2. The venting system shall be installed such that fittings and joints between sections are not installed in the above-ceiling space.
3. The venting system shall be installed in a conduit or enclosure with sealed joints separating the interior of the conduit or enclosure from the ceiling space.

503.4 Type of venting system to be used. The type of venting system to be used shall be in accordance with Table 503.4.

503.4.1 Plastic piping. Plastic *piping* used for venting appliances *listed* for use with such venting materials shall be *approved.*

TABLE 503.4
TYPE OF VENTING SYSTEM TO BE USED

APPLIANCES	TYPE OF VENTING SYSTEM
Listed Category I appliances Listed appliances equipped with draft hood Appliances listed for use with Type B gas vent	Type B gas vent (Section 503.6) Chimney (Section 503.5) Single-wall metal pipe (Section 503.7) Listed chimney lining system for gas venting (Section 503.5.3) Special gas vent listed for these appliances (Section 503.4.2)
Listed vented wall furnaces	Type B-W gas vent (Sections 503.6, 608)
Category II appliances	As specified or furnished by manufacturers of listed appliances (Sections 503.4.1, 503.4.2)
Category III appliances	As specified or furnished by manufacturers of listed appliances (Sections 503.4.1, 503.4.2)
Category IV appliances	As specified or furnished by manufacturers of listed appliances (Sections 503.4.1, 503.4.2)
Incinerators	In accordance with NFPA 82
Appliances that can be converted for use with solid fuel	Chimney (Section 503.5)
Unlisted combination gas and oil-burning appliances	Chimney (Section 503.5)
Listed combination gas and oil-burning appliances	Type L vent (Section 503.6) or chimney (Section 503.5)
Combination gas and solid fuel-burning appliances	Chimney (Section 503.5)
Appliances listed for use with chimneys only	Chimney (Section 503.5)
Unlisted appliances	Chimney (Section 503.5)
Decorative appliances in vented fireplaces	Chimney
Gas-fired toilets	Single-wall metal pipe (Section 626)
Direct-vent appliances	See Section 503.2.3
Appliances with integral vent	See Section 503.2.4

503.4.1.1 Plastic vent joints. Plastic pipe and fittings used to vent appliances shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions. Where a primer is required, it shall be of a contrasting color.

503.4.2 Special gas vent. Special gas vent shall be *listed* and installed in accordance with the special gas vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

503.5 Masonry, metal and factory-built chimneys. Masonry, metal and factory-built chimneys shall comply with Sections 503.5.1 through 503.5.10.

503.5.1 Factory-built chimneys. Factory-built chimneys shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Factory-built chimneys used to vent appliances that operate at a positive vent pressure shall be *listed* for such application.

503.5.2 Metal chimneys. Metal chimneys shall be built and installed in accordance with NFPA 211.

503.5.3 Masonry chimneys. Masonry chimneys shall be built and installed in accordance with NFPA 211 and shall be lined with *approved* clay flue lining, a *listed* chimney lining system or other *approved* material that will resist corrosion, erosion, softening or cracking from vent gases at temperatures up to 1,800°F (982°C).

Exception: Masonry chimney flues serving *listed* gas appliances with draft hoods, Category I appliances and other gas appliances *listed* for use with Type B vents shall be permitted to be lined with a chimney lining system specifically *listed* for use only with such appliances. The liner shall be installed in accordance with the liner manufacturer's installation instructions. A permanent identifying label shall be attached at the point where the connection is to be made to the liner. The label shall read: "This chimney liner is for appliances that burn gas only. Do not connect to solid or liquid fuel-burning appliances or incinerators."

For installation of gas vents in existing masonry chimneys, see Section 503.6.3.

503.5.4 Chimney termination. Chimneys for residential-type or low-heat appliances shall extend at least 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest point where they pass through a roof of a building and at least 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of a building within a horizontal distance of 10 feet (3048 mm). Chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall extend at least 10 feet (3048 mm) higher than any portion of any building within 25 feet (7620 mm). Chimneys shall extend at least 5 feet (1524 mm) above the highest connected *appliance* draft hood outlet or flue collar. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of factory-built chimneys except where such shrouds are *listed* and *labeled* for use with the specific factory-built chimney system and are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

503.5.5 Size of chimneys. The effective area of a chimney venting system serving *listed appliances* with draft hoods, Category I *appliances*, and other *appliances listed* for use with Type B vents shall be in accordance with IFGC Section 504 or other *approved* engineering methods.

Exceptions:

1. As an alternate method of sizing an individual chimney venting system for a single *appliance* with a draft hood, the effective areas of the vent connector and chimney flue shall be not less than the area of the *appliance* flue collar or draft hood outlet, nor greater than four times the draft hood outlet area.

2. As an alternate method for sizing a chimney venting system connected to two *appliances* with draft hoods, the effective area of the chimney flue shall be not less than the area of the larger draft hood outlet plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller draft hood outlet, nor greater than four times the smallest draft hood outlet area. Where an incinerator is vented by a chimney serving other gas utilization *appliance*, the gas input to the incinerator shall not be included in calculating chimney size, provided the chimney flue diameter is not less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) larger in equivalent diameter than the diameter of the incinerator flue outlet.

503.5.6 Inspection of chimneys. Before replacing an existing *appliance* or connecting a vent connector to a chimney, the chimney passageway shall be examined to ascertain that it is clear and free of obstructions and it shall be cleaned if previously used for venting solid or liquid fuel-burning *appliances* or fireplaces.

Exception: Existing chimneys shall be lined in accordance with amended IFGC Section 501.12 unless otherwise *approved* by the building official.

503.5.6.1 Chimney lining. Chimneys shall be lined in accordance with NFPA 211.

Exception: Where an existing chimney complies with Sections 503.5.6 through 503.5.6.3 and its sizing is in accordance with Section 503.5.5, its continued use shall be allowed where the *appliance* vented by such chimney is replaced by an *appliance* of similar type, input rating and efficiency.

503.5.6.2 Cleanouts. Cleanouts shall be examined to determine if they will remain tightly closed when not in use.

503.5.6.3 Unsafe chimneys. Where inspection reveals that an existing chimney is not safe for the intended application, it shall be repaired, rebuilt, lined, relined or replaced with a vent or chimney to conform to NFPA 211 and it shall be suitable for the appliances to be vented.

503.5.7 Chimneys serving appliances burning other fuels. Chimneys serving *appliances* burning other fuels shall comply with Sections 503.5.7.1 through 503.5.7.4.

503.5.7.1 Solid fuel-burning appliances. An *appliance* shall not be connected to a chimney flue serving a separate *appliance* designed to burn solid fuel.

503.5.7.2 Liquid fuel-burning appliances. Where one chimney flue serves gas appliances and liquid fuel-burning appliances, the appliances shall be connected through separate openings or shall be connected through a single opening where joined by a suitable fitting located as close as practical to the chimney. Where two or more openings are provided into one chimney flue, they shall be at different levels. Where the appliances are automatically controlled, they shall be equipped with safety shutoff devices.

503.5.7.3 Combination gas and solid fuel-burning appliances. A combination gas- and solid fuel-burning *appliance* shall be permitted to be connected to a single chimney flue where equipped with a manual reset device to shut off gas to the main burner in the event of sustained backdraft or flue gas spillage. The chimney flue shall be sized to properly vent the *appliance*.

503.5.7.4 Combination gas- and oil fuel-burning appliances. A *listed* combination gas- and oil fuel-burning *appliance* shall be permitted to be connected to a single chimney flue. The chimney flue shall be sized to properly vent the *appliance*.

503.5.8 Support of chimneys. All portions of chimneys shall be supported for the design and weight of the materials employed. Factory-built chimneys shall be supported and spaced in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

503.5.9 Cleanouts. Where a chimney that formerly carried flue products from liquid or solid fuel-burning appliances is used with an *appliance* using fuel gas, an accessible cleanout shall be provided. The cleanout shall have a tight-fitting cover and shall be installed so its upper edge is at least 6 inches (152 mm) below the lower edge of the lowest chimney inlet opening.

503.5.10 Space surrounding lining or vent. The remaining space surrounding a chimney liner, gas vent, special gas vent or plastic *piping* installed within a masonry chimney flue shall not be used to vent another *appliance*. The insertion of another liner or vent within the chimney as provided in this code and the liner or vent manufacturer's instructions shall not be prohibited.

The remaining space surrounding a chimney liner, gas vent, special gas vent or plastic *piping* installed within a masonry, metal or factory-built chimney shall not be used to supply *combustion air*. Such space shall not be prohibited from supplying *combustion air* to *direct-vent appliances* designed for installation in a solid fuel-burning *fireplace* and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

503.6 Gas vents. Gas vents shall comply with Sections 503.6.1 through 503.6.13 (see Section 202, Definitions).

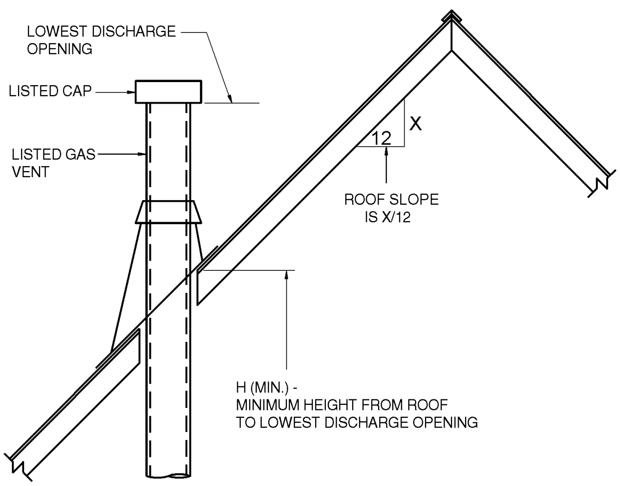
503.6.1 Installation, general. Gas vents shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

503.6.2 Type B-W vent capacity. A Type B-W gas vent shall have a *listed* capacity not less than that of the *listed* vented wall furnace to which it is connected.

503.6.3 Gas vents installed within masonry chimneys. Gas vents installed within masonry chimneys shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Gas vents installed within masonry chimneys shall be identified with a permanent label installed at the point where the vent enters the chimney. The label shall contain the following language: "This gas vent is for appliances that burn gas. Do not connect to solid or liquid fuel-burning appliances or incinerators."

503.6.4 Gas vent terminations. A gas vent shall terminate in accordance with one of the following:

1. Gas vents that are 12 inches (305 mm) or less in size and located not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) from a vertical wall or similar obstruction shall terminate above the roof in accordance with Figure 503.6.4.



ROOF SLOPE	H (min) ft
Flat to 6/12	1.0
Over 6/12 to 7/12	1.25
Over 7/12 to 8/12	1.5
Over 8/12 to 9/12	2.0
Over 9/12 to 10/12	2.5
Over 10/12 to 11/12	3.25
Over 11/12 to 12/12	4.0
Over 12/12 to 14/12	5.0
Over 14/12 to 16/12	6.0
Over 16/12 to 18/12	7.0
Over 18/12 to 20/12	7.5
Over 20/12 to 21/12	8.0

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 503.6.4
TERMINATION LOCATIONS FOR GAS VENTS WITH LISTED CAPS 12 INCHES OR LESS IN SIZE AT LEAST 8 FEET FROM A VERTICAL WALL

2. Gas vents that are over 12 inches (305 mm) in size or are located less than 8 feet (2438 mm) from a vertical wall or similar obstruction shall terminate not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above the highest point where they pass through the roof and not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above any portion of a building within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally.
3. As provided for industrial appliances in Section 503.2.2.
4. As provided for direct-vent systems in Section 503.2.3.
5. As provided for appliances with integral vents in Section 503.2.4.
6. As provided for mechanical draft systems in Section 503.3.3.
7. As provided for ventilating hoods and exhaust systems in Section 503.3.4.

503.6.4.1 Decorative shrouds. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of gas vents except where such shrouds are *listed* for use with the specific gas venting system and are installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

503.6.5 Minimum height. A Type B or L gas vent shall terminate at least 5 feet (1524 mm) in vertical height above the highest connected *appliance* draft hood or flue collar. A Type B-W gas vent shall terminate at least 12 feet (3658 mm) in vertical height above the bottom of the wall furnace.

503.6.6 Roof terminations. Gas vents shall extend through the roof flashing, roof jack or roof thimble and terminate with a *listed* cap or *listed* roof assembly.

503.6.7 Forced air inlets. Gas vents shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm).

503.6.8 Exterior wall penetrations. A gas vent extending through an exterior wall shall not terminate adjacent to the wall or below eaves or parapets, except as provided in Sections 503.2.3 and 503.3.3.

503.6.9 Size of gas vents. Venting systems shall be sized and constructed in accordance with Section 504 or other *approved* engineering methods and the gas vent and *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

503.6.9.1 Category I appliances. The sizing of natural draft venting systems serving one or more listed *appliances* equipped with a draft hood or appliances *listed* for use with Type B gas vent, installed in a single story of a building, shall be in accordance with one of the following methods:

1. The provisions of Section 504.
2. For sizing an individual gas vent for a single draft-hood-equipped *appliance*, the effective area of the vent connector and the gas vent shall be not less than the area of the *appliance* draft hood outlet, nor greater than four times the draft hood outlet area.

3. For sizing a gas vent connected to two *appliances* with draft hoods, the effective area of the vent shall be not less than the area of the larger draft hood outlet plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller draft hood outlet, nor greater than four times the smaller draft hood outlet area.

4. *Approved* engineering practices.

503.6.9.2 Vent offsets. Type B and L vents sized in accordance with Item 2 or 3 of Section 503.6.9.1 shall extend in a generally vertical direction with offsets not exceeding 45 degrees (0.79 rad), except that a vent system having not more than one 60-degree (1.04 rad) *offset* shall be permitted. Any angle greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the vertical is considered horizontal. The total horizontal distance of a vent plus the horizontal vent connector serving draft hood-equipped appliances shall be not greater than 75 percent of the vertical height of the vent.

503.6.9.3 Category II, III and IV appliances. The sizing of gas vents for Category II, III and IV appliances shall be in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.

503.6.9.4 Mechanical draft. Chimney venting systems using mechanical draft shall be sized in accordance with *approved* engineering methods.

503.6.10 Gas vents serving appliances on more than one floor. A common vent shall be permitted in multistory installations to vent Category I appliances located on more than one floor level, provided that the venting system is designed and installed in accordance with *approved* engineering methods. For the purpose of this section, crawl spaces, basements and attics shall be considered as floor levels.

503.6.10.1 Appliance separation. All appliances connected to the common vent shall be located in rooms separated from occupiable space. Each of these rooms shall have provisions for an adequate supply of combustion, ventilation and dilution air that is not supplied from an occupiable space.

503.6.10.2 Sizing. The size of the connectors and common segments of multistory venting systems for appliances *listed* for use with Type B double-wall gas vents shall be in accordance with Table 504.3(1), provided that:

1. The available total height (H) for each segment of a multistory venting system is the vertical distance between the level of the highest draft hood outlet or flue collar on that floor and the centerline of the next highest interconnection tee.

2. The size of the connector for a segment is determined from the *appliance* input rating and available connector rise, and shall not be smaller than the draft hood outlet or flue collar size.

3. The size of the common vertical segment, and of the interconnection tee at the base of that segment, shall be based on the total *appliance* input rating entering that segment and its available total height.

503.6.11 Support of gas vents. Gas vents shall be supported and spaced in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

503.6.12 Marking. In those localities where solid and liquid fuels are used extensively, gas vents shall be permanently identified by a label attached to the wall or ceiling at a point where the vent connector enters the gas vent. The determination of where such localities exist shall be made by the code official. The label shall read:

"This gas vent is for appliances that burn gas. Do not connect to solid or liquid fuel-burning appliances or incinerators."

503.6.13 Fastener penetrations. Screws, rivets and other fasteners shall not penetrate the inner wall of double-wall gas vents, except at the transition from an *appliance* draft hood outlet, a flue collar or a single-wall metal connector to a double-wall vent.

503.7 Single-wall metal pipe. Single-wall metal pipe vents shall comply with Sections 503.7.1 through 503.7.13.

503.7.1 Construction. Single-wall metal pipe shall be constructed of galvanized sheet steel not less than 0.0304 inch (0.7 mm) thick, or other *approved,* noncombustible, corrosion-resistant material.

503.7.2 Cold climate. Uninsulated single-wall metal pipe shall not be used outdoors for venting appliances in regions where the 99-percent winter design temperature is below 32°F (0°C).

503.7.3 Termination. Single-wall metal pipe shall terminate at least 5 feet (1524 mm) in vertical height above the highest connected *appliance* draft hood *outlet* or flue collar. Single-wall metal pipe shall extend at least 2 feet (610 mm) above the highest point where it passes through a roof of a building and at least 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of a building within a horizontal distance of 10 feet (3048 mm). An *approved* cap or roof assembly shall be attached to the terminus of a single-wall metal pipe.

503.7.4 Limitations of use. Single-wall metal pipe shall be used only for runs directly from the space in which the *appliance* is located through the roof or exterior wall to the outdoor atmosphere.

503.7.5 Roof penetrations. A pipe passing through a roof shall extend without interruption through the roof flashing, roof jack or roof thimble. Where a single-wall metal pipe passes through a roof constructed of *combustible material*, a noncombustible, nonventilating thimble shall be used at the point of passage. The thimble shall extend at least 18 inches (457 mm) above and 6 inches (152 mm) below the roof with the annular space open at the bottom and closed only at the top. The thimble shall be sized in accordance with Section 503.7.7.

503.7.6 Installation. Single-wall metal pipe shall not originate in any unoccupied attic or concealed space and shall not pass through any attic, inside wall, concealed space or floor. The installation of a single-wall metal pipe through an exterior combustible wall shall comply with Section 503.7.7.

503.7.7 Single-wall penetrations of combustible walls. A single-wall metal pipe shall not pass through a combustible exterior wall unless guarded at the point of passage by a ventilated metal thimble not smaller than the following:

1. For *listed* appliances with draft hoods and appliances *listed* for use with Type B gas vents, the thimble shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe. Where there is a run of not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) of metal pipe in the open between the draft hood outlet and the thimble, the thimble shall be permitted to be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe.
2. For unlisted appliances having draft hoods, the thimble shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe.
3. For residential and low-heat appliances, the thimble shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe.

Exception: In lieu of thimble protection, all *combustible material* in the wall shall be removed a sufficient distance from the metal pipe to provide the specified *clearance* from such metal pipe to *combustible material*. Any material used to close up such opening shall be noncombustible.

503.7.8 Clearances. Minimum clearances from single-wall metal pipe to *combustible material* shall be in accordance with Table 503.10.5. The *clearance* from single-wall metal pipe to *combustible material* shall be permitted to be reduced where the *combustible material* is protected as specified for vent connectors in Table 308.2.

503.7.9 Size of single-wall metal pipe. A venting system constructed of single-wall metal pipe shall be sized in accordance with one of the following methods and the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions:

1. For a draft hood-equipped *appliance*, in accordance with IFGC Section 504.
2. For a venting system for a single *appliance* with a draft hood, the areas of the connector and the pipe each shall be not less than the area of the *appliance* flue collar or draft hood outlet, whichever is smaller. The vent area shall not be greater than four times the draft hood outlet area.
3. Other *approved* engineering methods.

503.7.10 Pipe geometry. Any shaped single-wall metal pipe shall be permitted to be used, provided that its equivalent effective area is equal to the effective area of the round pipe for which it is substituted, and provided that the minimum internal dimension of the pipe is not less than 2 inches (51 mm).

503.7.11 Termination capacity. The vent cap or a roof assembly shall have a venting capacity of not less than that of the pipe to which it is attached.

503.7.12 Support of single-wall metal pipe. All portions of single-wall metal pipe shall be supported for the design and weight of the material employed.

503.7.13 Marking. Single-wall metal pipe shall comply with the marking provisions of Section 503.6.12.

503.8 Venting system termination location. The location of venting system terminations shall comply with the following (see Appendix C):

1. A mechanical draft venting system shall terminate at least 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced-air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm).

   Exceptions:

   1. This provision shall not apply to the *combustion air* intake of a direct-vent *appliance*.
   2. This provision shall not apply to the separation of the integral outdoor air inlet and flue gas discharge of *listed* outdoor appliances.

2. A mechanical draft venting system, excluding *direct-vent appliances*, shall terminate at least 4 feet (1219 mm) below, 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally from, or 1 foot (305 mm) above any door, operable window or gravity air inlet into any building. The bottom of the vent terminal shall be located at least 12 inches (305 mm) above finished ground level.
3. The vent terminal of a direct-vent *appliance* with an input of 10,000 Btu per hour (3 kW) or less shall be located at least 6 inches (152 mm) from any air opening into a building, and such an *appliance* with an input over 10,000 Btu per hour (3 kW) but not over 50,000 Btu per hour (14.7 kW) shall be installed with a 9-inch (230 mm) vent termination *clearance*, and an *appliance* with an input over 50,000 Btu/h (14.7 kW) shall have at least a 12-inch (305 mm) vent termination *clearance*. The bottom of the vent terminal and the air intake shall be located at least 12 inches (305 mm) above finished ground level.
4. Through-the-wall vents for Category II and IV appliances and noncategorized condensing appliances shall not terminate over public walkways or over an area where condensate or vapor could create a nuisance or hazard or could be detrimental to the operation of regulators, relief valves or other *equipment*. Where local experience indicates that condensate is a problem with Category I and III appliances, this provision shall also apply. Drains for condensate shall be installed in accordance with the appliance and vent manufacturers' instructions.

503.9 Condensation drainage. Provisions shall be made to collect and dispose of condensate from venting systems serving Category II and IV appliances and noncategorized condensing appliances in accordance with Section 503.8, Item 4. Where local experience indicates that condensation is a problem, provision shall be made to drain off and dispose of condensate from venting systems serving Category I and III appliances in accordance with Section 503.8, Item 4.

503.10 Vent connectors for Category I appliances. Vent connectors for Category I *appliances* shall comply with Sections 503.10.1 through 503.10.14.

503.10.1 Where required. A vent connector shall be used to connect an *appliance* to a gas vent, chimney or single-wall metal pipe, except where the gas vent, chimney or single-wall metal pipe is directly connected to the *appliance*.

503.10.2 Materials. Vent connectors shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 503.10.2.1 through 503.10.2.5.

503.10.2.1 General. A vent connector shall be made of noncombustible corrosion-resistant material capable of withstanding the vent gas temperature produced by the *appliance* and of sufficient thickness to withstand physical damage.

503.10.2.2 Vent connectors located in unconditioned areas. Where the vent connector used for an *appliance* having a draft hood or a Category I *appliance* is located in or passes through attics, crawl spaces or other unconditioned spaces, that portion of the vent connector shall be *listed* Type B, Type L or *listed* vent material having equivalent insulation properties.

Exception: Single-wall metal pipe located within the exterior walls of the building in areas having a local 99-percent winter design temperature of 5°F (-15°C) or higher shall be permitted to be used in unconditioned spaces other than attics and crawl spaces.

503.10.2.3 Residential-type appliance connectors. Where vent connectors for residential-type appliances are not installed in attics or other unconditioned spaces, connectors for *listed* appliances having draft hoods, appliances having draft hoods and equipped with *listed* conversion burners and Category I appliances shall be one of the following:

1. Type B or L vent material;
2. Galvanized sheet steel not less than 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick;
3. Aluminum (1100 or 3003 alloy or equivalent) sheet not less than 0.027 inch (0.69 mm) thick;
4. Stainless steel sheet not less than 0.012 inch (0.31 mm) thick;
5. Smooth interior wall metal pipe having resistance to heat and corrosion equal to or greater than that of Item 2, 3 or 4 above; or
6. A *listed* vent connector.

Vent connectors shall not be covered with insulation.

Exception: *Listed* insulated vent connectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

503.10.2.4 Low-heat equipment. A vent connector for a nonresidential, low-heat *appliance* shall be a factory-built chimney section or steel pipe having resistance to heat and corrosion equivalent to that for the appropriate galvanized pipe as specified in Table 503.10.2.4. Factory-built chimney sections shall be joined together in accordance with the chimney manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE 503.10.2.4
MINIMUM THICKNESS FOR GALVANIZED STEEL VENT CONNECTORS FOR LOW-HEAT APPLIANCES

DIAMETER OF CONNECTOR (inches)	MINIMUM THICKNESS (inch)
Less than 6	0.019
6 to less than 10	0.023
10 to 12 inclusive	0.029
14 to 16 inclusive	0.034
Over 16	0.056

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

503.10.2.5 Medium-heat appliances. Vent connectors for medium-heat appliances shall be constructed of factory-built medium-heat chimney sections or steel of a thickness not less than that specified in Table 503.10.2.5 and shall comply with the following:

1. A steel vent connector for an *appliance* with a vent gas temperature in excess of 1,000°F (538°C) measured at the entrance to the connector shall be lined with medium-duty fire brick (ASTM C64, Type F), or the equivalent.
2. The lining shall be at least $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm) thick for a vent connector having a diameter or greatest cross-sectional dimension of 18 inches (457 mm) or less.
3. The lining shall be at least $4^1/_2$ inches (114 mm) thick laid on the $4^1/_2$-inch (114 mm) bed for a vent connector having a diameter or greatest cross-sectional dimension greater than 18 inches (457 mm).
4. Factory-built chimney sections, if employed, shall be joined together in accordance with the chimney manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE 503.10.2.5
MINIMUM THICKNESS FOR STEEL VENT CONNECTORS FOR MEDIUM-HEAT APPLIANCES

VENT CONNECTOR SIZE		
Diameter (inches)	Area (square inches)	MINIMUM THICKNESS (inch)
Up to 14	Up to 154	0.053
Over 14 to 16	154 to 201	0.067
Over 16 to 18	201 to 254	0.093
Over 18	Larger than 254	0.123

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2.

503.10.3 Size of vent connector. Vent connectors shall be sized in accordance with Sections 503.10.3.1 through 503.10.3.5.

503.10.3.1 Single draft hood and fan-assisted. A vent connector for an *appliance* with a single draft hood or for a Category I fan-assisted combustion system *appli-*

ance shall be sized and installed in accordance with Section 504 or other *approved* engineering methods.

503.10.3.2 Multiple draft hood. For a single *appliance* having more than one draft hood outlet or flue collar, the manifold shall be constructed according to the instructions of the *appliance* manufacturer. Where there are no instructions, the manifold shall be designed and constructed in accordance with *approved* engineering practices. As an alternate method, the effective area of the manifold shall equal the combined area of the flue collars or draft hood outlets and the vent connectors shall have a minimum 1-foot (305 mm) rise.

503.10.3.3 Multiple appliances. Where two or more appliances are connected to a common vent or chimney, each vent connector shall be sized in accordance with Section 504 or other *approved* engineering methods.

As an alternative method applicable only when all of the appliances are draft hood equipped, each vent connector shall have an effective area not less than the area of the draft hood outlet of the *appliance* to which it is connected.

503.10.3.4 Common connector/manifold. Where two or more appliances are vented through a common vent connector or vent manifold, the common vent connector or vent manifold shall be located at the highest level consistent with available headroom and the required *clearance* to *combustible materials* and shall be sized in accordance with Section 504 or other *approved* engineering methods.

As an alternate method applicable only where there are two draft hood-equipped appliances, the effective area of the common vent connector or vent manifold and all junction fittings shall be not less than the area of the larger vent connector plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller flue collar outlet.

503.10.3.5 Size increase. Where the size of a vent connector is increased to overcome installation limitations and obtain connector capacity equal to the *appliance* input, the size increase shall be made at the *appliance* draft hood outlet.

503.10.4 Two or more appliances connected to a single vent or chimney. Where two or more vent connectors enter a common vent, chimney flue or single-wall metal pipe, the smaller connector shall enter at the highest level consistent with the available headroom or *clearance* to *combustible material*. Vent connectors serving Category I appliances shall not be connected to any portion of a mechanical draft system operating under positive static pressure, such as those serving Category III or IV appliances.

503.10.4.1 Two or more openings. Where two or more openings are provided into one chimney flue or vent, the openings shall be at different levels, or the connectors shall be attached to the vertical portion of the chimney or vent at an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) or less relative to the vertical.

503.10.5 Clearance. Minimum clearances from vent connectors to *combustible material* shall be in accordance with Table 503.10.5.

Exception: The *clearance* between a vent connector and *combustible material* shall be permitted to be reduced where the *combustible material* is protected as specified for vent connectors in Table 308.2.

503.10.6 Joints. Joints between sections of connector *piping* and connections to flue collars and draft hood outlets shall be fastened by one of the following methods:

1. Sheet metal screws.
2. Vent connectors of *listed* vent material assembled and connected to flue collars or draft hood outlets in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.
3. Other *approved* means.

503.10.7 Slope. A vent connector shall be installed without dips or sags and shall slope upward toward the vent or chimney at least $^{1}/_{4}$ inch per foot (21 mm/m).

Exception: Vent connectors attached to a mechanical draft system installed in accordance with the *appliance* and draft system manufacturers' instructions.

TABLE 503.10.5[a]
CLEARANCES FOR CONNECTORS

APPLIANCE	MINIMUM DISTANCE FROM COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL			
	Listed Type B gas vent material	Listed Type L vent material	Single-wall metal pipe	Factory-built chimney sections
Listed appliances with draft hoods and appliances listed for use with Type B gas vents	As listed	As listed	6 inches	As listed
Residential boilers and furnaces with listed gas conversion burner and with draft hood	6 inches	6 inches	9 inches	As listed
Residential appliances listed for use with Type L vents	Not permitted	As listed	9 inches	As listed
Listed gas-fired toilets	Not permitted	As listed	As listed	As listed
Unlisted residential appliances with draft hood	Not permitted	6 inches	9 inches	As listed
Residential and low-heat appliances other than above	Not permitted	9 inches	18 inches	As listed
Medium-heat appliances	Not permitted	Not permitted	36 inches	As listed

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. These clearances shall apply unless the manufacturer's installation instructions for a listed appliance or connector specify different clearances, in which case the listed clearances shall apply.

503.10.8 Length of vent connector. The maximum horizontal length of a single-wall connector shall be 75 percent of the height of the chimney or vent except for engineered systems. The maximum horizontal length of a Type B double-wall connector shall be 100 percent of the height of the chimney or vent except for engineered systems.

503.10.9 Support. A vent connector shall be supported for the design and weight of the material employed to maintain clearances and prevent physical damage and separation of joints.

503.10.10 Chimney connection. Where entering a flue in a masonry or metal chimney, the vent connector shall be installed above the extreme bottom to avoid stoppage. Where a thimble or slip joint is used to facilitate removal of the connector, the connector shall be firmly attached to or inserted into the thimble or slip joint to prevent the connector from falling out. Means shall be employed to prevent the connector from entering so far as to restrict the space between its end and the opposite wall of the chimney flue (see Section 501.9).

503.10.11 Inspection. The entire length of a vent connector shall be provided with ready *access* for inspection, cleaning and replacement.

503.10.12 Fireplaces. A vent connector shall not be connected to a chimney flue serving a *fireplace* unless the *fireplace* flue opening is permanently sealed.

503.10.13 Passage through ceilings, floors or walls. Single-wall metal pipe connectors shall not pass through any wall, floor or ceiling except as permitted by Section 503.7.4.

503.10.14 Medium-heat connectors. Vent connectors for medium-heat appliances shall not pass through walls or partitions constructed of *combustible material*.

503.11 Vent connectors for Category II, III and IV appliances. Vent connectors for Category II, III and IV appliances shall be as specified for the venting systems in accordance with Section 503.4.

503.12 Draft hoods and draft controls. The installation of draft hoods and draft controls shall comply with Sections 503.12.1 through 503.12.7.

503.12.1 Appliances requiring draft hoods. Vented appliances shall be installed with draft hoods.

Exception: Dual oven-type combination ranges; *direct-vent appliances*; fan-assisted combustion system appliances; appliances requiring chimney draft for operation; single firebox boilers equipped with conversion burners with inputs greater than 400,000 Btu per hour (117 kW); appliances equipped with blast, power or pressure burners that are not *listed* for use with draft hoods; and appliances designed for forced venting.

503.12.2 Installation. A draft hood supplied with or forming a part of a *listed* vented *appliance* shall be installed without *alteration*, exactly as furnished and specified by the *appliance* manufacturer.

503.12.2.1 Draft hood required. If a draft hood is not supplied by the *appliance* manufacturer where one is required, a draft hood shall be installed, shall be of a *listed* or *approved* type and, in the absence of other instructions, shall be of the same size as the *appliance* flue collar. Where a draft hood is required with a conversion burner, it shall be of a *listed* or *approved* type.

503.12.2.2 Special design draft hood. Where it is determined that a draft hood of special design is needed or preferable for a particular installation, the installation shall be in accordance with the recommendations of the *appliance* manufacturer and shall be *approved*.

503.12.3 Draft control devices. Where a draft control device is part of the *appliance* or is supplied by the *appliance* manufacturer, it shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. In the absence of manufacturer's instructions, the device shall be attached to the flue collar of the *appliance* or as near to the *appliance* as practical.

503.12.4 Additional devices. Appliances requiring a controlled chimney draft shall be permitted to be equipped with a *listed* double-acting barometric-draft regulator installed and adjusted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

503.12.5 Location. Draft hoods and barometric draft regulators shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the *appliance* in such a manner as to prevent any difference in pressure between the hood or regulator and the *combustion air* supply.

503.12.6 Positioning. Draft hoods and draft regulators shall be installed in the position for which they were designed with reference to the horizontal and vertical planes and shall be located so that the relief opening is not obstructed by any part of the *appliance* or adjacent construction. The *appliance* and its draft hood shall be located so that the relief opening is accessible for checking vent operation.

503.12.7 Clearance. A draft hood shall be located so its relief opening is not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from any surface except that of the *appliance* it serves and the venting system to which the draft hood is connected. Where a greater or lesser *clearance* is indicated on the *appliance* label, the *clearance* shall be not less than that specified on the label. Such clearances shall not be reduced.

503.13 Manually operated dampers. A manually operated damper shall not be placed in the vent connector for any *appliance*. Fixed baffles shall not be classified as manually operated dampers.

503.14 Automatically operated vent dampers. An automatically operated vent damper shall be of a *listed* type.

503.15 Obstructions. Devices that retard the flow of vent gases shall not be installed in a vent connector, chimney or vent. The following shall not be considered as obstructions:

1. Draft regulators and safety controls specifically *listed* for installation in venting systems and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

2. *Approved* draft regulators and safety controls that are designed and installed in accordance with *approved* engineering methods.
3. *Listed* heat reclaimers and automatically operated vent dampers installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
4. *Approved* economizers, heat reclaimers and recuperators installed in venting systems of appliances not required to be equipped with draft hoods, provided that the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions cover the installation of such a device in the venting system and performance in accordance with Sections 503.3 and 503.3.1 is obtained.
5. Vent dampers serving *listed* appliances installed in accordance with Sections 504.2.1 and 504.3.1 or other *approved* engineering methods.

503.16 Outside wall penetrations. Where vents, including those for *direct-vent appliances*, penetrate outside walls of buildings, the annular spaces around such penetrations shall be permanently sealed using *approved* materials to prevent entry of combustion products into the building.

SECTION 504 (IFGS) SIZING OF CATEGORY I APPLIANCE VENTING SYSTEMS

504.1 Definitions. The following definitions apply to the tables in this section.

APPLIANCE CATEGORIZED VENT DIAMETER/AREA. The minimum vent area/diameter permissible for Category I appliances to maintain a nonpositive vent static pressure when tested in accordance with nationally recognized standards.

FAN-ASSISTED COMBUSTION SYSTEM. An *appliance* equipped with an integral mechanical means to either draw or force products of combustion through the combustion chamber or heat exchanger.

FAN Min. The minimum input rating of a Category I fan-assisted appliance attached to a vent or connector.

FAN Max. The maximum input rating of a Category I fan-assisted appliance attached to a vent or connector.

NAT Max. The maximum input rating of a Category I draft-hood-equipped *appliance* attached to a vent or connector.

FAN + FAN. The maximum combined *appliance* input rating of two or more Category I fan-assisted appliances attached to the common vent.

FAN + NAT. The maximum combined *appliance* input rating of one or more Category I fan-assisted appliances and one or more Category I draft-hood-equipped appliances attached to the common vent.

NA. Vent configuration is not allowed due to potential for condensate formation or pressurization of the venting system, or not applicable due to physical or geometric restraints.

NAT + NAT. The maximum combined *appliance* input rating of two or more Category I draft-hood-equipped appliances attached to the common vent.

504.2 Application of single-appliance vent Tables 504.2(1) through 504.2(6). The application of Tables 504.2(1) through 504.2(6) shall be subject to the requirements of Sections 504.2.1 through 504.2.17.

504.2.1 Vent obstructions. These venting tables shall not be used where obstructions, as described in Section 503.15, are installed in the venting system. The installation of vents serving *listed* appliances with vent dampers shall be in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions or in accordance with the following:

1. The maximum capacity of the vent system shall be determined using the "NAT Max" column.
2. The minimum capacity shall be determined as if the *appliance* were a fan-assisted *appliance*, using the "FAN Min" column to determine the minimum capacity of the vent system. Where the corresponding "FAN Min" is "NA," the vent configuration shall not be permitted and an alternative venting configuration shall be utilized.

504.2.2 Minimum size. Where the vent size determined from the tables is smaller than the *appliance* draft hood *outlet* or flue collar, the smaller size shall be permitted to be used provided that all of the following requirements are met:

1. The total vent height (*H*) is at least 10 feet (3048 mm).
2. Vents for *appliance* draft hood outlets or flue collars 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter or smaller are not reduced more than one table size.
3. Vents for *appliance* draft hood outlets or flue collars larger than 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter are not reduced more than two table sizes.
4. The maximum capacity listed in the tables for a fan-assisted *appliance* is reduced by 10 percent (0.90 × maximum table capacity).
5. The draft hood outlet is greater than 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter. Do not connect a 3-inch-diameter (76 mm) vent to a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) draft hood outlet. This provision shall not apply to fan-assisted appliances.

504.2.3 Vent offsets. Single-appliance venting configurations with zero (0) lateral lengths in Tables 504.2(1), 504.2(2) and 504.2(5) shall not have elbows in the venting system. Single-appliance venting configurations with lateral lengths include two 90-degree (1.57 rad) elbows. For each additional elbow up to and including 45 degrees (0.79 rad), the maximum capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each additional elbow greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) up to and including 90 degrees (1.57 rad), the maximum capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent. Where multiple offsets occur in a vent, the total lateral length of all offsets combined shall not exceed that specified in Tables 504.2(1) through 504.2(5).

504.2.4 Zero lateral. Zero (0) lateral (*L*) shall apply only to a straight vertical vent attached to a top outlet draft hood or flue collar.

504.2.5 High-altitude installations. Sea-level input ratings shall be used when determining maximum capacity for high altitude installation. Actual input (derated for altitude) shall be used for determining minimum capacity for high altitude installation.

504.2.6 Multiple input rate appliances. For appliances with more than one input rate, the minimum vent capacity (FAN Min) determined from the tables shall be less than the lowest *appliance* input rating, and the maximum vent capacity (FAN Max/NAT Max) determined from the tables shall be greater than the highest *appliance* rating input.

504.2.7 Liner system sizing. *Listed* corrugated metallic chimney liner systems in masonry chimneys shall be sized by using IFGC Table 504.2(1) or 504.2(2) for Type B vents with the maximum capacity reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum capacity) and the minimum capacity as shown in IFGC Table 504.2(1) or 504.2(2). Corrugated metallic liner systems installed with bends or offsets shall have their maximum capacity further reduced in accordance with IFGC Section 504.2.3. *Approved* metallic liners, other than listed corrugated metallic liner systems, installed in accordance with amended IFGC Section 501.12, shall be sized by using IFGC Table 504.2(1) or 504.2(2) for Type B vents.

When IFGC Table 504.2(1) or 504.2(2) permits more than one diameter for a connector or vent of a fan-assisted *appliance*, the smallest permitted diameter shall be used.

504.2.8 Vent area and diameter. Where the vertical vent has a larger diameter than the vent connector, the vertical vent diameter shall be used to determine the minimum vent capacity, and the connector diameter shall be used to determine the maximum vent capacity. The flow area of the vertical vent shall not exceed four times the flow area of the *listed appliance* categorized vent area, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet area unless designated in accordance with approved engineering methods.

504.2.9 Chimney and vent locations. Tables 504.2(1), 504.2(2), 504.2(3), 504.2(4) and 504.2(5) shall be used only for chimneys and vents not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. A Type B vent or listed chimney lining system passing through an unused masonry chimney flue shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors. Where vents extend outdoors above the roof more than 5 feet (1524 mm) higher than required by Figure 503.6.4, and where vents terminate in accordance with Section 503.6.4, Item 2, the outdoor portion of the vent shall be enclosed as required by this section for vents not considered to be exposed to the outdoors or such venting system shall be engineered. A Type B vent shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors where it passes through an unventilated enclosure or chase insulated to a value of not less than R8.

Table 504.2(3) in combination with Table 504.2(6) shall be used for clay-tile-lined *exterior masonry chimneys*, provided that all of the following are met:

1. Vent connector is a Type B double wall.
2. Vent connector length is limited to $1^{1}/_{2}$ feet for each inch (18 mm per mm) of vent connector diameter.
3. The appliance is draft hood equipped.
4. The input rating is less than the maximum capacity given by Table 504.2(3).
5. For a water heater, the outdoor design temperature is not less than 5°F (-15°C).
6. For a space-heating appliance, the input rating is greater than the minimum capacity given by Table 504.2(6).

504.2.10 Corrugated vent connector size. Corrugated vent connectors shall be not smaller than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter or draft hood outlet diameter.

504.2.11 Vent connector size limitation. Vent connectors shall not be increased in size more than two sizes greater than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter or draft hood outlet diameter.

504.2.12 Component commingling. In a single run of vent or vent connector, different diameters and types of vent and connector components shall be permitted to be used, provided that all such sizes and types are permitted by the tables.

504.2.13 Draft hood conversion accessories. Draft hood conversion accessories for use with masonry chimneys venting listed Category I fan-assisted appliances shall be listed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions for such listed accessories.

504.2.14 Table interpolation. Interpolation shall be permitted in calculating capacities for vent dimensions that fall between the table entries.

504.2.15 Extrapolation prohibited. Extrapolation beyond the table entries shall not be permitted.

504.2.16 Engineering calculations. For vent heights less than 6 feet (1829 mm) and greater than shown in the tables, engineering methods shall be used to calculate vent capacities.

504.2.17 Height entries. Where the actual height of a vent falls between entries in the height column of the applicable table in Tables 504.2(1) through 504.2(6), either interpolation shall be used or the lower appliance input rating shown in the table entries shall be used for FAN MAX and NAT MAX column values and the higher appliance input rating shall be used for the FAN MIN column values.

504.3 Application of multiple appliance vent Tables 504.3(1) through 504.3(7). The application of Tables 504.3(1) through 504.3(7) shall be subject to the requirements of Sections 504.3.1 through 504.3.28.

504.3.1 Vent obstructions. These venting tables shall not be used where obstructions, as described in Section 503.15, are installed in the venting system. The installation of vents serving listed appliances with vent dampers shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions or in accordance with the following:

1. The maximum capacity of the vent connector shall be determined using the NAT Max column.
2. The maximum capacity of the vertical vent or chimney shall be determined using the FAN+NAT column when the second appliance is a fan-assisted appliance, or the NAT+NAT column when the second appliance is equipped with a draft hood.
3. The minimum capacity shall be determined as if the appliance were a fan-assisted appliance.
   3.1. The minimum capacity of the vent connector shall be determined using the FAN Min column.
   3.2. The FAN+FAN column shall be used where the second appliance is a fan-assisted appliance, and the FAN+NAT column shall be used where the second appliance is equipped with a draft hood, to determine whether the vertical vent or chimney configuration is not permitted (NA). Where the vent configuration is NA, the vent configuration shall not be permitted and an alternative venting configuration shall be utilized.

504.3.2 Connector length limit. The vent connector shall be routed to the vent utilizing the shortest possible route. Except as provided in Section 504.3.3, the maximum vent connector horizontal length shall be $1^1/_2$ feet for each inch (18 mm per mm) of connector diameter as shown in Table 504.3.2.

TABLE 504.3.2
MAXIMUM VENT CONNECTOR LENGTH

CONNECTOR DIAMETER (inches)	CONNECTOR MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL LENGTH (feet)
3	$4^1/_2$
4	6
5	$7^1/_2$
6	9
7	$10^1/_2$
8	12
9	$13^1/_2$
10	15
12	18
14	21
16	24
18	27
20	30
22	33
24	36

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

504.3.3 Connectors with longer lengths. Connectors with longer horizontal lengths than those listed in Section 504.3.2 are permitted under the following conditions:

1. The maximum capacity (FAN Max or NAT Max) of the vent connector shall be reduced 10 percent for each additional multiple of the length allowed by Section 504.3.2. For example, the maximum length listed in Table 504.3.2 for a 4-inch (102 mm) connector is 6 feet (1829 mm). With a connector length greater than 6 feet (1829 mm) but not exceeding 12 feet (3658 mm), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 10 percent (0.90 × maximum vent connector capacity). With a connector length greater than 12 feet (3658 mm) but not exceeding 18 feet (5486 mm), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum vent capacity).
2. For a connector serving a fan-assisted appliance, the minimum capacity (FAN Min) of the connector shall be determined by referring to the corresponding single appliance table. For Type B double-wall connectors, Table 504.2(1) shall be used. For single-wall connectors, Table 504.2(2) shall be used. The height (*H*) and lateral (*L*) shall be measured according to the procedures for a single-appliance vent, as if the other appliances were not present.

504.3.4 Vent connector manifold. Where the vent connectors are combined prior to entering the vertical portion of the common vent to form a common vent manifold, the size of the common vent manifold and the common vent shall be determined by applying a 10-percent reduction (0.90 × maximum common vent capacity) to the common vent capacity part of the common vent tables. The length of the common vent connector manifold (L_m) shall not exceed $1^1/_2$ feet for each inch (18 mm per mm) of common vent connector manifold diameter (*D*).

504.3.5 Common vertical vent offset. Where the common vertical vent is *offset*, the maximum capacity of the common vent shall be reduced in accordance with Section 504.3.6. The horizontal length of the common vent *offset* (L_o) shall not exceed $1^1/_2$ feet for each inch (18 mm per mm) of common vent diameter (*D*). Where multiple offsets occur in a common vent, the total horizontal length of all offsets combined shall not exceed $1^1/_2$ feet for each inch (18 mm per mm) of common vent diameter (*D*).

504.3.6 Elbows in vents. For each elbow up to and including 45 degrees (0.79 rad) in the common vent, the maximum common vent capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each elbow greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) up to and including 90 degrees (1.57 rad), the maximum common vent capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent.

504.3.7 Elbows in connectors. The vent connector capacities listed in the common vent sizing tables include allowance for two 90-degree (1.57 rad) elbows. For each additional elbow up to and including 45 degrees (0.79 rad), the maximum vent connector capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each elbow greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) up to and including 90 degrees (1.57 rad), the maximum vent connector capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent.

504.3.8 Common vent minimum size. The cross-sectional area of the common vent shall be equal to or greater than the cross-sectional area of the largest connector.

504.3.9 Common vent fittings. At the point where tee or wye fittings connect to a common vent, the opening size of the fitting shall be equal to the size of the common vent. Such fittings shall not be prohibited from having reduced-size openings at the point of connection of appliance vent connectors.

504.3.9.1 Tee and wye fittings. Tee and wye fittings connected to a common gas vent shall be considered as part of the common gas vent and shall be constructed of materials consistent with that of the common gas vent.

504.3.10 High-altitude installations. Sea-level input ratings shall be used when determining maximum capacity for high-altitude installation. Actual input (derated for altitude) shall be used for determining minimum capacity for high-altitude installation.

504.3.11 Connector rise measurement. Connector rise (*R*) for each appliance connector shall be measured from the draft hood outlet or flue collar to the centerline where the vent gas streams come together.

504.3.12 Vent height measurement. For multiple appliances all located on one floor, available total height (*H*) shall be measured from the highest draft hood outlet or flue collar up to the level of the outlet of the common vent.

504.3.13 Multistory height measurement. For multistory installations, available total height (*H*) for each segment of the system shall be the vertical distance between the highest draft hood outlet or flue collar entering that segment and the centerline of the next higher interconnection tee.

504.3.14 Multistory lowest portion sizing. The size of the lowest connector and of the vertical vent leading to the lowest interconnection of a multistory system shall be in accordance with Table 504.2(1) or 504.2(2) for available total height (*H*) up to the lowest interconnection.

504.3.15 Multistory common vents. Where used in multistory systems, vertical common vents shall be Type B double wall and shall be installed with a listed vent cap.

504.3.16 Multistory common vent offsets. *Offsets* in multistory common vent systems shall be limited to a single *offset* in each system, and systems with an *offset* shall comply with all of the following:

1. The *offset* angle shall not exceed 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from vertical.
2. The horizontal length of the *offset* shall not exceed $1^{1}/_{2}$ feet for each inch (18 mm per mm) of common vent diameter of the segment in which the *offset* is located.
3. For the segment of the common vertical vent containing the *offset,* the common vent capacity listed in the common venting tables shall be reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum common vent capacity).
4. A multistory common vent shall not be reduced in size above the *offset.*

504.3.17 Vertical vent maximum size. Where two or more *appliances* are connected to a vertical vent or chimney, the flow area of the largest section of vertical vent or chimney shall not exceed four times the smallest *listed appliance* categorized vent areas, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet area unless designed in accordance with *approved* engineering methods.

504.3.18 Multiple input rate appliances. For appliances with more than one input rate, the minimum vent connector capacity (FAN Min) determined from the tables shall be less than the lowest appliance input rating, and the maximum vent connector capacity (FAN Max or NAT Max) determined from the tables shall be greater than the highest appliance input rating.

504.3.19 Liner system sizing. *Listed* corrugated metallic chimney liner systems in masonry chimneys shall be sized by using IFGC Table 504.3(1) or 504.3(2) for Type B vents, with the maximum capacity reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum capacity) and the minimum capacity as shown in IFGC Table 504.3(1) or 504.3(2). Corrugated metallic liner systems installed with bends or offsets shall have their maximum capacity further reduced in accordance with IFGC Sections 504.3.5 and 504.3.6. *Approved* metallic liners, other than *listed* corrugated metallic liner systems, installed in accordance with amended IFGC Section 501.12, shall be sized by using IFGC Table 504.3(1) or 504.3(2) for Type B vents. When IFGC Table 504.3(1) or 504.3(2) permits more than one diameter for a connector or vent of a fan-assisted *appliance*, the smallest permitted diameter shall be used.

504.3.20 Chimney and vent location. Tables 504.3(1), 504.3(2), 504.3(3), 504.3(4) and 504.3(5) shall be used only for chimneys and vents not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. A Type B vent or listed chimney lining system passing through an unused masonry chimney flue shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors. Where vents extend outdoors above the roof more than 5 feet (1524 mm) higher than required by Figure 503.6.4 and where vents terminate in accordance with Section 503.6.4, Item 2, the outdoor portion of the vent shall be enclosed as required by this section for vents not considered to be exposed to the outdoors or such venting system shall be engineered. A Type B vent shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors where it passes through an unventilated enclosure or chase insulated to a value of not less than R8.

Tables 504.3(6a), 504.3(6b), 504.3(7a) and 504.3(7b) shall be used for clay-tile-lined *exterior masonry chimneys,* provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. Vent connector is Type B double wall.
2. At least one appliance is draft hood equipped.
3. The combined appliance input rating is less than the maximum capacity given by Table 504.3(6a) for NAT+NAT or Table 504.3(7a) for FAN+NAT.

4. The input rating of each space-heating appliance is greater than the minimum input rating given by Table 504.3(6b) for NAT+NAT or Table 504.3(7b) for FAN+NAT.
5. The vent connector sizing is in accordance with Table 504.3(3).

504.3.21 Connector maximum and minimum size. Vent connectors shall not be increased in size more than two sizes greater than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter or draft hood outlet diameter. Vent connectors for draft hood-equipped appliances shall not be smaller than the draft hood outlet diameter. Where a vent connector size(s) determined from the tables for a fan-assisted appliance(s) is smaller than the flue collar diameter, the use of the smaller size(s) shall be permitted provided that the installation complies with all of the following conditions:

1. Vent connectors for fan-assisted appliance flue collars 12 inches (305mm) in diameter or smaller are not reduced by more than one table size [e.g., 12 inches to 10 inches (305 mm to 254 mm) is a one-size reduction] and those larger than 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter are not reduced more than two table sizes [e.g., 24 inches to 20 inches (610 mm to 508 mm) is a two-size reduction].
2. The fan-assisted appliance(s) is common vented with a draft-hood-equipped appliance(s).
3. The vent connector has a smooth interior wall.

504.3.22 Component commingling. All combinations of pipe sizes, single-wall and double-wall metal pipe shall be allowed within any connector run(s) or within the common vent, provided that all of the appropriate tables permit all of the desired sizes and types of pipe, as if they were used for the entire length of the subject connector or vent. Where single-wall and Type B double-wall metal pipes are used for vent connectors within the same venting system, the common vent must be sized using Table 504.3(2) or 504.3(4), as appropriate.

504.3.23 Draft hood conversion accessories. Draft hood conversion accessories for use with masonry chimneys venting listed Category I fan-assisted appliances shall be listed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions for such listed accessories.

504.3.24 Multiple sizes permitted. Where a table permits more than one diameter of pipe to be used for a connector or vent, all the permitted sizes shall be permitted to be used.

504.3.25 Table interpolation. Interpolation shall be permitted in calculating capacities for vent dimensions that fall between table entries.

504.3.26 Extrapolation prohibited. Extrapolation beyond the table entries shall not be permitted.

504.3.27 Engineering calculations. For vent heights less than 6 feet (1829 mm) and greater than shown in the tables, engineering methods shall be used to calculate vent capacities.

504.3.28 Height entries. Where the actual height of a vent falls between entries in the height column of the applicable table in Tables 504.3(1) through 504.3(7b), either interpolation shall be used or the lower appliance input rating shown in the table shall be used for FAN MAX and NAT MAX column values and the higher appliance input rating shall be used for the FAN MIN column values.

SECTION 505 (IFGC) DIRECT-VENT, INTEGRAL VENT, MECHANICAL VENT AND VENTILATION/EXHAUST HOOD VENTING

505.1 General. The installation of direct-vent and integral vent appliances shall be in accordance with Section 503. Mechanical venting systems and exhaust hood venting systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 503.

505.1.1 Commercial cooking appliances vented by exhaust hoods. Where commercial cooking appliances are vented by means of the Type I or II kitchen exhaust hood system that serves such appliances, the exhaust system shall be fan powered and the appliances shall be interlocked with the exhaust hood system to prevent appliance operation when the exhaust hood system is not operating. The method of interlock between the exhaust hood system and the appliances equipped with standing pilot burner ignition systems shall not cause such pilots to be extinguished. Where a solenoid valve is installed in the gas *piping* as part of an interlock system, gas *piping* shall not be installed to bypass such valve. Dampers shall not be installed in the exhaust system.

Exception: An interlock between the cooking appliance(s) and the exhaust hood system shall not be required where heat sensors or other *approved* methods automatically activate the exhaust hood system when cooking operations occur.

SECTION 506 (IFGC) FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEYS

506.1 Building heating appliances. Factory-built chimneys for building heating appliances producing flue gases having a temperature not greater than 1,000°F (538°C), measured at the entrance to the chimney, shall be listed and *labeled* in accordance with UL 103 and shall be installed and terminated in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

506.2 Support. Where factory-built chimneys are supported by structural members, such as joists and rafters, such members shall be designed to support the additional load.

506.3 Medium-heat appliances. Factory-built chimneys for medium-heat appliances producing flue gases having a temperature above 1,000°F (538°C), measured at the entrance to the chimney, shall be listed and *labeled* in accordance with UL 959 and shall be installed and terminated in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

TABLE 504.2(1)
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Connected directly to vent

HEIGHT (H) (feet)	LATERAL (L) (feet)	VENT DIAMETER—(D) inches																				
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																				
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	0	0	78	46	0	152	86	0	251	141	0	375	205	0	524	285	0	698	370	0	897	470
	2	13	51	36	18	97	67	27	157	105	32	232	157	44	321	217	53	425	285	63	543	370
	4	21	49	34	30	94	64	39	153	103	50	227	153	66	316	211	79	419	279	93	536	362
	6	25	46	32	36	91	61	47	149	100	59	223	149	78	310	205	93	413	273	110	530	354
8	0	0	84	50	0	165	94	0	276	155	0	415	235	0	583	320	0	780	415	0	1,006	537
	2	12	57	40	16	109	75	25	178	120	28	263	180	42	365	247	50	483	322	60	619	418
	5	23	53	38	32	103	71	42	171	115	53	255	173	70	356	237	83	473	313	99	607	407
	8	28	49	35	39	98	66	51	164	109	64	247	165	84	347	227	99	463	303	117	596	396
10	0	0	88	53	0	175	100	0	295	166	0	447	255	0	631	345	0	847	450	0	1,096	585
	2	12	61	42	17	118	81	23	194	129	26	289	195	40	402	273	48	533	355	57	684	457
	5	23	57	40	32	113	77	41	187	124	52	280	188	68	392	263	81	522	346	95	671	446
	10	30	51	36	41	104	70	54	176	115	67	267	175	88	376	245	104	504	330	122	651	427
15	0	0	94	58	0	191	112	0	327	187	0	502	285	0	716	390	0	970	525	0	1,263	682
	2	11	69	48	15	136	93	20	226	150	22	339	225	38	475	316	45	633	414	53	815	544
	5	22	65	45	30	130	87	39	219	142	49	330	217	64	463	300	76	620	403	90	800	529
	10	29	59	41	40	121	82	51	206	135	64	315	208	84	445	288	99	600	386	116	777	507
	15	35	53	37	48	112	76	61	195	128	76	301	198	98	429	275	115	580	373	134	755	491
20	0	0	97	61	0	202	119	0	349	202	0	540	307	0	776	430	0	1,057	575	0	1,384	752
	2	10	75	51	14	149	100	18	250	166	20	377	249	33	531	346	41	711	470	50	917	612
	5	21	71	48	29	143	96	38	242	160	47	367	241	62	519	337	73	697	460	86	902	599
	10	28	64	44	38	133	89	50	229	150	62	351	228	81	499	321	95	675	443	112	877	576
	15	34	58	40	46	124	84	59	217	142	73	337	217	94	481	308	111	654	427	129	853	557
	20	48	52	35	55	116	78	69	206	134	84	322	206	107	464	295	125	634	410	145	830	537

(continued)

TABLE 504.2(1)—continued
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Connected directly to vent

HEIGHT *(H)* (feet)	LATERAL *(L)* (feet)	VENT DIAMETER—*(D)* inches																				
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																				
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
30	0	0	100	64	0	213	128	0	374	220	0	587	336	0	853	475	0	1,173	650	0	1,548	855
	2	9	81	56	13	166	112	14	283	185	18	432	280	27	613	394	33	826	535	42	1,072	700
	5	21	77	54	28	160	108	36	275	176	45	421	273	58	600	385	69	811	524	82	1,055	688
	10	27	70	50	37	150	102	48	262	171	59	405	261	77	580	371	91	788	507	107	1,028	668
	15	33	64	NA	44	141	96	57	249	163	70	389	249	90	560	357	105	765	490	124	1,002	648
	20	56	58	NA	53	132	90	66	237	154	80	374	237	102	542	343	119	743	473	139	977	628
	30	NA	NA	NA	73	113	NA	88	214	NA	104	346	219	131	507	321	149	702	444	171	929	594
50	0	0	101	67	0	216	134	0	397	232	0	633	363	0	932	518	0	1,297	708	0	1,730	952
	2	8	86	61	11	183	122	14	320	206	15	497	314	22	715	445	26	975	615	33	1,276	813
	5	20	82	NA	27	177	119	35	312	200	43	487	308	55	702	438	65	960	605	77	1,259	798
	10	26	76	NA	35	168	114	45	299	190	56	471	298	73	681	426	86	935	589	101	1,230	773
	15	59	70	NA	42	158	NA	54	287	180	66	455	288	85	662	413	100	911	572	117	1,203	747
	20	NA	NA	NA	50	149	NA	63	275	169	76	440	278	97	642	401	113	888	556	131	1,176	722
	30	NA	NA	NA	69	131	NA	84	250	NA	99	410	259	123	605	376	141	844	522	161	1,125	670
100	0	NA	NA	NA	0	218	NA	0	407	NA	0	665	400	0	997	560	0	1,411	770	0	1,908	1,040
	2	NA	NA	NA	10	194	NA	12	354	NA	13	566	375	18	831	510	21	1,155	700	25	1,536	935
	5	NA	NA	NA	26	189	NA	33	347	NA	40	557	369	52	820	504	60	1,141	692	71	1,519	926
	10	NA	NA	NA	33	182	NA	43	335	NA	53	542	361	68	801	493	80	1,118	679	94	1,492	910
	15	NA	NA	NA	40	174	NA	50	321	NA	62	528	353	80	782	482	93	1,095	666	109	1,465	895
	20	NA	NA	NA	47	166	NA	59	311	NA	71	513	344	90	763	471	105	1,073	653	122	1,438	880
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	78	290	NA	92	483	NA	115	726	449	131	1,029	627	149	1,387	849
	50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	147	428	NA	180	651	405	197	944	575	217	1,288	787

(continued)

TABLE 504.2(1)—continued
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Connected directly to vent

HEIGHT (H) (feet)	LATERAL (L) (feet)	VENT DIAMETER—(D) inches																							
		10			12			14			16			18			20			22			24		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	0	0	1,121	570	0	1,645	850	0	2,267	1,170	0	2,983	1,530	0	3,802	1,960	0	4,721	2,430	0	5,737	2,950	0	6,853	3,520
	2	75	675	455	103	982	650	138	1,346	890	178	1,769	1,170	225	2,250	1,480	296	2,782	1,850	360	3,377	2,220	426	4,030	2,670
	4	110	668	445	147	975	640	191	1,338	880	242	1,761	1,160	300	2,242	1,475	390	2,774	1,835	469	3,370	2,215	555	4,023	2,660
	6	128	661	435	171	967	630	219	1,330	870	276	1,753	1,150	341	2,235	1,470	437	2,767	1,820	523	3,363	2,210	618	4,017	2,650
8	0	0	1,261	660	0	1,858	970	0	2,571	1,320	0	3,399	1,740	0	4,333	2,220	0	5,387	2,750	0	6,555	3,360	0	7,838	4,010
	2	71	770	515	98	1,124	745	130	1,543	1,020	168	2,030	1,340	212	2,584	1,700	278	3,196	2,110	336	3,882	2,560	401	4,634	3,050
	5	115	758	503	154	1,110	733	199	1,528	1,010	251	2,013	1,330	311	2,563	1,685	398	3,180	2,090	476	3,863	2,545	562	4,612	3,040
	8	137	746	490	180	1,097	720	231	1,514	1,000	289	2,000	1,320	354	2,552	1,670	450	3,163	2,070	537	3,850	2,530	630	4,602	3,030
10	0	0	1,377	720	0	2,036	1,060	0	2,825	1,450	0	3,742	1,925	0	4,782	2,450	0	5,955	3,050	0	7,254	3,710	0	8,682	4,450
	2	68	852	560	93	1,244	850	124	1,713	1,130	161	2,256	1,480	202	2,868	1,890	264	3,556	2,340	319	4,322	2,840	378	5,153	3,390
	5	112	839	547	149	1,229	829	192	1,696	1,105	243	2,238	1,461	300	2,849	1,871	382	3,536	2,318	458	4,301	2,818	540	5,132	3,371
	10	142	817	525	187	1,204	795	238	1,669	1,080	298	2,209	1,430	364	2,818	1,840	459	3,504	2,280	546	4,268	2,780	641	5,099	3,340
15	0	0	1,596	840	0	2,380	1,240	0	3,323	1,720	0	4,423	2,270	0	5,678	2,900	0	7,099	3,620	0	8,665	4,410	0	10,393	5,300
	2	63	1,019	675	86	1,495	985	114	2,062	1,350	147	2,719	1,770	186	3,467	2,260	239	4,304	2,800	290	5,232	3,410	346	6,251	4,080
	5	105	1,003	660	140	1,476	967	182	2,041	1,327	229	2,696	1,748	283	3,442	2,235	355	4,278	2,777	426	5,204	3,385	501	6,222	4,057
	10	135	977	635	177	1,446	936	227	2,009	1,289	283	2,659	1,712	346	3,402	2,193	432	4,234	2,739	510	5,159	3,343	599	6,175	4,019
	15	155	953	610	202	1,418	905	257	1,976	1,250	318	2,623	1,675	385	3,363	2,150	479	4,192	2,700	564	5,115	3,300	665	6,129	3,980
20	0	0	1,756	930	0	2,637	1,350	0	3,701	1,900	0	4,948	2,520	0	6,376	3,250	0	7,988	4,060	0	9,785	4,980	0	11,753	6,000
	2	59	1,150	755	81	1,694	1,100	107	2,343	1,520	139	3,097	2,000	175	3,955	2,570	220	4,916	3,200	269	5,983	3,910	321	7,154	4,700
	5	101	1,133	738	135	1,674	1,079	174	2,320	1,498	219	3,071	1,978	270	3,926	2,544	337	4,885	3,174	403	5,950	3,880	475	7,119	4,662
	10	130	1,105	710	172	1,641	1,045	220	2,282	1,460	273	3,029	1,940	334	3,880	2,500	413	4,835	3,130	489	5,896	3,830	573	7,063	4,600
	15	150	1,078	688	195	1,609	1,018	248	2,245	1,425	306	2,988	1,910	372	3,835	2,465	459	4,786	3,090	541	5,844	3,795	631	7,007	4,575
	20	167	1,052	665	217	1,578	990	273	2,210	1,390	335	2,948	1,880	404	3,791	2,430	495	4,737	3,050	585	5,792	3,760	689	6,953	4,550

(continued)

TABLE 504.2(1)—continued
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Connected directly to vent

HEIGHT (H) (feet)	LATERAL (L) (feet)	VENT DIAMETER—(D) inches																							
		10			12			14			16			18			20			22			24		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
30	0	0	1,977	1,060	0	3,004	1,550	0	4,252	2,170	0	5,725	2,920	0	7,420	3,770	0	9,341	4,750	0	11,483	5,850	0	13,848	7,060
	2	54	1,351	865	74	2,004	1,310	98	2,786	1,800	127	3,696	2,380	159	4,734	3,050	199	5,900	3,810	241	7,194	4,650	285	8,617	5,600
	5	96	1,332	851	127	1,981	1,289	164	2,759	1,775	206	3,666	2,350	252	4,701	3,020	312	5,863	3,783	373	7,155	4,622	439	8,574	5,552
	10	125	1,301	829	164	1,944	1,254	209	2,716	1,733	259	3,617	2,300	316	4,647	2,970	386	5,803	3,739	456	7,090	4,574	535	8,505	5,471
	15	143	1,272	807	187	1,908	1,220	237	2,674	1,692	292	3,570	2,250	354	4,594	2,920	431	5,744	3,695	507	7,026	4,527	590	8,437	5,391
	20	160	1,243	784	207	1,873	1,185	260	2,633	1,650	319	3,523	2,200	384	4,542	2,870	467	5,686	3,650	548	6,964	4,480	639	8,370	5,310
	30	195	1,189	745	246	1,807	1,130	305	2,555	1,585	369	3,433	2,130	440	4,442	2,785	540	5,574	3,565	635	6,842	4,375	739	8,239	5,225
50	0	0	2,231	1,195	0	3,441	1,825	0	4,934	2,550	0	6,711	3,440	0	8,774	4,460	0	11,129	5,635	0	13,767	6,940	0	16,694	8,430
	2	41	1,620	1,010	66	2,431	1,513	86	3,409	2,125	113	4,554	2,840	141	5,864	3,670	171	7,339	4,630	209	8,980	5,695	251	10,788	6,860
	5	90	1,600	996	118	2,406	1,495	151	3,380	2,102	191	4,520	2,813	234	5,826	3,639	283	7,295	4,597	336	8,933	5,654	394	10,737	6,818
	10	118	1,567	972	154	2,366	1,466	196	3,332	2,064	243	4,464	2,767	295	5,763	3,585	355	7,224	4,542	419	8,855	5,585	491	10,652	6,749
	15	136	1,536	948	177	2,327	1,437	222	3,285	2,026	274	4,409	2,721	330	5,701	3,534	396	7,155	4,511	465	8,779	5,546	542	10,570	6,710
	20	151	1,505	924	195	2,288	1,408	244	3,239	1,987	300	4,356	2,675	361	5,641	3,481	433	7,086	4,479	506	8,704	5,506	586	10,488	6,670
	30	183	1,446	876	232	2,214	1,349	287	3,150	1,910	347	4,253	2,631	412	5,523	3,431	494	6,953	4,421	577	8,557	5,444	672	10,328	6,603
100	0	0	2,491	1,310	0	3,925	2,050	0	5,729	2,950	0	7,914	4,050	0	10,485	5,300	0	13,454	6,700	0	16,817	8,600	0	20,578	10,300
	2	30	1,975	1,170	44	3,027	1,820	72	4,313	2,550	95	5,834	3,500	120	7,591	4,600	138	9,577	5,800	169	11,803	7,200	204	14,264	8,800
	5	82	1,955	1,159	107	3,002	1,803	136	4,282	2,531	172	5,797	3,475	208	7,548	4,566	245	9,528	5,769	293	11,748	7,162	341	14,204	8,756
	10	108	1,923	1,142	142	2,961	1,775	180	4,231	2,500	223	5,737	3,434	268	7,478	4,509	318	9,447	5,717	374	11,658	7,100	436	14,105	8,683
	15	126	1,892	1,124	163	2,920	1,747	206	4,182	2,469	252	5,678	3,392	304	7,409	4,451	358	9,367	5,665	418	11,569	7,037	487	14,007	8,610
	20	141	1,861	1,107	181	2,880	1,719	226	4,133	2,438	277	5,619	3,351	330	7,341	4,394	387	9,289	5,613	452	11,482	6,975	523	13,910	8,537
	30	170	1,802	1,071	215	2,803	1,663	265	4,037	2,375	319	5,505	3,267	378	7,209	4,279	446	9,136	5,509	514	11,310	6,850	592	13,720	8,391
	50	241	1,688	1,000	292	2,657	1,550	350	3,856	2,250	415	5,289	3,100	486	6,956	4,050	572	8,841	5,300	659	10,979	6,600	752	13,354	8,100

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE 504.2(2)
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Single-wall metal connector

HEIGHT (H) (feet)	LATERAL (L) (feet)	VENT DIAMETER—(D) Inches																										
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10			12		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																										
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	0	38	77	45	59	151	85	85	249	140	126	373	204	165	522	284	211	695	369	267	894	469	371	1,118	569	537	1.639	849
	2	39	51	36	60	96	66	85	156	104	123	231	156	159	320	213	201	423	284	251	541	368	347	673	453	498	979	648
	4	NA	NA	33	74	92	63	102	152	102	146	225	152	187	313	208	237	416	277	295	533	360	409	664	443	584	971	638
	6	NA	NA	31	83	89	60	114	147	99	163	220	148	207	307	203	263	409	271	327	526	352	449	656	433	638	962	627
8	0	37	83	50	58	164	93	83	273	154	123	412	234	161	580	319	206	777	414	258	1,002	536	360	1,257	658	521	1,852	967
	2	39	56	39	59	108	75	83	176	119	121	261	179	155	363	246	197	482	321	246	617	417	339	768	513	486	1,120	743
	5	NA	NA	37	77	102	69	107	168	114	151	252	171	193	352	235	245	470	311	305	604	404	418	754	500	598	1,104	730
	8	NA	NA	33	90	95	64	122	161	107	175	243	163	223	342	225	280	458	300	344	591	392	470	740	486	665	1.089	715
10	0	37	87	53	57	174	99	82	293	165	120	444	254	158	628	344	202	844	449	253	1,093	584	351	1,373	718	507	2,031	1,057
	2	39	61	41	59	117	80	82	193	128	119	287	194	153	400	272	193	531	354	242	681	456	332	849	559	475	1,242	848
	5	52	56	39	76	111	76	105	185	122	148	277	186	190	388	261	241	518	344	299	667	443	409	834	544	584	1,224	825
	10	NA	NA	34	97	100	68	132	171	112	188	261	171	237	369	241	296	497	325	363	643	423	492	808	520	688	1,194	788
15	0	36	93	57	56	190	111	80	325	186	116	499	283	153	713	388	195	966	523	244	1.259	681	336	1.591	838	488	2,374	1,237
	2	38	69	47	57	136	93	80	225	149	115	337	224	148	473	314	187	631	413	232	812	543	319	1,015	673	457	1.491	983
	5	51	63	44	75	128	86	102	216	140	144	326	217	182	459	298	231	616	400	287	795	526	392	997	657	562	1,469	963
	10	NA	NA	39	95	116	79	128	201	131	182	308	203	228	438	284	284	592	381	349	768	501	470	966	628	664	1,433	928
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	72	158	186	124	220	290	192	272	418	269	334	568	367	404	742	484	540	937	601	750	1,399	894
20	0	35	96	60	54	200	118	78	346	201	114	537	306	149	772	428	190	1,053	573	238	1,379	750	326	1,751	927	473	2,631	1,346
	2	37	74	50	56	148	99	78	248	165	113	375	248	144	528	344	182	708	468	227	914	611	309	1,146	754	443	1.689	1.098
	5	50	68	47	73	140	94	100	239	158	141	363	239	178	514	334	224	692	457	279	896	596	381	1,126	734	547	1,665	1,074
	10	NA	NA	41	93	129	86	125	223	146	177	344	224	222	491	316	277	666	437	339	866	570	457	1,092	702	646	1,626	1,037
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	80	155	208	136	216	325	210	264	469	301	325	640	419	393	838	549	526	1,060	677	730	1,587	1,005
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	186	192	126	254	306	196	309	448	285	374	616	400	448	810	526	592	1,028	651	808	1,550	973

(continued)

TABLE 504.2(2)-continued TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Single-wall metal connector

HEIGHT (H) (feet)	LATERAL (L) (feet)	VENT DIAMETER—(D) Inches: 3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10			12		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																										
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
30	0	34	99	63	53	211	127	76	372	219	110	584	334	144	849	472	184	1,168	647	229	1,542	852	312	1.971	1,056	454	2,996	1,545
	2	37	80	56	55	164	111	76	281	183	109	429	279	139	610	392	175	823	533	219	1,069	698	296	1,346	863	424	1,999	1,308
	5	49	74	52	72	157	106	98	271	173	136	417	271	171	595	382	215	806	521	269	1,049	684	366	1,324	846	524	1,971	1,283
	10	NA	NA	NA	91	144	98	122	255	168	171	397	257	213	570	367	265	777	501	327	1,017	662	440	1,287	821	620	1,927	1,234
	15	NA	NA	NA	115	131	NA	151	239	157	208	377	242	255	547	349	312	750	481	379	985	638	507	1,251	794	702	1,884	1,205
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	181	223	NA	246	357	228	298	524	333	360	723	461	433	955	615	570	1,216	768	780	1,841	1,166
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	389	477	305	461	670	426	541	895	574	704	1,147	720	937	1.759	1,101
50	0	33	99	66	51	213	133	73	394	230	105	629	361	138	928	515	176	1,292	704	220	1,724	948	295	2,223	1,189	428	3,432	1,818
	2	36	84	61	53	181	121	73	318	205	104	495	312	133	712	443	168	971	613	209	1,273	811	280	1,615	1,007	401	2,426	1,509
	5	48	80	NA	70	174	117	94	308	198	131	482	305	164	696	435	204	953	602	257	1,252	795	347	1,591	991	496	2,396	1,490
	10	NA	NA	NA	89	160	NA	118	292	186	162	461	292	203	671	420	253	923	583	313	1,217	765	418	1,551	963	589	2,347	1,455
	15	NA	NA	NA	112	148	NA	145	275	174	199	441	280	244	646	405	299	894	562	363	1,183	736	481	1,512	934	668	2,299	1,421
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	176	257	NA	236	420	267	285	622	389	345	866	543	415	1,150	708	544	1,473	906	741	2,251	1,387
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	315	376	NA	373	573	NA	442	809	502	521	1,086	649	674	1,399	848	892	2,159	1,318
100	0	NA	NA	NA	49	214	NA	69	403	NA	100	659	395	131	991	555	166	1,404	765	207	1,900	1,033	273	2,479	1,300	395	3,912	2,042
	2	NA	NA	NA	51	192	NA	70	351	NA	98	563	373	125	828	508	158	1,152	698	196	1,532	933	259	1,970	1,168	371	3,021	1,817
	5	NA	NA	NA	67	186	NA	90	342	NA	125	551	366	156	813	501	194	1,134	688	240	1,511	921	322	1,945	1,153	460	2,990	1,796
	10	NA	NA	NA	85	175	NA	113	324	NA	153	532	354	191	789	486	238	1,104	672	293	1,477	902	389	1.905	1,133	547	2,938	1,763
	15	NA	NA	NA	132	162	NA	138	310	NA	188	511	343	230	764	473	281	1,075	656	342	1,443	884	447	1,865	1,110	618	2,888	1,730
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	168	295	NA	224	487	NA	270	739	458	325	1,046	639	391	1,410	864	507	1,825	1,087	690	2,838	1,696
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	231	264	NA	301	448	NA	355	685	NA	418	988	NA	491	1,343	824	631	1,747	1,041	834	2,739	1,627
	50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	540	584	NA	617	866	NA	711	1,205	NA	895	1,591	NA	1,138	2,547	1,489

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE 504.2(3)
MASONRY CHIMNEY

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Type B double-wall connector

HEIGHT (H) (feet)	LATERAL (L) (feet)	TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL CONNECTOR DIAMETER—(D) Inches to be used with chimney areas within the size limits at bottom																										
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10			12		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																										
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	NA	NA	86	NA	NA	130	NA	NA	180	NA	NA	247	NA	NA	320	NA	NA	401	NA	NA	581
	5	NA	NA	25	NA	NA	49	NA	NA	82	NA	NA	117	NA	NA	165	NA	NA	231	NA	NA	298	NA	NA	376	NA	NA	561
8	2	NA	NA	29	NA	NA	55	NA	NA	93	NA	NA	145	NA	NA	198	NA	NA	266	84	590	350	100	728	446	139	1,024	651
	5	NA	NA	26	NA	NA	52	NA	NA	88	NA	NA	134	NA	NA	183	NA	NA	247	NA	NA	328	149	711	423	201	1,007	640
	8	NA	NA	24	NA	NA	48	NA	NA	83	NA	NA	127	NA	NA	175	NA	NA	239	NA	NA	318	173	695	410	231	990	623
10	2	NA	NA	31	NA	NA	61	NA	NA	103	NA	NA	162	NA	NA	221	68	519	298	82	655	388	98	810	491	136	1,144	724
	5	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	57	NA	NA	96	NA	NA	148	NA	NA	204	NA	NA	277	124	638	365	146	791	466	196	1,124	712
	10	NA	NA	25	NA	NA	50	NA	NA	87	NA	NA	139	NA	NA	191	NA	NA	263	155	610	347	182	762	444	240	1,093	668
15	2	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	67	NA	NA	114	NA	NA	179	53	475	250	64	613	336	77	779	441	92	968	562	127	1,376	841
	5	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	62	NA	NA	107	NA	NA	164	NA	NA	231	99	594	313	118	759	416	139	946	533	186	1,352	828
	10	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	55	NA	NA	97	NA	NA	153	NA	NA	216	126	565	296	148	727	394	173	912	567	229	1,315	777
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	48	NA	NA	89	NA	NA	141	NA	NA	201	NA	NA	281	171	698	375	198	880	485	259	1,280	742
20	2	NA	NA	38	NA	NA	74	NA	NA	124	NA	NA	201	51	522	274	61	678	375	73	867	491	87	1,083	627	121	1,548	953
	5	NA	NA	36	NA	NA	68	NA	NA	116	NA	NA	184	80	503	254	95	658	350	113	845	463	133	1,059	597	179	1,523	933
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	60	NA	NA	107	NA	NA	172	NA	NA	237	122	627	332	143	811	440	167	1,022	566	221	1,482	879
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	97	NA	NA	159	NA	NA	220	NA	NA	314	165	780	418	191	987	541	251	1,443	840
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	83	NA	NA	148	NA	NA	206	NA	NA	296	186	750	397	214	955	513	277	1,406	807

(continued)

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Type B double-wall connector

TABLE 504.2(3)—continued
MASONRY CHIMNEY

HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	LATERAL (*L*) (feet)	TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL CONNECTOR DIAMETER —(*D*) Inches to be used with chimney areas within the size limits at bottom																										
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10			12		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																										
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
30	2	NA	NA	41	NA	NA	82	NA	NA	137	NA	NA	216	47	581	303	57	762	421	68	985	558	81	1,240	717	111	1,793	1,112
	5	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	76	NA	NA	128	NA	NA	198	75	561	281	90	741	393	106	962	526	125	1,216	683	169	1,766	1,094
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	67	NA	NA	115	NA	NA	184	NA	NA	263	115	709	373	135	927	500	158	1,176	648	210	1,721	1,025
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	107	NA	NA	171	NA	NA	243	NA	NA	353	156	893	476	181	1,139	621	239	1,679	981
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	91	NA	NA	159	NA	NA	227	NA	NA	332	176	860	450	203	1,103	592	264	1,638	940
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	188	NA	NA	288	NA	NA	416	249	1,035	555	318	1,560	877
50	2	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	92	NA	NA	161	NA	NA	251	NA	NA	351	51	840	477	61	1,106	633	72	1,413	812	99	2,080	1,243
	5	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	151	NA	NA	230	NA	NA	323	83	819	445	98	1,083	596	116	1,387	774	155	2,052	1,225
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	138	NA	NA	215	NA	NA	304	NA	NA	424	126	1,047	567	147	1,347	733	195	2,006	1,147
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	127	NA	NA	199	NA	NA	282	NA	NA	400	146	1,010	539	170	1,307	702	222	1,961	1,099
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	185	NA	NA	264	NA	NA	376	165	977	511	190	1,269	669	246	1,916	1,050
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	327	NA	NA	468	233	1,196	623	295	1,832	984
Minimum Internal Area of Chimney (square inches)		12			19			28			38			50			63			78			95			132		
Maximum Internal Area of Chimney (square inches)		Four times the listed appliance categorized vent area, flue collar area or draft hood outlet area.																										

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm2, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

M
N

TABLE 504.2(4)
MASONRY CHIMNEY

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Single-wall metal connector

HEIGHT (H) (feet)	LATERAL (L) (feet)	SINGLE-WALL METAL CONNECTOR DIAMETER—(D) Inches to be used with chimney areas within the size limits at bottom																										
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10			12		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																										
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	NA	NA	86	NA	NA	130	NA	NA	180	NA	NA	247	NA	NA	319	NA	NA	400	NA	NA	580
	5	NA	NA	25	NA	NA	48	NA	NA	81	NA	NA	116	NA	NA	164	NA	NA	230	NA	NA	297	NA	NA	375	NA	NA	560
8	2	NA	NA	29	NA	NA	55	NA	NA	93	NA	NA	145	NA	NA	197	NA	NA	265	NA	NA	349	382	725	445	549	1,021	650
	5	NA	NA	26	NA	NA	51	NA	NA	87	NA	NA	133	NA	NA	182	NA	NA	246	NA	NA	327	NA	NA	422	673	1,003	638
	8	NA	NA	23	NA	NA	47	NA	NA	82	NA	NA	126	NA	NA	174	NA	NA	237	NA	NA	317	NA	NA	408	747	985	621
10	2	NA	NA	31	NA	NA	61	NA	NA	102	NA	NA	161	NA	NA	220	216	518	297	271	654	387	373	808	490	536	1,142	722
	5	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	56	NA	NA	95	NA	NA	147	NA	NA	203	NA	NA	276	334	635	364	459	789	465	657	1,121	710
	10	NA	NA	24	NA	NA	49	NA	NA	86	NA	NA	137	NA	NA	189	NA	NA	261	NA	NA	345	547	758	441	771	1,088	665
15	2	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	67	NA	NA	113	NA	NA	178	166	473	249	211	611	335	264	776	440	362	965	560	520	1,373	840
	5	NA	NA	32	NA	NA	61	NA	NA	106	NA	NA	163	NA	NA	230	261	591	312	325	775	414	444	942	531	637	1,348	825
	10	NA	NA	27	NA	NA	54	NA	NA	96	NA	NA	151	NA	NA	214	NA	NA	294	392	722	392	531	907	504	749	1,309	774
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	46	NA	NA	87	NA	NA	138	NA	NA	198	NA	NA	278	452	692	372	606	873	481	841	1,272	738
20	2	NA	NA	38	NA	NA	73	NA	NA	123	NA	NA	200	163	520	273	206	675	374	258	864	490	252	1,079	625	508	1,544	950
	5	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	67	NA	NA	115	NA	NA	183	80	NA	252	255	655	348	317	842	461	433	1,055	594	623	1,518	930
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	59	NA	NA	105	NA	NA	170	NA	NA	235	312	622	330	382	806	437	517	1,016	562	733	1,475	875
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	95	NA	NA	156	NA	NA	217	NA	NA	311	442	773	414	591	979	539	823	1,434	835
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	80	NA	NA	144	NA	NA	202	NA	NA	292	NA	NA	392	663	944	510	911	1,394	800

(continued)

TABLE 504.2(4)—continued
MASONRY CHIMNEY

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Single-wall metal connector

HEIGHT (H) (feet)	LATERAL (L) (feet)	SINGLE-WALL METAL CONNECTOR DIAMETER—(D) Inches to be used with chimney areas within the size limits at bottom																										
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10			12		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																										
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
30	2	NA	NA	41	NA	NA	81	NA	NA	136	NA	NA	215	158	578	302	200	759	420	249	982	556	340	1,237	715	489	1,789	1,110
	5	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	75	NA	NA	127	NA	NA	196	NA	NA	279	245	737	391	306	958	524	417	1,210	680	600	1,760	1,090
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	66	NA	NA	113	NA	NA	182	NA	NA	260	300	703	370	370	920	496	500	1,168	644	708	1,713	1,020
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	105	NA	NA	168	NA	NA	240	NA	NA	349	428	884	471	572	1,128	615	798	1,668	975
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	88	NA	NA	155	NA	NA	223	NA	NA	327	NA	NA	445	643	1,089	585	883	1,624	932
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	182	NA	NA	281	NA	NA	408	NA	NA	544	1,055	1,539	865
50	2	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	91	NA	NA	160	NA	NA	250	NA	NA	350	191	837	475	238	1,103	631	323	1,408	810	463	2,076	1,240
	5	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	149	NA	NA	228	NA	NA	321	NA	NA	442	293	1,078	593	398	1,381	770	571	2,044	1,220
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	136	NA	NA	212	NA	NA	301	NA	NA	420	355	1,038	562	447	1,337	728	674	1,994	1,140
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	124	NA	NA	195	NA	NA	278	NA	NA	395	NA	NA	533	546	1,294	695	761	1,945	1,090
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	180	NA	NA	258	NA	NA	370	NA	NA	504	616	1,251	660	844	1,898	1,040
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	48	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	318	NA	NA	458	NA	NA	610	1,009	1,805	970
Minimum Internal Area of Chimney (square inches)		12			19			28			38			50			63			78			95			132		
Maximum Internal Area of Chimney (square inches)		Four times the listed appliance categorized vent area, flue collar area or draft hood outlet area.																										

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm2, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

M
N

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Draft hood equipped
Appliance Vent Connection	Connected directly to pipe or vent

TABLE 504.2(5)
SINGLE-WALL METAL PIPE OR TYPE B ASBESTOS CEMENT VENT

HEIGHT *(H)* (feet)	LATERAL *(L)* (feet)	VENT DIAMETER—(D) inches							
		3	4	5	6	7	8	10	12
		MAXIMUM APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H							
6	0	39	70	116	170	232	312	500	750
	2	31	55	94	141	194	260	415	620
	5	28	51	88	128	177	242	390	600
8	0	42	76	126	185	252	340	542	815
	2	32	61	102	154	210	284	451	680
	5	29	56	95	141	194	264	430	648
	10	24	49	86	131	180	250	406	625
10	0	45	84	138	202	279	372	606	912
	2	35	67	111	168	233	311	505	760
	5	32	61	104	153	215	289	480	724
	10	27	54	94	143	200	274	455	700
	15	NA	46	84	130	186	258	432	666
15	0	49	91	151	223	312	420	684	1,040
	2	39	72	122	186	260	350	570	865
	5	35	67	110	170	240	325	540	825
	10	30	58	103	158	223	308	514	795
	15	NA	50	93	144	207	291	488	760
	20	NA	NA	82	132	195	273	466	726
20	0	53	101	163	252	342	470	770	1,190
	2	42	80	136	210	286	392	641	990
	5	38	74	123	192	264	364	610	945
	10	32	65	115	178	246	345	571	910
	15	NA	55	104	163	228	326	550	870
	20	NA	NA	91	149	214	306	525	832
30	0	56	108	183	276	384	529	878	1,370
	2	44	84	148	230	320	441	730	1,140
	5	NA	78	137	210	296	410	694	1,080
	10	NA	68	125	196	274	388	656	1,050
	15	NA	NA	113	177	258	366	625	1,000
	20	NA	NA	99	163	240	344	596	960
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	192	295	540	890
50	0	NA	120	210	310	443	590	980	1,550
	2	NA	95	171	260	370	492	820	1,290
	5	NA	NA	159	234	342	474	780	1,230
	10	NA	NA	146	221	318	456	730	1,190
	15	NA	NA	NA	200	292	407	705	1,130
	20	NA	NA	NA	185	276	384	670	1,080
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	222	330	605	1,010

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	NAT
Appliance Vent Connection	Type B double-wall connector

TABLE 504.2(6)
EXTERIOR MASONRY CHIMNEY

MINIMUM ALLOWABLE INPUT RATING OF SPACE-HEATING APPLIANCE IN THOUSANDS OF BTU PER HOUR									
VENT HEIGHT (feet)	Internal area of chimney (square inches)								
	12	19		28	38	50	63	78	113
37°F or Greater	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: 37°F or Greater								
6	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0
8	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0
10	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0
15	NA	0		0	0	0	0	0	0
20	NA	NA		123	190	249	184	0	0
30	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	393	334	0
50	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	579
27 to 36°F	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: 27 to 36°F								
6	0	0		68	116	156	180	212	266
8	0	0		82	127	167	187	214	263
10	0	51		97	141	183	201	225	265
15	NA	NA		NA	NA	233	253	274	305
20	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	307	330	362
30	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	419	445	485
50	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	763
17 to 26°F	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: 17 to 26°F								
6	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	215	259	349
8	NA	NA		NA	NA	197	226	264	352
10	NA	NA		NA	NA	214	245	278	358
15	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	296	331	398
20	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	352	387	457
30	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	507	581
50	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
5 to 16°F	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: 5 to 16°F								
6	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	416
8	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	312	423
10	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	289	331	430
15	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	393	485
20	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	450	547
30	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	682
50	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	972
-10 to 4°F	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: -10 to 4°F								
6	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	484
8	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	494
10	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	513
15	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	586
20	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	650
30	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	805
50	NA	NA		NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1,003
-11°F or Lower	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: -11°F or Lower								
Not recommended for any vent configurations									

For SI: °C = (°F - 32)/1.8, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

Note: See Figure B-19 in Appendix B for a map showing local 99 percent winter design temperatures in the United States.

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Type B double-wall connector

TABLE 504.3(1)
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT

VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT *(H)* (feet)	CONNECTOR RISE *(R)* (feet)	TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT AND CONNECTOR DIAMETER—*(D)* inches																							
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	1	22	37	26	35	66	46	46	106	72	58	164	104	77	225	142	92	296	185	109	376	237	128	466	289
	2	23	41	31	37	75	55	48	121	86	60	183	124	79	253	168	95	333	220	112	424	282	131	526	345
	3	24	44	35	38	81	62	49	132	96	62	199	139	82	275	189	97	363	248	114	463	317	134	575	386
8	1	22	40	27	35	72	48	49	114	76	64	176	109	84	243	148	100	320	194	118	408	248	138	507	303
	2	23	44	32	36	80	57	51	128	90	66	195	129	86	269	175	103	356	230	121	454	294	141	564	358
	3	24	47	36	37	87	64	53	139	101	67	210	145	88	290	198	105	384	258	123	492	330	143	612	402
10	1	22	43	28	34	78	50	49	123	78	65	189	113	89	257	154	106	341	200	125	436	257	146	542	314
	2	23	47	33	36	86	59	51	136	93	67	206	134	91	282	182	109	374	238	128	479	305	149	596	372
	3	24	50	37	37	92	67	52	146	104	69	220	150	94	303	205	111	402	268	131	515	342	152	642	417
15	1	21	50	30	33	89	53	47	142	83	64	220	120	88	298	163	110	389	214	134	493	273	162	609	333
	2	22	53	35	35	96	63	49	153	99	66	235	142	91	320	193	112	419	253	137	532	323	165	658	394
	3	24	55	40	36	102	71	51	163	111	68	248	160	93	339	218	115	445	286	140	565	365	167	700	444
20	1	21	54	31	33	99	56	46	157	87	62	246	125	86	334	171	107	436	224	131	552	285	158	681	347
	2	22	57	37	34	105	66	48	167	104	64	259	149	89	354	202	110	463	265	134	587	339	161	725	414
	3	23	60	42	35	110	74	50	176	116	66	271	168	91	371	228	113	486	300	137	618	383	164	764	466
30	1	20	62	33	31	113	59	45	181	93	60	288	134	83	391	182	103	512	238	125	649	305	151	802	372
	2	21	64	39	33	118	70	47	190	110	62	299	158	85	408	215	105	535	282	129	679	360	155	840	439
	3	22	66	44	34	123	79	48	198	124	64	309	178	88	423	242	108	555	317	132	706	405	158	874	494
50	1	19	71	36	30	133	64	43	216	101	57	349	145	78	477	197	97	627	257	120	797	330	144	984	403
	2	21	73	43	32	137	76	45	223	119	59	358	172	81	490	234	100	645	306	123	820	392	148	1,014	478
	3	22	75	48	33	141	86	46	229	134	61	366	194	83	502	263	103	661	343	126	842	441	151	1,043	538
100	1	18	82	37	28	158	66	40	262	104	53	442	150	73	611	204	91	810	266	112	1,038	341	135	1,285	417
	2	19	83	44	30	161	79	42	267	123	55	447	178	75	619	242	94	822	316	115	1,054	405	139	1,306	494
	3	20	84	50	31	163	89	44	272	138	57	452	109	78	627	272	97	834	355	118	1,069	455	142	1,327	555

COMMON VENT CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT *(H)* (feet)	4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
	COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																				
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT
6	92	81	65	140	116	103	204	161	147	309	248	200	404	314	260	547	434	335	672	520	410
8	101	90	73	155	129	114	224	178	163	339	275	223	444	348	290	602	480	378	740	577	465
10	110	97	79	169	141	124	243	194	178	367	299	242	477	377	315	649	522	405	800	627	495
15	125	112	91	195	164	144	283	228	206	427	352	280	556	444	365	753	612	465	924	733	565
20	136	123	102	215	183	160	314	255	229	475	394	310	621	499	405	842	688	523	1,035	826	640
30	152	138	118	244	210	185	361	297	266	547	459	360	720	585	470	979	808	605	1,209	975	740
50	167	153	134	279	244	214	421	353	310	641	547	423	854	706	550	1,164	977	705	1,451	1,188	860
100	175	163	NA	311	277	NA	489	421	NA	751	658	479	1,025	873	625	1,408	1,215	800	1,784	1,502	975

(continued)

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Type B double-wall connector

TABLE 504.3(1)-continued
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT

VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT *(H)* (feet)	CONNECTOR RISE *(R)* (feet)	TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT AND DIAMETER—*(D)* inches																				
		12			14			16			18			20			22			24		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																				
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	2	174	764	496	223	1,046	653	281	1,371	853	346	1,772	1,080	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	180	897	616	230	1,231	827	287	1,617	1,081	352	2,069	1,370	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
8	2	186	822	516	238	1,126	696	298	1,478	910	365	1,920	1,150	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	192	952	644	244	1,307	884	305	1,719	1,150	372	2,211	1,460	471	2,737	1,800	560	3,319	2,180	662	3,957	2,590
	6	198	1,050	772	252	1,445	1,072	313	1,902	1,390	380	2,434	1,770	478	3,018	2,180	568	3,665	2,640	669	4,373	3,130
10	2	196	870	536	249	1,195	730	311	1,570	955	379	2,049	1,205	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	201	997	664	256	1,371	924	318	1,804	1,205	387	2,332	1,535	486	2,887	1,890	581	3,502	2,280	686	4,175	2,710
	6	207	1,095	792	263	1,509	1,118	325	1,989	1,455	395	2,556	1,865	494	3,169	2,290	589	3,849	2,760	694	4,593	3,270
15	2	214	967	568	272	1,334	790	336	1,760	1,030	408	2,317	1,305	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	221	1,085	712	279	1,499	1,006	344	1,978	1,320	416	2,579	1,665	523	3,197	2,060	624	3,881	2,490	734	4,631	2,960
	6	228	1,181	856	286	1,632	1,222	351	2,157	1,610	424	2,796	2,025	533	3,470	2,510	634	4,216	3,030	743	5,035	3,600
20	2	223	1,051	596	291	1,443	840	357	1,911	1,095	430	2,533	1,385	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	230	1,162	748	298	1,597	1,064	365	2,116	1,395	438	2,778	1,765	554	3,447	2,180	661	4,190	2,630	772	5,005	3,130
	6	237	1,253	900	307	1,726	1,288	373	2,287	1,695	450	2,984	2,145	567	3,708	2,650	671	4,511	3,190	785	5,392	3,790
30	2	216	1,217	632	286	1,664	910	367	2,183	1,190	461	2,891	1,540	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	223	1,316	792	294	1,802	1,160	376	2,366	1,510	474	3,110	1,920	619	3,840	2,365	728	4,861	2,860	847	5,606	3,410
	6	231	1,400	952	303	1,920	1,410	384	2,524	1,830	485	3,299	2,340	632	4,080	2,875	741	4,976	3,480	860	5,961	4,150
50	2	206	1,479	689	273	2,023	1,007	350	2,659	1,315	435	3,548	1,665	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	213	1,561	860	281	2,139	1,291	359	2,814	1,685	447	3,730	2,135	580	4,601	2,633	709	5,569	3,185	851	6,633	3,790
	6	221	1,631	1,031	290	2,242	1,575	369	2,951	2,055	461	3,893	2,605	594	4,808	3,208	724	5,826	3,885	867	6,943	4,620
100	2	192	1,923	712	254	2,644	1,050	326	3,490	1,370	402	4,707	1,740	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	200	1,984	888	263	2,731	1,346	336	3,606	1,760	414	4,842	2,220	523	5,982	2,750	639	7,254	3,330	769	8,650	3,950
	6	208	2,035	1,064	272	2,811	1,642	346	3,714	2,150	426	4,968	2,700	539	6,143	3,350	654	7,453	4,070	786	8,892	4,810

COMMON VENT CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT *(H)* (feet)	TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL COMMON VENT DIAMETER—*(D)* inches																				
	12			14			16			18			20			22			24		
	COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																				
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT
6	900	696	588	1,284	990	815	1,735	1,336	1,065	2,253	1,732	1,345	2,838	2,180	1,660	3,488	2,677	1,970	4,206	3,226	2,390
8	994	773	652	1,423	1,103	912	1,927	1,491	1,190	2,507	1,936	1,510	3,162	2,439	1,860	3,890	2,998	2,200	4,695	3,616	2,680
10	1,076	841	712	1,542	1,200	995	2,093	1,625	1,300	2,727	2,113	1645	3,444	2,665	2,030	4,241	3,278	2,400	5,123	3,957	2,920
15	1,247	986	825	1,794	1,410	1,158	2,440	1,910	1,510	3,184	2,484	1,910	4,026	3,133	2,360	4,971	3,862	2,790	6,016	4,670	3,400
20	1,405	1,116	916	2,006	1,588	1,290	2,722	2,147	1,690	3,561	2,798	2,140	4,548	3,552	2,640	5,573	4,352	3,120	6,749	5,261	3,800
30	1,658	1,327	1,025	2,373	1,892	1,525	3,220	2,558	1,990	4,197	3,326	2,520	5,303	4,193	3,110	6,539	5,157	3,680	7,940	6,247	4,480
50	2,024	1,640	1,280	2,911	2,347	1,863	3,964	3,183	2,430	5,184	4,149	3,075	6,567	5,240	3,800	8,116	6,458	4,500	9,837	7,813	5,475
100	2,569	2,131	1,670	3,732	3,076	2,450	5,125	4,202	3,200	6,749	5,509	4,050	8,597	6,986	5,000	10,681	8,648	5,920	13,004	10,499	7,200

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Single-wall metal connector

TABLE 504.3(2)
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT

VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT *(H)* (feet)	CONNECTOR RISE *(R)* (feet)	SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTOR DIAMETER—*(D)* inches																							
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	1	NA	NA	26	NA	NA	46	NA	NA	71	NA	NA	102	207	223	140	262	293	183	325	373	234	447	463	286
	2	NA	NA	31	NA	NA	55	NA	NA	85	168	182	123	215	251	167	271	331	219	334	422	281	458	524	344
	3	NA	NA	34	NA	NA	62	121	131	95	175	198	138	222	273	188	279	361	247	344	462	316	468	574	385
8	1	NA	NA	27	NA	NA	48	NA	NA	75	NA	NA	106	226	240	145	285	316	191	352	403	244	481	502	299
	2	NA	NA	32	NA	NA	57	125	126	89	184	193	127	234	266	173	293	353	228	360	450	292	492	560	355
	3	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	64	130	138	100	191	208	144	241	287	197	302	381	256	370	489	328	501	609	400
10	1	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	50	119	121	77	182	186	110	240	253	150	302	335	196	372	429	252	506	534	308
	2	NA	NA	33	84	85	59	124	134	91	189	203	132	248	278	183	311	369	235	381	473	302	517	589	368
	3	NA	NA	36	89	91	67	129	144	102	197	217	148	257	299	203	320	398	265	391	511	339	528	637	413
15	1	NA	NA	29	79	87	52	116	138	81	177	214	116	238	291	158	312	380	208	397	482	266	556	596	324
	2	NA	NA	34	83	94	62	121	150	97	185	230	138	246	314	189	321	411	248	407	522	317	568	646	387
	3	NA	NA	39	87	100	70	127	160	109	193	243	157	255	333	215	331	438	281	418	557	360	579	690	437
20	1	49	56	30	78	97	54	115	152	84	175	238	120	233	325	165	306	425	217	390	538	276	546	664	336
	2	52	59	36	82	103	64	120	163	101	182	252	144	243	346	197	317	453	259	400	574	331	558	709	403
	3	55	62	40	87	107	72	125	172	113	190	264	164	252	363	223	326	476	294	412	607	375	570	750	457
30	1	47	60	31	77	110	57	112	175	89	169	278	129	226	380	175	296	497	230	378	630	294	528	779	358
	2	51	62	37	81	115	67	117	185	106	177	290	152	236	397	208	307	521	274	389	662	349	541	819	425
	3	54	64	42	85	119	76	122	193	120	185	300	172	244	412	235	316	542	309	400	690	394	555	855	482
50	1	46	69	34	75	128	60	109	207	96	162	336	137	217	460	188	284	604	245	364	768	314	507	951	384
	2	49	71	40	79	132	72	114	215	113	170	345	164	226	473	223	294	623	293	376	793	375	520	983	458
	3	52	72	45	83	136	82	119	221	123	178	353	186	235	486	252	304	640	331	387	816	423	535	1,013	518
100	1	45	79	34	71	150	61	104	249	98	153	424	140	205	585	192	269	774	249	345	993	321	476	1,236	393
	2	48	80	41	75	153	73	110	255	115	160	428	167	212	593	228	279	788	299	358	1,011	383	490	1,259	469
	3	51	81	46	79	157	85	114	260	129	168	433	190	222	603	256	289	801	339	368	1,027	431	506	1,280	527

COMMON VENT CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT *(H)* (feet)	TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL COMMON VENT DIAMETER—*(D)* inches																				
	4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
	COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																				
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT
6	NA	78	64	NA	113	99	200	158	144	304	244	196	398	310	257	541	429	332	665	515	407
8	NA	87	71	NA	126	111	218	173	159	331	269	218	436	342	285	592	473	373	730	569	460
10	NA	94	76	163	137	120	237	189	174	357	292	236	467	369	309	638	512	398	787	617	487
15	121	108	88	189	159	140	275	221	200	416	343	274	544	434	357	738	599	456	905	718	553
20	131	118	98	208	177	156	305	247	223	463	383	302	606	487	395	824	673	512	1,013	808	626
30	145	132	113	236	202	180	350	286	257	533	446	349	703	570	459	958	790	593	1,183	952	723
50	159	145	128	268	233	208	406	337	296	622	529	410	833	686	535	1,139	954	689	1,418	1,157	838
100	166	153	NA	297	263	NA	469	398	NA	726	633	464	999	846	606	1,378	1,185	780	1,741	1,459	948

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Type B double-wall connector

TABLE 504.3(3)
MASONRY CHIMNEY

VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT *(H)* (feet)	CONNECTOR RISE *(R)* (feet)	TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT CONNECTOR DIAMETER—*(D)* inches																							
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	1	24	33	21	39	62	40	52	106	67	65	194	101	87	274	141	104	370	201	124	479	253	145	599	319
	2	26	43	28	41	79	52	53	133	85	67	230	124	89	324	173	107	436	232	127	562	300	148	694	378
	3	27	49	34	42	92	61	55	155	97	69	262	143	91	369	203	109	491	270	129	633	349	151	795	439
8	1	24	39	22	39	72	41	55	117	69	71	213	105	94	304	148	113	414	210	134	539	267	156	682	335
	2	26	47	29	40	87	53	57	140	86	73	246	127	97	350	179	116	473	240	137	615	311	160	776	394
	3	27	52	34	42	97	62	59	159	98	75	269	145	99	383	206	119	517	276	139	672	358	163	848	452
10	1	24	42	22	38	80	42	55	130	71	74	232	108	101	324	153	120	444	216	142	582	277	165	739	348
	2	26	50	29	40	93	54	57	153	87	76	261	129	103	366	184	123	498	247	145	652	321	168	825	407
	3	27	55	35	41	105	63	58	170	100	78	284	148	106	397	209	126	540	281	147	705	366	171	893	463
15	1	24	48	23	38	93	44	54	154	74	72	277	114	100	384	164	125	511	229	153	658	297	184	824	375
	2	25	55	31	39	105	55	56	174	89	74	299	134	103	419	192	128	558	260	156	718	339	187	900	432
	3	26	59	35	41	115	64	57	189	102	76	319	153	105	448	215	131	597	292	159	760	382	190	960	486
20	1	24	52	24	37	102	46	53	172	77	71	313	119	98	437	173	123	584	239	150	752	312	180	943	397
	2	25	58	31	39	114	56	55	190	91	73	335	138	101	467	199	126	625	270	153	805	354	184	1,011	452
	3	26	63	35	40	123	65	57	204	104	75	353	157	104	493	222	129	661	301	156	851	396	187	1,067	505
30	1	24	54	25	37	111	48	52	192	82	69	357	127	96	504	187	119	680	255	145	883	337	175	1,115	432
	2	25	60	32	38	122	58	54	208	95	72	376	145	99	531	209	122	715	287	149	928	378	179	1,171	484
	3	26	64	36	40	131	66	56	221	107	74	392	163	101	554	233	125	746	317	152	968	418	182	1,220	535
50	1	23	51	25	36	116	51	51	209	89	67	405	143	92	582	213	115	798	294	140	1,049	392	168	1,334	506
	2	24	59	32	37	127	61	53	225	102	70	421	161	95	604	235	118	827	326	143	1,085	433	172	1,379	558
	3	26	64	36	39	135	69	55	237	115	72	435	80	98	624	260	121	854	357	147	1,118	474	176	1,421	611
100	1	23	46	24	35	108	50	49	208	92	65	428	155	88	640	237	109	907	334	134	1,222	454	161	1,589	596
	2	24	53	31	37	120	60	51	224	105	67	444	174	92	660	260	113	933	368	138	1,253	497	165	1,626	651
	3	25	59	35	38	130	68	53	237	118	69	458	193	94	679	285	116	956	399	141	1,282	540	169	1,661	705

COMMON VENT CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT *(H)* (feet)	MINIMUM INTERNAL AREA OF MASONRY CHIMNEY FLUE (square inches)																							
	12			19			28			38			50			63			78			113		
	COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT
6	NA	74	25	NA	119	46	NA	178	71	NA	257	103	NA	351	143	NA	458	188	NA	582	246	1,041	853	NA
8	NA	80	28	NA	130	53	NA	193	82	NA	279	119	NA	384	163	NA	501	218	724	636	278	1,144	937	408
10	NA	84	31	NA	138	56	NA	207	90	NA	299	131	NA	409	177	606	538	236	776	686	302	1,226	1,010	454
15	NA	NA	36	NA	152	67	NA	233	106	NA	334	152	523	467	212	682	611	283	874	781	365	1,374	1,156	546
20	NA	NA	41	NA	NA	75	NA	250	122	NA	368	172	565	508	243	742	668	325	955	858	419	1,513	1,286	648
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	270	137	NA	404	198	615	564	278	816	747	381	1,062	969	496	1,702	1,473	749
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	620	328	879	831	461	1,165	1,089	606	1,905	1,692	922
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	348	NA	NA	499	NA	NA	669	2,053	1,921	1,058

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection	Single-wall metal connector

TABLE 504.3(4)
MASONRY CHIMNEY

VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (H) (feet)	CONNECTOR RISE (R) (feet)	SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTOR DIAMETER—(D) inches																							
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	1	NA	NA	21	NA	NA	39	NA	NA	66	179	191	100	231	271	140	292	366	200	362	474	252	499	594	316
	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	NA	NA	84	186	227	123	239	321	172	301	432	231	373	557	299	509	696	376
	3	NA	NA	34	NA	NA	61	134	153	97	193	258	142	247	365	202	309	491	269	381	634	348	519	793	437
8	1	NA	NA	21	NA	NA	40	NA	NA	68	195	208	103	250	298	146	313	407	207	387	530	263	529	672	331
	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	137	139	85	202	240	125	258	343	177	323	465	238	397	607	309	540	766	391
	3	NA	NA	34	NA	NA	62	143	156	98	210	264	145	266	376	205	332	509	274	407	663	356	551	838	450
10	1	NA	NA	22	NA	NA	41	130	151	70	202	225	106	267	316	151	333	434	213	410	571	273	558	727	343
	2	NA	NA	29	NA	NA	53	136	150	86	210	255	128	276	358	181	343	489	244	420	640	317	569	813	403
	3	NA	NA	34	97	102	62	143	166	99	217	277	147	284	389	207	352	530	279	430	694	363	580	880	459
15	1	NA	NA	23	NA	NA	43	129	151	73	199	271	112	268	376	161	349	502	225	445	646	291	623	808	366
	2	NA	NA	30	92	103	54	135	170	88	207	295	132	277	411	189	359	548	256	456	706	334	634	884	424
	3	NA	NA	34	96	112	63	141	185	101	215	315	151	286	439	213	368	586	289	466	755	378	646	945	479
20	1	NA	NA	23	87	99	45	128	167	76	197	303	117	265	425	169	345	569	235	439	734	306	614	921	347
	2	NA	NA	30	91	111	55	134	185	90	205	325	136	274	455	195	355	610	266	450	787	348	627	986	443
	3	NA	NA	35	96	119	64	140	199	103	213	343	154	282	481	219	365	644	298	461	831	391	639	1,042	496
30	1	NA	NA	24	86	108	47	126	187	80	193	347	124	259	492	183	338	665	250	430	864	330	600	1,089	421
	2	NA	NA	31	91	119	57	132	203	93	201	366	142	269	518	205	348	699	282	442	908	372	613	1,145	473
	3	NA	NA	35	95	127	65	138	216	105	209	381	160	277	540	229	358	729	312	452	946	412	626	1,193	524
50	1	NA	NA	24	85	113	50	124	204	87	188	392	139	252	567	208	328	778	287	417	1,022	383	582	1,302	492
	2	NA	NA	31	89	123	60	130	218	100	196	408	158	262	588	230	339	806	320	429	1,058	425	596	1,346	545
	3	NA	NA	35	94	131	68	136	231	112	205	422	176	271	607	255	349	831	351	440	1,090	466	610	1,386	597
100	1	NA	NA	23	84	104	49	122	200	89	182	410	151	243	617	232	315	875	328	402	1,181	444	560	1,537	580
	2	NA	NA	30	88	115	59	127	215	102	190	425	169	253	636	254	326	899	361	415	1,210	488	575	1,570	634
	3	NA	NA	34	93	124	67	133	228	115	199	438	188	262	654	279	337	921	392	427	1,238	529	589	1,604	687

COMMON VENT CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (H) (feet)	MINIMUM INTERNAL AREA OF MASONRY CHIMNEY FLUE (square inches)																							
	12			19			28			38			50			63			78			113		
	COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT
6	NA	NA	25	NA	118	45	NA	176	71	NA	255	102	NA	348	142	NA	455	187	NA	579	245	NA	846	NA
8	NA	NA	28	NA	128	52	NA	190	81	NA	276	118	NA	380	162	NA	497	217	NA	633	277	1,136	928	405
10	NA	NA	31	NA	136	56	NA	205	89	NA	295	129	NA	405	175	NA	532	234	171	680	300	1,216	1,000	450
15	NA	NA	36	NA	NA	66	NA	230	105	NA	335	150	NA	400	210	677	602	280	866	772	360	1,359	1,139	540
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	74	NA	247	120	NA	362	170	NA	503	240	765	661	321	947	849	415	1,495	1,264	640
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	135	NA	398	195	NA	558	275	808	739	377	1,052	957	490	1,682	1,447	740
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	612	325	NA	821	456	1,152	1,076	600	1,879	1,672	910
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	494	NA	NA	663	2,006	1,885	1,046

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliance Type	Draft hood-equipped
Appliance Vent Connection	Direct to pipe or vent

TABLE 504.3(5)
SINGLE-WALL METAL PIPE OR TYPE ASBESTOS CEMENT VENT

VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY

TOTAL VENT HEIGHT *(H)* (feet)	CONNECTOR RISE *(R)* (feet)	VENT CONNECTOR DIAMETER—*(D)* inches					
		3	4	5	6	7	8
		MAXIMUM APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H					
6-8	1	21	40	68	102	146	205
	2	28	53	86	124	178	235
	3	34	61	98	147	204	275
15	1	23	44	77	117	179	240
	2	30	56	92	134	194	265
	3	35	64	102	155	216	298
30 and up	1	25	49	84	129	190	270
	2	31	58	97	145	211	295
	3	36	68	107	164	232	321

COMMON VENT CAPACITY

TOTAL VENT HEIGHT *(H)* (feet)	COMMON VENT DIAMETER—*(D)* inches						
	4	5	6	7	8	10	12
	COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H						
6	48	78	111	155	205	320	NA
8	55	89	128	175	234	365	505
10	59	95	136	190	250	395	560
15	71	115	168	228	305	480	690
20	80	129	186	260	340	550	790
30	NA	147	215	300	400	650	940
50	NA	NA	NA	360	490	810	1,190

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE 504.3(6a)
EXTERIOR MASONRY CHIMNEY

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliance Type	NAT + NAT
Appliance Vent Connection	Type B double-wall connector

Combined Appliance Maximum Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour

VENT HEIGHT (feet)	INTERNAL AREA OF CHIMNEY (square inches) 12	19	28	38	50	63	78	113
6	25	46	71	103	143	188	246	NA
8	28	53	82	119	163	218	278	408
10	31	56	90	131	177	236	302	454
15	NA	67	106	152	212	283	365	546
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	325	419	648
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	496	749
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	922
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA

TABLE 504.3(6b)
EXTERIOR MASONRY CHIMNEY

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliance Type	NAT + NAT
Appliance Vent Connection	Type B double-wall connector

Minimum Allowable Input Rating of Space-heating Appliance in Thousands of Btu per Hour

VENT HEIGHT (feet)	INTERNAL AREA OF CHIMNEY (square inches) 12	19	28	38	50	63	78	113
37°F or Greater	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: 37°F or Greater							
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NA
8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
15	NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	184	0	0
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	393	334	0
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	579
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
27 to 36°F	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: 27 to 36°F							
6	0	0	68	NA	NA	180	212	NA
8	0	0	82	NA	NA	187	214	263
10	0	51	NA	NA	NA	201	225	265
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	253	274	305
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	307	330	362
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	445	485
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	763
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA

TABLE 504.3(6b)
EXTERIOR MASONRY CHIMNEY-continued

Minimum Allowable Input Rating of Space-heating Appliance in Thousands of Btu per Hour

VENT HEIGHT (feet)	INTERNAL AREA OF CHIMNEY (square inches) 12	19	28	38	50	63	78	113
17 to 26°F	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: 17 to 26°F							
6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
8	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	264	352
10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	278	358
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	331	398
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	387	457
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	581
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	862
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
5 to 16°F	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: 5 to 16°F							
6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
8	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	430
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	485
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	547
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	682
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
4°F or Lower	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: 4°F or Lower							
Not recommended for any vent configurations								

For SI: °C = (°F - 32)/1.8, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

Note: See Figure B-19 in Appendix B for a map showing local 99 percent winter design temperatures in the United States.

TABLE 504.3(7a)
EXTERIOR MASONRY CHIMNEY

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliance Type	FAN + NAT
Appliance Vent Connection	Type B double-wall connector

Combined Appliance Maximum Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour

VENT HEIGHT (feet)	INTERNAL AREA OF CHIMNEY (square inches)							
	12	19	28	38	50	63	78	113
6	74	119	178	257	351	458	582	853
8	80	130	193	279	384	501	636	937
10	84	138	207	299	409	538	686	1,010
15	NA	152	233	334	467	611	781	1,156
20	NA	NA	250	368	508	668	858	1,286
30	NA	NA	NA	404	564	747	969	1,473
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	831	1,089	1,692
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1,921

TABLE 504.3(7b)
EXTERIOR MASONRY CHIMNEY

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliance Type	FAN + NAT
Appliance Vent Connection	Type B double-wall connector

Minimum Allowable Input Rating of Space-heating Appliance in Thousands of Btu per Hour

VENT HEIGHT (feet)	INTERNAL AREA OF CHIMNEY (square inches)							
	12	19	28	38	50	63	78	113
37°F or Greater	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: 37°F or Greater							
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
15	NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
20	NA	NA	123	190	249	184	0	0
30	NA	NA	NA	334	398	393	334	0
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	714	707	579
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1,600
27 to 36°F	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: 27 to 36°F							
6	0	0	68	116	156	180	212	266
8	0	0	82	127	167	187	214	263
10	0	51	97	141	183	201	225	265
15	NA	111	142	183	233	253	274	305
20	NA	NA	187	230	284	307	330	362
30	NA	NA	NA	330	319	419	445	485
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	672	705	763
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1,554

TABLE 504.3(7b)
EXTERIOR MASONRY CHIMNEY—continued

Minimum Allowable Input Rating of Space-heating Appliance in Thousands of Btu per Hour

VENT HEIGHT (feet)	INTERNAL AREA OF CHIMNEY (square inches)							
	12	19	28	38	50	63	78	113
17 to 26°F	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: 17 to 26°F							
6	0	55	99	141	182	215	259	349
8	52	74	111	154	197	226	264	352
10	NA	90	125	169	214	245	278	358
15	NA	NA	167	212	263	296	331	398
20	NA	NA	212	258	316	352	387	457
30	NA	NA	NA	362	429	470	507	581
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	723	766	862
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1,669
5 to 16°F	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: 5 to 16°F							
6	NA	78	121	166	214	252	301	416
8	NA	94	135	182	230	269	312	423
10	NA	111	149	198	250	289	331	430
15	NA	NA	193	247	305	346	393	485
20	NA	NA	NA	293	360	408	450	547
30	NA	NA	NA	377	450	531	580	682
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	797	853	972
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1,833
-10 to 4°F	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: -10 to 4°F							
6	NA	NA	145	196	249	296	349	484
8	NA	NA	159	213	269	320	371	494
10	NA	NA	175	231	292	339	397	513
15	NA	NA	NA	283	351	404	457	586
20	NA	NA	NA	333	408	468	528	650
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	603	667	805
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	955	1,003
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
-11°F or Lower	Local 99% Winter Design Temperature: -11°F or Lower							
Not recommended for any vent configurations								

For SI: °C = (°F - 32)/1.8, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

Note: See Figure B-19 in Appendix B for a map showing local 99 percent winter design temperatures in the United States.

CHAPTER 6

SPECIFIC APPLIANCES

SECTION 601 (IFGC) GENERAL

601.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the approval, design, installation, construction, maintenance, *alteration* and repair of the appliances and *equipment* specifically identified herein.

SECTION 602 (IFGC) DECORATIVE APPLIANCES FOR INSTALLATION IN FIREPLACES

602.1 General. Decorative appliances for installation in *approved* solid fuel-burning fireplaces shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.60 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Manually lighted natural gas decorative appliances shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.84.

602.2 Flame safeguard device. Decorative appliances for installation in *approved* solid fuel-burning fireplaces, with the exception of those tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.84, shall utilize a direct ignition device, an ignitor or a pilot flame to ignite the fuel at the main burner, and shall be equipped with a flame safeguard device. The flame safeguard device shall automatically shut off the fuel supply to a main burner or group of burners when the means of ignition of such burners becomes inoperative.

602.3 Prohibited installations. Decorative appliances for installation in fireplaces shall not be installed where prohibited by Section 303.3.

SECTION 603 (IFGC) LOG LIGHTERS

603.1 General. Log lighters shall be tested in accordance with CSA 8 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION 604 (IFGC) VENTED GAS FIREPLACES (DECORATIVE APPLIANCES)

604.1 General. Vented gas fireplaces shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.50, shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and shall be designed and equipped as specified in Section 602.2.

604.2 Access. Panels, grilles and *access* doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building.

SECTION 605 (IFGC) VENTED GAS FIREPLACE HEATERS

605.1 General. Vented gas fireplace heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.88 and shall be designed and equipped as specified in Section 602.2.

SECTION 606 (IFGC) INCINERATORS AND CREMATORIES

606.1 General. Incinerators and crematories shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION 607 (IFGC) COMMERCIAL-INDUSTRIAL INCINERATORS

607.1 Incinerators, commercial-industrial. Commercial-industrial-type incinerators shall be constructed and installed in accordance with NFPA 82.

SECTION 608 (IFGC) VENTED WALL FURNACES

608.1 General. Vented wall furnaces shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.86/CSA 2.32 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

608.2 Venting. Vented wall furnaces shall be vented in accordance with Section 503.

608.3 Location. Vented wall furnaces shall be located so as not to cause a fire hazard to walls, floors, combustible furnishings or doors. Vented wall furnaces installed between bathrooms and adjoining rooms shall not circulate air from bathrooms to other parts of the building.

608.4 Door swing. Vented wall furnaces shall be located so that a door cannot swing within 12 inches (305 mm) of an air inlet or air outlet of such furnace measured at right angles to the opening. Doorstops or door closers shall not be installed to obtain this *clearance*.

608.5 Ducts prohibited. Ducts shall not be attached to wall furnaces. Casing extension boots shall not be installed unless *listed* as part of the *appliance*.

608.6 Access. Vented wall furnaces shall be provided with *access* for cleaning of heating surfaces, removal of burners, replacement of sections, motors, controls, filters and other working parts, and for adjustments and lubrication of parts requiring such attention. Panels, grilles and *access* doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building construction.

SECTION 609 (IFGC) FLOOR FURNACES

609.1 General. Floor furnaces shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.86/CSA 2.32 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

609.2 Placement. The following provisions apply to floor furnaces:

1. Floors. Floor furnaces shall not be installed in the floor of any doorway, stairway landing, aisle or passageway of any enclosure, public or private, or in an exitway from any such room or space.
2. Walls and corners. The register of a floor furnace with a horizontal warm-air outlet shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to the nearest wall. A distance of at least 18 inches (457 mm) from two adjoining sides of the floor furnace register to walls shall be provided to eliminate the necessity of occupants walking over the warm-air discharge. The remaining sides shall be permitted to be placed not closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to a wall. Wall-register models shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to a corner.
3. Draperies. The furnace shall be placed so that a door, drapery or similar object cannot be nearer than 12 inches (305 mm) to any portion of the register of the furnace.
4. Floor construction. Floor furnaces shall not be installed in concrete floor construction built on grade.
5. Thermostat. The controlling thermostat for a floor furnace shall be located within the same room or space as the floor furnace or shall be located in an adjacent room or space that is permanently open to the room or space containing the floor furnace.

609.3 Bracing. The floor around the furnace shall be braced and headed with a support framework designed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

609.4 Clearance. The lowest portion of the floor furnace shall have not less than a 6-inch (152 mm) *clearance* from the grade level; except where the lower 6-inch (152 mm) portion of the floor furnace is sealed by the manufacturer to prevent entrance of water, the minimum *clearance* shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm). Where such clearances cannot be provided, the ground below and to the sides shall be excavated to form a pit under the furnace so that the required *clearance* is provided beneath the lowest portion of the furnace. A 12-inch (305 mm) minimum *clearance* shall be provided on all sides except the control side, which shall have an 18-inch (457 mm) minimum *clearance*.

609.5 First floor installation. Where the basement story level below the floor in which a floor furnace is installed is utilized as habitable space, such floor furnaces shall be enclosed as specified in Section 609.6 and shall project into a nonhabitable space.

609.6 Upper floor installations. Floor furnaces installed in upper stories of buildings shall project below into nonhabitable space and shall be separated from the nonhabitable space by an enclosure constructed of *noncombustible materials*. The floor furnace shall be provided with *access*, *clearance* to all sides and bottom of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) and *combustion air* in accordance with Section 304.

SECTION 610 (IFGC) DUCT FURNACES

610.1 General. Duct furnaces shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z83.8 or UL 795 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

610.2 Access panels. Ducts connected to duct furnaces shall have removable *access* panels on both the upstream and downstream sides of the furnace.

610.3 Location of draft hood and controls. The controls, *combustion air* inlets and draft hoods for duct furnaces shall be located outside of the ducts. The draft hood shall be located in the same enclosure from which *combustion air* is taken.

610.4 Circulating air. Where a duct furnace is installed so that supply ducts convey air to areas outside the space containing the furnace, the return air shall also be conveyed by a duct(s) sealed to the furnace casing and terminating outside the space containing the furnace.

The duct furnace shall be installed on the positive pressure side of the circulating air blower.

SECTION 611 (IFGC) NONRECIRCULATING DIRECT-FIRED INDUSTRIAL AIR HEATERS

611.1 General. *Nonrecirculating direct-fired industrial air heaters* shall be *listed* to ANSI Z83.4/CSA 3.7 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

611.2 Installation. *Nonrecirculating direct-fired industrial air heaters* shall not be used to supply any area containing sleeping quarters. *Nonrecirculating direct-fired industrial air heaters* shall be installed only in industrial or commercial occupancies. *Nonrecirculating direct-fired industrial air heaters* shall be permitted to provide ventilation air.

611.3 Clearance from *combustible materials*. *Nonrecirculating direct-fired industrial air heaters* shall be installed with a *clearance* from *combustible materials* of not less than that shown on the rating plate and in the manufacturer's instructions.

611.4 Supply air. All air handled by a *nonrecirculating direct-fired industrial air heater*, including *combustion air*, shall be ducted directly from the outdoors.

611.5 Outdoor air louvers. If outdoor air louvers of either the manual or automatic type are used, such devices shall be proven to be in the open position prior to allowing the main burners to operate.

611.6 Atmospheric vents and gas reliefs or bleeds. *Nonrecirculating direct-fired industrial air heaters* with valve train components equipped with atmospheric vents or gas reliefs or bleeds shall have their atmospheric vent lines or gas reliefs or bleeds lead to the outdoors. Means shall be employed on these lines to prevent water from entering and to prevent blockage by insects and foreign matter. An atmospheric vent line shall not be required to be provided on a valve train component equipped with a *listed* vent limiter.

611.7 Relief opening. The design of the installation shall include provisions to permit *nonrecirculating direct-fired industrial air heaters* to operate at rated capacity without overpressurizing the space served by the heaters by taking into account the structure's designed infiltration rate, providing properly designed relief openings or an interlocked power exhaust system, or a combination of these methods. The structure's designed infiltration rate and the size of relief openings shall be determined by *approved* engineering methods. Relief openings shall be permitted to be louvers or counterbalanced gravity dampers. Motorized dampers or closable louvers shall be permitted to be used, provided they are verified to be in their full open position prior to main burner operation.

611.8 Access. *Nonrecirculating direct-fired industrial air heaters* shall be provided with *access* for removal of burners; replacement of motors, controls, filters and other working parts; and for adjustment and lubrication of parts requiring maintenance.

611.9 Purging. Inlet ducting, where used, shall be purged by not less than four air changes prior to an ignition attempt.

SECTION 612 (IFGC) RECIRCULATING DIRECT-FIRED INDUSTRIAL AIR HEATERS

612.1 General. *Recirculating direct-fired industrial air heaters* shall be *listed* to ANSI Z83.18 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

612.2 Location. *Recirculating direct-fired industrial air heaters* shall be installed only in industrial and commercial occupancies. *Recirculating direct-fired air heaters* shall not serve any area containing sleeping quarters. *Recirculating direct-fired industrial air heaters* shall not be installed in hazardous locations or in buildings that contain flammable solids, liquids or gases, explosive materials or substances that can become toxic when exposed to flame or heat.

612.3 Installation. Direct-fired industrial air heaters shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Direct-fired industrial air heaters shall be installed only in industrial or commercial occupancies. Direct-fired industrial air heaters shall be permitted to provide fresh air ventilation.

612.4 Clearance from *combustible materials*. Direct-fired industrial air heaters shall be installed with a *clearance* from *combustible material* of not less than that shown on the label and in the manufacturer's instructions.

612.5 Air supply. Air to direct-fired industrial air heaters shall be taken from the building, ducted directly from outdoors, or a combination of both. Direct-fired industrial air heaters shall incorporate a means to supply outside ventilation air to the space at a rate of not less than 4 cubic feet per minute per 1,000 Btu per hour (0.38 m^3 per min per kW) of rated input of the heater. If a separate means is used to supply ventilation air, an interlock shall be provided so as to lock out the main burner operation until the mechanical means is verified. Where outside air dampers or closing louvers are used, they shall be verified to be in the open position prior to main burner operation.

612.6 Atmospheric vents, gas reliefs or bleeds. Direct-fired industrial air heaters with valve train components equipped with atmospheric vents, gas reliefs or bleeds shall have their atmospheric vent lines and gas reliefs or bleeds lead to the outdoors.

Means shall be employed on these lines to prevent water from entering and to prevent blockage by insects and foreign matter. An atmospheric vent line shall not be required to be provided on a valve train component equipped with a *listed* vent limiter.

612.7 Relief opening. The design of the installation shall include adequate provision to permit direct-fired industrial air heaters to operate at rated capacity by taking into account the structure's designed infiltration rate, providing properly designed relief openings or an interlocked power exhaust system, or a combination of these methods. The structure's designed infiltration rate and the size of relief openings shall be determined by *approved* engineering methods. Relief openings shall be permitted to be louvers or counterbalanced gravity dampers. Motorized dampers or closable louvers shall be permitted to be used, provided they are verified to be in their full open position prior to main burner operation.

SECTION 613 (IFGC) CLOTHES DRYERS

613.1 General. Clothes dryers shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.5.1 or ANSI Z21.5.2 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION 614 (IFGC) CLOTHES DRYER EXHAUST

[M] 614.1 Installation. Clothes dryers shall be exhausted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Dryer exhaust systems shall be independent of all other systems, shall convey the moisture and any products of combustion to the outside of the building.

[M] 614.2 Duct penetrations. Ducts that exhaust clothes dryers shall not penetrate or be located within any fireblocking, draftstopping or any wall, floor/ceiling or other assembly required by the *International Building Code* to be fire-resistance rated, unless such duct is constructed of galvanized steel or aluminum of the thickness specified in Table 603.4 of the *International Mechanical Code* and the fire-resistance rating is maintained in accordance with the *International Building Code*. Fire dampers shall not be installed in clothes dryer exhaust duct systems.

[M] 614.3 Cleaning access. Each vertical duct riser for dryers *listed* to ANSI Z21.5.2 shall be provided with a cleanout or other means for cleaning the interior of the duct.

[M] 614.4 Exhaust installation. Exhaust ducts for clothes dryers shall terminate on the outside of the building and shall be equipped with a backdraft damper. Screens shall not be installed at the duct termination. Ducts shall not be connected or installed with sheet metal screws or other fasteners that will obstruct the flow. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall not be connected to a vent connector, vent or chimney. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall not extend into or through ducts or plenums.

[M] 614.5 Makeup air. Installations exhausting more than 200 cfm (0.09 m^3/s) shall be provided with makeup air. Where a closet is designed for the installation of a clothes dryer, an opening having an area of not less than 100 square inches (645 mm^2) for makeup air shall be provided in the closet enclosure, or makeup air shall be provided by other *approved* means.

[M] 614.6 Domestic clothes dryer exhaust ducts. Exhaust ducts for domestic clothes dryers shall conform to the requirements of Sections 614.6.1 through 614.6.7.

[M] 614.6.1 Material and size. Exhaust ducts shall have a smooth interior finish and shall be constructed of metal a minimum 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) thick. The exhaust duct size shall be 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in diameter.

[M] 614.6.2 Duct installation. Exhaust ducts shall be supported at 4-foot (1219 mm) intervals and secured in place. The insert end of the duct shall extend into the adjoining duct or fitting in the direction of airflow. Ducts shall not be joined with screws or similar fasteners that protrude into the inside of the duct.

[M] 614.6.3 Protection required. Protective shield plates shall be placed where nails or screws from finish or other work are likely to penetrate the clothes dryer exhaust duct. Shield plates shall be placed on the finished face of all framing members where there is less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) between the duct and the finished face of the framing member. Protective shield plates shall be constructed of steel, shall have a minimum thickness of 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) and shall extend a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

[M] 614.6.4 Transition ducts. Transition ducts used to connect the dryer to the exhaust duct system shall be a single length that is *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2158A. Transition ducts shall be a maximum of 8 feet (2438 mm) in length, and shall not be concealed within construction.

[M] 614.6.5 Duct length. The maximum allowable exhaust duct length shall be determined by one of the methods specified in Section 614.6.5.1 or 614.6.5.2.

[M] 614.6.5.1 Specified length. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be 35 feet (10 668 mm) from the connection to the transition duct from the dryer to the outlet terminal. Where fittings are utilized, the maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be reduced in accordance with Table 614.6.5.1.

[M] 614.6.5.2 Manufacturer's instructions. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. The code official shall be provided with a copy of the installation instructions for the make and model of the dryer. Where the exhaust duct is to be concealed, the installation instructions shall be provided to the code official prior to the concealment inspection. In the absence of fitting equivalent length calculations from the clothes dryer manufacturer, Table 614.6.5.1 shall be utilized.

[M] 614.6.6 Length identification. Where the exhaust duct is concealed within the building construction, the equivalent length of the exhaust duct shall be identified on a permanent label or tag. The label or tag shall be located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the exhaust duct connection.

[M] 614.6.7 Exhaust duct required. Where space for a clothes dryer is provided, an exhaust duct system shall be installed.

Where the clothes dryer is not installed at the time of occupancy, the exhaust duct shall be capped at the location of the future dryer.

Exception: Where a *listed* condensing clothes dryer is installed prior to occupancy of the structure.

[M] 614.7 Commercial clothes dryers. The installation of dryer exhaust ducts serving Type 2 clothes dryers shall comply with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions. Exhaust fan motors installed in exhaust systems shall be located outside of the airstream. In multiple installations, the fan shall operate continuously or be interlocked to operate when any individual unit is operating. Ducts shall have a minimum *clearance* of 6 inches (152 mm) to *combustible materials*.

[M] TABLE 614.6.5.1
DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING EQUIVALENT LENGTH

DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING TYPE	EQUIVALENT LENGTH
4 inch radius mitered 45-degree elbow	2 feet, 6 inches
4 inch radius mitered 90-degree elbow	5 feet
6 inch radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
6 inch radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot, 9 inches
8 inch radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
8 inch radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot, 7 inches
10 inch radius smooth 45-degree elbow	9 inches
10 inch radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot, 6 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

[M] 614.8 Common exhaust systems for clothes dryers located in multistory structures. Where a common multistory duct system is designed and installed to convey exhaust from multiple clothes dryers, the construction of such system shall be in accordance with all of the following:

1. The shaft in which the duct is installed shall be constructed and fire-resistant rated as required by the *International Building Code*.
2. Dampers shall be prohibited in the exhaust duct. Penetrations of the shaft and ductwork shall be protected in accordance with Section 607.5.5, Exception 2, of the *International Mechanical Code*.
3. Rigid metal ductwork shall be installed within the shaft to convey the exhaust. The ductwork shall be constructed of sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.471 mm) (No. 26 gage) and in accordance with SMACNA *Duct Construction Standards*.
4. The ductwork within the shaft shall be designed and installed without offsets.
5. The exhaust fan motor design shall be in accordance with Section 503.2 of the *International Mechanical Code*.
6. The exhaust fan motor shall be located outside of the airstream.
7. The exhaust fan shall run continuously, and shall be connected to a standby power source.
8. The exhaust fan operation shall be monitored in an *approved* location and shall initiate an audible or visual signal when the fan is not in operation.
9. Makeup air shall be provided for the exhaust system.
10. A cleanout opening shall be located at the base of the shaft to provide *access* to the duct to allow for cleaning and inspection. The finished opening shall be not less than 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm).
11. Screens shall not be installed at the termination.

SECTION 615 (IFGC) SAUNA HEATERS

615.1 General. Sauna heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

615.2 Location and protection. Sauna heaters shall be located so as to minimize the possibility of accidental contact by a person in the room.

615.2.1 Guards. Sauna heaters shall be protected from accidental contact by an *approved* guard or barrier of material having a low coefficient of thermal conductivity. The guard shall not substantially affect the transfer of heat from the heater to the room.

615.3 Access. Panels, grilles and *access* doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building.

615.4 Combustion and dilution air intakes. Sauna heaters of other than the direct-vent type shall be installed with the draft hood and *combustion air* intake located outside the sauna room. Where the *combustion air* inlet and the draft hood are in a dressing room adjacent to the sauna room, there shall be provisions to prevent physically blocking the *combustion air* inlet and the draft hood inlet, and to prevent physical contact with the draft hood and vent assembly, or warning notices shall be posted to avoid such contact. Any warning notice shall be easily readable, shall contrast with its background and the wording shall be in letters not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) high.

615.5 Combustion and ventilation air. *Combustion air* shall not be taken from inside the sauna room. Combustion and ventilation air for a sauna heater not of the direct-vent type shall be provided to the area in which the *combustion air* inlet and draft hood are located in accordance with Section 304.

615.6 Heat and time controls. Sauna heaters shall be equipped with a thermostat which will limit room temperature to 194°F (90°C). If the thermostat is not an integral part of the sauna heater, the heat-sensing element shall be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ceiling. If the heat-sensing element is a capillary tube and bulb, the assembly shall be attached to the wall or other support, and shall be protected against physical damage.

615.6.1 Timers. A timer, if provided to control main burner operation, shall have a maximum operating time of 1 hour. The control for the timer shall be located outside the sauna room.

615.7 Sauna room. A ventilation opening into the sauna room shall be provided. The opening shall be not less than 4 inches by 8 inches (102 mm by 203 mm) located near the top of the door into the sauna room.

615.7.1 Warning notice. The following permanent notice, constructed of *approved* material, shall be mechanically attached to the sauna room on the outside:

WARNING: DO NOT EXCEED 30 MINUTES IN SAUNA. EXCESSIVE EXPOSURE CAN BE HARMFUL TO HEALTH. ANY PERSON WITH POOR HEALTH SHOULD CONSULT A PHYSICIAN BEFORE USING SAUNA.

The words shall contrast with the background and the wording shall be in letters not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) high.

Exception: This section shall not apply to one- and two-family dwellings.

SECTION 616 (IFGC) ENGINE AND GAS TURBINE-POWERED EQUIPMENT

616.1 Powered equipment. Permanently installed *equipment* powered by internal combustion engines and turbines shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and NFPA 37. Stationary engine generator assemblies shall meet the requirements of UL 2200.

616.2 Gas supply connection. *Equipment* powered by internal combustion engines and turbines shall not be rigidly connected to the gas supply *piping*.

SECTION 617 (IFGC) POOL AND SPA HEATERS

617.1 General. Pool and spa heaters shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.56 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION 618 (IFGC) FORCED-AIR WARM-AIR FURNACES

618.1 General. Forced-air warm-air furnaces shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.47 or UL 795 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

618.2 Forced-air furnaces. The minimum unobstructed total area of the outside and return air ducts or openings to a forced-air warm-air furnace shall be not less than 2 square inches for each 1,000 Btu/h (4402 mm^2/W) output rating capacity of the furnace and not less than that specified in the furnace manufacturer's installation instructions. The minimum unobstructed total area of supply ducts from a forced-air warm-air furnace shall be not less than 2 square inches for each 1,000 Btu/h (4402 mm^2/W) output rating capacity of the furnace and not less than that specified in the furnace manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exception: The total area of the supply air ducts and outside and return air ducts shall not be required to be larger than the minimum size required by the furnace manufacturer's installation instructions.

618.3 Dampers. Volume dampers shall not be placed in the air inlet to a furnace in a manner that will reduce the required air to the furnace.

618.4 Prohibited sources. Outdoor or return air for forced-air heating and cooling systems shall not be taken from the following locations:

1. Closer than 10 feet (3048 mm) from an *appliance* vent outlet, a vent opening from a plumbing drainage system or the discharge outlet of an exhaust fan, unless the outlet is 3 feet (914 mm) above the outside air inlet.
2. Where there is the presence of objectionable odors, fumes or flammable vapors; or where located less than 10 feet (3048 mm)above the surface of any abutting public way or driveway; or where located at grade level by a sidewalk, street, alley or driveway.
3. A hazardous or insanitary location or a refrigeration machinery room as defined in the *International Mechanical Code*.
4. A room or space, the volume of which is less than 25 percent of the entire volume served by such system. Where connected by a permanent opening having an area sized in accordance with Section 618.2, adjoining rooms or spaces shall be considered as a single room or space for the purpose of determining the volume of such rooms or spaces.

   Exception: The minimum volume requirement shall not apply where the amount of return air taken from a room or space is less than or equal to the amount of supply air delivered to such room or space.

5. A room or space containing an *appliance* where such a room or space serves as the sole source of return air.

   Exception: This shall not apply where:

   1. The *appliance* is a direct-vent *appliance* or an *appliance* not requiring a vent in accordance with Section 501.8.
   2. The room or space complies with the following requirements:
      - 2.1. The return air shall be taken from a room or space having a volume exceeding 1 cubic foot for each 10 Btu/h (9.6L/W) of combined input rating of all fuel-burning appliances therein.
      - 2.2. The volume of supply air discharged back into the same space shall be approximately equal to the volume of return air taken from the space.
      - 2.3. Return-air inlets shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of a draft hood in the same room or space or the combustion chamber of any atmospheric burner *appliance* in the same room or space.
   3. Rooms or spaces containing solid fuel-burning appliances, provided that return-air inlets are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the firebox of such appliances.

6. A closet, bathroom, toilet room, kitchen, garage, boiler room, furnace room or unconditioned attic.

   Exceptions:

   1. Where return air intakes are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from cooking appliances and serve only the kitchen area, taking return air from a kitchen area shall not be prohibited.
   2. Dedicated forced air systems serving only a garage shall not be prohibited from obtaining return air from the garage.

7. A crawl space by means of direct connection to the return side of a forced-air system. Transfer openings in the crawl space enclosure shall not be prohibited.

618.5 Screen. Required outdoor air inlets for residential portions of a building shall be covered with a screen having $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) openings. Required outdoor air inlets serving a nonresidential portion of a building shall be covered with screen having openings larger than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) and not larger than 1 inch (25 mm).

618.6 Return-air limitation. Return air from one *dwelling unit* shall not be discharged into another *dwelling unit*.

618.7 (IFGS) Furnace plenums and air ducts. Where a furnace is installed so that supply ducts carry air circulated by the furnace to areas outside of the space containing the furnace, the return air shall also be handled by a duct(s) sealed to the furnace casing and terminating outside of the space containing the furnace.

SECTION 619 (IFGC) CONVERSION BURNERS

619.1 Conversion burners. The installation of conversion burners shall conform to ANSI Z21.8.

SECTION 620 (IFGC) UNIT HEATERS

620.1 General. Unit heaters shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z83.8 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

620.2 Support. Suspended-type unit heaters shall be supported by elements that are designed and constructed to accommodate the weight and dynamic loads. Hangers and brackets shall be of *noncombustible material*.

620.3 Ductwork. Ducts shall not be connected to a unit heater unless the heater is *listed* for such installation.

620.4 Clearance. Suspended-type unit heaters shall be installed with clearances to *combustible materials* of not less than 18 inches (457 mm) at the sides, 12 inches (305 mm) at the bottom and 6 inches (152 mm) above the top where the unit heater has an internal draft hood or 1 inch (25 mm) above the top of the sloping side of the vertical draft hood.

Floor-mounted-type unit heaters shall be installed with clearances to *combustible materials* at the back and one side only of not less than 6 inches (152 mm). Where the flue gases are vented horizontally, the 6-inch (152 mm) *clearance* shall be measured from the draft hood or vent instead of the rear wall of the unit heater. Floor-mounted-type unit heaters shall not be installed on combustible floors unless *listed* for such installation.

Clearances for servicing all unit heaters shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

> **Exception:** Unit heaters *listed* for reduced *clearance* shall be permitted to be installed with such clearances in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

620.5 (IFGS) Installation in commercial garages and aircraft hangars. Unit heaters installed in garages for more than three motor vehicles or in aircraft hangars shall be installed in accordance with Sections 305.9, 305.10 and 305.11.

SECTION 621 (IFGC) UNVENTED ROOM HEATERS

621.1 General. Unvented room heaters shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.11.2 and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Unvented room heaters utilizing fuels other than fuel gas shall be regulated by the *International Mechanical Code*.

621.2 Prohibited use. One or more unvented room heaters shall not be used as the sole source of comfort heating in a *dwelling unit*.

621.3 Input rating. Unvented room heaters shall not have an input rating in excess of 40,000 Btu/h (11.7 kW).

621.4 Prohibited locations. Unvented room heaters shall not be installed within occupancies in Groups A, E and I. The location of unvented room heaters shall also comply with Section 303.3.

621.5 Room or space volume. The aggregate input rating of all unvented appliances installed in a room or space shall not exceed 20 Btu/h per cubic foot (207 W/m^3) of volume of such room or space. Where the room or space in which the appliances are installed is directly connected to another room or space by a doorway, archway or other opening of comparable size that cannot be closed, the volume of such adjacent room or space shall be permitted to be included in the calculations.

621.6 Oxygen-depletion safety system. Unvented room heaters shall be equipped with an oxygen-depletion-sensitive safety shutoff system. The system shall shut off the gas supply to the main and pilot burners when the oxygen in the surrounding atmosphere is depleted to the percent concentration specified by the manufacturer, but not lower than 18 percent. The system shall not incorporate field adjustment means capable of changing the set point at which the system acts to shut off the gas supply to the room heater.

621.7 Unvented decorative room heaters. An unvented decorative room heater shall not be installed in a factory-built *fireplace* unless the *fireplace* system has been specifically tested, *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 127.

621.7.1 Ventless firebox enclosures. Ventless firebox enclosures used with unvented decorative room heaters shall be *listed* as complying with ANSI Z21.91.

SECTION 622 (IFGC) VENTED ROOM HEATERS

622.1 General. Vented room heaters shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.86/CSA 2.32, shall be designed and equipped as specified in Section 602.2 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION 623 (IFGC) COOKING APPLIANCES

623.1 Cooking appliances. Cooking appliances that are designed for permanent installation, including ranges, ovens, stoves, broilers, grills, fryers, griddles, hot plates and barbecues, shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.1, ANSI Z21.58 or ANSI Z83.11 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

623.2 Prohibited location. Cooking appliances designed, tested, *listed* and *labeled* for use in commercial occupancies shall not be installed within dwelling units or within any area where domestic cooking operations occur.

623.3 Domestic appliances. Cooking appliances installed within dwelling units and within areas where domestic cooking operations occur shall be *listed* and *labeled* as household-type appliances for domestic use.

623.4 Domestic range installation. Domestic ranges installed on combustible floors shall be set on their own bases or legs and shall be installed with clearances of not less than that shown on the label.

623.5 Open-top broiler unit hoods. A ventilating hood shall be provided above a domestic open-top broiler unit, unless otherwise *listed* for forced down draft ventilation.

623.5.1 Clearances. A minimum *clearance* of 24 inches (610 mm) shall be maintained between the cooking top and *combustible material* above the hood. The hood shall be at least as wide as the open-top broiler unit and be centered over the unit.

623.6 Commercial cooking appliance venting. Commercial cooking appliances, other than those exempted by Section 501.8, shall be vented by connecting the *appliance* to a vent or chimney in accordance with this code and the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions or the *appliance* shall be vented in accordance with Section 505.1.1.

623.7 (IFGS) Vertical clearance above cooking top. Household cooking appliances shall have a vertical *clearance* above the cooking top of not less than 30 inches (760mm) to *combustible material* and metal cabinets. A minimum *clearance* of 24 inches (610 mm) is permitted where one of the following is installed:

1. The underside of the *combustible material* or metal cabinet above the cooking top is protected with not less than $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6 mm) insulating millboard covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick.
2. A metal ventilating hood constructed of sheet metal not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick is installed above the cooking top with a *clearance* of not less than $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) between the hood and the underside of the *combustible material* or metal cabinet. The hood shall have a width not less than the width of the *appliance* and shall be centered over the *appliance.*
3. A *listed* cooking *appliance* or microwave oven is installed over a *listed* cooking *appliance* and in compliance with the terms of the manufacturer's installation instructions for the upper appliance.

SECTION 624 (IFGC) WATER HEATERS

624.1 General. Water heaters shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.10.1 and ANSI Z21.10.3 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Water heaters utilizing fuels other than fuel gas shall be regulated by the *International Mechanical Code.*

624.1.1 Installation requirements. The requirements for water heaters relative to sizing, relief valves, drain pans and scald protection shall be in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code.*

624.2 Water heaters utilized for space heating. Water heaters utilized both to supply potable hot water and provide hot water for space-heating applications shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such applications by the manufacturer and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the *International Plumbing Code.*

SECTION 625 (IFGC) REFRIGERATORS

625.1 General. Refrigerators shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.19 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Refrigerators shall be provided with adequate clearances for ventilation at the top and back, and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. If such instructions are not available, at least 2 inches (51 mm) shall be provided between the back of the refrigerator and the wall and at least 12 inches (305 mm) above the top.

SECTION 626 (IFGC) GAS-FIRED TOILETS

626.1 General. Gas-fired toilets shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.61 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

626.2 Clearance. A gas-fired toilet shall be installed in accordance with its listing and the manufacturer's instructions, provided that the *clearance* shall in any case be sufficient to afford ready *access* for use, cleanout and necessary servicing.

SECTION 627 (IFGC) AIR-CONDITIONING APPLIANCES

627.1 General. Gas-fired air-conditioning appliances shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.40.1 or ANSI Z21.40.2 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

627.2 Independent piping. Gas *piping* serving heating appliances shall be permitted to also serve cooling appliances where such heating and cooling appliances cannot be operated simultaneously (see Section 402).

627.3 Connection of gas engine-powered air conditioners. To protect against the effects of normal vibration in service, gas engines shall not be rigidly connected to the gas supply *piping.*

627.4 Clearances for indoor installation. Air-conditioning appliances installed in rooms other than alcoves and closets shall be installed with clearances not less than those specified in Section 308.3 except that air-conditioning appliances *listed* for installation at lesser clearances than those specified in Section 308.3 shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with such listing and the manufacturer's instructions and air-conditioning appliances *listed* for installation at greater clearances than those specified in Section 308.3 shall be installed in accordance with such listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

Air-conditioning appliances installed in rooms other than alcoves and closets shall be permitted to be installed with reduced clearances to *combustible material*, provided that the *combustible material* is protected in accordance with Table 308.2.

627.5 Alcove and closet installation. Air-conditioning appliances installed in spaces such as alcoves and closets shall be specifically *listed* for such installation and installed in accordance with the terms of such listing. The installation clearances for air-conditioning appliances in alcoves and closets shall not be reduced by the protection methods described in Table 308.2.

627.6 Installation. Air-conditioning appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Unless the *appliance* is *listed* for installation on a combustible surface such as a floor or roof, or unless the surface is protected in an *approved* manner, the *appliance* shall be installed on a surface of noncombustible construction with *noncombustible material* and surface finish and with no *combustible material* against the underside thereof.

627.7 Plenums and air ducts. A plenum supplied as a part of the air-conditioning *appliance* shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions. Where a plenum is not supplied with the *appliance*, such plenum shall be installed in accordance with the fabrication and installation instructions provided by the plenum and *appliance* manufacturer. The method of connecting supply and return ducts shall facilitate proper circulation of air.

Where the air-conditioning *appliance* is installed within a space separated from the spaces served by the *appliance*, the air circulated by the *appliance* shall be conveyed by ducts that are sealed to the casing of the *appliance* and that separate the circulating air from the combustion and ventilation air.

627.8 Refrigeration coils. A refrigeration coil shall not be installed in conjunction with a forced-air furnace where circulation of cooled air is provided by the furnace blower, unless the blower has sufficient capacity to overcome the external static resistance imposed by the duct system and cooling coil at the air throughput necessary for heating or cooling, whichever is greater. Furnaces shall not be located upstream from cooling units, unless the cooling unit is designed or equipped so as not to develop excessive temperature or pressure. Refrigeration coils shall be installed in parallel with or on the downstream side of central furnaces to avoid condensation in the heating element, unless the furnace has been specifically *listed* for downstream installation. With a parallel flow arrangement, the dampers or other means used to control flow of air shall be sufficiently tight to prevent any circulation of cooled air through the furnace.

Means shall be provided for disposal of condensate and to prevent dripping of condensate onto the heating element.

627.9 Cooling units used with heating boilers. Boilers, where used in conjunction with refrigeration systems, shall be installed so that the chilled medium is piped in parallel with the heating boiler with appropriate valves to prevent the chilled medium from entering the heating boiler. Where hot water heating boilers are connected to heating coils located in air-handling units where they might be exposed to refrigerated air circulation, such boiler *piping* systems shall be equipped with flow control valves or other automatic means to prevent gravity circulation of the boiler water during the cooling cycle.

627.10 Switches in electrical supply line. Means for interrupting the electrical supply to the air-conditioning *appliance* and to its associated cooling tower (if supplied and installed in a location remote from the air conditioner) shall be provided within sight of and not over 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the air conditioner and cooling tower.

SECTION 628 (IFGC) ILLUMINATING APPLIANCES

628.1 General. Illuminating appliances shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.42 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

628.2 Mounting on buildings. Illuminating appliances designed for wall or ceiling mounting shall be securely attached to substantial structures in such a manner that they are not dependent on the gas *piping* for support.

628.3 Mounting on posts. Illuminating appliances designed for post mounting shall be securely and rigidly attached to a post. Posts shall be rigidly mounted. The strength and rigidity of posts greater than 3 feet (914 mm) in height shall be at least equivalent to that of a $2^1/_2$-inch-diameter (64 mm) post constructed of 0.064-inch-thick (1.6-mm) steel or a 1-inch (25.4 mm) Schedule 40 steel pipe. Posts 3 feet (914 mm) or less in height shall not be smaller than a $^3/_4$-inch (19.1 mm) Schedule 40 steel pipe. Drain openings shall be provided near the base of posts where there is a possibility of water collecting inside them.

628.4 Appliance pressure regulators. Where an *appliance* pressure regulator is not supplied with an illuminating *appliance* and the service line is not equipped with a service pressure regulator, an *appliance* pressure regulator shall be installed in the line to the illuminating *appliance*. For multiple installations, one regulator of adequate capacity shall be permitted to serve more than one illuminating *appliance*.

SECTION 629 (IFGC) SMALL CERAMIC KILNS

629.1 General. Ceramic kilns with a maximum interior volume of 20 cubic feet (0.566 m^3) and used for hobby and noncommercial purposes shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the provisions of this code.

SECTION 630 (IFGC) INFRARED RADIANT HEATERS

630.1 General. Infrared radiant heaters shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z83.19 or Z83.20 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

630.2 Support. Infrared radiant heaters shall be fixed in a position independent of gas and electric supply lines. Hangers and brackets shall be of *noncombustible material*.

630.3 Combustion and ventilation air. Where unvented infrared heaters are installed, mechanical ventilation shall be provided to exhaust at least 4 cubic feet per minute (cfm) (0.0203 m^3/s) per 1,000 Btu/hr (0.292 kW) input rating and it shall be electrically interlocked with the heater. *Makeup air* shall be provided to the space to be heated.

630.4 (IFGS) Installation in commercial garages and aircraft hangars. Overhead infrared heaters installed in garages for more than three motor vehicles or in aircraft hangars shall be installed in accordance with Sections 305.9, 305.10 and 305.11.

SECTION 631 (IFGC) BOILERS

631.1 Standards. Boilers shall be *listed* in accordance with the requirements of ANSI Z21.13 or UL 795. If applicable, the boiler shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of ASME CSD-1 and as applicable, the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Sections I, II, IV, V and IX and NFPA 85.

631.2 Installation. In addition to the requirements of this code, the installation of boilers shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the *International Mechanical Code*. Operating instructions of a permanent type shall be attached to the boiler. Boilers shall have all controls set, adjusted and tested by the installer. A complete control diagram together with complete boiler operating instructions shall be furnished by the installer. The manufacturer's rating data and the nameplate shall be attached to the boiler.

631.3 Clearance to *combustible materials*. Clearances to *combustible materials* shall be in accordance with Section 308.4.

SECTION 632 (IFGC) EQUIPMENT INSTALLED IN EXISTING UNLISTED BOILERS

632.1 General. Gas *equipment* installed in existing unlisted boilers shall comply with Section 631.1 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the *International Mechanical Code*.

SECTION 633 (IFGC) STATIONARY FUEL-CELL POWER SYSTEMS

633.1 General. Stationary fuel-cell power systems having a power output not exceeding 10 MW shall be tested in accordance with ANSI CSA America FC 1 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, NFPA 853, the *International Building Code* and the *International Fire Code*. [F]

SECTION 634 (IFGS) CHIMNEY DAMPER OPENING AREA

634.1 Free opening area of chimney dampers. Where an unlisted decorative *appliance* for installation in a vented *fireplace* is installed, the *fireplace* damper shall have a permanent free opening equal to or greater than specified in Table 634.1.

SECTION 635 (IFGC) GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEMS

635.1 Installation. The installation of gaseous hydrogen systems shall be in accordance with the applicable requirements of this code, the *International Fire Code* and the *International Building Code*.

SECTION 636 (IFGC) OUTDOOR DECORATIVE APPLIANCES

636.1 General. Permanently fixed-in-place outdoor decorative appliances shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.97 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE 634.1
FREE OPENING AREA OF CHIMNEY DAMPER FOR VENTING FLUE GASES FROM UNLISTED DECORATIVE APPLIANCES FOR INSTALLATION IN VENTED FIREPLACES

CHIMNEY HEIGHT (feet)	MINIMUM PERMANENT FREE OPENING (square inches)[a]						
	8	13	20	29	39	51	64
	Appliance input rating (Btu per hour)						
6	7,800	14,000	23,200	34,000	46,400	62,400	80,000
8	8,400	15,200	25,200	37,000	50,400	68,000	86,000
10	9,000	16,800	27,600	40,400	55,800	74,400	96,400
15	9,800	18,200	30,200	44,600	62,400	84,000	108,800
20	10,600	20,200	32,600	50,400	68,400	94,000	122,200
30	11,200	21,600	36,600	55,200	76,800	105,800	138,600

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 m^2, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. The first six minimum permanent free openings (8 to 51 square inches) correspond approximately to the cross-sectional areas of chimneys having diameters of 3 through 8 inches, respectively. The 64-square-inch opening corresponds to the cross-sectional area of standard 8-inch by 8-inch chimney tile.

CHAPTER 7

GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEMS

SECTION 701 (IFGC) GENERAL

701.1 Scope. The installation of gaseous hydrogen systems shall comply with this chapter and Chapters 53 and 58 of the *International Fire Code*. Compressed gases shall also comply with Chapter 50 of the *International Fire Code* for general requirements.

701.2 Permits. Permits shall be required as set forth in Section 106 and as required by the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 702 (IFGC) GENERAL DEFINITIONS

702.1 Definitions. The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this chapter and as used elsewhere in this code, have the meanings shown herein.

[F] GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEM. An assembly of *piping*, devices and apparatus designed to generate, store, contain, distribute or transport a nontoxic, gaseous hydrogen containing mixture having at least 95-percent hydrogen gas by volume and not more than 1-percent oxygen by volume. Gaseous hydrogen systems consist of items such as compressed gas containers, reactors and appurtenances, including pressure regulators, pressure relief devices, manifolds, pumps, compressors and interconnecting *piping* and tubing and controls.

[F] HYDROGEN CUTOFF ROOM. A room or space which is intended exclusively to house a gaseous hydrogen system.

HYDROGEN-GENERATING APPLIANCE. A self-contained package or factory-matched packages of integrated systems for generating gaseous hydrogen. Hydrogen-generating appliances utilize electrolysis, reformation, chemical or other processes to generate hydrogen.

SECTION 703 (IFGC) GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

703.1 Hydrogen-generating and refueling operations. Hydrogen-generating and refueling appliances shall be installed and located in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Ventilation shall be required in accordance with Section 703.1.1, 703.1.2 or 703.1.3 in public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages that contain hydrogen-generating appliances or refueling systems. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a dwelling unit and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

703.1.1 Natural ventilation. Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be limited to a maximum floor area of 850 square feet (79 m^2) and shall communicate with the outdoors in accordance with Sections 703.1.1.1 and 703.1.1.2. The maximum rated output capacity of hydrogen generating appliances shall not exceed 4 standard cubic feet per minute (0.00189 m^3/s) of hydrogen for each 250 square feet (23.2 m^2) of floor area in such spaces. The minimum cross-sectional dimension of air openings shall be 3 inches (76 mm). Where ducts are used, they shall be of the same cross-sectional area as the free area of the openings to which they connect. In such locations, *equipment* and appliances having an *ignition source* shall be located such that the source of ignition is not within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ceiling.

703.1.1.1 Two openings. Two permanent openings shall be provided within the garage. The upper opening shall be located entirely within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ceiling of the garage. The lower opening shall be located entirely within 12 inches (305 mm) of the floor of the garage. Both openings shall be provided in the same exterior wall. The openings shall communicate directly with the outdoors and shall have a minimum free area of $^1/_2$ square foot per 1,000 cubic feet (1 m^2/610 m^3) of garage volume.

703.1.1.2 Louvers and grilles. In calculating the free area required by Section 703.1.1.1, the required size of openings shall be based on the net free area of each opening. If the free area through a design of louver or grille is known, it shall be used in calculating the size opening required to provide the free area specified. If the design and free area are not known, it shall be assumed that wood louvers will have 25-percent free area and metal louvers and grilles will have 75-percent free area. Louvers and grilles shall be fixed in the open position.

703.1.2 Mechanical ventilation. Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.16 of the *International Mechanical Code*. In such locations, *equipment* and appliances having an *ignition source* shall be located such that the source of ignition is below the mechanical ventilation *outlet*(s).

703.1.3 Specially engineered installations. As an alternative to the provisions of Section 703.1.1 and 703.1.2, the necessary supply of air for ventilation and dilution of flammable gases shall be provided by an *approved* engineered system.

[F] 703.2 Containers, cylinders and tanks. Compressed gas containers, cylinders and tanks shall comply with Chapters 53 and 58 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 703.2.1 Limitations for indoor storage and use. Flammable gas cylinders in occupancies regulated by the *International Residential Code* shall not exceed 250 cubic feet (7.1 m^3) at normal temperature and pressure (NTP).

[F] 703.2.2 Design and construction. Compressed gas containers, cylinders and tanks shall be designed, constructed and tested in accordance with the Chapter 50 of the *International Fire Code,* ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code* (Section VIII) or DOTn 49 CFR, Parts 100-180.

[F] 703.3 Pressure relief devices. Pressure relief devices shall be provided in accordance with Sections 703.3.1 through 703.3.8. Pressure relief devices shall be sized and selected in accordance with CGA S-1.1, CGA S-1.2 and CGA S-1.3.

[F] 703.3.1 Valves between pressure relief devices and containers. Valves including shutoffs, check valves and other mechanical restrictions shall not be installed between the pressure relief device and container being protected by the relief device.

Exception: A locked-open shutoff valve on containers equipped with multiple pressure-relief device installations where the arrangement of the valves provides the full required flow through the minimum number of required relief devices at all times.

[F] 703.3.2 Installation. Valves and other mechanical restrictions shall not be located between the pressure relief device and the point of release to the atmosphere.

[F] 703.3.3 Containers. Containers shall be provided with pressure relief devices in accordance with the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code* (Section VIII), DOTn 49 CFR, Parts 100-180 and Section 703.3.7.

[F] 703.3.4 Vessels other than containers. Vessels other than containers shall be protected with pressure relief devices in accordance with the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code* (Section VIII), or DOTn 49 CFR, Parts 100-180.

[F] 703.3.5 Sizing. Pressure relief devices shall be sized in accordance with the specifications to which the container was fabricated. The relief device shall be sized to prevent the maximum design pressure of the container or system from being exceeded.

[F] 703.3.6 Protection. Pressure relief devices and any associated vent *piping* shall be designed, installed and located so that their operation will not be affected by water or other debris accumulating inside the vent or obstructing the vent.

[F] 703.3.7 Access. Pressure relief devices shall be located such that they are provided with ready *access* for inspection and repair.]

[F] 703.3.8 Configuration. Pressure relief devices shall be arranged to discharge unobstructed in accordance with Section 2309 of the *International Fire Code*. Discharge shall be directed to the outdoors in such a manner as to prevent impingement of escaping gas on personnel, containers, *equipment* and adjacent structures and to prevent introduction of escaping gas into enclosed spaces. The discharge shall not terminate under eaves or canopies.

Exception: This section shall not apply to DOTn-specified containers with an internal volume of 2 cubic feet (0.057 m^3) or less.

[F] 703.4 Venting. Relief device vents shall be terminated in an *approved* location in accordance with Section 2309 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 703.5 Security. Compressed gas containers, cylinders, tanks and systems shall be secured against accidental dislodgement in accordance with Chapter 53 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 703.6 Electrical wiring and equipment. Electrical wiring and *equipment* shall comply with NFPA 70.

SECTION 704 (IFGC) PIPING, USE AND HANDLING

704.1 Applicability. Use and handling of containers, cylinders, tanks and hydrogen gas systems shall comply with this section. Gaseous hydrogen systems, *equipment* and machinery shall be *listed* or *approved*.

704.1.1 Controls. Compressed gas system controls shall be designed to prevent materials from entering or leaving process or reaction systems at other than the intended time, rate or path. Automatic controls shall be designed to be fail safe in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

704.1.2 Piping systems. *Piping*, tubing, valves and fittings conveying gaseous hydrogen shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 704.1.2.1 through 704.1.2.5.1, Chapter 50 of the *International Fire Code,* and ASME B31.3. Cast-iron pipe, valves and fittings shall not be used.

704.1.2.1 Sizing. Gaseous hydrogen *piping* shall be sized in accordance with *approved* engineering methods.

704.1.2.2 Identification of hydrogen piping systems. Hydrogen *piping* systems shall be marked in accordance with ANSI A13.1. Markings used for *piping* systems shall consist of the name of the contents and shall include a direction-of-flow arrow. Markings shall be provided at all of the following locations:

1. At each valve.
2. At wall, floor and ceiling penetrations.
3. At each change of direction.
4. At intervals not exceeding 20 feet (6096 mm).

704.1.2.3 Piping design and construction. *Piping* and tubing materials shall be 300 series stainless steel or materials *listed* or *approved* for hydrogen service and the use intended through the full range of operating conditions to which they will be subjected. *Piping* systems shall be designed and constructed to provide allowance for expansion, contraction, vibration, settlement and fire exposure.

704.1.2.3.1 Prohibited locations. *Piping* shall not be installed in or through a circulating air duct; clothes chute; chimney or gas vent; ventilating duct; dumbwaiter; or elevator shaft. *Piping* shall not be concealed or covered by the surface of any wall, floor or ceiling.

704.1.2.3.2 Interior piping. Except for through penetrations, *piping* located inside of buildings shall be installed in exposed locations and provided with ready *access* for visual inspection.

704.1.2.3.3 Underground piping. Underground *piping*, including joints and fittings, shall be protected from corrosion and installed in accordance with *approved* engineered methods.

704.1.2.3.4 Piping through foundation wall. Underground *piping* shall not penetrate the outer foundation or basement wall of a building.

704.1.2.3.5 Protection against physical damage. Where *piping* other than stainless steel *piping*, stainless steel tubing or black steel is installed through holes or notches in wood studs, joists, rafters or similar members less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, the pipe shall be protected by shield plates. Shield plates shall be a minimum of $^1/_{16}$-inch-thick (1.6 mm) steel, shall cover the area of the pipe where the member is notched or bored and shall extend a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above sole plates, below top plates and to each side of a stud, joist or rafter.

704.1.2.3.6 Piping outdoors. *Piping* installed above ground, outdoors, shall be securely supported and located where it will be protected from physical damage. *Piping* passing through an exterior wall of a building shall be encased in a protective pipe sleeve. The annular space between the *piping* and the sleeve shall be sealed from the inside such that the sleeve is ventilated to the outdoors. Where passing through an exterior wall of a building, the *piping* shall also be protected against corrosion by coating or wrapping with an inert material. Below-ground *piping* shall be protected against corrosion.

704.1.2.3.7 Settlement. *Piping* passing through concrete or masonry walls shall be protected against differential settlement.

704.1.2.4 Joints. Joints in *piping* and tubing in hydrogen service shall be *listed* as complying with ASME B31.3 to include the use of welded, brazed, flared, socket, slip and compression fittings. Gaskets and sealants used in hydrogen service shall be *listed* as complying with ASME B31.3. Threaded and flanged connections shall not be used in areas other than hydrogen cutoff rooms and outdoors.

704.1.2.4.1 Brazed joints. Brazing alloys shall have a melting point greater than 1,000°F (538°C).

704.1.2.4.2 Electrical continuity. Mechanical joints shall maintain electrical continuity through the joint or a bonding jumper shall be installed around the joint.

704.1.2.5 Valves and piping components. Valves, regulators and *piping* components shall be *listed* or *approved* for hydrogen service, shall be provided with *access* and shall be designed and constructed to withstand the maximum pressure to which such components will be subjected.

704.1.2.5.1 Shutoff valves on storage containers and tanks. Shutoff valves shall be provided on all storage container and tank connections except for pressure relief devices. Shutoff valves shall be provided with ready *access*.

704.2 Upright use. Compressed gas containers, cylinders and tanks, except those with a water volume less than 1.3 gallons (5 L) and those designed for use in a horizontal position, shall be used in an upright position with the valve end up. An upright position shall include conditions where the container, cylinder or tank axis is inclined as much as 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the vertical.

704.3 Material-specific regulations. In addition to the requirements of this section, indoor and outdoor use of hydrogen compressed gas shall comply with the material-specific provisions of Chapters 53 and 58 of the *International Fire Code*.

704.4 Handling. The handling of compressed gas containers, cylinders and tanks shall comply with Chapter 50 of the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 705 (IFGC)
TESTING OF HYDROGEN PIPING SYSTEMS

705.1 General. Prior to acceptance and initial operation, all *piping* installations shall be inspected and pressure tested to determine that the materials, design fabrication and installation practices comply with the requirements of this code.

705.2 Inspections. Inspections shall consist of a visual examination of the entire *piping* system installation and a pressure test. Hydrogen *piping* systems shall be inspected in accordance with this code. Inspection methods such as outlined in ASME B31.3 shall be permitted where specified by the design engineer and *approved* by the code official. Inspections shall be conducted or verified by the code official prior to system operation.

705.3 Pressure tests. A hydrostatic or pneumatic leak test shall be performed. Testing of hydrogen *piping* systems shall utilize testing procedures identified in ASME B31.3 or other *approved* methods, provided that the testing is performed in accordance with the minimum provisions specified in Sections 705.3.1 through 705.4.1.

705.3.1 Hydrostatic leak tests. The hydrostatic test pressure shall be not less than one-and-one-half times the maximum working pressure, and not less than 100 psig (689.5 kPa gauge).

705.3.2 Pneumatic leak tests. The pneumatic test pressure shall be not less than one-and-one-half times the maximum working pressure for systems less than 125 psig (862 kPa gauge) and not less than 5 psig (34.5 kPa gauge), whichever is greater. For working pressures at or above 125 psig (862 kPa gauge), the pneumatic test pressure shall be not less than 110 percent of the maximum working pressure.

705.3.3 Test limits. Where the test pressure exceeds 125 psig (862 kPa gauge), the test pressure shall not exceed a value that produces hoop stress in the *piping* greater than 50 percent of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

705.3.4 Test medium. Deionized water shall be utilized to perform hydrostatic pressure testing and shall be obtained from a potable source. The medium utilized to perform pneumatic pressure testing shall be air, nitrogen, carbon dioxide or an inert gas; oxygen shall not be used.

705.3.5 Test duration. The minimum test duration shall be $^1/_2$ hour. The test duration shall be not less than $^1/_2$ hour for each 500 cubic feet (14.2 m^3) of pipe volume or fraction thereof. For *piping* systems having a volume of more than 24,000 cubic feet (680 m^3), the duration of the test shall not be required to exceed 24 hours. The test pressure required in Sections 705.3.1 and 705.3.2 shall be maintained for the entire duration of the test.

705.3.6 Test gauges. Gauges used for testing shall be as follows:

1. Tests requiring a pressure of 10 psig (68.95 kPa gauge) or less shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 0.10 psi (0.6895 kPa) or less.
2. Tests requiring a pressure greater than 10 psig (68.98 kPa gauge) but less than or equal to 100 psig (689.5 kPa gauge) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 1 psi (6.895 kPa) or less.
3. Tests requiring a pressure greater than 100 psig (689.5 kPa gauge) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 2 psi (13.79 kPa) or less.

Exception: Measuring devices having an equivalent level of accuracy and resolution shall be permitted where specified by the design engineer and *approved* by the code official.

705.3.7 Test preparation. Pipe joints, including welds, shall be left exposed for examination during the test.

705.3.7.1 Expansion joints. Expansion joints shall be provided with temporary restraints, if required, for the additional thrust load under test.

705.3.7.2 Equipment disconnection. Where the *piping* system is connected to appliances, *equipment* or components designed for operating pressures of less than the test pressure, such appliances, *equipment* and components shall be isolated from the *piping* system by disconnecting them and capping the *outlet*(s).

705.3.7.3 Equipment isolation. Where the *piping* system is connected to appliances, *equipment* or components designed for operating pressures equal to or greater than the test pressure, such appliances, *equipment* and components shall be isolated from the *piping* system by closing the individual *appliance*, *equipment* or component shutoff valve(s).

705.4 Detection of leaks and defects. The *piping* system shall withstand the test pressure specified for the test duration specified without showing any evidence of leakage or other defects. Any reduction of test pressures as indicated by pressure gauges shall indicate a leak within the system. *Piping* systems shall not be *approved* except where this reduction in pressure is attributed to some other cause.

705.4.1 Corrections. Where leakage or other defects are identified, the affected portions of the *piping* system shall be repaired and retested.

705.5 Purging of gaseous hydrogen piping systems. Purging shall comply with Sections 705.5.1 through 705.5.4.

705.5.1 Removal from service. Where *piping* is to be opened for servicing, addition or modification, the section to be worked on shall be isolated from the supply at the nearest convenient point and the line pressure vented to the outdoors. The remaining gas in this section of pipe shall be displaced with an inert gas.

705.5.2 Placing in operation. Prior to placing the system into operation, the air in the *piping* system shall be displaced with inert gas. The inert gas flow shall be continued without interruption until the vented gas is free of air. The inert gas shall then be displaced with hydrogen until the vented gas is free of inert gas. The point of discharge shall not be left unattended during purging. After purging, the vent opening shall be closed.

705.5.3 Discharge of purged gases. The open end of *piping* systems being purged shall not discharge into confined spaces or areas where there are sources of ignition except where precautions are taken to perform this operation in a safe manner by ventilation of the space, control of purging rate and elimination of all hazardous conditions.

705.5.3.1 Vent pipe outlets for purging. Vent pipe outlets for purging shall be located such that the inert gas and fuel gas is released outdoors and not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) above the adjacent ground level. Gases shall be discharged upward or horizontally away from adjacent walls to assist in dispersion. Vent outlets shall be located such that the gas will not be trapped by eaves or other obstructions and shall be at least 5 feet (1524 mm) from building openings and lot lines of properties that can be built upon.

705.5.4 Placing equipment in operation. After the *piping* has been placed in operation, all *equipment* shall be purged in accordance with Section 707.2 and then placed in operation, as necessary.

SECTION 706 (IFGC)
LOCATION OF GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEMS

[F] 706.1 General. The location and installation of gaseous hydrogen systems shall be in accordance with Sections 706.2 and 706.3.

Exception: Stationary fuel-cell power plants in accordance with Section 633.

[F] 706.2 Indoor gaseous hydrogen systems. Gaseous hydrogen systems shall be located in indoor rooms or areas in accordance with one of the following:

1. Inside a building in a hydrogen cutoff room designed and constructed in accordance with Section 421 of the *International Building Code*;

2. Inside a building not in a hydrogen cutoff room where the gaseous hydrogen system is *listed* and *labeled* for indoor installation and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions; and

3. Inside a building in a dedicated hydrogen fuel dispensing area having an aggregate hydrogen delivery capacity not greater than 12 SCFM and designed and constructed in accordance with Section 703.1.

[F] 706.3 Outdoor gaseous hydrogen systems. Gaseous hydrogen systems shall be located outdoors in accordance with Section 2309.3.2 of the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 707 (IFGC) OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE OF GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEMS

[F] 707.1 Maintenance. Gaseous hydrogen systems and detection devices shall be maintained in accordance with the *International Fire Code* and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

[F] 707.2 Purging. Purging of gaseous hydrogen systems, other than *piping* systems purged in accordance with Section 705.5, shall be in accordance with Section 2311.8 of the *International Fire Code* or in accordance with the system manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 708 (IFGC) DESIGN OF LIQUEFIED HYDROGEN SYSTEMS ASSOCIATED WITH HYDROGEN VAPORIZATION OPERATIONS

[F] 708.1 General. The design of liquefied hydrogen systems shall comply with Chapter 55 of the *International Fire Code*.

IFGC/IFGS CHAPTER 8

REFERENCED STANDARDS

This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 102.8.

Supplemental standards. The standards listed in this part shall supplement the list of referenced standards in Chapter 8 of the 2012 IFGC. The standards referenced in this rule shall be considered part of the requirements of this rule to the extent prescribed in each rule or reference.

ANSI

American National Standards Institute
25 West 43rd Street
Fourth Floor
New York, NY 10036

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ANSI A13.1—2007	Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems	704.1.2.2
ANSI CSA-America FC 1—03	Stationery Fuel Cell Power Systems	633.1
LC 1/CSA 6.26—05	Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)	403.5.4
ANSI LC-4—12	Press-connect Copper and Copper Alloy Fittings for Use In Fuel Gas Distribution Systems	403.10.1, 403.10.2
Z21.1—05	Household Cooking Gas Appliances	623.1
Z21.5.1/CSA 7.1—06	Gas Clothes Dryers—Volume I—Type 1 Clothes Dryers	613.1
Z21.5.2/CSA 7.2—05	Gas Clothes Dryers—Volume II—Type 2 Clothes Dryers	613.1, 614.3
Z21.8—94 (R2002)	Installation of Domestic Gas Conversion Burners	619.1
Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1—09	Gas Water Heaters—Volume I—Storage, Water Heaters with Input Ratings of 75,000 Btu per Hour or Less	624.1
Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3—04	Gas Water Heaters—Volume III—Storage, Water Heaters with Input Ratings Above 75,000 Btu per hour, Circulating and Instantaneous	624.1
Z21.11.2—07	Gas-fired Room Heaters-Volume II-Unvented Room Heaters	621.1
Z21.13/CSA 4.9—10	Gas-fired Low-pressure Steam and Hot Water Boilers	631.1
Z21.15/CGA 9.1—09	Manually Operated Gas Valves for Appliances, Appliance Connector Valves and Hose End Valves	409.1.1
Z21.19/CSA 1.4—02(R2007)	Refrigerators Using Gas (R1999) Fuel	625.1
Z21.24/CGA 6.10—06	Connectors for Gas Appliances	411.1
Z21.40.1/CGA 2.91—96 (R2002)	Gas-Fired Heat Activated Air Conditioning and Heat Pump Appliances	627.1
Z21.40.2/CGA 2.92—96 (R2002)	Gas-Fired Work Activated Air Conditioning and Heat Pump Appliances (Internal Combustion)	627.1
Z21.42—93 (R2002)	Gas-Fired Illuminating Appliances	628.1
Z21.47/CSA 2.3—06	Gas-Fired Central Furnaces	618.1
Z21.50/CSA 2.22—07	Vented Gas Fireplaces	604.1
Z21.56/CSA 4.7—06	Gas-Fired Pool Heaters	617.1
Z21.58/CSA 1.6—07	Outdoor Cooking Gas Appliances	623.1
Z21.60/CSA 2.26—03	Decorative Gas Appliances for Installation in Solid-fuel Burning Fireplaces	602.1
Z21.61—83 (R2004)	Gas-fired Toilets	626.1
Z21.69/CSA 6.16—09	Connectors for Movable Gas Appliances	411.1.1
Z21.75/CSA 6.27—07	Connectors for Outdoor Gas Appliances and Manufactured Homes	411.1, 411.2
Z21.80—03(R2008)	Line Pressure Regulators	410.1
Z21.84—02	Manually-lighted, Natural Gas Decorative Gas Appliances for Installation in Solid Fuel Burning Fireplaces—with Addenda Z21.84a-2003	602.1, 602.2
Z21.86—08	Vented Gas-fired Space Heating Appliances	608.1, 609.1, 622.1
Z21.88/CSA 2.33—09	Vented Gas Fireplace Heaters	605.1
Z21.91—07	Ventless Firebox Enclosures for Gas-fired Unvented Decorative Room Heaters	621.7.1
Z21.97—09	Outdoor Decorative Appliances	636
Z83.4/CSA 3.7—03	Nonrecirculating Direct-gas-fired Industrial Air Heaters	611.1
Z83.6—90 (R1998)	Gas-fired Infrared Heaters	630.1
Z83.8/CSA 2.6—09	Gas Unit Heater, Gas Packaged Heater, Gas Utility Heaters and Gas-fired Duct Furnaces	620.1
Z83.11/CSA 1.8—06	Gas Food Service Equipment	623.1
Z83.18—04	Recirculating Direct Gas-fired Industrial Air Heaters	612.1
Z83.19—01(R2005)	Gas-fired High-intensity Infrared Heaters	630.1
Z83.20—08	Gas-fired Low-intensity Infrared Heaters	630.1

ASME

American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Three Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
B1.20.1—83 (Reaffirmed 2006)	Pipe Threads, General Purpose (inch)	403.9
B16.1—2005 (Reaffirmed 2004)	Cast-iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, Class 25, 125 and 250	403.12
B16.20—98 (Reaffirmed 2007)	Metallic Gaskets for Pipe Flanges Ring-joint, Spiral-wound and Jacketed	403.12
B16.33—02 (Reaffirmed 2007)	Manually Operated Metallic Gas Valves for Use in Gas Piping Systems up to 125 psig (Sizes ½ through 2)	409.1.1
B16.44—2002 (Reaffirmed 2007)	Manually Operated Metallic Gas Valves for Use in Aboveground Piping Systems Up to 5 psi	409.1.1
B31.3—04	Process Piping	704.1.2, 704.1.2.4, 705.2, 705.3
B36.10M—2004	Welded and Seamless Wrought-steel Pipe	403.4.2
BPVC—07	ASME Boiler & Pressure Vessel Code (2007 Edition).	631.1, 703.2.2, 703.3.3, 703.3.4
CSD-1—2009	Controls and Safety Devices for Automatically Fired Boilers	631.1

ASTM

ASTM International
100 Barr Harbor Drive
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
A 53/A 53M—07	Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot Dipped Zinc-coated Welded and Seamless	403.4.2
A 106/A 106M—08	Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-temperature Service	403.4.2
A 254—97 (2007)	Specification for Copper Brazed Steel Tubing	403.5.1
B 88—03	Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube	403.5.2
B 210—04	Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes.	403.5.3
B 241/B 241M—02	Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-alloy, Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube	403.4.4, 403.5.3
C 315—07	Specification for Clay Flue Liners and Chimney Pots	501.12
D 2513—09	Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing and Fittings	403.6, 403.6.1, 403.11, 404.17.2
D 2513—08b	Specification for Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing and Fittings	403.6
F 1973—08	Standard Specification for Factory Assembled Anodeless Risers and Transition Fittings in Polyethylene (PE) and Polyamide 11 (PA11) and Polyamide 12 (PA12) Fuel Gas Distribution Systems	404.17.2

CGA

Compressed Gas Association
1725 Jefferson Davis High way, 5th Floor
Arlington, VA 22202-4102

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
S-1.1—(2002)	Pressure Relief Device Standards—Part 1—Cylinders for Compressed Gases	703.3
S-1.2—(1995)	Pressure Relief Device Standards—Part 2—Cargo and Portable Tanks for Compressed Gases	703.3
S-1.3—(1995)	Pressure Relief Device Standards—Part 3—Stationary Storage Containers for Compressed Gases	703.3

CSA

CSA America Inc.
8501 E. Pleasant Valley Rd.
Cleveland, OH USA 44131-5575

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ANSI CSA America FC1—03	Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems	633.1
CSA 8—93	Requirements for Gas-fired Log Lighters for Wood Burning Fireplaces—with Revisions through January 1999	603.1

DOTn

Department of Transportation
400 Seventh St. SW.
Washington, DC 20590

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
49 CFR, Parts 192.281(e) & 192.283 (b)—(2009)	Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by Pipeline: Minimum Federal Safety Standards	403.6.1
49 CFR Parts 100—180	Hazardous Materials Regulations	703.2.2, 703.3.3, 703.3.4

ICC

International Code Council, Inc.
500 New Jersey Ave, NW
6th Floor
Washington, DC 20001

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
IBC—12	International Building Code®	102.2.1, 201.3, 301.10, 301.11, 301.12, 301.14, 302.1, 302.2, 305.6, 306.6, 401.1.1, 412.6, 413.3, 413.3.1, 501.1, 501.3, 501.12, 501.15.4, 609.3, 614.2, 706.2, 706.3
IECC—12	International Energy Conservation Code®	301.2
IFC—12	International Fire Code®	201.3, 401.2, 412.1, 412.6, 412.7, 412.7.3, 412.8, 413.1, 413.3, 413.3.1, 413.5, 413.9.2.5, 701.1, 701.2, 703.2, 703.2.2, 703.3.8, 703.4, 703.5, 704.1.2, 704.3, 704.4, 706.2, 706.3, 707.1, 707.2, 708.1
IMC—12	International Mechanical Code®	101.2.5, 201.3, 301.1.1, 301.13, 304.11, 501.1, 614.2, 618.5, 621.1, 624.1, 631.2, 632.1, 703.1.2
IPC—12	International Plumbing Code®	201.3, 301.6, 624.1.1, 624.2
IRC—12	International Residential Code®	703.2.1

MSS

Manufacturers Standardization Society of
the Valve and Fittings Industry
127 Park Street, Northeast
Vienna, VA 22180

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
SP-6—01	Standard Finishes for Contact Faces of Pipe Flanges and Connecting-end Flanges of Valves and Fittings	403.12
SP-58—93	Pipe Hangers and Supports-Materials, Design and Manufacture	407.2

NFPA

National Fire Protection Association
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02269-9101

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
30A—12	Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages	305.4
37—10	Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines	616.1
51—02	Design and Installation of Oxygen-fuel Gas Systems for Welding, Cutting and Allied Processes	414.1
54—12	National Fuel Gas Code	301.3 MN
58—11	Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code	401.2, 402.6, 403.11
70—11	National Electrical Code	306.3.1, 306.4.1, 306.5.2, 309.2, 413.9.2.4, 703.6
82—09	Incinerators, Waste and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment	503.2.5, 607.1
85—11	Boiler and Combustion Systems Hazards Code	631.1
88A—11	Parking Structures	305.9

NFPA—continued

211—10	Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents and Solid Fuel-burning Appliances	503.5.2, 503.5.3, 503.5.6.1, 503.5.6.3
409—10	Aircraft Hangars	305.11
853—10	Installation of Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems	633.1

UL

Underwriters Laboratories Inc.
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
103—2001	Factory-built Chimneys, Residential Type and Building Heating Appliances—with Revisions through March 2010	506.1
127—08	Factory-built Fireplaces—with Revisions through January 2010	621.7
441—2010	Gas Vents—with Revisions through August 2006	502.1
641—95	Type L Low-temperature Venting Systems—with Revisions through July 2009	502.1
651—05	Schedule 40 and 80 Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings—with Revisions through March 2010	403.6.3
795—2006	Commercial-industrial Gas Heating Equipment—with Revisions through April 2010	610.1, 618.1, 631.1
959—01	Medium Heat Appliance Factory-built Chimneys—with Revisions through June 2010	506.3
1738—1993	Venting Systems for Gas Burning Appliances, Categories II, III and IV—with Revisions through October 2006	502.1
1777—2007	Chimney Liners—with Revisions through July 2009	501.12, 501.15.4
2200—98	Stationary Engine Generator Assemblies—with Revisions through December 2009	616.1

1346.5900 CHAPTER 9

INSTALLATION AND TESTING OF FUEL GAS-FIRED EQUIPMENT

Subpart 1. Chapter 9. The IFGC is amended by adding a chapter to read as follows:

CHAPTER 9
INSTALLATION AND TESTING OF FUEL GAS-FIRED EQUIPMENT

Subp. 2. Installation and testing of fuel gas-fired equipment; general. Chapter 9 shall regulate the installation and testing or repair of gas or fuel burning systems, gas or fuel burners, and gas or fuel burning *equipment* installed within, or in conjunction with, buildings or structures. The requirements of this chapter shall apply to the following *equipment*:

1. *Equipment* utilized to provide control of environmental conditions.

   Exception: *Equipment* and *appliances listed* and *labeled* to an appropriate standard by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, which is qualified to evaluate the *equipment* or *appliance*, when installed and tested according to the manufacturer's installation instructions.

2. *Equipment* with a fuel input of 1,000,000 Btu/hr or greater.
3. Unlisted *equipment*.
4. Miscellaneous *equipment* when required by the building official.

Subp. 3. Placing equipment in operation. After completion of the installation, all safety and operating controls and venting shall be tested before placing the burner in service. The correct input of fuel shall be determined and the fuel-to-air ratio set. Each gas or fuel burner shall be adjusted to its proper input according to the manufacturer's instructions. Overrating the burners or *appliance* is prohibited. Btu/hr input range shall be appropriate to the *appliance*.

1. The rate of flow of the gas or fuel shall be adjusted to within plus or minus two percent of the required Btu/hr rating at the manifold pressure specified by the manufacturer. When the prevailing pressure is less than the manifold pressure specified, the rates shall be adjusted at the prevailing pressure.
2. For conversion burners installed in hot water (liquid) boilers or warm air furnaces, the rate of flow of the gas or fuel in Btu/hr shall be adjusted to within plus or minus five percent of the calculated Btu/hr heat loss of the building in which it is installed, or the design load, and shall not exceed the design rate of the *appliance*.
3. For conversion burners installed in steam boilers, the gas or fuel hourly input demand shall be adjusted to meet the steam load requirements. The gas or fuel input demand necessitated by an oversized boiler shall be established and added to the input demand for load requirements to arrive at a total input demand.

Subp. 4. Pilot operation. Pilot flames shall ignite the gas or fuel at the main burner or burners and shall be adequately protected from drafts. Pilot flames shall not become extinguished during pilot cycle when the main burner or burners are turned on or off in a normal manner, either manually or by automatic controls.

Subp. 5. Burner operation. When testing to determine compliance with this section, care shall be exercised to prevent the accumulation of unburned gas or fuel in the *appliance* or flues that might result in explosion or fire.

1. The flames from each burner shall freely ignite the gas or fuel from adjacent burners when operating at the prevailing gas or fuel pressure and when the main control valve is regulated to deliver at one-third of the fuel gas or fuel rate.
2. Burner flames shall not flash back after immediate ignition nor after turning the fuel cock until the flow rate to the burner is one-third the full supply.
3. Burner flames shall not flash back when the gas or fuel is turned on or off by an automatic control mechanism.
4. Main burner flames shall ignite freely from each pilot when the main control valve is regulated to one-third the full gas or fuel rate and when the pilot flame is reduced to a minimum point at which it will actuate the safety device.
5. When ignition is made in a normal manner, the flame shall not flash outside the *appliance*.
6. Burners shall not expel gas or fuel through air openings when operating at prevailing pressure.
7. Burners shall have proper fuel air mixture to ensure smooth ignition of the main burner.
8. Dual fuel burners may have controls common or independent to both fuels. Transfer from one fuel to the other shall be by a manual interlock switching system to prevent the gas and other fuel being used simultaneously except by special permission from the building official. The building official shall consider whether an exception will provide equivalent safety. The transfer switch shall have a center off position and shall not pass through the center off position without stopping in the center off position.

Subp. 6. Method of test.

1. **Operational checking.** The flue gas, venting, safety and operating controls of the *appliance* shall be checked to ensure proper and safe operation.
2. **Method of test—atmospheric type/induced draft type/fan-assisted type.** The *appliance* shall be allowed to operate until the stack temperature becomes stabilized after which a sample of the undiluted flue products shall be taken from the *appliance*

flue outlet. The sample taken shall be analyzed for carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide and oxygen. Stack temperature shall be noted.

Note: *Appliance* designs incorporating induced draft assemblies may require a flue gas sample to be taken after the draft regulator or induced draft fan.

3.1. **Performance standards for atmospheric type.**

a. Minimum of 75 percent efficiency as determined by flue gas analysis method at *appliance* flue outlet.

b. Carbon monoxide concentration in flue gas not greater than 0.04 percent on an air-free basis.

c. Stack temperature not greater than 480°F, plus ambient.

d. Carbon dioxide concentration between 6 and 9 percent, inclusive.

e. Oxygen concentration between 4 and 10 percent, inclusive.

3.2. **Performance standards for induced draft type/ fan-assisted type.**

a. Minimum of 75 percent efficiency as determined by flue gas analysis method at *appliance* flue outlet.

b. Carbon monoxide concentration in flue gas not greater than 0.04 percent on an air free basis.

c. Stack temperature not greater than 480°F, plus ambient.

d. Oxygen concentration between 4 and 10 percent, inclusive, with carbon dioxide concentration between 6 and 9 percent, inclusive.

Note: Induced draft type and fan-assisted type *appliances* may require a sample to be taken after the induced draft fan, which may cause oxygen figures in excess of limits stated. In such cases, safe fuel combustion ratios shall be maintained and be consistent with appliance listing.

4. **Method of test—power type.** The *appliance* shall be allowed to operate until the stack temperature becomes stabilized after which a sample of the undiluted flue products shall be taken from the *appliance* flue outlet. The sample shall be analyzed for carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide and oxygen. Stack temperature shall be recorded.

5. **Performance standards for power type.**

a. Minimum of 80 percent efficiency as determined by flue gas analysis method at *appliance* flue outlet.

b. Carbon monoxide concentration in flue gas not greater than 0.04 percent.

c. Stack temperature not greater than 480°F plus ambient, or 125°F in excess of fluid temperature plus ambient.

d. Carbon dioxide concentration between 6 and 9 percent, inclusive.

e. Oxygen concentration between 3 and 10 percent, inclusive.

6. After completion of the test of newly installed gas or fuel burner *equipment* as provided in this section, complete test records shall be filed with the building official on an *approved* form. The tag stating the date of the test and the name of the installer shall be attached to the *appliance* at the main valve.

7. **Oxygen concentration.**

a. The concentration of oxygen in the undiluted flue products of gas or fuel burners shall in no case be less than 3 percent nor more than 10 percent, shall be in conformance with *applicable* performance standards and shall be consistent with the *appliance* listing.

b. The allowable limit of carbon monoxide shall not exceed 0.04 percent.

c. The flue gas temperature of a gas *appliance*, as taken on the *appliance* side of the draft regulator, shall not exceed *applicable* performance standards and shall be consistent with the *appliance* listing.

8. **Approved oxygen trim system.** The oxygen figures may not apply when there is an *approved* oxygen trim system on the burner that is designed for that use, including a low oxygen interlock when *approved* by the building official. The building official shall consider whether an exception will provide equivalent safety.

9. **Supervised start-up.**

a. Supervised start-up may be required to verify safe operation of gas or fuel burner and to provide documentation that operation is consistent with this code, listing and *approval*. Supervised start-up is required for all fuel burners in b, c, and d. Supervised start-up requires that fuel burners shall be tested in the presence of the building official in an *approved* manner. Testing shall include safety and operating controls, input, flue gas analysis, and venting. Flue gas shall be tested at high, medium and low fires. Provisions shall be made in the system to allow firing test in warm weather. After completion of the test of newly installed gas or fuel burner *equipment* as provided in this section, complete test records shall be filed with the building official on an *approved* form. The tag stating the date of the test and the name of the installer shall be attached to the *appliance* at the main valve.

b. Gas and fuel burners of 1,000,000 Btu/hr input or more require a supervised start-up as in a.

c. Installation of oxygen trim systems, modulating dampers, or other draft control or *combustion* devices require a supervised start-up as in a.

d. All direct-fired heaters require a supervised start-up as in a.

10. A complete control diagram of the installation and suitable operating instructions shall be supplied to the building official.

Subp. 7. Pressure regulators.

(a) General.

1. Regulators shall be provided with access for servicing.
2. Regulators shall be provided with a shutoff valve, union and test taps (both upstream and downstream of the regulator) for servicing.
3. All regulators with inlet gas pressure exceeding 14 inches water column pressure or used on an *appliance* having an input exceeding 400,000 Btu/hr shall have an *approved* high pressure manual gas valve in the supply piping upstream of the regulator.
4. All regulators with inlet gas pressure exceeding 14 inches water column pressure or used on an *appliance* having an input exceeding 400,000 Btu/hr shall be vented to the outdoors in separate vents sized according to the manufacturer's specifications.

   Exception: Regulators equipped with limiting orifices installed in accordance with amended IFGC Section 410.3.
5. Regulators may not be vented into a *combustion* chamber or an *appliance* vent.
6. Regulator vents shall terminate at least 3 feet (914 mm) from doors, operable windows, nonmechanical intake openings, and openings into direct-vent *appliances*. The vent termination shall be located at least 12 inches (305 mm) above grade and shall be suitably screened and hooded to prevent accidental closure of the vent pipe.
7. All pounds-to-pounds and pounds-to-inches regulators used as *appliance* regulators where downstream controls are not rated for upstream pressure shall be of the full lock-up type.

(b) Appliance.

1. *Appliance* regulators shall be installed consistent with the listing and *approval* of the *equipment* and the listing and *approval* of the regulator manufacturer.
2. Each gas burner or *appliance* shall have its own gas pressure regulator. This *appliance* regulator is in addition to any pounds-to-pounds or pounds-to-inches regulators in the system.

Subp. 8. Equipment information.

A. All installations of gas or fuel burners with input above 400,000 Btu/hr and all combination gas or fuel burners shall be *approved* before installation. The following information shall be supplied if required by the building official.

1. Name, model, and serial number of the burner.
2. Input rating and type of fuel.
3. Name of the nationally recognized testing laboratory that tested and *listed* the unit.
4. Name, model, and serial number of the furnace or boiler that the burner will be installed in if not part of a complete package.
5. A complete wiring diagram showing the factory and fuel wiring installed or to be installed including all controls, identified by the brand name and model number.
6. A print of the gas or fuel train from the manual shutoff to the *appliance* showing all controls that will be installed, their names, model numbers, and approvals.

B. All installations of gas or fuel burners with input above 400,000 Btu/hr and all combination gas and oil or other combination fuel burners that are installed in new or renovated boiler or *equipment* rooms, or are installed in a package with the boiler or furnace, shall include the following information in addition to that required in item A, subitems 1 to 6.

1. A complete piping diagram from the supply source showing all components and materials identified by brand name and model number with relevant approvals.
2. Detailed provisions for combustion air, venting, and stacks.
3. A floor plan drawn to scale showing all relevant *equipment*. Plans and specifications shall be *approved* before proceeding with an installation.

1346.6000 CHAPTER 10

MANUFACTURED HOME PARK/COMMUNITY FUEL GAS EQUIPMENT AND APPLIANCE INSTALLATION

Subpart 1. IFGC Chapter 10. The IFGC is amended by adding a chapter to read as follows:

CHAPTER 10
MANUFACTURED HOME PARK/COMMUNITY FUEL GAS EQUIPMENT AND APPLIANCE INSTALLATION

Subp. 2. General. Except as otherwise permitted or required by this chapter, all fuel gas *equipment* and *appliance* installations in manufactured home parks and communities shall comply with the provisions of this code. The provisions of this chapter shall not apply to manufactured home gas *piping*, *appliances*, and *equipment*.

Subp. 3. Required gas supply. The minimum hourly volume of gas required at each manufactured home lot outlet or any section of the manufactured home gas *piping* system shall be calculated as shown in IFGC Table 1002. Required gas supply for buildings or other fuel gas utilization *equipment* and *appliances* connected to the manufactured home gas *piping* system shall be calculated as provided in this code.

TABLE 1002
DEMAND FACTORS FOR CALCULATING GAS PIPING SYSTEMS IN MANUFACTURED HOME PARKS AND COMMUNITIES

NUMBER OF MANUFACTURED HOME SITES	DEMAND FACTOR (Btu/hr) PER MANUFACTURED HOME SITE	DEMAND FACTOR (watts) PER MANUFACTURED HOME SITE
1	125,000	36,638
2	117,000	34,293
3	104,000	30,482
4	96,000	28,138
5	92,000	26,965
6	87,000	25,500
7	83,000	24,327
8	81,000	23,741
9	79,000	23,155
10	77,000	22,569
11-20	66,000	19,345
21-30	62,000	18,172
31-40	58,000	17,000
41-60	55,000	16,121
Over 60	50,000	14,655

Subp. 4. Installation. Gas *piping* shall not be installed underground beneath buildings or that portion of the manufactured home lot reserved for the location of manufactured homes, manufactured home accessory buildings or structures, concrete slabs, or automobile parking, unless installed in a gas-tight conduit complying with the following:

1. The conduit shall be of material *approved* for installation underground beneath buildings and not less than Schedule 40 pipe. The interior diameter of the conduit shall be not less than 0.5 inch (15 mm) larger than the outside diameter of the gas *piping*.
2. The conduit shall extend to a point not less than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond any area where it is required to be installed, or the outside wall of a building, and the outer ends shall not be sealed. Where the conduit terminates within a building, it shall be provided with access, and the space between the conduit and the gas *piping* shall be sealed to prevent leakage of gas into the building.

Exception: A gas *piping* lateral terminating in a manufactured home lot riser surrounded by a concrete slab shall not be required to be installed in a conduit, provided the concrete slab is entirely outside the wall line of the manufactured home, and is used for stabilizing other utility connections.

Subp. 5. Manufactured home lot shutoff valve. Each manufactured home lot shall have an *approved* gas shutoff valve installed upstream of the manufactured home lot gas outlet and located on the outlet riser at a height at least 6 inches (152 mm) above grade. Such valve shall not be located under a manufactured home. When the manufactured home lot is not in use, the outlet shall be equipped with an *approved* cap or plug to prevent accidental discharge of gas.

Subp. 6. Manufactured home lot gas outlet. Each manufactured home lot piped for gas shall be provided with an individual outlet riser at the manufactured home lot. The manufactured home lot gas outlet shall terminate with the point of delivery in the rear third section and within 4 feet (1219 mm) of the proposed location of the manufactured home.

Subp. 7. Mechanical protection. All gas outlet risers, regulators, meters, valves, or other exposed *equipment* shall be protected from mechanical damage. Atmospherically controlled regulators shall be installed in such a manner that moisture cannot enter the regulator vent and accumulate above the diaphragm. Where the regulator vent may be obstructed due to snow and icing conditions, shields, hoods, or other suitable devices shall be provided to guard against closing the vent opening.

Subp. 8. Meters. Meters shall not be installed in unvented or inaccessible locations or closer than 3 feet (914 mm) from sources of ignition. When meters are installed, they shall not depend on the gas outlet riser for support, but shall be adequately supported by a post or bracket placed on a firm footing, or other means providing equivalent support.

Subp. 9. Meter shutoff valve. All meter installations shall be provided with a shutoff valve located adjacent to and on the inlet side of the meter. For installations utilizing a liquefied petroleum gas container, the container service valve shall serve as the shutoff valve.

Subp. 10. Gas pipe sizing. The size of each section of natural gas or liquefied petroleum gas *piping* systems shall be determined as specified in this code.

Subp. 11. Maintenance. The manufactured home park/community operator shall be responsible for maintaining all gas *piping* installations and *equipment* in good working condition.

APPENDIX A (IFGS)

SIZING AND CAPACITIES OF GAS PIPING

(This appendix is informative and is not part of the code.)

A.1 General piping considerations. The first goal of determining the pipe sizing for a fuel gas *piping* system is to make sure that there is sufficient gas pressure at the inlet to each *appliance*. The majority of systems are residential and the appliances will all have the same, or nearly the same, requirement for minimum gas pressure at the *appliance* inlet. This pressure will be about 5-inch water column (w.c.) (1.25 kPa), which is enough for proper operation of the *appliance* regulator to deliver about 3.5-inches water column (w.c.) (875 kPa) to the burner itself. The pressure drop in the *piping* is subtracted from the source delivery pressure to verify that the minimum is available at the *appliance*.

There are other systems, however, where the required inlet pressure to the different appliances may be quite varied. In such cases, the greatest inlet pressure required must be satisfied, as well as the farthest *appliance*, which is almost always the critical *appliance* in small systems.

There is an additional requirement to be observed besides the capacity of the system at 100-percent flow. That requirement is that at minimum flow, the pressure at the inlet to any *appliance* does not exceed the pressure rating of the *appliance* regulator. This would seldom be of concern in small systems if the source pressure is $^1/_2$ psi (14-inch w.c.) (3.5 kPa) or less but it should be verified for systems with greater gas pressure at the point of supply.

To determine the size of *piping* used in a gas *piping* system, the following factors must be considered:

(1) Allowable loss in pressure from *point of delivery* to *appliance*.

(2) Maximum gas demand.

(3) Length of *piping* and number of fittings.

(4) Specific gravity of the gas.

(5) Diversity factor.

For any gas *piping* system, or special *appliance*, or for conditions other than those covered by the tables provided in this code, such as longer runs, greater gas demands or greater pressure drops, the size of each gas *piping* system should be determined by standard engineering practices acceptable to the code official.

A.2 Description of tables.

A.2.1 General. The quantity of gas to be provided at each *outlet* should be determined, whenever possible, directly from the manufacturer's gas input Btu/h rating of the *appliance* that will be installed. In case the ratings of the appliances to be installed are not known, Table 402.2 shows the approximate consumption (in Btu per hour) of certain types of typical household appliances.

To obtain the cubic feet per hour of gas required, divide the total Btu/h input of all appliances by the average Btu heating value per cubic feet of the gas. The average Btu per cubic feet of the gas in the area of the installation can be obtained from the serving gas supplier.

A.2.2 Low pressure natural gas tables. Capacities for gas at low pressure [less than 2.0 psig (13.8 kPa gauge)] in cubic feet per hour of 0.60 specific gravity gas for different sizes and lengths are shown in Tables 402.4(1) and 402.4(2) for iron pipe or equivalent rigid pipe; in Tables 402.4(8) through 402.4(11) for smooth wall semirigid tubing; and in Tables 402.4(15) through 402.4(17) for corrugated stainless steel tubing. Tables 402.4(1) and 402.4(6) are based upon a pressure drop of 0.3-inch w.c. (75 Pa), whereas Tables 402.4(2), 402.4(9) and 402.4(15) are based upon a pressure drop of 0.5-inch w.c. (125 Pa). Tables 402.4(3), 402.4(4), 402.4(10), 402.4(11), 402.4(16) and 402.4(17) are special low-pressure applications based upon pressure drops greater than 0.5-inch w.c. (125 Pa). In using these tables, an allowance (in equivalent length of pipe) should be considered for any *piping* run with four or more fittings (see Table A.2.2).

A.2.3 Undiluted liquefied petroleum tables. Capacities in thousands of Btu per hour of undiluted liquefied petroleum gases based on a pressure drop of 0.5-inch w.c. (125 Pa) for different sizes and lengths are shown in Table 402.4(28) for iron pipe or equivalent rigid pipe, in Table 402.4(30) for smooth wall semi-rigid tubing, in Table 402.4(32) for corrugated stainless steel tubing, and in Tables 402.4(35) and 402.4(37) for polyethylene plastic pipe and tubing. Tables 402.4(33) and 402.4(34) for corrugated stainless steel tubing and Table 402.4(36) for polyethylene plastic pipe are based on operating pressures greater than $1^1/_2$ pounds per square inch (psi) (3.5 kPa) and pressure drops greater than 0.5-inch w.c. (125 Pa). In using these tables, an allowance (in equivalent length of pipe) should be considered for any *piping* run with four or more fittings [see Table A.2.2].

A.2.4 Natural gas specific gravity. Gas *piping* systems that are to be supplied with gas of a specific gravity of 0.70 or less can be sized directly from the tables provided in this code, unless the code official specifies that a gravity factor be applied. Where the specific gravity of the gas is greater than 0.70, the gravity factor should be applied.

Application of the gravity factor converts the figures given in the tables provided in this code to capacities for another gas of different specific gravity. Such application is accomplished by multiplying the capacities given in the tables by the multipliers shown in Table A.2.4. In case the exact specific gravity does not appear in the table, choose the next higher value specific gravity shown.

TABLE A.2.2
EQUIVALENT LENGTHS OF PIPE FITTINGS AND VALVES

		SCREWED FITTINGS[1]				90° WELDING ELBOWS AND SMOOTH BENDS[2]					
		45°/Ell	90°/Ell	180°close return bends	Tee	R/d = 1	R/d = 1 1/3	R/d = 2	R/d = 4	R/d = 6	R/d = 8
k factor =		0.42	0.90	2.00	1.80	0.48	0.36	0.27	0.21	0.27	0.36
L/d' ratio[4] *n* =		1 4	30	67	60	16	12	9	7	9	12
Nominal pipe size, inches	Inside diameter d, inches, Schedule 40[6]	L = Equivalent Length In Feet of Schedule 40 (Standard-weight) Straight Pipe[6]									
1/2	0.622	0.73	1.55	3.47	3.10	0.83	0.62	0.47	0.36	0.47	0.62
3/4	0.824	0.96	2.06	4.60	4.12	1.10	0.82	0.62	0.48	0.62	0.82
1	1.049	1.22	2.62	5.82	5.24	1.40	1.05	0.79	0.61	0.79	1.05
1 1/4	1.380	1.61	3.45	7.66	6.90	1.84	1.38	1.03	0.81	1.03	1.38
1 1/2	1.610	1.88	4.02	8.95	8.04	2.14	1.61	1.21	0.94	1.21	1.61
2	2.067	2.41	5.17	11.5	10.3	2.76	2.07	1.55	1.21	1.55	2.07
2 1/2	2.469	2.88	6.16	13.7	12.3	3.29	2.47	1.85	1.44	1.85	2.47
3	3.068	3.58	7.67	17.1	15.3	4.09	3.07	2.30	1.79	2.30	3.07
4	4.026	4.70	10.1	22.4	20.2	5.37	4.03	3.02	2.35	3.02	4.03
5	5.047	5.88	12.6	28.0	25.2	6.72	5.05	3.78	2.94	3.78	5.05
6	6.065	7.07	15.2	33.8	30.4	8.09	6.07	4.55	3.54	4.55	6.07
8	7.981	9.31	20.0	44.6	40.0	10.6	7.98	5.98	4.65	5.98	7.98
10	10.02	11.7	25.0	55.7	50.0	13.3	10.0	7.51	5.85	7.51	10.0
12	11.94	13.9	29.8	66.3	59.6	15.9	11.9	8.95	6.96	8.95	11.9
14	13.13	15.3	32.8	73.0	65.6	17.5	13.1	9.85	7.65	9.85	13.1
16	15.00	17.5	37.5	83.5	75.0	20.0	15.0	11.2	8.75	11.2	15.0
18	16.88	19.7	42.1	93.8	84.2	22.5	16.9	12.7	9.85	12.7	16.9
20	18.81	22.0	47.0	105.0	94.0	25.1	18.8	14.1	11.0	14.1	18.8
24	22.63	26.4	56.6	126.0	113.0	30.2	22.6	17.0	13.2	17.0	22.6

(continued)

TABLE A.2.2—continued
EQUIVALENT LENGTHS OF PIPE FITTINGS AND VALVES

		MITER ELBOWS[3] (No. of miters)					WELDING TEES		VALVES (screwed, flanged, or welded)			
		1-45°	1-60°	1-90°	2-90°[5]	3-90°[5]	Forged	Miter[3]	Gate	Globe	Angle	Swing Check
k factor =		0.45	0.90	1.80	0.60	0.45	1.35	1.80	0.21	10	5.0	2.5
L/d' ratio[4] n =		15	30	60	20	15	45	60	7	333	167	83
Nominal pipe size, inches	Inside diameter d, inches, Schedule 40[6]	L = Equivalent Length In Feet of Schedule 40 (Standard-weight) Straight Pipe[6]										
$^1/_2$	0.622	0.78	1.55	3.10	1.04	0.78	2.33	3.10	0.36	17.3	8.65	4.32
$^3/_4$	0.824	1.03	2.06	4.12	1.37	1.03	3.09	4.12	0.48	22.9	11.4	5.72
1	1.049	1.31	2.62	5.24	1.75	1.31	3.93	5.24	0.61	29.1	14.6	7.27
$1^1/_4$	1.380	1.72	3.45	6.90	2.30	1.72	5.17	6.90	0.81	38.3	19.1	9.58
$1^1/_2$	1.610	2.01	4.02	8.04	2.68	2.01	6.04	8.04	0.94	44.7	22.4	11.2
2	2.067	2.58	5.17	10.3	3.45	2.58	7.75	10.3	1.21	57.4	28.7	14.4
$2^1/_2$	2.469	3.08	6.16	12.3	4.11	3.08	9.25	12.3	1.44	68.5	34.3	17.1
3	3.068	3.84	7.67	15.3	5.11	3.84	11.5	15.3	1.79	85.2	42.6	21.3
4	4.026	5.04	10.1	20.2	6.71	5.04	15.1	20.2	2.35	112.0	56.0	28.0
5	5.047	6.30	12.6	25.2	8.40	6.30	18.9	25.2	2.94	140.0	70.0	35.0
6	6.065	7.58	15.2	30.4	10.1	7.58	22.8	30.4	3.54	168.0	84.1	42.1
8	7.981	9.97	20.0	40.0	13.3	9.97	29.9	40.0	4.65	22.0	111.0	55.5
10	10.02	12.5	25.0	50.0	16.7	12.5	37.6	50.0	5.85	278.0	139.0	69.5
12	11.94	14.9	29.8	59.6	19.9	14.9	44.8	59.6	6.96	332.0	166.0	83.0
14	13.13	16.4	32.8	65.6	21.9	16.4	49.2	65.6	7.65	364.0	182.0	91.0
16	15.00	18.8	37.5	75.0	25.0	18.8	56.2	75.0	8.75	417.0	208.0	104.0
18	16.88	21.1	42.1	84.2	28.1	21.1	63.2	84.2	9.85	469.0	234.0	117.0
20	18.81	23.5	47.0	94.0	31.4	23.5	70.6	94.0	11.0	522.0	261.0	131.0
24	22.63	28.3	56.6	113.0	37.8	28.3	85.0	113.0	13.2	629.0	314.0	157.0

For SI: 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: Values for welded fittings are for conditions where bore is not obstructed by weld spatter or backing rings. If appreciably obstructed, use values for "Screwed Fittings."

1. Flanged fittings have three-fourths the resistance of screwed elbows and tees.
2. Tabular figures give the extra resistance due to curvature alone to which should be added the full length of travel.
3. Small size socket-welding fittings are equivalent to miter elbows and miter tees.
4. Equivalent resistance in number of diameters of straight pipe computed for a value of (f - 0.0075) from the *relation* (n - $k/4f$).
5. For condition of minimum resistance where the centerline length of each miter is between d and $2^1/_2d$.
6. For pipe having other inside diameters, the equivalent resistance may be computed from the above n values.

Source: Crocker, S. *Piping Handbook*, 4th ed., Table XIV, pp. 100-101. Copyright 1945 by McGraw-Hill, Inc. Used by permission of McGraw-Hill Book Company.

**TABLE A.2.4
MULTIPLIERS TO BE USED WITH TABLES 402.4(1) THROUGH 402.4(22) WHERE THE SPECIFIC GRAVITY OF THE GAS IS OTHER THAN 0.60**

SPECIFIC GRAVITY	MULTIPLIER	SPECIFIC GRAVITY	MULTIPLIER
0.35	1.31	1.00	0.78
0.40	1.23	1.10	0.74
0.45	1.16	1.20	0.71
0.50	1.10	1.30	0.68
0.55	1.04	1.40	0.66
0.60	1.00	1.50	0.63
0.65	0.96	1.60	0.61
0.70	0.93	1.70	0.59
0.75	0.90	1.80	0.58
0.80	0.87	1.90	0.56
0.85	0.84	2.00	0.55
0.90	0.82	2.10	0.54

A.2.5 Higher pressure natural gas tables. Capacities for gas at pressures 2.0 psig (13.8 kPa) or greater in cubic feet per hour of 0.60 specific gravity gas for different sizes and lengths are shown in Tables 402.4(5) through 402.4(7) for iron pipe or equivalent rigid pipe; Tables 402.4(12) to 402.4(14) for semirigid tubing; Tables 402.4(18) and 402.4(19) for corrugated stainless steel tubing; and Table 402.4(22) for polyethylene plastic pipe.

A.3 Use of capacity tables.

A.3.1 Longest length method. This sizing method is conservative in its approach by applying the maximum operating conditions in the system as the norm for the system and by setting the length of pipe used to size any given part of the *piping* system to the maximum value.

To determine the size of each section of gas *piping* in a system within the range of the capacity tables, proceed as follows (also see sample calculations included in this Appendix):

(1) Divide the *piping* system into appropriate segments consistent with the presence of tees, branch lines and main runs. For each segment, determine the gas load (assuming all appliances operate simultaneously) and its overall length. An allowance (in equivalent length of pipe) as determined from Table A.2.2 shall be considered for *piping* segments that include four or more fittings.

(2) Determine the gas demand of each *appliance* to be attached to the *piping* system. Where Tables 402.4(1) through 402.4(24) are to be used to select the *piping* size, calculate the gas demand in terms of cubic feet per hour for each *piping* system *outlet*. Where Tables 402.4(25) through 402.4(37) are to be used to select the *piping* size, calculate the gas demand in terms of thousands of Btu per hour for each *piping* system *outlet*.

(3) Where the *piping* system is for use with other than undiluted liquefied petroleum gases, determine the design system pressure, the allowable loss in pressure (pressure drop), and specific gravity of the gas to be used in the *piping* system.

(4) Determine the length of *piping* from the *point of delivery* to the most remote *outlet* in the building/*piping* system.

(5) In the appropriate capacity table, select the row showing the measured length or the next longer length if the table does not give the exact length. This is the only length used in determining the size of any section of gas *piping*. If the gravity factor is to be applied, the values in the selected row of the table are multiplied by the appropriate multiplier from Table A.2.4.

(6) Use this horizontal row to locate ALL gas demand figures for this particular system of *piping*.

(7) Starting at the most remote *outlet*, find the gas demand for that *outlet* in the horizontal row just selected. If the exact figure of demand is not shown, choose the next larger figure left in the row.

(8) Opposite this demand figure, in the first row at the top, the correct size of gas *piping* will be found.

(9) Proceed in a similar manner for each *outlet* and each section of gas *piping*. For each section of *piping*, determine the total gas demand supplied by that section.

When a large number of *piping* components (such as elbows, tees and valves) are installed in a pipe run, additional pressure loss can be accounted for by the use of equivalent lengths. Pressure loss across any *piping* component can be equated to the pressure drop through a length of pipe. The equivalent length of a combination of only four elbows/tees can result in a jump to the next larger length row, resulting in a significant reduction in capacity. The equivalent lengths in feet shown in Table A.2.2 have been computed on a basis that the inside diameter corresponds to that of Schedule 40 (standard-weight) steel pipe, which is close enough for most purposes involving other schedules of pipe. Where a more specific solution for equivalent length is desired, this may be made by multiplying the actual inside diameter of the pipe in inches by $n/12$, or the actual inside diameter in feet by n (n can be read from the table heading). The equivalent length values can be used with reasonable accuracy for copper or brass fittings and bends although the resistance per foot of copper or brass pipe is less than that of steel. For copper or brass valves, however, the equivalent length of pipe should be taken as 45 percent longer than the values in the table, which are for steel pipe.

A.3.2 Branch length method. This sizing method reduces the amount of conservatism built into the traditional Longest Length Method. The longest length as measured from the meter to the furthest remote *appliance* is only used to size the initial parts of the overall *piping* system. The Branch Length Method is applied in the following manner:

(1) Determine the gas load for each of the connected appliances.

(2) Starting from the meter, divide the *piping* system into a number of connected segments, and determine the length and amount of gas that each segment would carry assuming that all appliances were operated simultaneously. An allowance (in equivalent length of pipe) as determined from Table A.2.2 should be considered for piping segments that include four or more fittings.

(3) Determine the distance from the *outlet* of the gas meter to the *appliance* furthest removed from the meter.

(4) Using the longest distance (found in Step 3), size each *piping* segment from the meter to the most remote *appliance outlet*.

(5) For each of these *piping* segments, use the longest length and the calculated gas load for all of the connected appliances for the segment and begin the sizing process in Steps 6 through 8.

(6) Referring to the appropriate sizing table (based on operating conditions and *piping* material), find the longest length distance in the first column or the next larger distance if the exact distance is not listed. The use of alternative operating pressures and/or pressure drops will require the use of a different sizing table, but will not alter the sizing methodology. In many cases, the use of alternative operating pressures and/or pressure drops will require the approval of both the code official and the local gas serving utility.

(7) Trace across this row until the gas load is found or the closest larger capacity if the exact capacity is not listed.

(8) Read up the table column and select the appropriate pipe size in the top row. Repeat Steps 6, 7 and 8 for each pipe segment in the longest run.

(9) Size each remaining section of branch *piping* not previously sized by measuring the distance from the gas meter location to the most remote *outlet* in that branch, using the gas load of attached appliances and following the procedures of Steps 2 through 8.

A.3.3 Hybrid pressure method. The sizing of a 2 psi (13.8 kPa) gas *piping* system is performed using the traditional Longest Length Method but with modifications. The 2 psi (13.8 kPa) system consists of two independent pressure zones, and each zone is sized separately. The Hybrid Pressure Method is applied as follows:

The sizing of the 2 psi (13.8 kPa) section (from the meter to the line regulator) is as follows:

(1) Calculate the gas load (by adding up the name plate ratings) from all connected appliances. (In certain circumstances the installed gas load may be increased up to 50 percent to accommodate future addition of appliances.) Ensure that the line regulator capacity is adequate for the calculated gas load and that the required pressure drop (across the regulator) for that capacity does not exceed $^3/_4$ psi (5.2 kPa) for a 2 psi (13.8 kPa) system. If the pressure drop across the regulator is too high (for the connected gas load), select a larger regulator.

(2) Measure the distance from the meter to the line regulator located inside the building.

(3) If there are multiple line regulators, measure the distance from the meter to the regulator furthest removed from the meter.

(4) The maximum allowable pressure drop for the 2 psi (13.8 kPa) section is 1 psi (6.9 kPa).

(5) Referring to the appropriate sizing table (based on *piping* material) for 2 psi (13.8 kPa) systems with a 1 psi (6.9 kPa) pressure drop, find this distance in the first column, or the closest larger distance if the exact distance is not listed.

(6) Trace across this row until the gas load is found or the closest larger capacity if the exact capacity is not listed.

(7) Read up the table column to the top row and select the appropriate pipe size.

(8) If there are multiple regulators in this portion of the *piping* system, each line segment must be sized for its actual gas load, but using the longest length previously determined above.

The low pressure section (all *piping* downstream of the line regulator) is sized as follows:

(1) Determine the gas load for each of the connected appliances.

(2) Starting from the line regulator, divide the piping system into a number of connected segments and/or independent parallel piping segments, and determine the amount of gas that each segment would carry assuming that all appliances were operated simultaneously. An allowance (in equivalent length of pipe) as determined from Table A.2.2 should be considered for piping segments that include four or more fittings.

(3) For each piping segment, use the actual length or longest length (if there are sub-branchlines) and the calculated gas load for that segment and begin the sizing process as follows:

(a) Referring to the appropriate sizing table (based on operating pressure and piping material), find the longest length distance in the first column or the closest larger distance if the exact distance is not listed. The use of alternative operating pressures and/or pressure drops will require the use of a different sizing table, but will not alter the sizing methodology. In many cases, the use of alternative operating pressures and/or pressure drops may require the approval of the code official.

(b) Trace across this row until the appliance gas load is found or the closest larger capacity if the exact capacity is not listed.

(c) Read up the table column to the top row and select the appropriate pipe size.

(d) Repeat this process for each segment of the piping system.

A.3.4 Pressure drop per 100 feet method. This sizing method is less conservative than the others, but it allows the designer to immediately see where the largest pressure drop occurs in the system. With this information, modifications can be made to bring the total drop to the critical *appliance* within the limitations that are presented to the designer.

Follow the procedures described in the Longest Length Method for Steps (1) through (4) and (9).

For each *piping* segment, calculate the pressure drop based on pipe size, length as a percentage of 100 feet (30 480 mm) and gas flow. Table A.3.4 shows pressure drop per 100 feet (30 480 mm) for pipe sizes from $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) through 2 inches (51 mm). The sum of pressure drops to the critical *appliance* is subtracted from the supply pressure to verify that sufficient pressure will be available. If not, the layout can be examined to find the high drop section(s) and sizing selections modified.

Note: Other values can be obtained by using the following equation:

$$\text{Desired Value} = MBH \times \sqrt{\frac{\text{Desired Drop}}{\text{Table Drop}}}$$

For example, if it is desired to get flow through $^3/_4$-inch (19.1 mm) pipe at 2 inches/100 feet, multiply the capacity of $^3/_4$-inch pipe at 1 inch/100 feet by the square root of the pressure ratio:

$$147\ MBH \times \sqrt{\frac{2''\text{ w.c.}}{1''\text{ w.c.}}} = 147 \times 1.414 = 208\ MBH$$

(MBH = 1000 Btu/h)

A.4 Use of sizing equations. Capacities of smooth wall pipe or tubing can also be determined by using the following formulae:

(1) High Pressure [1.5 psi (10.3 kPa) and above]:

$$Q = 181.6\sqrt{\frac{D^5 \cdot (P_1^2 - P_2^2) \cdot Y}{C_r \cdot fba \cdot L}}$$

$$= 2237\ D^{2.623}\left[\frac{(P_1^2 - P_2^2) \cdot Y}{C_r \cdot L}\right]^{0.541}$$

(2) Low Pressure [Less than 1.5 psi (10.3 kPa)]:

$$Q = 187.3\sqrt{\frac{D^5 \cdot \Delta H}{C_r \cdot fba \cdot L}}$$

$$= 2313 D^{2.623}\left(\frac{\Delta H}{C_r \cdot L}\right)^{0.541}$$

where:

Q = Rate, cubic feet per hour at 60°F and 30-inch mercury column

D = Inside diameter of pipe, in.

P_1 = Upstream pressure, psia

P_2 = Downstream pressure, psia

Y = Superexpansibility factor = 1/supercompressibility factor

C_r = Factor for viscosity, density and temperature*

$$= 0.00354\ ST\left(\frac{Z}{S}\right)^{0.152}$$

Note: See Table 402.4 for Y and C_r for natural gas and propane.

TABLE A.3.4
THOUSANDS OF BTU/H (MBH) OF NATURAL GAS PER 100 FEET OF PIPE AT VARIOUS PRESSURE DROPS AND PIPE DIAMETERS

PRESSURE DROP PER 100 FEET IN INCHES W.C.	PIPE SIZES (inch)					
	$^1/_2$	$^3/_4$	1	$1^1/_4$	$1^1/_2$	2
0.2	31	64	121	248	372	716
0.3	38	79	148	304	455	877
0.5	50	104	195	400	600	1160
1.0	71	147	276	566	848	1640

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

S = Specific gravity of gas at 60°F and 30-inch mercury column (0.60 for natural gas, 1.50 for propane), or = 1488μ

T = Absolute temperature, °F or = *t* + 460

t = Temperature, °F

Z = Viscosity of gas, centipoise (0.012 for natural gas, 0.008 for propane), or = 1488μ

fba = Base friction factor for air at 60°F (CF = 1)

L = Length of pipe, ft

Δ*H* = Pressure drop, in. w.c. (27.7 in. H_2O = 1 psi)

(For SI, see Section 402.4)

A.5 Pipe and tube diameters. Where the internal diameter is determined by the formulas in Section 402.4, Tables A.5.1 and A.5.2 can be used to select the nominal or standard pipe size based on the calculated internal diameter.

TABLE A.5.1
SCHEDULE 40 STEEL PIPE STANDARD SIZES

NOMINAL SIZE (inch)	INTERNAL DIAMETER (inch)	NOMINAL SIZE (inch)	INTERNAL DIAMETER (inch)
1/4	0.364	1 1/2	1.610
3/8	0.493	2	2.067
1/2	0.622	2 1/2	2.469
3/4	0.824	3	3.068
1	1.049	3 1/2	3.548
1 1/4	1.380	4	4.026

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

A.6 Use of sizing charts. A third method of sizing gas *piping* is detailed below as an option that is useful when large quantities of *piping* are involved in a job (e.g., an apartment house) and material costs are of concern. If the user is not completely familiar with this method, the resulting pipe sizing should be checked by a knowledgeable gas engineer. The sizing charts are applied as follows:

(1) With the layout developed according to Section 106.3.1 of the code, indicate in each section the design gas flow under maximum operation conditions. For many layouts, the maximum design flow will be the sum of all connected loads; however, in some cases, certain combinations of appliances will not occur simultaneously (e.g., gas heating and *air conditioning*). For these cases, the design flow is the greatest gas flow that can occur at any one time.

(2) Determine the inlet gas pressure for the system being designed. In most cases, the point of inlet will be the gas meter or service regulator, but in the case of a system addition, it could be the point of connection to the existing system.

(3) Determine the minimum pressure required at the inlet to the critical *appliance*. Usually, the critical item will be the *appliance* with the highest required pressure for satisfactory operation. If several items have the same required pressure, it will be the one with the greatest length of *piping* from the system inlet.

(4) The difference between the inlet pressure and critical item pressure is the allowable system pressure drop. Figures A.6(a) and A.6(b) show the relationship between gas flow, pipe size and pipe length for natural gas with 0.60 specific gravity.

(5) To use Figure A.6(a) (low pressure applications), calculate the *piping* length from the inlet to the critical

TABLE A.5.2
COPPER TUBE STANDARD SIZES

TUBE TYPE	NOMINAL OR STANDARD SIZE (inches)	INTERNAL DIAMETER (inches)
K	1/4	0.305
L	1/4	0.315
ACR (D)	3/8	0.315
ACR (A)	3/8	0.311
K	3/8	0.402
L	3/8	0.430
ACR (D)	1/2	0.430
ACR (A)	1/2	0.436
K	1/2	0.527
L	1/2	0.545
ACR (D)	5/8	0.545
ACR (A)	5/8	0.555
K	5/8	0.652
L	5/8	0.666
ACR (D)	3/4	0.666
ACR (A)	3/4	0.680
K	3/4	0.745
L	3/4	0.785
ACR	7/8	0.785
K	1	0.995
L	1	1.025
ACR	1 1/8	1.025
K	1 1/4	1.245
L	1 1/4	1.265
ACR	1 3/8	1.265
K	1 1/2	1.481
L	1 1/2	1.505
ACR	1 5/8	1.505
K	2	1.959
L	2	1.985
ACR	2 1/8	1.985
K	2 1/2	2.435
L	2 1/2	2.465
ACR	2 5/8	2.465
K	3	2.907
L	3	2.945
ACR	3 1/8	2.945

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

appliance. Increase this length by 50 percent to allow for fittings. Divide the allowable pressure drop by the equivalent length (in hundreds of feet) to determine the allowable pressure drop per 100 feet (30 480 mm). Select the pipe size from Figure A.6(a) for the required volume of flow.

(6) To use Figure A.6(b) (high pressure applications), calculate the equivalent length as above. Calculate the index number for Figure A.6(b) by dividing the difference between the squares of the absolute values of inlet and *outlet* pressures by the equivalent length (in hundreds of feet). Select the pipe size from Figure A.6(b) for the gas volume required.

A.7 Examples of piping system design and sizing.

A.7.1 Example 1: Longest length method. Determine the required pipe size of each section and *outlet* of the *piping* system shown in Figure A.7.1, with a designated pressure drop of 0.5-inch w.c. (125 Pa) using the Longest Length Method. The gas to be used has 0.60 specific gravity and a heating value of 1,000 Btu/ft^3 (37.5 MJ/m^3).

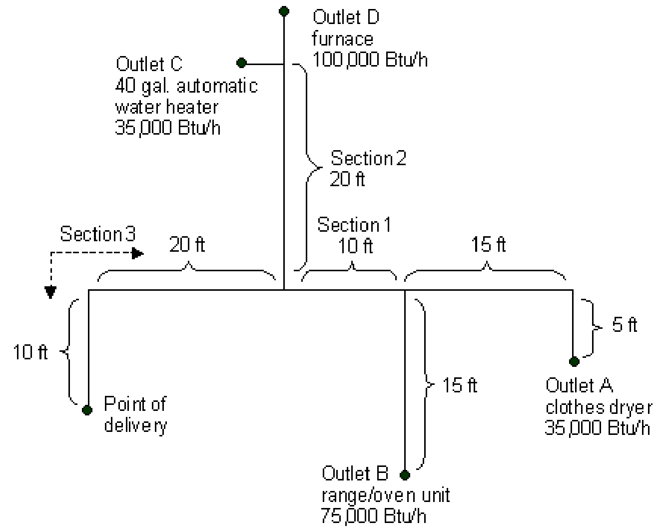


FIGURE A.7.1
PIPING PLAN SHOWING A STEEL PIPING SYSTEM

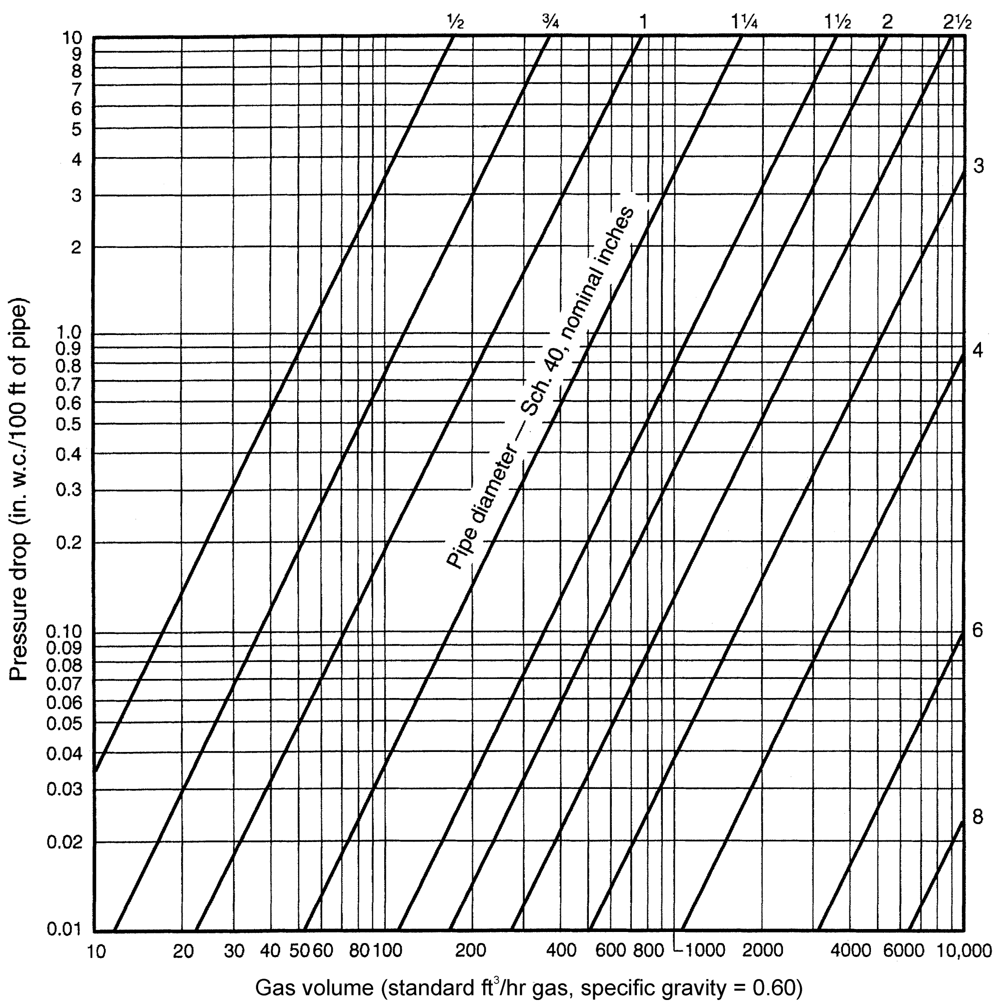


FIGURE A.6(a)
CAPACITY OF NATURAL GAS PIPING, LOW PRESSURE (0.60 WC)

Solution:

(1) Maximum gas demand for *Outlet* A:

$$\frac{\text{Consumption (rating plate input, or Table 402.2 if necessary}}{\text{Btu of gas}} =$$

$$\frac{\text{35,000 Btu per hour rating}}{\text{1,000 Btu per cubic foot}} = \text{35 cubic feet per hour = 35 cfh}$$

Maximum gas demain for *Outlet* B:

$$\frac{\text{Consumption}}{\text{Btu of gas}} = \frac{75{,}000}{1{,}000} = \text{75 cfh}$$

Maximum gas demain for *Outlet* C:

$$\frac{\text{Consumption}}{\text{Btu of gas}} = \frac{35{,}000}{1{,}000} = \text{35 cfh}$$

Maximum gas demain for *Outlet* D:

$$\frac{\text{Consumption}}{\text{Btu of gas}} = \frac{100{,}000}{1{,}000} = \text{100 cfh}$$

(2) The length of pipe from the *point of delivery* to the most remote *outlet* (A) is 60 feet (18 288 mm). This is the only distance used.

(3) Using the row marked 60 feet (18 288 mm) in Table 402.4(2):

(a) *Outlet* A, supplying 35 cfh (0.99 m^3/hr), requires $^1/_2$-inch pipe.

(b) *Outlet* B, supplying 75 cfh (2.12 m^3/hr), requires $^3/_4$-inch pipe.

(c) Section 1, supplying *Outlets* A and B, or 110 cfh (3.11 m^3/hr), requires $^3/_4$-inch pipe.

(d) Section 2, supplying *Outlets* C and D, or 135 cfh (3.82 m^3/hr), requires $^3/_4$-inch pipe.

(e) Section 3, supplying *Outlets* A, B, C and D, or 245 cfh (6.94 m^3/hr), requires 1-inch pipe.

(4) If a different gravity factor is applied to this example, the values in the row marked 60 feet (18 288 mm) of Table 402.4(2) would be multiplied by the appropriate multiplier from Table A.2.4 and the resulting cubic feet per hour values would be used to size the *piping*.

A.7.2 Example 2: Hybrid or dual pressure systems. Determine the required CSST size of each section of the *piping* system shown in Figure A.7.2, with a designated pressure

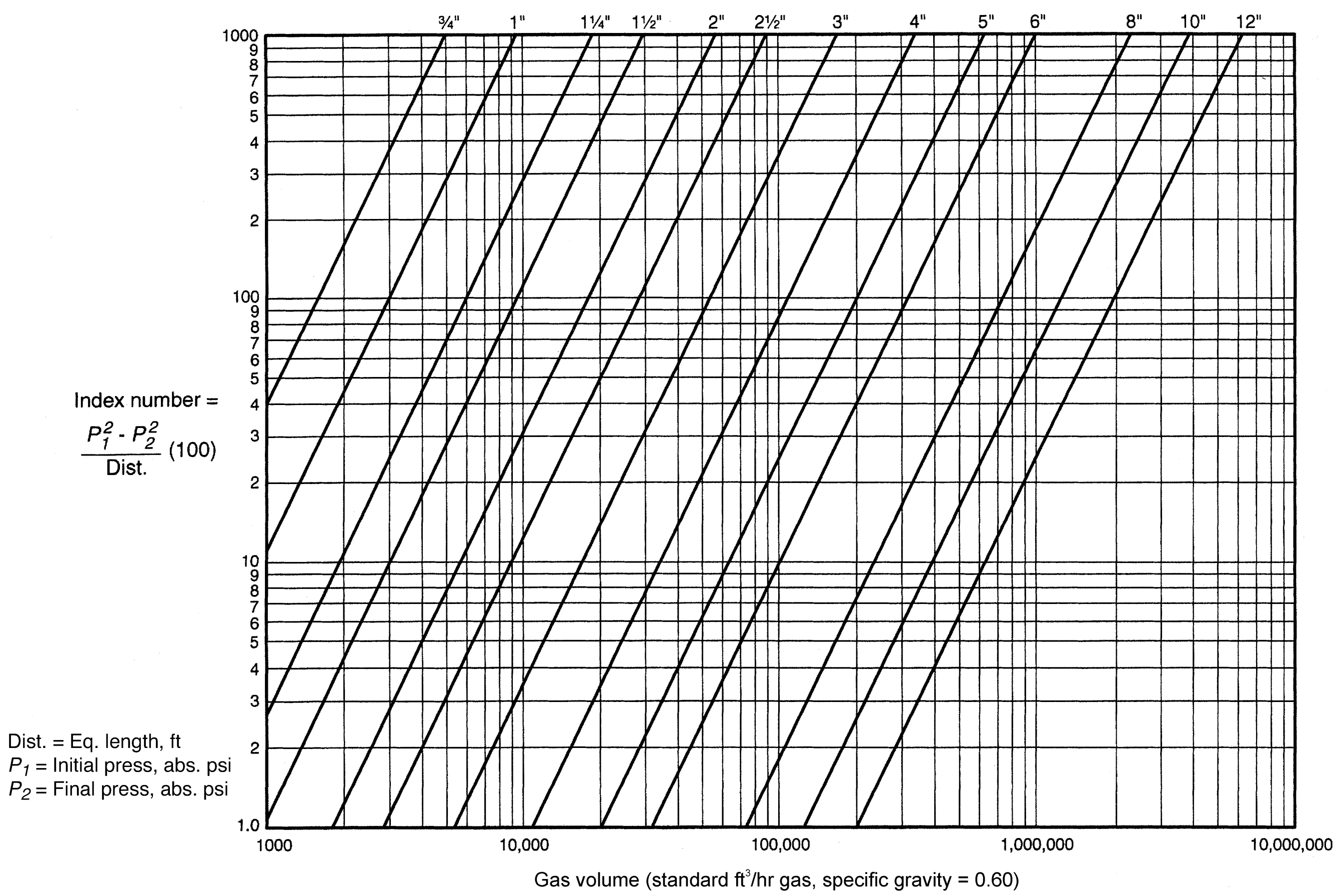


FIGURE A.6(b)
CAPACITY OF NATURAL GAS PIPING, HIGH PRESSURE (1.5 psi and above)

drop of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) for the 2 psi (13.8 kPa) section and 3-inch w.c. (0.75 kPa) pressure drop for the 13-inch w.c. (2.49 kPa) section. The gas to be used has 0.60 specific gravity and a heating value of 1,000 Btu/ft^3 (37.5 MJ/ m^3).

Solution:

(1) Size 2 psi (13.8 kPa) line using Table 402.4(18).

(2) Size 10-inch w.c. (2.5 kPa) lines using Table 402.4(16).

(3) Using the following, determine if sizing tables can be used.

(a) Total gas load shown in Figure A.7.2 equals 110 cfh (3.11 m^3/hr).

(b) Determine pressure drop across regulator [see notes in Table 402.4(18)].

(c) If pressure drop across regulator exceeds $^3/_4$ psig (5.2 kPa), Table 402.4(18) cannot be used. Note: If pressure drop exceeds $^3/_4$ psi (5.2 kPa), then a larger regulator must be selected or an alternative sizing method must be used.

(d) Pressure drop across the line regulator [for 110 cfh (3.11 m^3/hr)] is 4-inch w.c. (0.99 kPa) based on manufacturer's performance data.

(e) Assume the CSST manufacturer has tubing sizes or EHDs of 13, 18, 23 and 30.

(4) Section A [2 psi (13.8 kPa) zone]

(a) Distance from meter to regulator = 100 feet (30 480 mm).

(b) Total load supplied by A = 110 cfh (3.11 m^3/hr) (furnace + water heater + dryer).

(c) Table 402.4(18) shows that EHD size 18 should be used.

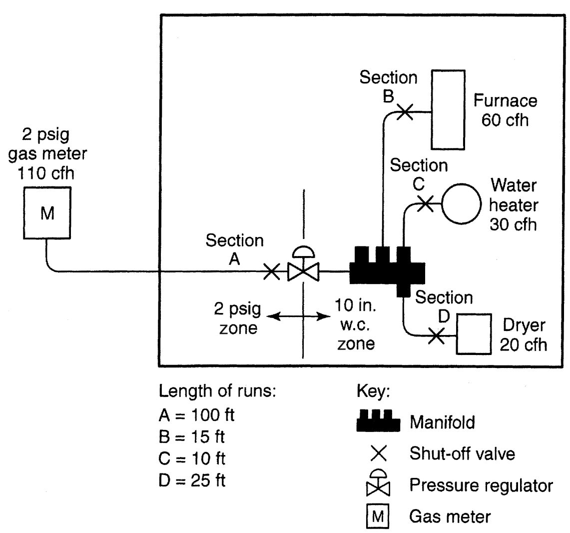


FIGURE A.7.2
PIPING PLAN SHOWING A CSST SYSTEM

Note: It is not unusual to oversize the supply line by 25 to 50 percent of the as-installed load. EHD size 18 has a capacity of 189 cfh (5.35 m^3/hr).

(5) Section B (low pressure zone)

(a) Distance from regulator to furnace is 15 feet (4572 mm).

(b) Load is 60 cfh (1.70 m^3/hr).

(c) Table 402.4(16) shows that EHD size 13 should be used.

(6) Section C (low pressure zone)

(a) Distance from regulator to water heater is 10 feet (3048 mm).

(b) Load is 30 cfh (0.85 m^3/hr).

(c) Table 402.4(16) shows that EHD size 13 should be used.

(7) Section D (low pressure zone)

(a) Distance from regulator to dryer is 25 feet (7620 mm).

(b) Load is 20 cfh (0.57 m^3/hr).

(c) Table 402.4(16) shows that EHD size 13 should be used.

A.7.3 Example 3: Branch length method. Determine the required semirigid copper tubing size of each section of the *piping* system shown in Figure A.7.3, with a designated pressure drop of 1-inch w.c. (250 Pa) (using the Branch Length Method). The gas to be used has 0.60 specific gravity and a heating value of 1,000 Btu/ft^3 (37.5 MJ/m^3).

Solution:

(1) Section A

(a) The length of tubing from the *point of delivery* to the most remote *appliance* is 50 feet (15 240 mm), A + C.

(b) Use this longest length to size Sections A and C.

(c) Using the row marked 50 feet (15 240 mm) in Table 402.4(10), Section A, supplying 220 cfh (6.2 m^3/hr) for four appliances requires 1-inch tubing.

(2) Section B

(a) The length of tubing from the *point of delivery* to the range/oven at the end of Section B is 30 feet (9144 mm), A + B.

(b) Use this branch length to size Section B only.

(c) Using the row marked 30 feet (9144 mm) in Table 402.4(10), Section B, supplying 75 cfh (2.12 m^3/hr) for the range/oven requires $^1/_2$-inch tubing.

(3) Section C

(a) The length of tubing from the *point of delivery* to the dryer at the end of Section C is 50 feet (15 240 mm), A + C.

(b) Use this branch length (which is also the longest length) to size Section C.

(c) Using the row marked 50 feet (15 240 mm) in Table 402.4(10), Section C, supplying 30 cfh (0.85 m^3/hr) for the dryer requires $^3/_8$-inch tubing.

(4) Section D

(a) The length of tubing from the *point of delivery* to the water heater at the end of Section D is 30 feet (9144 mm), A + D.

(b) Use this branch length to size Section D only.

(c) Using the row marked 30 feet (9144 mm) in Table 402.4(10), Section D, supplying 35 cfh (0.99 m^3/hr) for the water heater requires $^3/_8$-inch tubing.

(5) Section E

(a) The length of tubing from the *point of delivery* to the furnace at the end of Section E is 30 feet (9144 mm), A + E.

(b) Use this branch length to size Section E only.

(c) Using the row marked 30 feet (9144 mm) in Table 402.4(10), Section E, supplying 80 cfh (2.26 m^3/hr) for the furnace requires $^1/_2$-inch tubing.

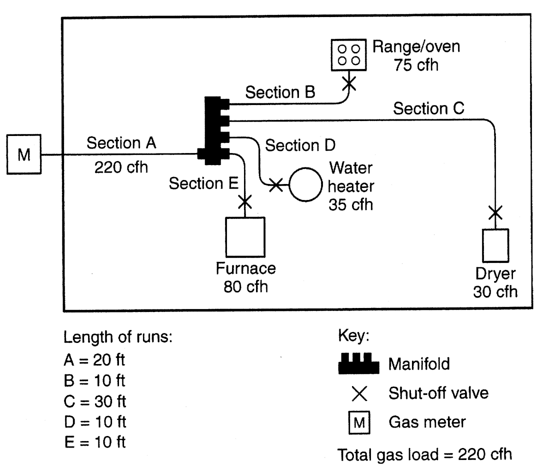


FIGURE A.7.3
PIPING PLAN SHOWING A COPPER TUBING SYSTEM

A.7.4 Example 4: Modification to existing piping system. Determine the required CSST size for Section G (retrofit application) of the *piping* system shown in Figure A.7.4, with a designated pressure drop of 0.5-inch w.c. (125 Pa) using the branch length method. The gas to be used has 0.60 specific gravity and a heating value of 1,000 Btu/ft^3 (37.5 MJ/m^3).

Solution:

(1) The length of pipe and CSST from the *point of delivery* to the retrofit *appliance* (barbecue) at the end of Section G is 40 feet (12 192 mm), A + B + G.

(2) Use this branch length to size Section G.

(3) Assume the CSST manufacturer has tubing sizes or EHDs of 13, 18, 23 and 30.

(4) Using the row marked 40 feet (12 192 mm) in Table 402.4(15), Section G, supplying 40 cfh (1.13 m^3/hr) for the barbecue requires EHD 18 CSST.

(5) The sizing of Sections A, B, F and E must be checked to ensure adequate gas carrying capacity since an *appliance* has been added to the *piping* system (see A.7.1 for details).

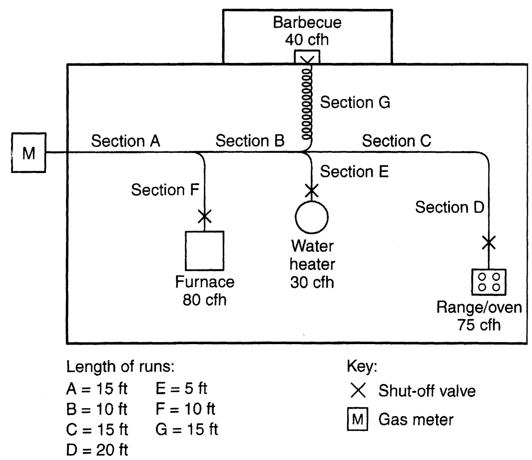


FIGURE A.7.4
PIPING PLAN SHOWING A MODIFICATION TO EXISTING PIPING SYSTEM

A.7.5 Example 5: Calculating pressure drops due to temperature changes. A test *piping* system is installed on a warm autumn afternoon when the temperature is 70°F (21°C). In accordance with local custom, the new *piping* system is subjected to an air pressure test at 20 psig (138 kPa). Overnight, the temperature drops and when the inspector shows up first thing in the morning the temperature is 40°F (4°C).

If the volume of the *piping* system is unchanged, then the formula based on Boyle's and Charles' law for determining the new pressure at a reduced temperature is as follows:

$$\frac{T_1}{T_2} = \frac{P_1}{P_2}$$

where:

T_1 = Initial temperature, absolute (T_1 + 459)

T_2 = Final temperature, absolute (T_2 + 459)

P_1 = Initial pressure, psia (P_1 + 14.7)

P_2 = Final pressure, psia (P_2 + 14.7)

$$\frac{(70+459)}{(40+459)} = \frac{(20+14.7)}{(P_2+14.7)}$$

$$\frac{529}{499} = \frac{34.7}{(P_2+14.7)}$$

$$(P_2+14.7) \times \frac{529}{499} = 34.7$$

$$(P_2+14.7) \times \frac{34.7}{1.060}$$

P_2 = 32.7 - 14.7

P_2 = 18 *psig*

Therefore, the gauge could be expected to register 18 psig (124 kPa) when the ambient temperature is 40°F (4°C).

A.7.6 Example 6: Pressure drop per 100 feet of pipe method. Using the layout shown in Figure A.7.1 and ΔH = pressure drop, in w.c. (27.7 in. H_2O = 1 psi), proceed as follows:

(1) Length to A = 20 feet, with 35,000 Btu/hr.

For $^1/_2$-inch pipe, ΔH = $^{20\ \text{feet}}/_{100\ \text{feet}}$ × 0.3 inch w.c. = 0.06 in w.c.

(2) Length to B = 15 feet, with 75,000 Btu/hr.

For $^3/_4$-inch pipe, ΔH = $^{15\ \text{feet}}/_{100\ \text{feet}}$ × 0.3 inch w.c. = 0.045 in w.c.

(3) Section 1 = 10 feet, with 110,000 Btu/hr. Here there is a choice:

For 1 inch pipe: ΔH = $^{10\ \text{feet}}/_{100\ \text{feet}}$ × 0.2 inch w.c. = 0.02 in w.c.

For $^3/_4$-inch pipe: ΔH = $^{10\ \text{feet}}/_{100\ \text{feet}}$ × [0.5 inch w.c. + $^{(110{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr}-104{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr})}/_{(147{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr}-104{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr})}$ × (1.0 inches w.c. - 0.5 inch w.c.)] = 0.1 × 0.57 inch w.c.≈ 0.06 inch w.c.

Note that the pressure drop between 104,000 Btu/hr and 147,000 Btu/hr has been interpolated as 110,000 Btu/hr.

(4) Section 2 = 20 feet, with 135,000 Btu/hr. Here there is a choice:

For 1-inch pipe: ΔH = $^{20\ \text{feet}}/_{100\ \text{feet}}$ × [0.2 inch w.c. + $^{(14{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr})}/_{(27{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr})}$ × 0.1 inch w.c.] = 0.05 inch w.c.

For $^3/_4$-inch pipe: ΔH = $^{20\ \text{feet}}/_{100\ \text{feet}}$ × 1.0 inch w.c. = 0.2 inch w.c.

Note that the pressure drop between 121,000 Btu/hr and 148,000 Btu/hr has been interpolated as 135,000 Btu/hr, but interpolation for the ¾-inch pipe (trivial for 104,000 Btu/hr to 147,000 Btu/hr) was not used.

(5) Section 3 = 30 feet, with 245,000 Btu/hr. Here there is a choice:

For 1-inch pipe: ΔH = $^{30\ \text{feet}}/_{100\ \text{feet}}$ × 1.0 inches w.c. = 0.3 inch w.c.

For $1^1/_4$-inch pipe: ΔH = $^{30\ \text{feet}}/_{100\ \text{feet}}$ × 0.2 inch w.c. = 0.06 inch w.c.

Note that interpolation for these options is ignored since the table values are close to the 245,000 Btu/hr carried by that section.

(6) The total pressure drop is the sum of the section approaching A, Sections 1 and 3, or either of the following, depending on whether an absolute minimum is needed or the larger drop can be accommodated.

Minimum pressure drop to farthest *appliance*:

ΔH = 0.06 inch w.c. + 0.02 inch w.c. + 0.06 inch w.c. = 0.14 inch w.c.

Larger pressure drop to the farthest *appliance*:

ΔH = 0.06 inch w.c. + 0.06 inch w.c. + 0.3 inch w.c. = 0.42 inch w.c.

Notice that Section 2 and the run to B do not enter into this calculation, provided that the appliances have similar input pressure requirements.

For SI units: 1 Btu/hr = 0.293 W, 1 cubic foot = 0.028 m^3, 1 foot = 0.305 m, 1 inch w.c. = 249 Pa.

APPENDIX B (IFGS)

SIZING OF VENTING SYSTEMS SERVING APPLIANCES EQUIPPED WITH DRAFT HOODS, CATEGORY I APPLIANCES AND APPLIANCES LISTED FOR USE WITH TYPE B VENTS

(This appendix is informative and is not part of the code.)

EXAMPLES USING SINGLE APPLIANCE VENTING TABLES

Example 1: Single draft-hood-equipped appliance.

An installer has a 120,000 British thermal unit (Btu) per hour input *appliance* with a 5-inch-diameter draft hood outlet that needs to be vented into a 10-foot-high Type B vent system. What size vent should be used assuming (a) a 5-foot lateral single-wall metal vent connector is used with two 90-degree elbows, or (b) a 5-foot lateral single-wall metal vent connector is used with three 90-degree elbows in the vent system?

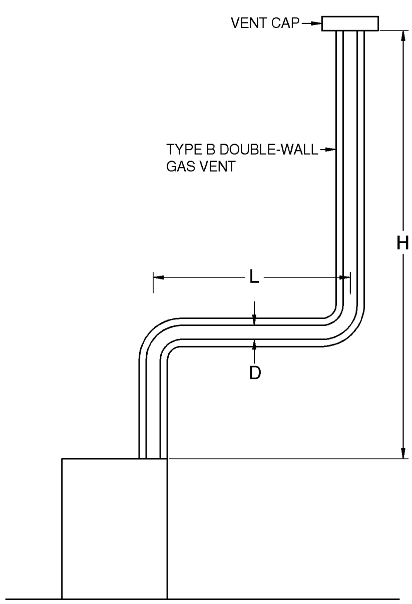
Solution:

Table 504.2(2) should be used to solve this problem, because single-wall metal vent connectors are being used with a Type B vent.

(a) Read down the first column in Table 504.2(2) until the row associated with a 10-foot height and 5-foot lateral is found. Read across this row until a vent capacity greater than 120,000 Btu per hour is located in the shaded columns *labeled* "NAT Max" for draft-hood-equipped appliances. In this case, a 5-inch-diameter vent has a capacity of 122,000 Btu per hour and may be used for this application.

(b) If three 90-degree elbows are used in the vent system, then the maximum vent capacity listed in the tables must be reduced by 10 percent (see Section 504.2.3 for single *appliance* vents). This implies that the 5-inch-diameter vent has an adjusted capacity of only 110,000 Btu per hour. In this case, the vent system must be increased to 6 inches in diameter (see calculations below).

122,000 (.90) = 110,000 for 5-inch vent
From Table 504.2(2), Select 6-inch vent
186,000 (.90) = 167,000; This is greater than the required 120,000. Therefore, use a 6-inch vent and connector where three elbows are used.

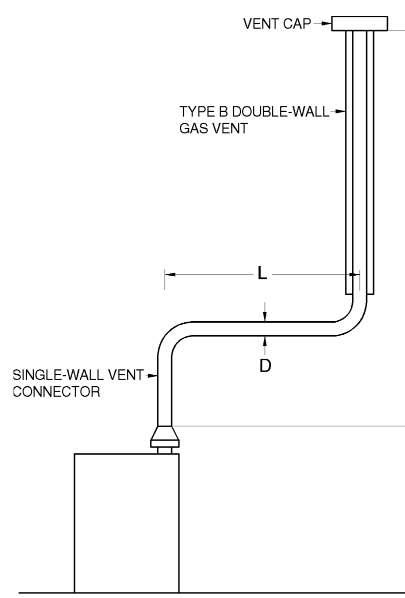


For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

Table 504.2(1) is used when sizing Type B double-wall gas vent connected directly to the appliance.

Note: The appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE B-1
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT SYSTEM SERVING A SINGLE APPLIANCE WITH A TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

Table 504.2(2) is used when sizing a single-wall metal vent connector attached to a Type B double-wall gas vent.

Note: The appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE B-2
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT SYSTEM SERVING A SINGLE APPLIANCE WITH A SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTOR

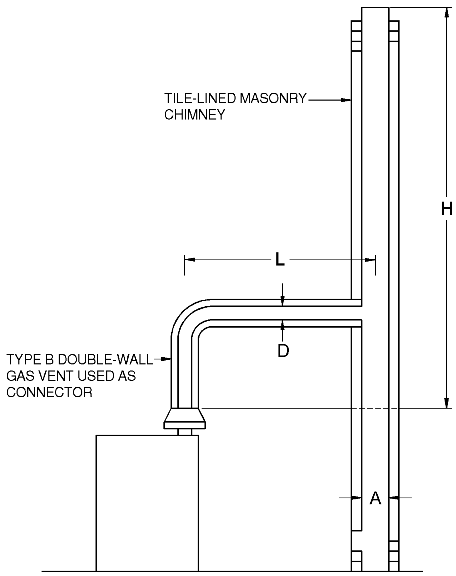
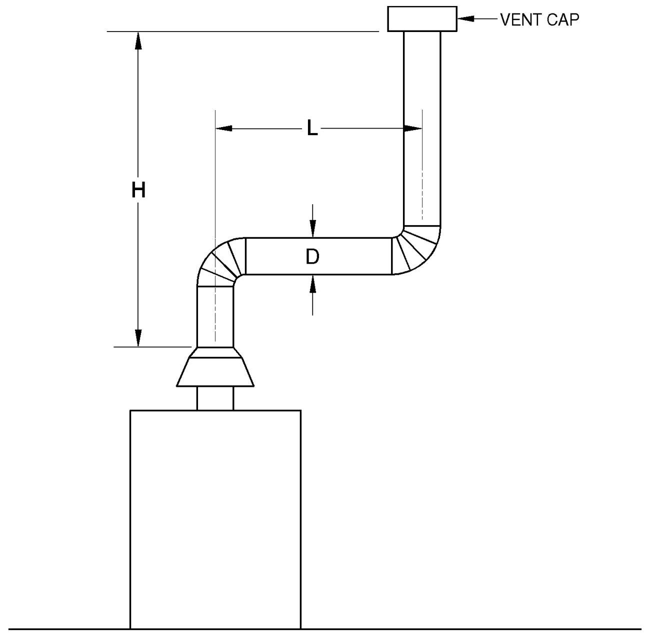


Table 504.2(3) is used when sizing a Type B double-wall gas vent connector attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Note: "A" is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.

Note: The appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE B-3
VENT SYSTEM SERVING A SINGLE APPLIANCE WITH A MASONRY CHIMNEY OF TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT CONNECTOR



Asbestos cement Type B or single-wall metal vent serving a single draft-hood-equipped appliance [see Table 504.2(5)].

FIGURE B-5
ASBESTOS CEMENT TYPE B OR SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT SYSTEM SERVING A SINGLE DRAFT-HOOD-EQUIPPED APPLIANCE

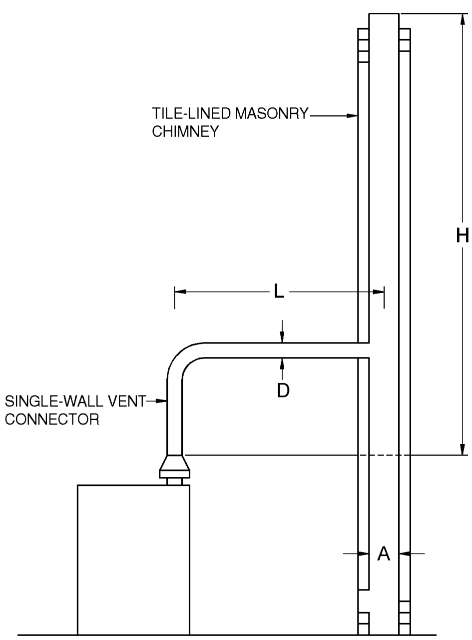


Table 504.2(4) is used when sizing a single-wall vent connector attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Note: "A" is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.

Note: The appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE B-4
VENT SYSTEM SERVING A SINGLE APPLIANCE USING A MASONRY CHIMNEY AND A SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTOR

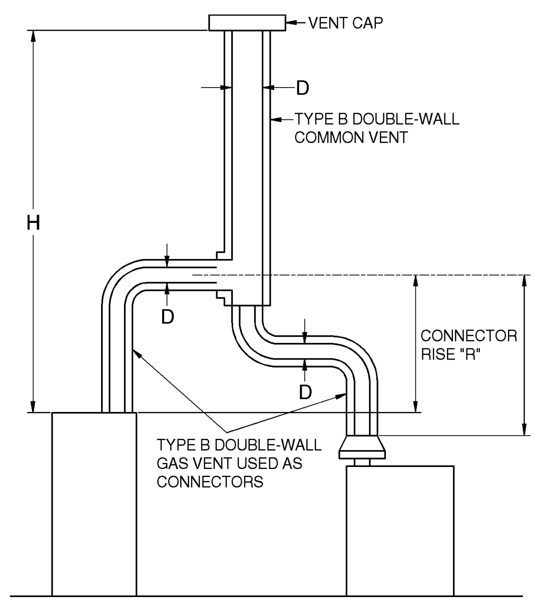


Table 504.3(1) is used when sizing Type B double-wall vent connectors attached to a Type B double-wall common vent.

Note: Each appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE B-6
VENT SYSTEM SERVING TWO OR MORE APPLIANCES WITH TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT AND TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT CONNECTOR

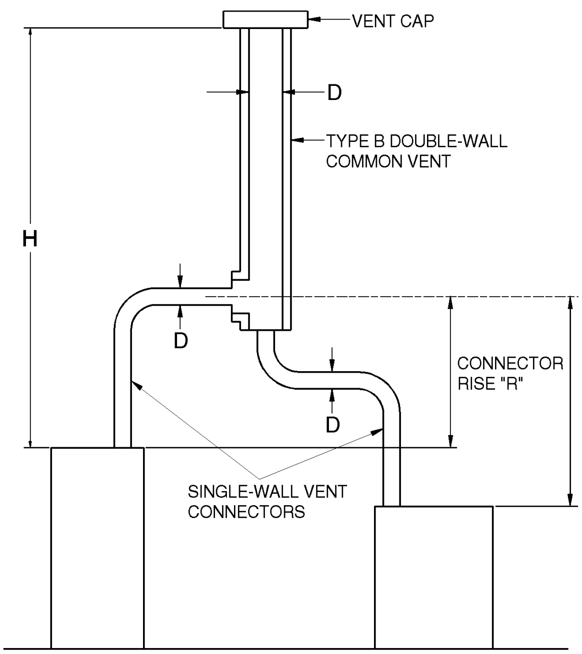


Table 504.3(2) is used when sizing single-wall vent connectors attached to a Type B double-wall common vent.

Note: Each appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE B-7
VENT SYSTEM SERVING TWO OR MORE APPLIANCES WITH TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT AND SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTORS

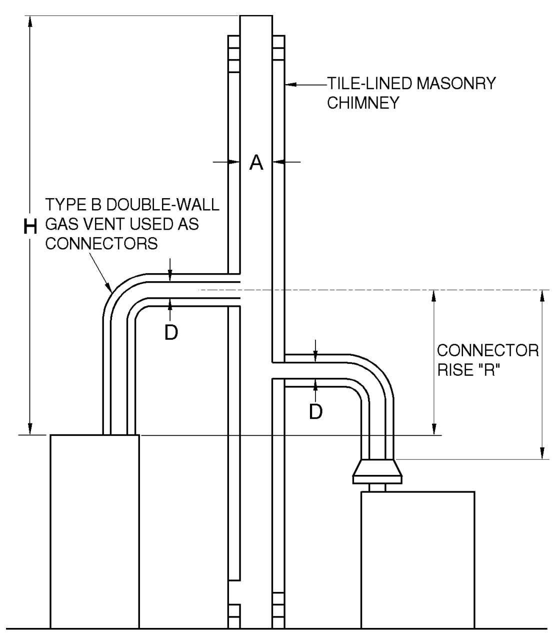


Table 504.3(3) is used when sizing Type B double-wall vent connectors attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Note: "A" is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.

Note: Each appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE B-8
MASONRY CHIMNEY SERVING TWO OR MORE APPLIANCES WITH TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT CONNECTOR

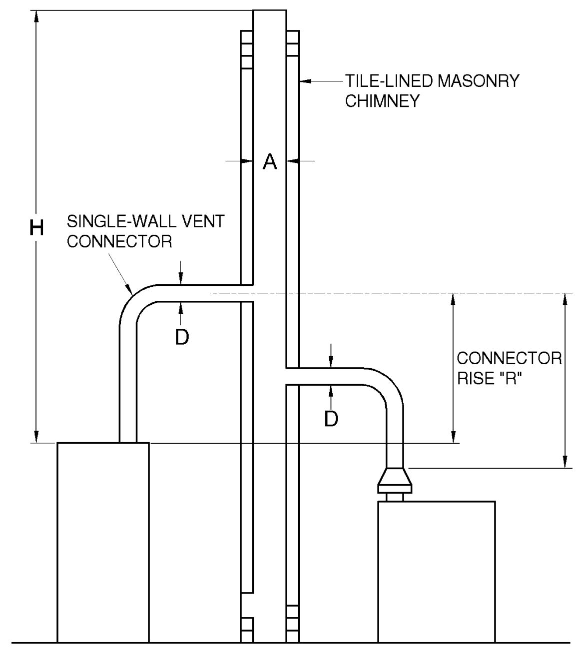
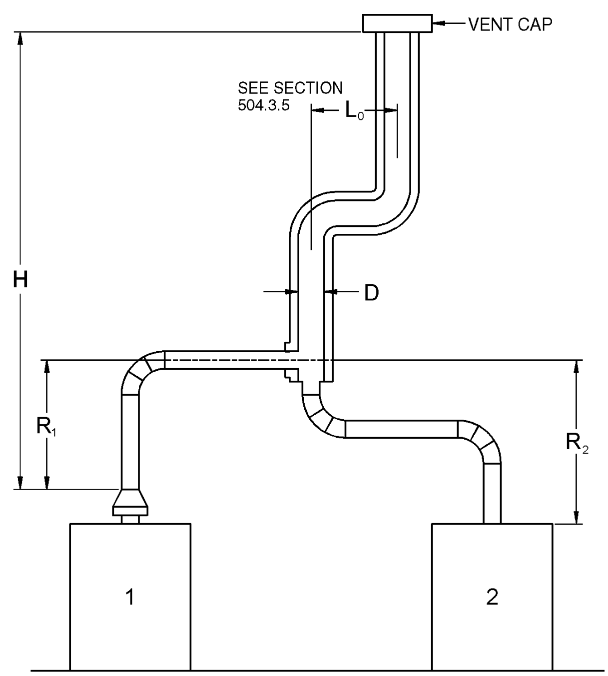


Table 504.3(4) is used when sizing single-wall metal vent connectors attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Note: "A" is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.

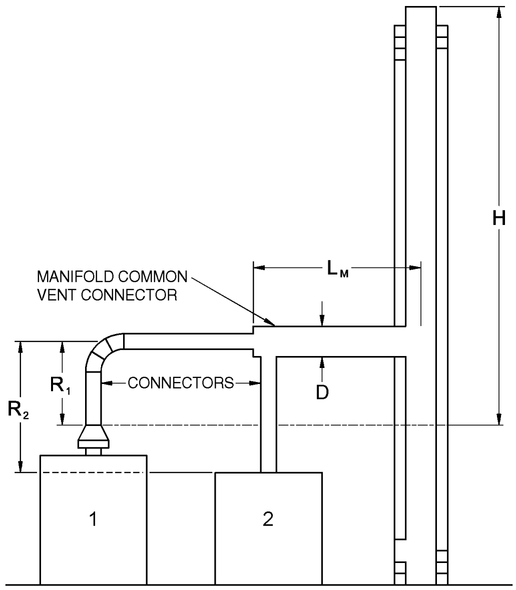
Note: Each appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE B-9
MASONRY CHIMNEY SERVING TWO OR MORE APPLIANCES WITH SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTORS



Asbestos cement Type B or single-wall metal pipe vent serving two or more draft-hood-equipped appliances [see Table 504.3(5)].

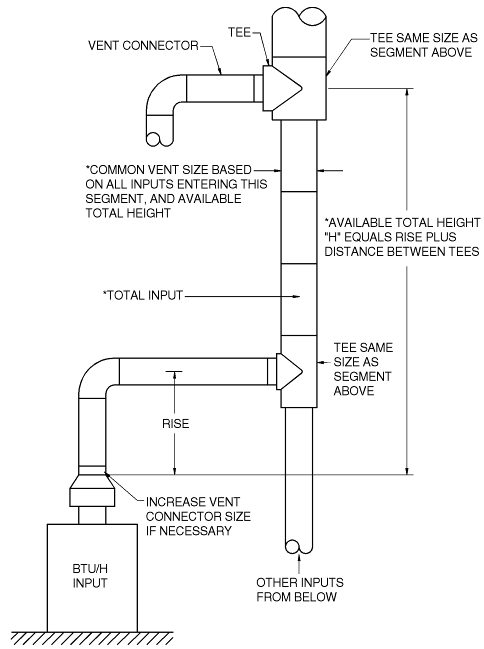
FIGURE B-10
ASBESTOS CEMENT TYPE B OR SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT SYSTEM SERVING TWO OR MORE DRAFT-HOOD-EQUIPPED APPLIANCES



Example: Manifolded Common Vent Connector L_M shall be no greater than 18 times the common vent connector manifold inside diameter; i.e., a 4-inch (102 mm) inside diameter common vent connector manifold shall not exceed 72 inches (1829 mm) in length (see Section 504.3.4).

Note: This is an illustration of a typical manifolded vent connector. Different appliance, vent connector, or common vent types are possible. Consult Section 502.3.

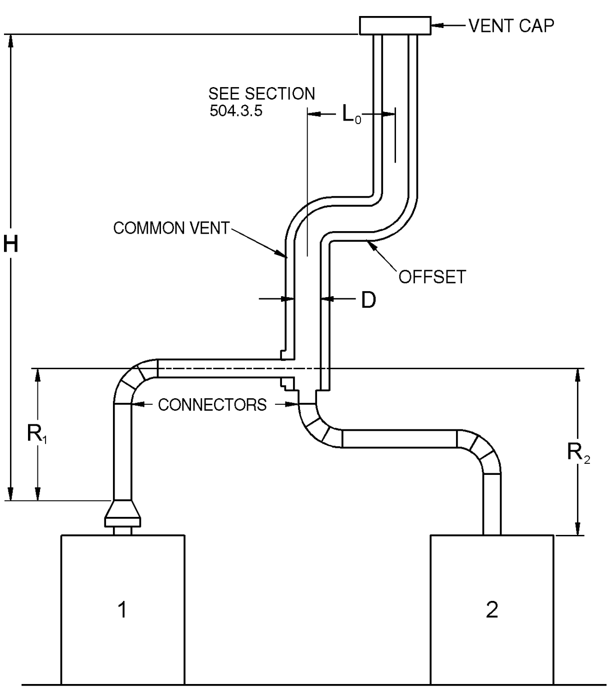
FIGURE B-11
USE OF MANIFOLD COMMON VENT CONNECTOR



Vent connector size depends on:
- Input
- Rise
- Available total height "H"
- Table 504.3(1) connectors

Common vent size depends on:
- Combined inputs
- Available total height "H"
- Table 504.3(1) common vent

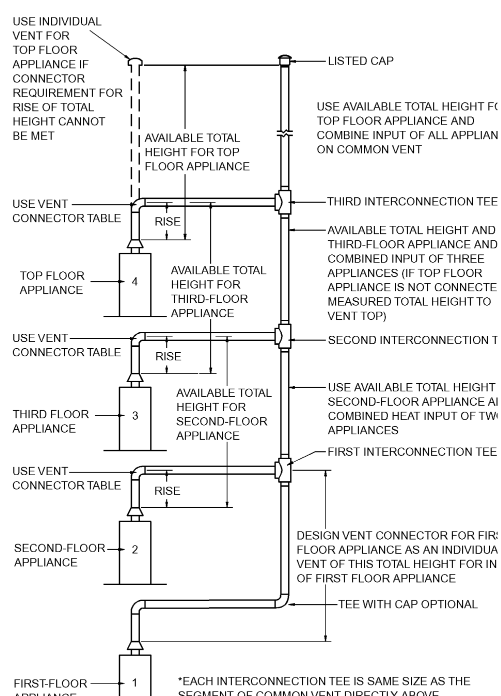
FIGURE B-13
MULTISTORY GAS VENT DESIGN PROCEDURE FOR EACH SEGMENT OF SYSTEM



Example: Offset Common Vent

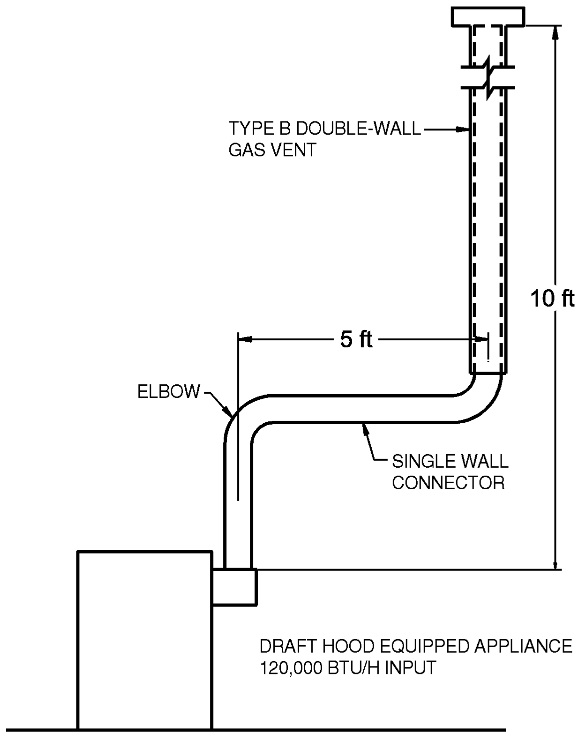
Note: This is an illustration of a typical offset vent. Different appliance, vent connector, or vent types are possible. Consult Sections 504.2 and 504.3.

FIGURE B-12
USE OF OFFSET COMMON VENT



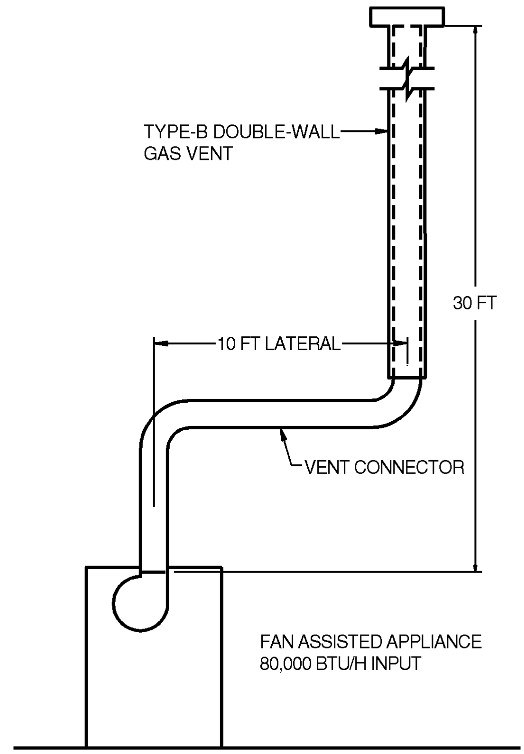
Principles of design of multistory vents using vent connector and common vent design tables (see Sections 504.3.11 through 504.3.17).

FIGURE B-14
MULTISTORY VENT SYSTEMS



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

FIGURE B-15 (EXAMPLE 1)
SINGLE DRAFT-HOOD-EQUIPPED APPLIANCE



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

FIGURE B-16 (EXAMPLE 2)
SINGLE FAN-ASSISTED APPLIANCE

Example 2: Single fan-assisted appliance.

An installer has an 80,000 Btu per hour input fan-assisted *appliance* that must be installed using 10 feet of lateral connector attached to a 30-foot-high Type B vent. Two 90-degree elbows are needed for the installation. Can a single-wall metal vent connector be used for this application?

Solution:

Table 504.2(2) refers to the use of single-wall metal vent connectors with Type B vent. In the first column find the row associated with a 30-foot height and a 10-foot lateral. Read across this row, looking at the FAN Min and FAN Max columns, to find that a 3-inch-diameter single-wall metal vent connector is not recommended. Moving to the next larger size single wall connector (4 inches), note that a 4-inch-diameter single-wall metal connector has a recommended minimum vent capacity of 91,000 Btu per hour and a recommended maximum vent capacity of 144,000 Btu per hour. The 80,000 Btu per hour fan-assisted *appliance* is outside this range, so the conclusion is that a single-wall metal vent connector cannot be used to vent this *appliance* using 10 feet of lateral for the connector.

However, if the 80,000 Btu per hour input *appliance* could be moved to within 5 feet of the vertical vent, then a 4-inch single-wall metal connector could be used to vent the *appliance*. Table 504.2(2) shows the acceptable range of vent capacities for a 4-inch vent with 5 feet of lateral to be between 72,000 Btu per hour and 157,000 Btu per hour.

If the *appliance* cannot be moved closer to the vertical vent, then Type B vent could be used as the connector material. In this case, Table 504.2(1) shows that for a 30-foot-high vent with 10 feet of lateral, the acceptable range of vent capacities for a 4-inch-diameter vent attached to a fan-assisted *appliance* is between 37,000 Btu per hour and 150,000 Btu per hour.

Example 3: Interpolating between table values.

An installer has an 80,000 Btu per hour input *appliance* with a 4-inch-diameter draft hood outlet that needs to be vented into a 12-foot-high Type B vent. The vent connector has a 5-foot lateral length and is also Type B. Can this *appliance* be vented using a 4-inch-diameter vent?

Solution:

Table 504.2(1) is used in the case of an all Type B vent system. However, since there is no entry in Table 504.2(1) for a height of 12 feet, interpolation must be used. Read down the 4-inch diameter NAT Max column to the row associated with 10-foot height and 5-foot lateral to find the capacity value of 77,000 Btu per hour. Read further down to the 15-foot height, 5-foot lateral row to find the capacity value of 87,000 Btu per hour. The difference between the 15-foot height capacity value and the 10-foot height capacity value is 10,000 Btu per hour. The capacity for a vent system with a 12-foot height is equal to the capacity for a 10-foot height plus $^2/_5$ of the difference between the 10-foot and 15-foot height values, or $77{,}000 + {}^2/_5\,(10{,}000) = 81{,}000$ Btu per hour. Therefore, a 4-inch-diameter vent may be used in the installation.

EXAMPLES USING COMMON VENTING TABLES

Example 4: Common venting two draft-hood-equipped appliances.

A 35,000 Btu per hour water heater is to be common vented with a 150,000 Btu per hour furnace using a common vent with a total height of 30 feet. The connector rise is 2 feet for the water heater with a horizontal length of 4 feet. The connector rise for the furnace is 3 feet with a horizontal length of 8 feet. Assume single-wall metal connectors will be used with Type B vent. What size connectors and combined vent should be used in this installation?

Solution:

Table 504.3(2) should be used to size single-wall metal vent connectors attached to Type B vertical vents. In the vent connector capacity portion of Table 504.3(2), find the row associated with a 30-foot vent height. For a 2-foot rise on the vent connector for the water heater, read the shaded columns for draft-hood-equipped appliances to find that a 3-inch-diameter vent connector has a capacity of 37,000 Btu per hour. Therefore, a 3-inch single-wall metal vent connector may be used with the water heater. For a draft-hood-equipped furnace with a 3-foot rise, read across the appropriate row to find that a 5-inch-diameter vent connector has a maximum capacity of 120,000 Btu per hour (which is too small for the furnace) and a 6-inch-diameter vent connector has a maximum vent capacity of 172,000 Btu per hour. Therefore, a 6-inch-diameter vent connector should be used with the 150,000 Btu per hour furnace. Since both vent connector horizontal lengths are less than the maximum lengths *listed* in Section 504.3.2, the table values may be used without adjustments.

In the common vent capacity portion of Table 504.3(2), find the row associated with a 30-foot vent height and read over to the NAT + NAT portion of the 6-inch-diameter column to find a maximum combined capacity of 257,000 Btu per hour. Since the two appliances total only 185,000 Btu per hour, a 6-inch common vent may be used.

Example 5a: Common venting a draft-hood-equipped water heater with a fan-assisted furnace into a Type B vent.

In this case, a 35,000 Btu per hour input draft-hood-equipped water heater with a 4-inch-diameter draft hood *outlet*, 2 feet of connector rise, and 4 feet of horizontal length is to be common vented with a 100,000 Btu per hour fan-assisted furnace with a 4-inch-diameter flue collar, 3 feet of connector rise, and 6 feet of horizontal length. The common vent consists of a 30-foot height of Type B vent. What are the recommended vent diameters for each connector and the common vent? The installer would like to use a single-wall metal vent connector.

Solution: [Table 504.3(2)].

Water Heater Vent Connector Diameter. Since the water heater vent connector horizontal length of 4 feet is less than the maximum value listed in Section 504.3.2, the venting table values may be used without adjustments. Using the Vent Connector Capacity portion of Table 504.3(2), read down the Total Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet and read across the 2-foot Connector Rise (*R*) row to the first Btu per hour rating in the NAT Max column that is equal to or greater than the water heater input rating. The table shows that a 3-inch vent connector has a maximum input rating of 37,000

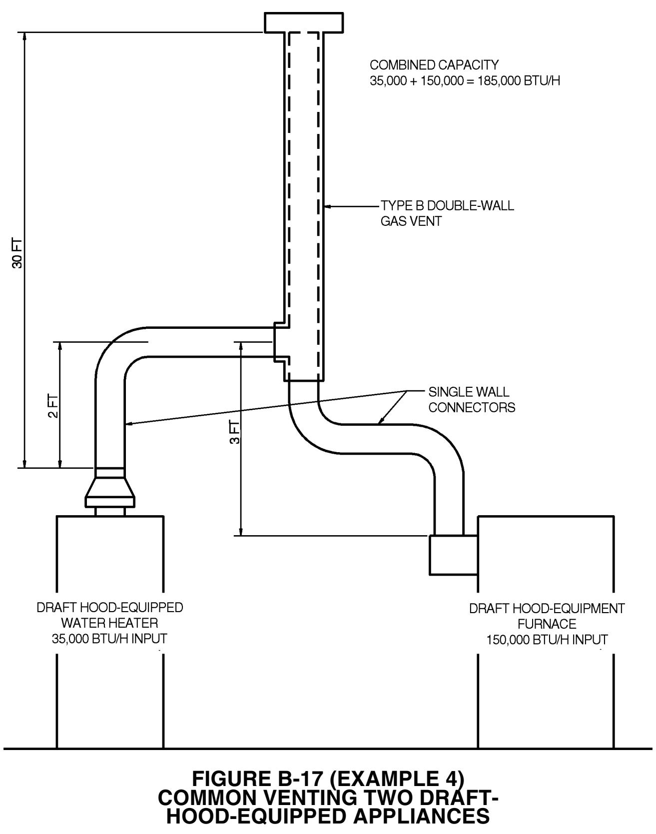


FIGURE B-17 (EXAMPLE 4)
COMMON VENTING TWO DRAFT-HOOD-EQUIPPED APPLIANCES

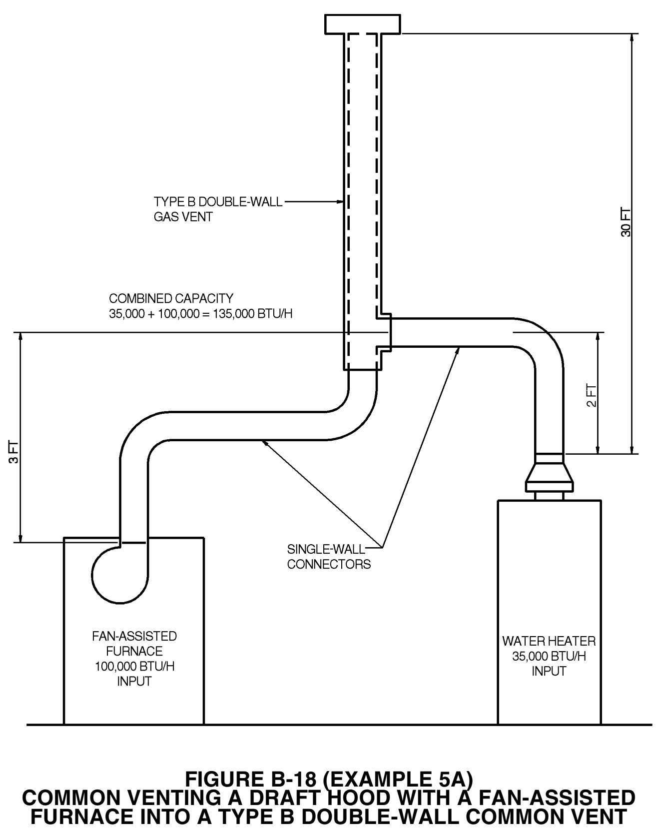


FIGURE B-18 (EXAMPLE 5A)
COMMON VENTING A DRAFT HOOD WITH A FAN-ASSISTED FURNACE INTO A TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL COMMON VENT

Btu per hour. Although this is greater than the water heater input rating, a 3-inch vent connector is prohibited by Section 504.3.21. A 4-inch vent connector has a maximum input rating of 67,000 Btu per hour and is equal to the draft hood *outlet* diameter. A 4-inch vent connector is selected. Since the water heater is equipped with a draft hood, there are no minimum input rating restrictions.

Furnace Vent Connector Diameter. Using the Vent Connector Capacity portion of Table 504.3(2), read down the Total Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet and across the 3-foot Connector Rise (*R*) row. Since the furnace has a fan-assisted combustion system, find the first FAN Max column with a Btu per hour rating greater than the furnace input rating. The 4-inch vent connector has a maximum input rating of 119,000 Btu per hour and a minimum input rating of 85,000 Btu per hour. The 100,000 Btu per hour furnace in this example falls within this range, so a 4-inch connector is adequate. Since the furnace vent connector horizontal length of 6 feet does not exceed the maximum value listed in Section 504.3.2, the venting table values may be used without adjustment. If the furnace had an input rating of 80,000 Btu per hour, then a Type B vent connector [see Table 504.3(1)] would be needed in order to meet the minimum capacity limit.

Common Vent Diameter. The total input to the common vent is 135,000 Btu per hour. Using the Common Vent Capacity portion of Table 504.3(2), read down the Total Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet and across this row to find the smallest vent diameter in the FAN + NAT column that has a Btu per hour rating equal to or greater than 135,000 Btu per hour. The 4-inch common vent has a capacity of 132,000 Btu per hour and the 5-inch common vent has a capacity of 202,000 Btu per hour. Therefore, the 5-inch common vent should be used in this example.

Summary. In this example, the installer may use a 4-inch-diameter, single-wall metal vent connector for the water heater and a 4-inch-diameter, single-wall metal vent connector for the furnace. The common vent should be a 5-inch-diameter Type B vent.

Example 5b: Common venting into a masonry chimney.

In this case, the water heater and fan-assisted furnace of Example 5a are to be common vented into a clay tile-lined masonry chimney with a 30-foot height. The chimney is not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. The internal dimensions of the clay tile liner are nominally 8 inches by 12 inches. Assuming the same vent connector heights, laterals, and materials found in Example 5a, what are the recommended vent connector diameters, and is this an acceptable installation?

Solution:

Table 504.3(4) is used to size common venting installations involving single-wall connectors into masonry chimneys.

Water Heater Vent Connector Diameter. Using Table 504.3(4), Vent Connector Capacity, read down the Total Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet, and read across the 2-foot Connector Rise (*R*) row to the first Btu per hour rating in the NAT Max column that is equal to or greater than the water heater input rating. The table shows that a 3-inch vent connector has a maximum input of only 31,000 Btu per hour while a 4-inch vent connector has a maximum input of 57,000 Btu per hour. A 4-inch vent connector must therefore be used.

Furnace Vent Connector Diameter. Using the Vent Connector Capacity portion of Table 504.3(4), read down the Total Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet and across the 3-foot Connector Rise (*R*) row. Since the furnace has a fan-assisted combustion system, find the first FAN Max column with a Btu per hour rating greater than the furnace input rating. The 4-inch vent connector has a maximum input rating of 127,000 Btu per hour and a minimum input rating of 95,000 Btu per hour. The 100,000 Btu per hour furnace in this example falls within this range, so a 4-inch connector is adequate.

Masonry Chimney. From Table B-1, the equivalent area for a nominal liner size of 8 inches by 12 inches is 63.6 square inches. Using Table 504.3(4), Common Vent Capacity, read down the FAN + NAT column under the Minimum Internal Area of Chimney value of 63 to the row for 30-foot height to find a capacity value of 739,000 Btu per hour. The combined input rating of the furnace and water heater, 135,000 Btu per hour, is less than the table value, so this is an acceptable installation.

Section 504.3.17 requires the common vent area to be no greater than seven times the smallest *listed appliance* categorized vent area, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet area. Both appliances in this installation have 4-inch-diameter outlets. From Table B-1, the equivalent area for an inside diameter of 4 inches is 12.2 square inches. Seven times 12.2 equals 85.4, which is greater than 63.6, so this configuration is acceptable.

Example 5c: Common venting into an exterior masonry chimney.

In this case, the water heater and fan-assisted furnace of Examples 5a and 5b are to be common vented into an exterior masonry chimney. The chimney height, clay tile liner dimensions, and vent connector heights and laterals are the same as in Example 5b. This system is being installed in Charlotte, North Carolina. Does this exterior masonry chimney need to be relined? If so, what corrugated metallic liner size is recommended? What vent connector diameters are recommended?

Solution:

According to Section 504.3.20, Type B vent connectors are required to be used with exterior masonry chimneys. Use Tables 504.3(7a), (7b) to size FAN+NAT common venting installations involving Type-B double wall connectors into exterior masonry chimneys.

The local 99-percent winter design temperature needed to use Table 504.3(7b) can be found in the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals.* For Charlotte, North Carolina, this design temperature is 19°F.

Chimney Liner Requirement. As in Example 5b, use the 63 square inch Internal Area columns for this size clay tile liner. Read down the 63 square inch column of Table 504.3(7a) to the 30-foot height row to find that the combined *appliance* maximum input is 747,000 Btu per hour. The combined input rating of the appliances in this installation, 135,000 Btu per hour, is less than the maximum value, so this criterion is satisfied. Table 504.3(7b), at a 19°F design temperature, and at the same vent height and internal area used above, shows that the minimum allowable input rating of a space-heating appliance is 470,000 Btu per hour. The furnace input rating of 100,000 Btu per hour is less than this minimum value. So this criterion is not satisfied, and an alternative venting design needs to be used, such as a Type B vent shown in Example 5a or a *listed* chimney liner system shown in the remainder of the example.

According to Section 504.3.19, Table 504.3(1) or 504.3(2) is used for sizing corrugated metallic liners in masonry chimneys, with the maximum common vent capacities reduced by 20 percent. This example will be continued assuming Type B vent connectors.

Water Heater Vent Connector Diameter. Using Table 504.3(1), Vent Connector Capacity, read down the Total Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet, and read across the 2-foot Connector Rise (*R*) row to the first Btu/h rating in the NAT Max column that is equal to or greater than the water heater input rating. The table shows that a 3-inch vent connector has a maximum capacity of 39,000 Btu/h. Although this rating is greater than the water heater input rating, a 3-inch vent connector is prohibited by Section 504.3.21. A 4-inch vent connector has a maximum input rating of 70,000 Btu/h and is equal to the draft hood outlet diameter. A 4-inch vent connector is selected.

Furnace Vent Connector Diameter. Using Table 504.3(1), Vent Connector Capacity, read down the Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet, and read across the 3-foot Connector Rise (*R*) row to the first Btu per hour rating in the FAN Max column that is equal to or greater than the furnace input rating. The 100,000 Btu per hour furnace in this example falls within this range, so a 4-inch connector is adequate.

Chimney Liner Diameter. The total input to the common vent is 135,000 Btu per hour. Using the Common Vent Capacity Portion of Table 504.3(1), read down the Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet and across this row to find the smallest vent diameter in the FAN+NAT column that has a Btu per hour rating greater than 135,000 Btu per hour. The 4-inch common vent has a capacity of 138,000 Btu per hour. Reducing the maximum capacity by 20 percent (Section 504.3.19) results in a maximum capacity for a 4-inch corrugated liner of 110,000 Btu per hour, less than the total input of 135,000 Btu per hour. So a larger liner is needed. The 5-inch common vent capacity *listed* in Table 504.3(1) is 210,000 Btu per hour, and after reducing by 20 percent is 168,000 Btu per hour. Therefore, a 5-inch corrugated metal liner should be used in this example.

Single-Wall Connectors. Once it has been established that relining the chimney is necessary, Type B double-wall vent connectors are not specifically required. This example could be redone using Table 504.3(2) for single-wall vent connectors. For this case, the vent connector and liner diameters would be the same as found above with Type B double-wall connectors.

TABLE B-1
MASONRY CHIMNEY LINER DIMENSIONS WITH CIRCULAR EQUIVALENTS[a]

NOMINAL LINER SIZE (inches)	INSIDE DIMENSIONS OF LINER (inches)	INSIDE DIAMETER OR EQUIVALENT DIAMETER (inches)	EQUIVALENT AREA (square inches)
4 × 8	$2^1/_2 \times 6^1/_2$	4	12.2
		5	19.6
		6	28.3
		7	38.3
8 × 8	$6^3/_4 \times 6^3/_4$	7.4	42.7
		8	50.3
8 × 12	$6^1/_2 \times 10^1/_2$	9	63.6
		10	78.5
12 × 12	$9^3/_4 \times 9\ ^3/_4$	10.4	83.3
		11	95
12 × 16	$9^1/_2 \times 13^1/_2$	11.8	107.5
		12	113.0
		14	153.9
16 × 16	$13^1/_4 \times 13^1/_4$	14.5	162.9
		15	176.7
16 × 20	13 × 17	16.2	206.1
		18	254.4
20 × 20	$16^3/_4 \times 16^3/_4$	18.2	260.2
		20	314.1
20 × 24	$16^1/_2 \times 20^1/_2$	20.1	314.2
		22 ×	380.1
24 × 24	$20^1/_4 \times 20^1/_4$	22.1	380.1
		24	452.3
24 × 28	$20^1/_4 \times 20^1/_4$	24.1	456.2
28 × 28	$24^1/_4 \times 24^1/_4$	26.4	543.3
		27	572.5
30 × 30	$25^1/_2 \times 25^1/_2$	27.9	607
		30	706.8
30 × 36	$25^1/_2 \times 31^1/_2$	30.9	749.9
		33	855.3
36 × 36	$31^1/_2 \times 31^1/_2$	34.4	929.4
		36	1017.9

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 m^2.

a. Where liner sizes differ dimensionally from those shown in Table B-1, equivalent diameters may be determined from published tables for square and rectangular ducts of equivalent carrying capacity or by other engineering methods.

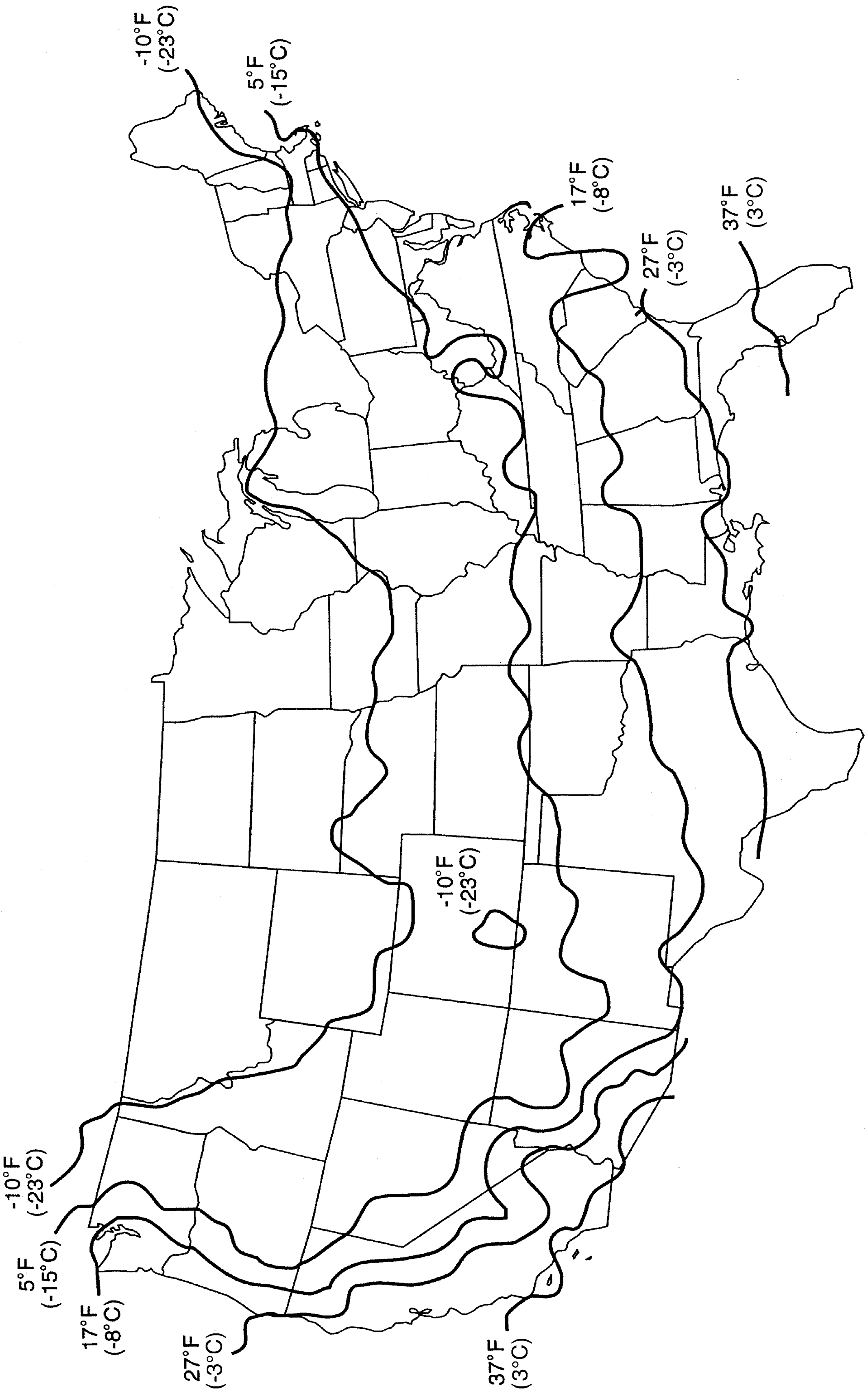

-10°F
(-23°C)
5°F
(-15°C)
17°F
(-8°C)
27°F
(-3°C)
37°F
(3°C)
-10°F
(-23°C)
-10°F
(-23°C)
5°F
(-15°C)
17°F
(-8°C)
27°F
(-3°C)
37°F
(3°C)

FIGURE B-19

1346.6010
APPENDIX C

TABLE C-1
RECOMMENDED CAPACITIES FOR DOMESTIC KITCHEN EXHAUST HOODS

HOOD SIZE AREA (Sq. Ft.)	EQUIPMENT WITH GRILLS OR DEEP FRYERS (Number of Exposed Sides)		RANGES AND OVENS (Number of Exposed Sides)	
	Four (CFM)	Three (CFM)	Four (CFM)	Three (CFM)
Up to 4	Up to 400	Up to 300	Up to 300	Up to 200
4	400	300	300	200
4.5	450	338	338	225
5	500	375	375	250
5.5	550	413	413	275
6	600	450	450	300
6.5	650	488	488	325
7	700	525	525	350
7.5	750	563	563	375
8	800	600	600	400
8.5	850	638	638	425
9	900	675	675	450
9.5	950	713	713	475
10	1,000	750	750	500
10.5	1,050	788	788	525
11	1,100	825	825	550
11.5	1,150	863	863	575
12	1,200	900	900	600
12.5	1,250	938	938	625
13	1,300	975	975	650
13.5	1,350	1,013	1,013	675
14	1,400	1,050	1,050	700
14.5	1,450	1,088	1,088	725
15	1,500	1,125	1,125	750
15.5	1,550	1,163	1,163	775
16	1,600	1,200	1,200	800

APPENDIX D (IFGS)

RECOMMENDED PROCEDURE FOR SAFETY INSPECTION OF AN EXISTING APPLIANCE INSTALLATION

(This appendix is informative and is not part of the code.)

The following procedure is intended as a guide to aid in determining that an *appliance* is properly installed and is in a safe condition for continuing use.

This procedure is intended for cental furnace and boiler installations and may not be applicable to all installations.

(a) This procedure should be performed prior to any attempt at modification of the *appliance* or of the installation.

(b) If it is determined that there is a condition that could result in unsafe operation, shut off the appliance and advise the owner of the unsafe condition. The following steps should be followed in making the safety inspection:

1 Conduct a check for gas leakage. (See Section 406.6)

2. Visually inspect the venting system for proper size and horizontal pitch and determine there is no blockage or restriction, leakage, corrosion and other deficiencies that could cause an unsafe condition.

3 Shut off all gas to the *appliance* and shut off any other fuel-gas-burning *appliance* within the same room. **Use the shutoff valve in the supply line to each appliance.**

4. Inspect burners and crossovers for blockage and corrosion.

5. **Furnace installations:** Inspect the heat exchanger for cracks, openings or excessive corrosion.

6. **Boiler installations:** Inspect for evidence of water or combustion product leaks.

7. Close all building doors and windows and all doors between the space in which the *appliance* is located and other spaces of the building that can be closed. Turn on any clothes dryers. Turn on any exhaust fans, such as range hoods and bathroom exhausts, so they will operate at maximum speed. Do not operate a summer exhaust fan. Close *fireplace* dampers. If, after completing Steps 8 through 13, it is believed sufficient *combustion air* is not available, refer to Section 304 of this code.

8. Place the *appliance* being inspected in operation. **Follow the lighting instructions.** Adjust the thermostat so *appliance* will operate continuously.

9. Determine that the pilot, where provided, is burning properly and that the main burner ignition is satisfactory by interrupting and reestablishing the electrical supply to the *appliance* in any convenient manner. If the *appliance* is equipped with a continuous pilot, test all pilot safety devices to determine if they are operating properly by extinguishing the pilot when the main burner is off and determining, after 3 minutes, that the main burner gas does not flow upon a call for heat. If the *appliance* is not provided with a pilot, test for proper operation of the ignition system in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's lighting and operating instructions.

10. Visually determine that the main burner gas is burning properly (i.e., no floating, lifting or flashback). Adjust the primary air shutters as required. If the *appliance* is equipped with high and low flame controlling or flame modulation, check for proper main burner operation at low flame.

11. Test for spillage at the draft hood relief opening after 5 minutes of main burner operation. Use the flame of a match or candle or smoke.

12. Turn on all other fuel-gas-burning appliances within the same room so they will operate at their full inputs. **Follow lighting instructions for each appliance.**

13. Repeat Steps 10 and 11 on the *appliance* being inspected.

14. Return doors, windows, exhaust fans, *fireplace* dampers and any other fuel-gas-burning *appliance* to their previous conditions of use.

15. **Furnace installations:** Check both the limit control and the fan control for proper operation. Limit control operation can be checked by blocking the circulating air inlet or temporarily disconnecting the electrical supply to the blower motor and determining that the limit control acts to shut off the main burner gas.

16. **Boiler installations:** Verify that the water pumps are in operating condition. Test low water cutoffs, automatic feed controls, pressure and temperature limit controls and relief valves in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations to determine that they are in operating condition.

INDEX

U

V

W